Operation Manual

DORICO
for iPad

steinberg

The Steinberg Documentation Team: Cristina Bachmann, Heiko Bischoff, Lillie Harris, Christina Kaboth, Insa Mingers, Matthias Obrecht, Sabine Pfeifer, Benjamin Schütte

Translation: Ability InterBusiness Solutions (AIBS), Moon Chen, Jérémie Dal Santo, Rosa Freitag, Josep Llodra Grimalt, Vadim Kupriianov, Filippo Manfredi, Roland Münchow, Boris Rogowski, Sergey Tamarovsky

This document provides improved access for people who are blind or have low vision. Please note that due to the complexity and number of images in this document, it is not possible to include text descriptions of images.

Dorico for iPad_1.2.0_en-US_2021-09-28

Table of Contents

New features

NOTE

Documentation for this new version is ongoing and will be updated regularly. Whilst we update the operation manual for the iPad, you may encounter some discrepancies between screenshots and descriptions in the operation manual and how the application appears and functions on your iPad.

New Features in Version 1.1.0

Player limit for subscribers

- Subscribers can now create and edit projects with any number of players. See Access to more features in Dorico for iPad.

Note tools popover

- You can now access the note tools popover, formerly known as the “add intervals popover”, from the Notations toolbox in Write mode. See Notations toolbox.

Requantizing notes

- You can now access the **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog from the secondary toolbar. See Requantizing notes and MIDI Quantize Options dialog.

Resetting the appearance and position of items

- You can now access the commands to reset the appearance and position of selected items from the secondary toolbar. See Resetting the appearance of items and Resetting the position of items.

New Features in Version 1.0.0

Automatic player sorting

- By default, players are now automatically sorted in orchestral order, regardless of the order in which you add them to the project. You can change the player sorting setting in the **Players** panel in Setup mode. See Players panel.

Ensemble picker

- When adding ensembles, you can now build custom ensembles and save them for future projects. See Ensemble picker.

Notes toolbox

- Some functions in the Notes toolbox now have additional options available when you click and hold their button, including allowing you to open the tuplets popover. See Notes toolbox.

Context menu

- The context menu is now truly contextual, showing only options relevant to your current selection. See Secondary toolbar (Write mode).

Panels/Popovers switch

- You can now switch between accessing panels and popovers from the Notations toolbox in Write mode. See Notations toolbox.

Lower zone

- The lower zone, formerly known as the “bottom panel”, now contains multiple different panels, including Keyboard, Fretboard, and Drum Pads panels that you can use to input notes and the Mixer and Key Editor panels that you can use to adjust playback. See Lower zone (Write mode).

Read view

- You can show the current layout in a full page view with view options hidden, allowing you to play along with the music with your iPad on a music stand, for example. It supports turning pages in multiple ways. See Read view.

Introduction

Thank you very much for downloading Dorico for iPad.

We are delighted that you have chosen Steinberg's scoring application and hope that you will enjoy using it for years to come.

Dorico is a next-generation application for producing beautiful sheet music, whether you are a composer, arranger, music engraver, publisher, instrumentalist, teacher, or student. Whether you want to print your music or share it in a digital format, Dorico is the most sophisticated program available.

Like all of Steinberg's products, Dorico has been designed from the ground up by a team of musicians who understand your needs and who are dedicated to producing a tool that is both easy to learn and use, but also capable of results of the highest quality. Dorico also integrates with your existing workflow and can import and export files in a variety of formats.

Dorico thinks about music the same way a human musician does and has a deeper understanding of the elements of music and musical performance than other scoring applications. Its unique design allows an unprecedented degree of flexibility, in music input and editing, in score layout, in rhythmic freedom, and many other areas besides.

Most sincerely yours,

The Steinberg Dorico Team

Access to more features in Dorico for iPad

Additional features are available when you are signed in or subscribed.

Neither signed in nor subscribed

When you are neither signed in nor subscribed, you are limited to two players per project. You do not have access to Engrave mode or Notation Options. You cannot load third-party audio units.

Signed in but not subscribed

When you are signed in but not subscribed, you are limited to four players per project. You do not have access to Engrave mode or Notation Options. You cannot load third-party audio units.

Subscribed

When you are subscribed, there is no player limit. You have access to Engrave mode and Notation Options. You can load third-party audio units.

RELATED LINKS
Players on page 67
Engrave mode on page 349
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Usage of interactive terms

In this documentation, terms for interacting with external computer keyboards and touchpads also apply when using the iPad touchscreen.

Computer keyboard term	iPad term
Click	Tap or touch
Mouse or touchpad	Finger(s) on touchscreen
Scroll	Swipe

Usage of musical terms

This documentation uses American terminology for musical items.

The following table lists all the notes and notations that have different names in American and British English:

American name	British name
Double whole note	Breve
Whole note	Semibreve
Half note	Minim
Quarter note	Crotchet
Eighth note	Quaver
Sixteenth note	Semiquaver
Thirty-second note	Demisemiquaver
Sixty-fourth note	Hemidemisemiquaver
Hundred twenty-eighth note	Semihemidemisemiquaver
Two hundred fifty-sixth note	Demisemihemidemisemiquaver
Half-step	Semitone
Whole step	Whole tone
Staff	Stave

American name	British name
Bar/Measure	Bar

NOTE

This documentation only uses “bar”.

Documentation structure

In our documentation, we divide information into three different types of topics, according to their content.

Descriptions of the user interface

Topics that describe the functionality of user interface items and list the options and settings of dialogs, panels, or other items.

Descriptions of basic concepts

Topics that describe concepts and explain the functionality of a specific software feature.

Descriptions of procedures

Topics that provide step-by-step instructions for how to perform a specific task. These topics often provide an example for why you might want to follow the steps and a brief summary of the result, including consequences to be aware of.

Because of this division of information, our documentation structure functions as a reference you can consult for specific information or instructions as required, rather than a guide you must read from start to finish.

TIP

Descriptive topics do not describe how to perform a task, and procedural topics do not explain what something is. To find general information about items or concepts, we recommend searching for them by name, such as “dynamics”. To find instructions for performing particular actions, we recommend including a relevant verb in your search, such as “moving”.

Links at the bottom of topics guide you to further relevant content. You can also check the sidebar for nearby, related topics in the documentation structure.

Conventions

In our documentation, we use typographical and markup elements to structure information.

Typographical elements

The following typographical elements mark the following purposes.

Prerequisite

Requires you to complete an action or to fulfill a condition before starting a procedure.

Procedure

Lists the steps that you must take to achieve a specific result.

Important

Informs you about issues that might affect the system, the connected hardware, or that might bring a risk of data loss.

Note

Informs you about issues that you should consider.

Tip

Adds further information or useful suggestions.

Example

Provides you with an example.

Result

Shows the result of the procedure.

After Completing This Task

Informs you about actions or tasks that you can perform after completing the procedure.

Related Links

Lists related topics that you can find in this documentation.

Markup

Elements of the user interface are highlighted throughout the documentation.

Names of menus, options, functions, dialogs, windows, and so on, are highlighted in bold.

EXAMPLE

To open the **Project Info** dialog, click **Application Menu** ☰ in the toolbar and choose **Project Info**.

If bold text is separated by a greater-than symbol, this indicates a sequence of different menus to open.

EXAMPLE

Choose **Voices** > **Change Voice** > **[Voice]**.

File names and folder paths are shown in a different font.

EXAMPLE

`example_file.txt`

Dorico concepts

Dorico is based on a number of key concepts that come from its design philosophy.

We recommend familiarizing yourself with these concepts, as this will greatly enhance your ability to work efficiently with Dorico and to navigate more easily through this documentation.

Design philosophy and higher-level concepts

Deep design considerations are required to create a notation software like Dorico, which might be of particular interest to users familiar with scoring applications. Dorico has a forward-thinking design that is led by musical concepts rather than computational convenience, and this provides many benefits.

In most other graphically-orientated scoring applications, the highest-level concept is the staff or the instrument definition that creates a staff or staves. When setting up your full score in such programs, you start by adding the correct number of staves, and you are immediately forced into making decisions about the layout. This means that you must know in advance whether two flutes share a staff or have their own individual staves, or whether there should be two trumpets or three. Many of these decisions have significant effects throughout the process of inputting, editing, and producing individual instrumental parts.

Typically, every system of a score must contain the same number of staves, even if some are hidden on particular systems. This requires the user to manage common conventions for themselves, such as multiple players of the same instrument sharing staves. This can be time-consuming and is naturally error-prone.

By contrast, Dorico is designed to conform more closely to how music is performed in the real world and to make the score a flexible expression of the practical choices that go into a musical performance, rather than to make the musical performance subservient to the way the score was initially prepared.

To that end, the highest-level concept of Dorico is the group of human musicians that performs a score. A score can be written for one or more groups, for example, a double choir or an orchestra plus off-stage chamber ensemble, and so on. Each group includes one or more players which correspond to the humans who play one or more instruments. Players may either be individuals who play more than one instrument, such as an oboist doubling cor anglais, or groups in which everyone plays only one instrument, such as eight desks of violinists.

One crucial difference between Dorico and other scoring applications is that the musical content exists independently of the score layout in which it is viewed.

The actual music played by the group in your score belongs to one or more flows. A flow is any span of music that stands alone, for example, a whole song, a movement of a sonata or symphony, a number in a musical show, or even a short scale or exercise. Players might or might not have any music to play in a given flow. For example, all the brass players might be omitted from the slow movement of a classical symphony, or certain players might have nothing to play in some cues in a movie score. This is no problem as you can combine players in flows in any combination.

Dorico's design philosophy provides several benefits. Chief among them is its ability to produce different score layouts that share the same musical content. For example, in the same project you can create a conductor's score with as many instruments as possible condensed onto a

smaller number of staves, a full score with each player's music on separate staves, a custom score layout containing just the piano and vocal staves for choral rehearsals, and an instrumental part for each player that only contains the music belonging to them.

Projects in Dorico

A project is an individual file that you create within Dorico. It can contain multiple separate pieces of music of any duration, written for any combination of instruments, and use as many layouts as required.

For example, you can create a single project that contains all the preludes and fugues in Bach's "The Well-Tempered Clavier" as separate flows. You could then have one layout that contains only the flows for Book 1 and another layout that contains the flows for Book 2.

In addition to the notated music, projects save other relevant information, such as its playback settings.

Dorico projects are saved as `.dorico` files.

RELATED LINKS
Flows in Dorico on page 16
Layouts in Dorico on page 20

Modes in Dorico

Modes in Dorico represent a logical sequence of the workflow phases of preparing music, but you can switch between them at any time as required for your own workflow.

Dorico for iPad contains the following modes:

Setup

In Setup mode, you can set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, and layouts. You can also determine how they interact with each other, for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts.

You can view music in the music area and switch between viewing other tabs and layouts, but you cannot select or interact with anything in the music area in Setup mode.

Write

In Write mode, you can input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. The available toolboxes and panels allow you to input all the notes and notation items that are most commonly used.

By design, you cannot move notes and items graphically on the page in Write mode. Graphical adjustments are only possible in Engrave mode in Dorico Pro.

Engrave

In Engrave mode, you can make fine adjustments to the position, size, and appearance notes and items and determine how the pages of your project are laid out, including editing and creating master pages.

By design, you cannot delete any notes or items, change their rhythmic positions, or change the pitch of notes in Engrave mode; this prevents mistakes when engraving.

NOTE

Only available when you are subscribed.

Play

In Play mode, you can change how your music sounds in playback. You can do this by changing the sounds assigned to tracks, adjusting the mix, and changing the sounding duration of notes in playback without affecting their notated duration.

RELATED LINKS
Setup mode on page 50
Write mode on page 112
Engrave mode on page 349
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10

Flows in Dorico

Flows are separate spans of music that are completely independent in musical content, for example, a single song in an album, a movement in a sonata or symphony, a number in a stage musical, or a short scale or sight-reading exercise of only a few bars in length. A single project can contain any number of flows.

Each flow can contain music for any combination of players, independently of other flows. For example, brass players are often tacet in the second movements of Classical-period symphonies, so you can remove brass players from the flow for the second movement but leave them in the flows for other movements. In a set of cues for a movie, for example, specific players might not be required in some cues, so the corresponding flows can contain only those players who have anything to play.

The correct assignment of players to flows allows Dorico, for example, to generate tacet sheets automatically for individual instrumental parts.

RELATED LINKS
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Flows on page 96
Tacets on page 398
Flow headings on page 367

Players in Dorico

In Dorico, a player can represent an individual musician or multiple musicians in the same section. Players hold instruments, so you must add at least one player to your project before you can add instruments.

- A single player represents one person who can play one or more instruments. For example, a clarinettist who doubles on alto saxophone or a percussionist who plays bass drum, clash cymbals, and triangle.
- A section player represents multiple people who all play the same instrument. For example, a violin section player might represent all eight desks of the Violin I section in an orchestra, or a soprano section player might represent the whole soprano section in a mixed voice choir.

  NOTE

  Section players cannot double instruments.

By using the concept of players, Dorico makes it much easier to handle, for example, instrument changes, divisi, and condensing music for multiple players onto a smaller number of staves.

You can also group players together, for example, to separate off-stage players from on-stage players in a large-scale work. Grouping players together means they are positioned together in the score, numbered independently of players outside the group, and are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

Players can be assigned to any combination of layouts and flows.

RELATED LINKS
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Players on page 67
Player groups on page 93
Divisi on page 814
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468

Instruments in Dorico

In Dorico, an instrument is an individual musical instrument, such as a piano, a flute, or a violin. Human voices, such as soprano or tenor, are also considered instruments.

In Dorico, instruments are held by players, just as real instruments are held by human players. Section players can only hold a single instrument but single players can hold multiple instruments. This allows you to handle instrument changes easily, such as when an oboist doubling the cor anglais switches from one instrument to the other.

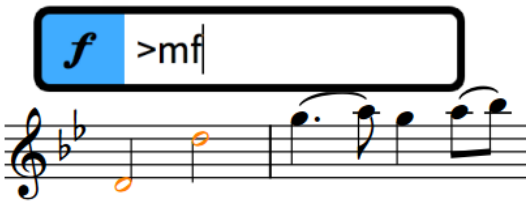
Each instrument automatically gets its own staff, but when instrument changes are allowed, the music for multiple instruments held by the same single player can appear on the same staff as long as no notes overlap.

Dorico has a database of information about the properties of each instrument. These include the playable range, common and uncommon playing techniques, notational conventions, transposition properties, tunings, clef, number of staves, type of staff, and so on. Having these properties predetermined makes it easier and quicker to set up projects correctly. For example, selecting the horn instrument with the appropriate transposition and clef setting for its part layout means you do not have to input a layout-specific clef. Similarly, there is a timpani instrument that automatically hides all key signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Instruments on page 74
Instrument changes on page 76
Transposing instruments on page 78

Popovers

Popovers allow you to input different notations and perform tasks, such as transposing a selection of notes, using only your computer keyboard. They are temporary value fields that use text entries for different items and tasks, and there are specific popovers for different purposes.



The dynamics popover with an example entry

One of the key benefits of popovers is that you can use them as you input notes: once you reach the position where you want to input a new time signature, for example, you can open the time signatures popover, input the time signature you want, and then continue inputting notes.

Although specific entries are required for many notations, the correct entries for different notations are consistently and logically structured. For example, tuplets are always expressed as a ratio, such as 3:2 or 5:4. Key signatures are expressed using capital letters for major keys and lowercase letters for minor keys. Time signatures are expressed as a pair of separated numbers; common time signatures use a slash, such as 3/4 or 6/8.

During note input, and depending on the notation you are inputting with the respective popover, notations are input either on the currently selected note, which is usually the last note you input, or at the current rhythmic position, indicated by the caret.

You can always identify popovers by the icon on their left-hand side, which are the same icons used in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window. The Notations toolbox allows you to hide/show the corresponding notation's panel, which is another way you can input notations.

You can only use popovers in Write mode, as that is the only mode where you can input notes and items together and change the pitch of notes. Popovers open above the top staff on which the caret is active or an item is selected, and at the caret position or the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 140
Note input on page 140
Notations input on page 194
Notations toolbox on page 121
Right zone (Write mode) on page 124

Notes and rests in Dorico

In Dorico, the notation and division of notes and rests is determined semantically by rules based on convention. This means that note and rest durations can change and appear differently later than when you first input them.

Dorico is able to update how notes and rests are notated depending on their context because of the following key concepts:

1. Notes are treated as a single unit, even if they appear as a tie chain that contains multiple notes tied together.
2. Implicit rests automatically fill the gaps between the notes you input.

In combination with time signatures and Dorico's understanding of their corresponding meters, this allows you to input only the notes you want with the duration required. It is not necessary to input rests between notes or input ties for notes that cross the half-bar, for example. If you subsequently change the time signature or move notes rhythmically to start earlier or later, Dorico updates how notes and rests are notated, such as by notating a quarter note as two tied eighth notes if it now straddles a barline or consolidating two eighth note rests into a single quarter note rest if they are now in the same bar.

If you tie existing notes together, you might find that they turn into a single note, such as a half note instead of two tied quarter notes, or into a tie chain containing more notes. This is because tie chains are treated as single notes in Dorico, and Dorico automatically notates and beams notes appropriately depending on their duration, the current time signature, and their position in the bar. Similarly, notes can change after you input notes immediately following them as this

changes the context, such as a quarter note tied to an eighth note becoming a dotted quarter note when it is followed by an eighth note rather than a rest.

TIP

In Write mode, selecting any part of a tie chain selects the whole tie chain because it is a single note. However, you can still input notations, such as dynamics, in the middle of tie chains by activating the caret and moving it to the required rhythmic position within the tie chain.

You can force the duration of individual notes and rests, for example, if you want to specify subdivisions within a tie chain that are different than the prevailing meter.

RELATED LINKS
Notes on page 591
Ties on page 839
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448
Caret on page 140
Inputting notes on page 145
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 153
Inputting ties on page 171

Rhythmic position

In Dorico, notes and items exist at rhythmic positions, which are calculated using their place in musical time in the flow rather than their position in a specific bar that has a particular time signature.

In Dorico, musical time is the number of beats starting from the beginning of each flow. For example, instead of a note existing on beat 3 in bar 4 in a 4/4 time signature, Dorico considers that note to exist at beat 15, regardless of the time signature and its position in a bar.

This approach allows for a lot of flexibility. For example, because notes and items exist independently of bars and time signatures in Dorico, you can change the time signature without changing when notes happen in relation to each other or adding rests at the end of each bar. Instead, the barlines simply move to different positions and note grouping is updated as required, such as notating a quarter note as two tied eighth notes if it now straddles a barline or crosses the half-bar. You can even start writing notes without inputting a time signature at all.

Similarly, you can easily push notes to later rhythmic positions or pull them in to earlier ones using Insert mode without the risk of them being incorrectly notated. It also means you can think of items existing in the music independently of notes, because items exist at a particular rhythmic position, rather than being attached to notes.

In Dorico, the rhythmic position of notes and items is separate from their graphical position on the page. The benefit of this is that you can input items at the position in the music where they must apply and then move them graphically without causing them to apply to different notes or inadvertently split multi-bar rests. For example, if you want strings to play *pizzicato* from the start of a bar, but because of tight vertical spacing you want to move the *pizz.* indication slightly to the side. Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply, so it is always clear where they belong, but are not printed.

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 464

Beam groups on page 447
Time signatures on page 855
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 160
Notes on page 591
Caret on page 140
Rhythmic grid on page 139

Layouts in Dorico

Layouts combine musical content, as represented by flows and players, with rules for page formatting and music engraving, and allow you to produce paginated music notation that can be printed or exported in various formats. For example, part layouts only include the music for that player whereas full score layouts contain all staves in the project.

A typical project for an ensemble contains several layouts. Typically, projects contain at least a full score layout that contains the music for all players and a part layout for each player that only contains their music. However, you can also create as many layouts as required.

By default when you add a player to a project, Dorico creates a full score layout and a part layout. For all subsequent players you add to the project, Dorico creates a part layout for each player and assigns them all to the existing full score layout.

Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows.

You can control practically every aspect of the visual appearance of the music in each layout independently, including staff size, note spacing, and system formatting. Each layout can also have independent page formatting settings, such as page size, margins, running headers, and footers.

The default formatting of pages in layouts is determined by master pages.

Deleting layouts does not delete any music from the project.

RELATED LINKS
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Page formatting on page 369

Master pages in Dorico

Master pages function like templates in Dorico, allowing the same page formatting to be applied to multiple different pages in different layouts.

Master pages contain arrangements of frames. Frames are boxes in which you can display text, music, and graphics. The default master pages contain text frames at the tops of pages, to display the page number and running header information, and a large music frame that takes up most of the page.

All pages in your score and parts inherit their layout formats from master pages. However, in Dorico for iPad, you cannot edit master pages or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

NOTE

Changing individual pages in layouts is considered a master page override. This includes, for example, editing the title or running header in Write mode. Pages with master page overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are now empty because the layout became shorter.

If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, that is, the title and running header text that you cannot select, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to

avoid master page overrides. The big title at the top of the first page is the project title, and the running header on subsequent pages uses the flow title for the top flow on that page.

RELATED LINKS
Master pages on page 366
Frames on page 367
Project Info dialog on page 61

Options dialogs in Dorico for iPad

Options to control the default appearance of music and functionality of Dorico for iPad are available in different dialogs according to their type and purpose.

Dorico for iPad contains the following dialogs for global settings:

Layout Options

Contains options that are likely to vary from layout to layout, such as page size, staff size, and the appearance and position of bar numbers. Options in **Layout Options** affect only the selected layouts but apply to all flows in those layouts.

Notation Options

Contains options that are likely to vary from flow to flow, such as beam grouping and accidental duration rules. Options in **Notation Options** affect only the selected flows but apply to all layouts in which those flows appear.

Only available when you are subscribed.

We recommend becoming familiar with the available options in these dialogs, as finding the most appropriate settings for each project reduces the requirement for manual intervention and graphical tweaks.

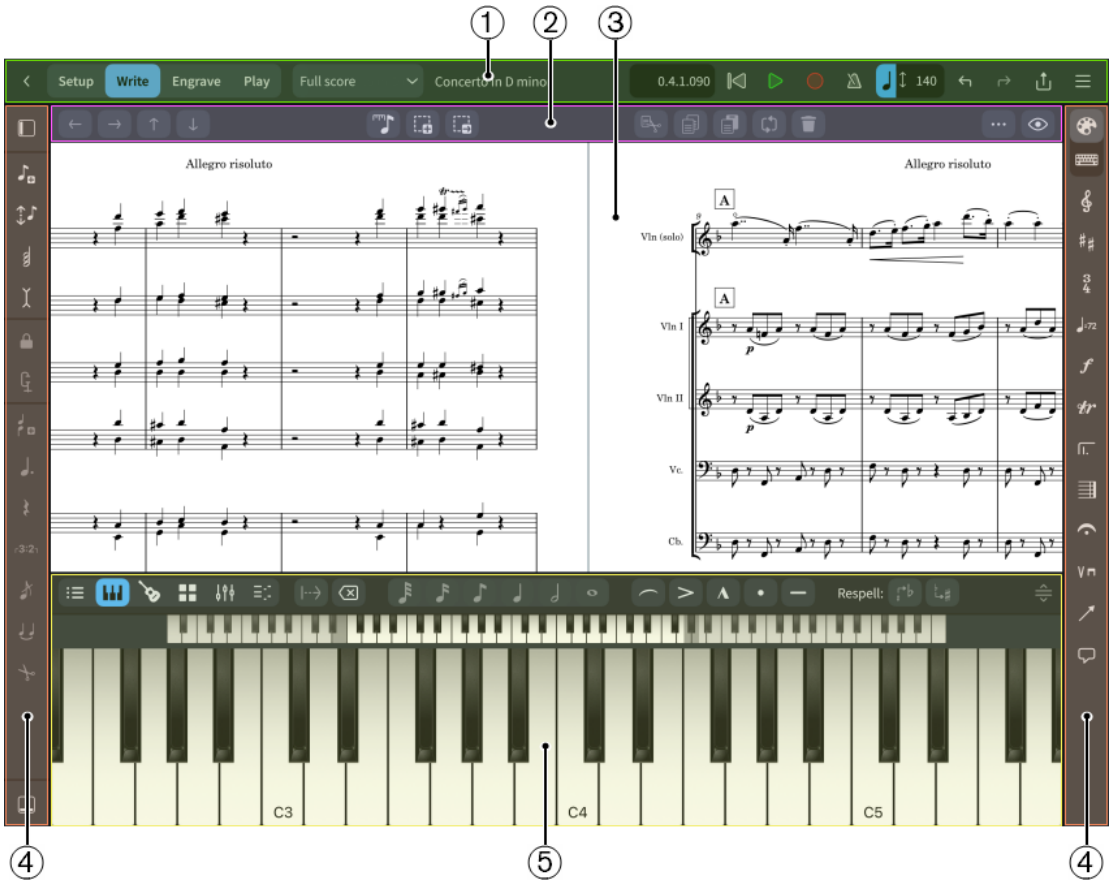
RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Preferences dialog on page 34
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10

User interface

The user interface of Dorico for iPad is designed to keep all of the important tools at your fingertips. This chapter introduces you to key aspects of the user interface.

Project window

Dorico for iPad's main project window allows you to access all the options and tools you need to work on a project.



The project window comprises the following areas:

1 **Toolbar**

Allows you to access the modes, other layouts, the main transport options, print and export options, and options dialogs. Also allows you to undo and redo actions.

2 **Secondary toolbar**

Contains different common options depending on the mode, such as **Add to Selection** and **Delete**. Available in Write mode and Engrave mode.

3 **Project start area/Music area/Event display**

The central part of the project window where you work on your project. When you set up a new empty project, this area shows the project start area that allows you to add your first

players. Once you have added a player or an ensemble, this area becomes the music area that shows the music notation of the currently selected layout.

In Play mode, this area contains an event display that shows the effects of manipulating the playback of your music.

4 **Toolboxes**

Toolboxes provide access to items and tools that you can use to input and edit your music. Different toolboxes contain different items and tools according to the mode.

5 **Zones**

Zones on the left, right, and lower edges of the project window contain panels that provide the notes, notations, and functions that you need to create and edit your music. Different panels are available in each zone according to the mode. In Dorico for iPad, you can show either the right and/or left zones simultaneously, or the lower zone on its own.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Secondary toolbar (Engrave mode) on page 351
Starting new projects on page 43
Switching between layouts on page 30
Project window in Setup mode on page 50
Project window in Write mode on page 112

Toolbar

The toolbar allows you to access modes, other layouts, main transport options, and the application menu. It is located at the top of the project window and is available in all modes.

The toolbar contains the following:

1 **Return to Hub**

Closes the current project and returns to the Hub.

2 **Modes**

Selectable workspaces in the project window that represent different phases in the workflow of preparing a score. Can appear as buttons or a menu, depending on the available space.

3 **Layout selector**

Allows you to select a different layout to open in the music area.

4 **Project title**

Displays the title of the current project. Clicking the project name opens the **Project Info** dialog.

5 **Mini transport**

Allows you quick access to the main transport functions, including **Play**, **Record**, and **Click**.

6 **Undo**

Allows you to undo previous actions.

7 **Redo**

Allows you to restore previous actions that were undone using **Undo**.

8 **Share**

Allows you to print and export the current project in a variety of formats.

9 **Application Menu**

Allows you to access Read view, options dialogs, documentation, and to sign in and subscribe.

RELATED LINKS
Hub on page 41
Modes in Dorico on page 15
Mini transport on page 24
Read view on page 404
Project Info dialog on page 61
Options dialogs in Dorico for iPad on page 21
File export on page 46
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10

Mini transport

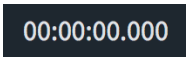
The mini transport on the right of the toolbar provides quick access to the main transport functions of Dorico for iPad.

Time display

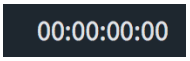
Shows the position of the playhead in one of the following formats:

- Bars, beats, and ticks
- Elapsed time in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, milliseconds
- Timecode in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, frames

Time display showing bars and beats



Time display showing elapsed time



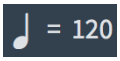
Time display showing the timecode

You can change the content shown in the time display by clicking it.

Fixed Tempo Mode

Displays the tempo used for both playback and recording. The value changes according to the playhead position and its appearance changes according to its mode.

You can change the tempo mode by clicking the beat unit. You can change the metronome mark value used in fixed tempo mode by clicking and dragging upwards/downwards on the number.



Fixed Tempo Mode when fixed tempo mode is active

Fixed Tempo Mode when follow tempo is active

Rewind to Beginning of Flow

Moves the playhead back to the beginning of the flow.

Play

Starts/Stops playback from the previous playhead position.

Play when playback is stopped

Play during playback

Record

Starts/Stops MIDI recording.

Click

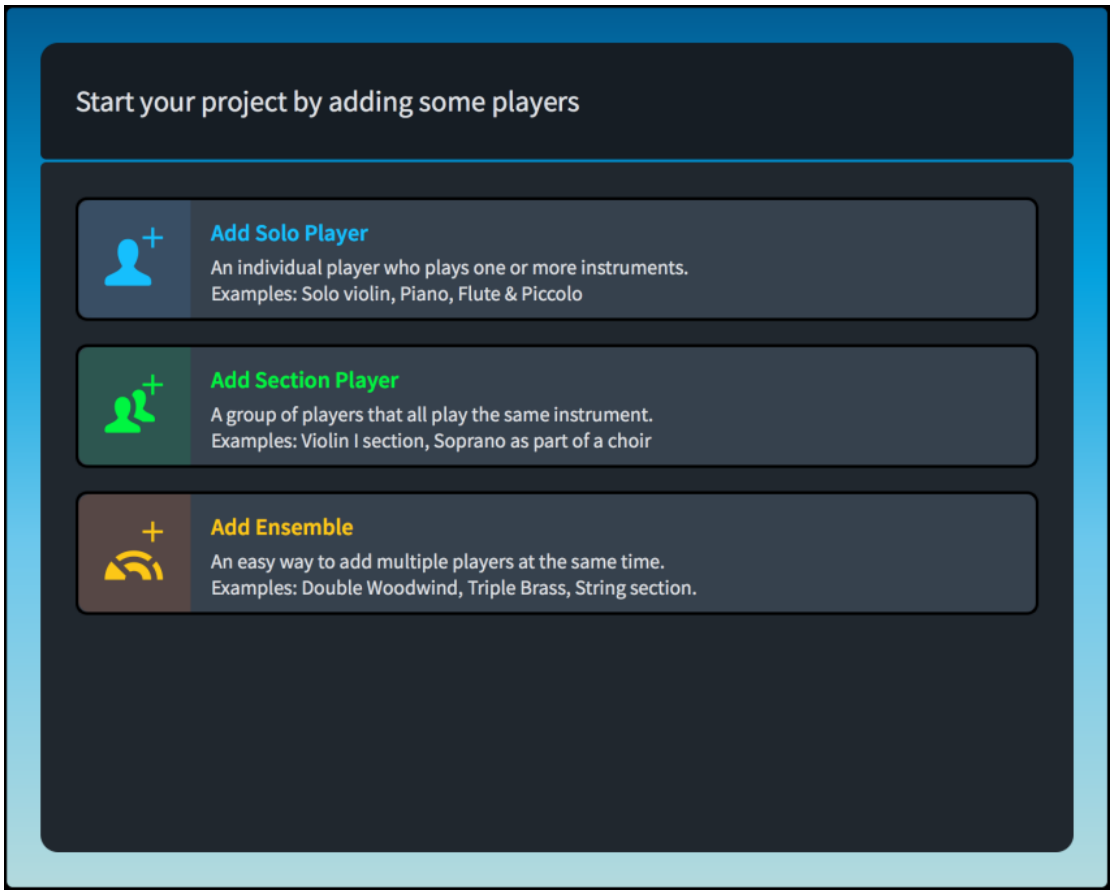
Plays/Mutes the metronome click during playback and recording.

RELATED LINKS
MIDI recording on page 188

Project start area

The project start area is displayed in the middle of the project window in Setup mode and Write mode when you set up a new empty project. When you add at least one player, the view changes into the music area.

The project start area shows cards that allow you to add players to the project.

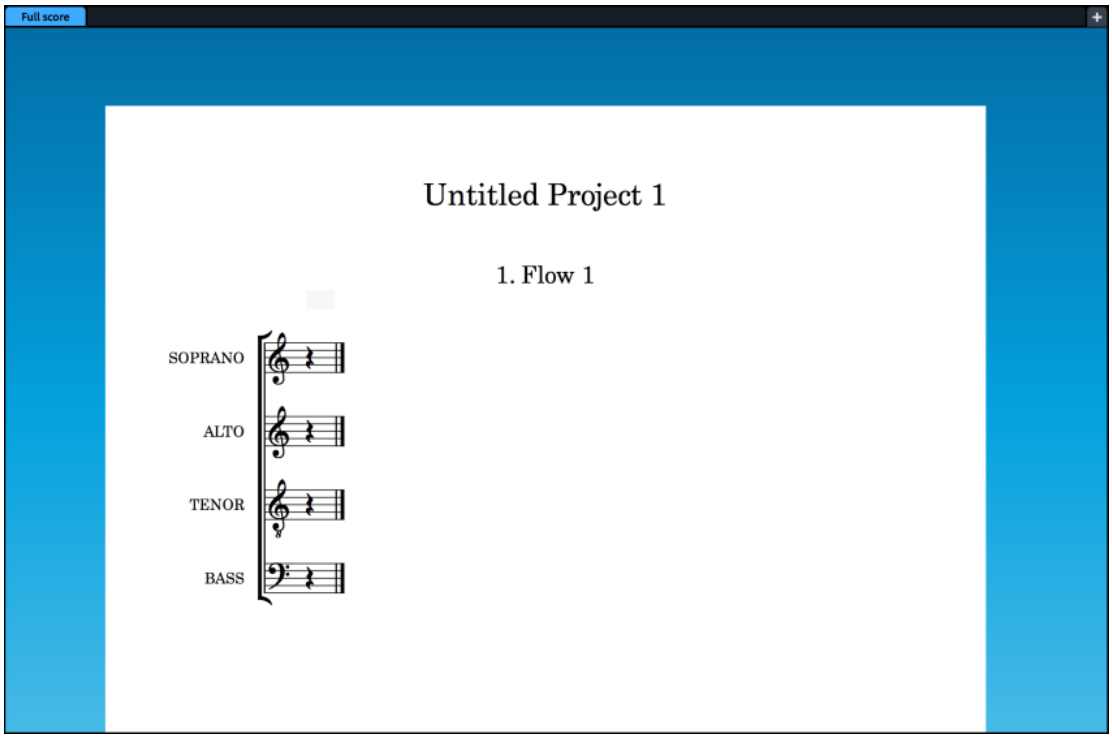


Project start area

RELATED LINKS
Adding players on page 68

Music area

In Setup, Write, and Engrave modes, the music area shows the music notation of the currently selected layout. It is the central part of the project window where you work on your project.



Music area showing a new choir piece in page view

The music area displays layouts in either galley view or page view. In Engrave mode, layouts always appear in page view.

You can use the layout selector in the toolbar to show other layouts in the music area.

When zones are open on the right, left, and lower edges of the window, the size of the music area can be reduced. You can hide/show zones when necessary.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 23
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Switching between layouts on page 30
Hiding/Showing zones on page 31
Navigation on page 329
Layouts on page 99

View types

In Dorico for iPad there are different ways to view your layouts.

The following view types are available:

Galley View

Lays out all the staves in the current layout and flow on a single continuous system.

This view type is most useful during the process of inputting the music as it allows you to focus on the musical content of your project. Because it shows all staves, galley view is particularly useful when inputting notes for single players holding multiple instruments.

By default, bar numbers are shown every bar above every staff. Staff labels are also shown above every staff, and follow the view as you scroll so they are always visible.

NOTE

Note spacing is unjustified in galley view and there is no automatic vertical collision avoidance, so notes and items might overlap. You can change the default gaps between staves in galley view for each layout independently.

Page View

Displays your layout paginated exactly as it appears when you print or export it.

This view type is useful for determining appropriate page turns, for example.

NOTE

- The view type is reset to your default setting when you switch layouts.
- You can change the default view type used for all future projects in the **View** section of the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 34
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Changing the staff spacing in galley view on page 397
Page formatting on page 369
Players on page 67
Instruments on page 74

Zones and panels

Zones on the left, right, and lower edges of the project window contain panels that provide the notes, notations, and functions that you need to set up, write, edit, and format your music. Different panels are available in each zone according to the mode.

1. Left zone. In Write mode, this contains the Notes panel.
2. Right zone. In Write mode, this can display different panels, according to the current selection in the Notations toolbox.
3. Lower zone. In Write mode, this can display different panels, including the Properties panel and Mixer.

The zones contain different panels in each mode in Dorico for iPad.

Modes and their panels

Mode	Left Zone	Right Zone	Lower Zone
Setup	Players panel	Layouts panel	Flows panel
Write	Notes panel	Notations panels	Properties, Keyboard, Fretboard, Drumpads, Mixer, and Key editor panels
Engrave	Formatting panel	n/a	Properties and Mixer panels
Play	Track Inspector	n/a	Keyboard, Fretboard, Drumpads, Mixer, Key editor, and Track inspector panels

You can hide/show zones individually. In Dorico for iPad, you can show either the right and/or left zones simultaneously, or the lower zone on its own.

RELATED LINKS
Modes in Dorico on page 15
Hiding/Showing zones on page 31
Project window in Setup mode on page 50
Project window in Write mode on page 112

Toolboxes

Toolboxes are located on the right and left edges of the project window in some modes. They contain different tools and options according to the current mode, but in general they allow you to input and modify notes/items and to show different panels in the corresponding zone.

The following toolboxes are available in the different modes:

Write mode

- Notes toolbox on the left of the project window
- Notations toolbox on the right of the project window

Engrave mode

- Engrave toolbox on the left of the project window

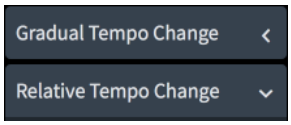
RELATED LINKS
Project window on page 22

Notes toolbox on page 113
Notations toolbox on page 121

Disclosure arrows

Disclosure arrows indicate that objects, areas, and menus can be expanded/collapsed, either vertically or horizontally.

In Dorico for iPad, disclosure arrows are commonly used to expand/collapse sections in panels and cards, such as player cards in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.



Disclosure arrows for sections in the Tempo panel

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 31
Players panel on page 51
Instruments on page 74

Workspace setup

Dorico for iPad enables you to set up your workspace according to your working style. For example, you can switch between different layouts in your project and view them in either galley or page view.

RELATED LINKS
Navigation on page 329
Hiding/Showing zones on page 31
Starting new projects on page 43

Switching between layouts

If you have created several layouts in your project, you can switch between which is displayed in the music area in any mode, for example, to check individual part layouts. In Setup mode and Write mode, this changes the layout displayed in the current tab only.

NOTE

You can only switch between layouts to which players are assigned.

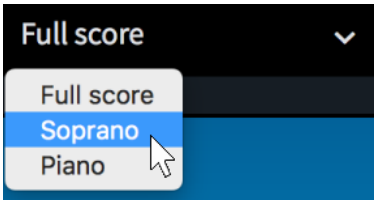
PROCEDURE

- Switch to another layout in any of the following ways:
  - To switch to the next layout, press **Shift-Opt-]**.
  - To switch to the previous layout, press **Shift-Opt-[**.
  - Select an item on a staff or in the piano roll of the player whose layout you want to open and press **W**.

    NOTE

    Implicit rests are not items.

- In the toolbar, click the layout selector and select a layout.



RESULT

The selected layout is opened in the music area. It replaces the layout previously open in the tab.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts on page 99
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763

Hiding/Showing zones

You can hide/show individual zones or all zones simultaneously, for example, to increase the space available for displaying music in the music area or to access options in a specific panel.

NOTE

- You cannot hide zones in Setup mode.
- You can show the right and left zones simultaneously, but you can only show the lower zone on its own.

PROCEDURE

1. Hide/Show the left zone in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-7**.
   - In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Left Zone**.
2. Hide/Show the right zone in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-9**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click the button for any panel you want to show, or the active button for the panel you want to hide.
3. Hide/Show the lower zone in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-8**.
   - In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**.

RESULT

The corresponding zones are hidden/shown.

RELATED LINKS

Zones and panels on page 28
Toolbar on page 23
Disclosure arrows on page 30
Properties panel (Write mode) on page 126

Switching to galley/page view

In Write mode, you can switch between different view types in the music area. For example, if a flute player in your project is doubling piccolo, you can switch to galley view to see the piccolo staff in addition to the flute staff.

PROCEDURE

1. In the secondary toolbar, click **View Options** to open the **View Options** dialog.
2. Choose one of the following options for **View type**:
   - **Page View**
   - **Galley View**
3. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The view type in the music area is changed. In page view, only staves containing notes or items are shown by default. For players holding multiple empty instruments, only the top instrument is shown in full scores.

In galley view, all staves in the project are shown. By default, guide bar numbers are shown above each staff and guide instrument labels are shown above each instrument. For players holding multiple instruments, the player name is also shown in guide instrument labels.

NOTE

- Note spacing is unjustified in galley view and there is no automatic vertical collision avoidance, so notes and items might overlap. You can change the default gaps between staves in galley view for each layout independently.
- The view type is reset to your default setting when you switch layouts.
- You can change the default view type used for all projects in the **View** section of the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

View types on page 27
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
View Options dialog on page 120
Changing the staff spacing in galley view on page 397
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Preferences dialog on page 34
Zooming in/out of the music area on page 331
Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 438
Renaming players on page 105
Music area on page 26

Changing the page color

You can change the color of pages in each of the different layout types, for example, to help you identify whether you are in a part layout or full score layout, or to make reading the music easier or more comfortable.

By default, full score and custom score layouts have white pages, while part layouts have cream pages.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **General** in the category list.
3. In the **Page Colors** subsection of the **View** section, change the page color for **Full score layouts**, **Part layouts**, and/or **Custom score layouts** in any of the following ways:
   - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
   - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page color in layouts of the corresponding type is changed in the current project and all future projects you open. This does not affect the resulting page color when exporting or printing layouts.

TIP

You can reset page colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset** for each layout type.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts on page 99

Changing the background color

You can change the background color of the music area. The background can be a gradient of up to four colors or a single block color.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **General** in the category list.
3. In the **Background Colors** subsection of the **View** section, choose one of the following options for **Use** for **Write mode**:
   - **Gradient**
   - **Single Color**
4. Change the background color in one of the following ways:
   - If you chose **Gradient** and want to use a preset selection of colors, select it from the **Preset** menu.
   - If you chose **Gradient** and want to use a custom selection of colors, either click each color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens, or enter color codes into the value fields.

- If you chose **Single Color**, either click the **Stop 1** color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens, or enter a color code into the value field.

RESULT

The background color is changed in the current project and all future projects you open.

TIP

- The background color set for Write mode is also used in Setup mode.
- You can reset background colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset**.

Changing your preferred unit of measurement

You can change your default preferred unit of measurement to be used throughout Dorico for iPad for options that use absolute measurements, such as the size of page margins in **Layout Options**.

PROCEDURE

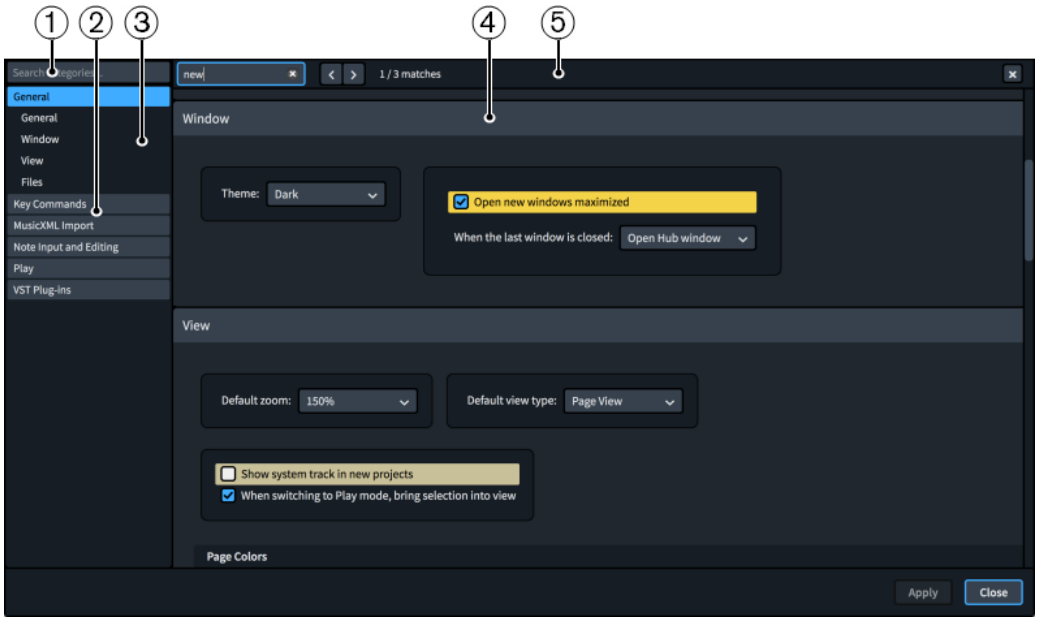
1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **General** in the category list.
3. In the **General** section, select one of the following options from the **Preferred unit of measurement** menu:
   - **Points (pt)**
   - **Millimeters (mm)**
   - **Inches (in)**
   - **Centimeters (cm)**
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Preferences dialog

In the **Preferences** dialog, you can make permanent settings for your workspace and define key commands.

You can open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-,**.
- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.



The **Preferences** dialog contains the following:

1 **Search categories field**

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 **Category list**

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 **Section titles**

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 **Section**

Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

NOTE

The arrangement of options on the **Key Commands** page is significantly different to other pages in the **Preferences** dialog. This page is described separately in further detail.

5 **Search pages bar**

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

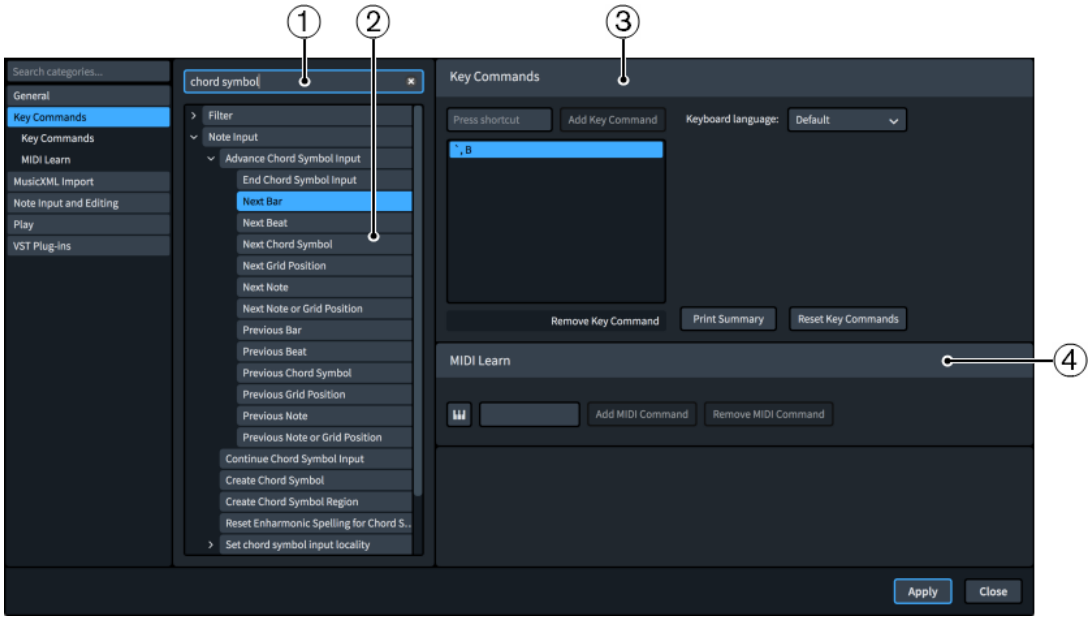
- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match**: Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Cmd-Shift-G**.
- **Next match**: Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Cmd-G**.
- **Close**: Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

RELATED LINKS
View types on page 27
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog

The **Key Commands** page in the **Preferences** dialog allows you to view all the items and functions to which you can assign key commands, change existing key commands, and assign new key commands to items and functions that have no key command assigned by default.

- You can find the **Key Commands** page by opening the **Preferences** dialog and clicking **Key Commands** in the category list.



The **Key Commands** page comprises the following:

1 Search field

Allows you to search for menu items and functions to view, change, or add key commands. Because there are multiple levels of disclosure arrows before you reach many menu items and functions, this is often the quickest way to find what you are looking for.

2 Menu items and functions

Displays the menu items and functions that can be assigned key commands. The list can be filtered using the **Search** field. Disclosure arrows beside options indicate that further options are available when the option is expanded.

Hovering over menu items and functions shows a tool tip, which is helpful for some functions with particularly long names.

3 **Key Commands section**

Allows you to see any existing key commands set for the selected menu item or function in the list of assigned key commands and to set new ones. If you enter a key command that has already been assigned to another menu item or function, a warning tells you that you cannot use that key command.

You can assign multiple key commands to the same menu item or function, and the **Keyboard language** menu allows you to assign different key commands for each of the available languages.

- **Add Key Command**: Adds the key command you pressed to the selected menu item or function.
- **Remove Key Command**: Removes the selected key command from the selected menu item or function.
- **Reset Key Commands**: Resets all of your key commands to their defaults.

4 **MIDI Learn section**

Allows you to assign MIDI controllers, notes, and combinations of notes to control menu items and functions.

- **MIDI Learn** : Prepares Dorico for iPad to receive the MIDI input data that you want to save as a command.
- **Add MIDI Command**: Adds the MIDI controllers or notes you changed or pressed to the selected menu item or function.
- **Remove MIDI Command**: Removes the MIDI command from the selected menu item or function.

RELATED LINKS
Assigning key commands on page 38
Assigning MIDI commands on page 38

Searching for the key commands of functions

You can search for key commands that are assigned to functions or menu items in Dorico for iPad.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Key Commands** in the category list.
3. Enter the name of a function in the **Search** field.

   The entries that are listed below are filtered according to the words that you enter.
4. Expand an entry and select the function for which you want to see the key command.

RESULT

If the function has a key command, it is shown in the list of assigned key commands.

Assigning key commands

You can assign key commands to many menu items and functions, for example, if you use a menu item frequently and want to be able to access it quickly but it does not have a key command assigned by default. You can also change existing key commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Key Commands** in the category list.
3. Search for the name of a function and select it.
4. Optional: Press **Remove Key Command** if the function already has an assigned key command.

   If you assign a new key command without removing an existing one, you can use either key command.
5. Click the **Press shortcut** input field.
6. Press the key command that you want to assign on your computer keyboard.
7. Click **Add Key Command**.
8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The key command you pressed is added to the list of assigned key commands for the selected menu item or function. You can use it immediately.

RELATED LINKS

Resetting key commands on page 39

Assigning MIDI commands

You can assign specific keys or buttons on your MIDI keyboard to perform functions and access menu items. For example, if you want to navigate using MIDI keys during chord symbol input.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Key Commands** in the category list.
3. Select the menu item or function to which you want to assign MIDI commands.
4. Click **MIDI Learn**.
5. Press the key or button on your MIDI keyboard that you want to assign to the selected parameter.
6. Click **Add MIDI Command**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Changing the keyboard layout

You can change the keyboard layout in Dorico for iPad to that of another language. This allows you to use the predefined key commands for the selected language.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Key Commands** in the category list.
3. Select a different keyboard layout from the **Keyboard language** menu.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

You can immediately use the available key commands for the selected language.

Removing key commands

You can remove individual key commands from a function.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Key Commands** in the category list.
3. Search for the name of a function and select it.
4. Click **Remove Key Command**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The key command is removed from the selected function.

RELATED LINKS

Searching for the key commands of functions on page 37

Resetting key commands

You can reset all the key commands in your project to their defaults.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Key Commands** in the category list.
3. Click **Reset Key Commands**.

4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

All custom key commands are deleted and the default key commands are reinstated.

Project and file handling

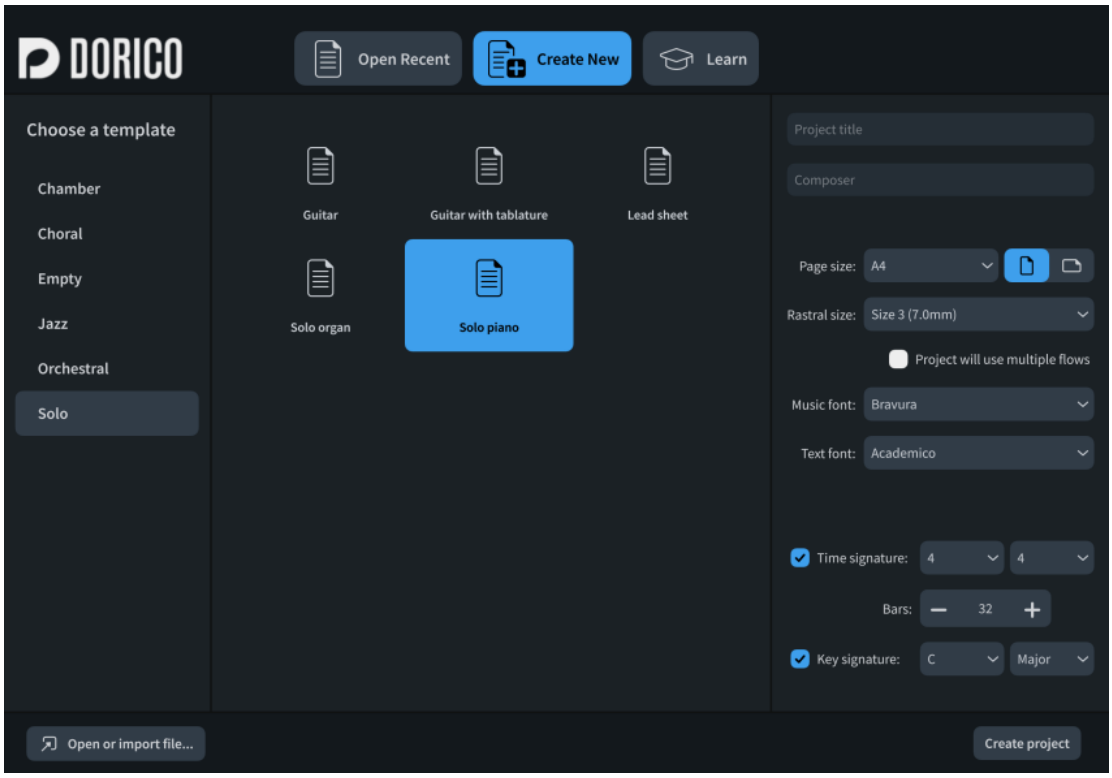
In Dorico for iPad, you can start new, open existing, print, and share projects.

RELATED LINKS
Starting new projects on page 43
Opening projects/files on page 44
Printing layouts on page 46
Exporting projects on page 48

Hub

The Hub allows you to access recent projects, start new projects, and keep up-to-date with learning materials including tutorials, videos, and blog updates. The Hub opens automatically when you start Dorico for iPad.

- You can also access the Hub by clicking **Return to Hub** in the toolbar.



The Hub contains the following pages:

Open Recent

Allows you quick access to the projects that you worked on last. You can scroll through the list to access recent projects out of view.

You can click the menu button for each project to access the following options:

- **Rename**: Opens the **Rename Project** dialog, which allows you to change the file name of the selected project.

- **Delete**: Deletes the selected project from your iPad.

Create New

Allows you to start new projects from project templates or choose an empty project.

The **Choose a template** list on the left allows you to select a project template category, with available templates in the selected category listed in the middle. The **Empty** template creates a project with no players or flows.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed. Only categories and templates containing up to your maximum number of players are available.

On the right, the Project Options section provides the following options:

- **Project title**: Allows you to enter the project title.
- **Composer**: Allows you to enter the project composer.
- **Page size**: Allows you to select the page size for the full score layout.
- **Page orientation**: Allows you to choose whether the page orientation in the full score layout is **Portrait** or **Landscape**.
- **Rastral size**: Allows you to select the staff size for the full score layout.
- **Project will use multiple flows**: When activated, flow headings are shown in the full score layout. When deactivated, flow headings are hidden in the full score layout.
- **Music font**: Allows you to select the music font used in the project.
- **Text font**: Allows you to select the font family used throughout the project by default.
- **Time signature**: Allows you to specify a time signature for the project. When deactivated, the project starts with no time signature, which is treated as open.
- **Bars**: Allows you to set the number of bars you want the project to contain.
- **Key signature**: Allows you to specify a key signature for the project. When deactivated, the project starts with no key signature, which is treated as atonal.

At the bottom of the Hub, **Create project** creates a new project using the selected project template and project options. You can also double-click project templates to start a new project.

Learn

Provides access to learning materials.

- **Hands-on tutorials**: Displays available practical tutorials that introduce you to common operations directly in Dorico demo projects.
- **Videos**: Displays recent Dorico video tutorials. Clicking a video tutorial opens it in a web browser.

  You can find more tutorial videos and information about new features on the Dorico YouTube channel.
- **Forum**: Links you to the Steinberg user forum.
- **Manual**: Links you to the online documentation. A PDF version is also available on steinberg.help.
- **Dorico Blog**: Displays recent entries in the Dorico blog. Clicking a blog entry opens it in a web browser.

At the bottom of the Hub, **Open or import file** allows you to search for and open MusicXML, MIDI, and Dorico project files.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 23
Opening recent projects from the Hub on page 45
Project template categories on page 44
Staff size on page 386

Starting new projects

Dorico for iPad provides multiple project templates that you can use to start new projects, including multiple types of orchestras and vocal ensembles. You can also start empty projects.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed. Only categories and templates containing up to your maximum number of players are available.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Hub, click **Create New** to show the **Create New** page.
2. Choose one of the following project template categories:
   - **Chamber**
   - **Choral**
   - **Empty**
   - **Jazz**
   - **Orchestral**
   - **Solo**
3. Choose a project template.
4. In the Project Options section, add or change information and settings as required.

   NOTE

   The Project Options section does not affect **Empty** project templates.
5. Create a new project in any of the following ways:
   - Click **Create project**.
   - Double-click the project template.

RESULT

A new project is created using the selected project template.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can add additional players/instruments and delete players/instruments that were included in the template to customize your project.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10

Hub on page 41
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
Adding players on page 68
Adding instruments to players on page 79
Deleting players on page 71
Deleting instruments on page 83

Project template categories

Dorico for iPad provides a number of different project template categories. Projects started from different project template categories have different default settings that follow conventions as appropriate for the ensemble, such as for bracketing and bracing or staff labels.

Chamber

Typically small ensembles containing only a few players, such as string quartet.

Choral

Ensembles containing voices, including popular choir arrangements, such as SATB unaccompanied.

Empty

An empty project template.

Jazz

Popular ensembles commonly used to perform jazz, such as big band or jazz trio.

Orchestral

Large ensembles containing most Western instruments, including strings, woodwinds, brass, and percussion.

Solo

Ensembles containing only a single player/instrument, such as a solo organ or guitar with tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
System objects on page 811

Opening projects/files

You can open existing Dorico projects as well as MusicXML and MIDI files.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Hub, click **Open or import file**.
2. Locate and select the files you want to open.
3. Click the file to open it.

   If you opened a file from a read-only location, a warning message is displayed.

RESULT

The selected file is opened.

If you opened a MusicXML or MIDI file, Dorico for iPad creates a new Dorico project file from the MusicXML or MIDI content.

If MusicXML files include page size, margin, and staff size settings, Dorico for iPad imports those values. If they are not included, Dorico for iPad creates suitable settings according to the number of instruments in the file.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed. If you open a project that contains more than your maximum number of players, it opens in read-only mode.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Read-only mode on page 49
Hub on page 41

Opening recent projects from the Hub

You can open a project on which you have recently worked from the Steinberg Hub.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Hub, click **Open Recent** to show the **Open Recent** page.
2. Click the recent project you want to open.

RESULT

The selected Dorico project is opened.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed. If you open a project that contains more than your maximum number of players, it opens in read-only mode.

Unpitched percussion imported from MIDI files

When importing MIDI files, Dorico for iPad optionally interprets music for tracks set to use channel 10 as drum sets if **Interpret channel 10 as General MIDI percussion** is activated in the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.

This is the only condition under which Dorico for iPad interprets any music in MIDI files as percussion.

Unpitched percussion imported from MusicXML files

Unpitched percussion music can be expressed in a number of ways in MusicXML. Scoring applications take different approaches to what data is exported and how it is encoded. Therefore, the results of importing MusicXML into Dorico for iPad vary considerably.

Dorico for iPad identifies each instrument in kits explicitly and then combines them dynamically onto five-line staves. Other scoring applications and MusicXML have a different approach to how unpitched percussion music is represented. For example, a drum set may be effectively notated as pitched notes on a five-line staff and annotated with additional information to help identify which instrument corresponds to each staff position.

Because of these different approaches, mapping information between the MusicXML representation and the Dorico for iPad representation can be challenging, so Dorico for iPad employs heuristics to improve the quality of results.

Typically, drum set instruments in MusicXML files exported from both Sibelius and Finale are imported quite cleanly into Dorico for iPad.

Results are particularly good, and more likely to be imported correctly, if the voicing of the drum set is consistent, such as consistently notating the snare drum in a down-stem voice. If the voicing changes from bar to bar, it is possible that some notes are either identified incorrectly or not imported at all.

Other kinds of percussion that are notated on five-line staves produce more variable results. In most cases, Finale includes information about which percussion instrument maps onto each staff position, but Sibelius does not. As a result, you might find that Dorico for iPad chooses different instruments than you expected, but you can change instruments using the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Changing instruments in percussion kits on page 86
Adding instruments to percussion kits on page 85
Unpitched percussion imported from MIDI files on page 45

Printing layouts

You can print individual layouts in your project to any AirPrint enabled printers to which your iPad is connected.

PROCEDURE

1. In the toolbar, click **Share** and choose **Print** to open the **Printer Options** dialog.
2. Select the printer you want to use.
3. Change the other settings as required.

   For example, you can change the number of copies or the job type.
4. Click **Print**.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 23

File export

External files are files in different formats than Dorico projects, such as MIDI, MusicXML, or PDF. In Dorico for iPad, you can export layouts and projects as different types of files.

This can be useful if, for example, you want to access projects on your desktop computer, to share your project with others who use a different notation software, or to convert the notes or audio in your project into other formats.

RELATED LINKS
Printing layouts on page 46
Exporting MIDI on page 47
Exporting MusicXML files on page 48

Exporting to PDF on page 48
Exporting projects on page 48

Exporting audio

You can export the audio of the layout currently open in the music area in either WAV and M4A audio file formats.

PROCEDURE

1. In the toolbar, click **Share** and choose one of the following audio file formats to open the share sheet:
   - **WAV Audio**
   - **M4A Audio**
2. Export to the selected audio file format in any of the following ways:
   - Choose an application, such as AirDrop.
   - Click **Save to Files**, select a location, then click **Save**.

RESULT

The audio of the layout currently open in the music area is exported as the selected audio file format to the selected application or location. WAV audio files are saved as `.wav` files, M4A audio files are saved as `.m4a` files.

RELATED LINKS

Toolbar on page 23

Exporting MIDI

You can export the layout currently open in the music area as a MIDI file, for example, if you want to edit the audio in further detail in a DAW. MIDI files exported from Dorico for iPad contain any markers in the project by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In the toolbar, click **Share** and choose **MIDI** to open the share sheet.
2. Export to MIDI in any of the following ways:
   - Choose an application, such as AirDrop.
   - Click **Save to Files**, select a location, then click **Save**.

RESULT

The layout currently open in the music area is exported as a MIDI file to the selected application or location.

RELATED LINKS

Toolbar on page 23
Opening projects/files on page 44
Switching between layouts on page 30

Exporting MusicXML files

You can export projects as MusicXML files, for example, to share projects with others who use a different notation software.

PROCEDURE

1. In the toolbar, click **Share** and choose **MusicXML** to open the share sheet.
2. Export to MusicXML in any of the following ways:
   - Choose an application, such as AirDrop.
   - Click **Save to Files**, select a location, then click **Save**.

RESULT

The project is exported as an uncompressed MusicXML file to the selected application or location. Uncompressed MusicXML files are saved as `.mxl` files.

Exporting to PDF

You can export the layout currently open in the music area as a PDF file.

PROCEDURE

1. In the toolbar, click **Share** and choose **PDF** to open the share sheet.
2. Optional: To export a PDF with annotations, choose **Markup**, then add the annotations you want.
3. Optional: If you added annotations, click **Share** in the top right.
4. Export to PDF in any of the following ways:
   - Choose an application, such as AirDrop.
   - Click **Save to Files**, select a location, then click **Save**.

RESULT

The layout currently open in the music is exported as a PDF file to the selected application or location, with annotations if you added them.

RELATED LINKS

Toolbar on page 23
Switching between layouts on page 30

Exporting projects

You can export projects, for example, to share projects with others via email or to access them on other devices.

PROCEDURE

1. In the toolbar, click **Share** and choose **Dorico Project** to open the share sheet.
2. Export the project in any of the following ways:
   - Choose an application, such as AirDrop.
   - Click **Save to Files**, select a location, then click **Save**.

RESULT

The project is exported to the selected application or location. Dorico projects are saved as `.dorico` files.

RELATED LINKS

Opening projects/files on page 44

Read-only mode

Projects that contain more than your maximum number of players open in read-only mode. In read-only mode, you can view, play back, and print projects, but you cannot edit or save them.

You can export whole read-only projects, such as to save them to your Files, but you cannot export read-only projects in other formats.

- Read-only projects are indicated by a lock icon before the project title in the toolbar.

RELATED LINKS

Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Opening projects/files on page 44
Exporting projects on page 48
Toolbar on page 23

Setup mode

Setup mode allows you to set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, and layouts. You can also determine how they interact with each other, for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts.

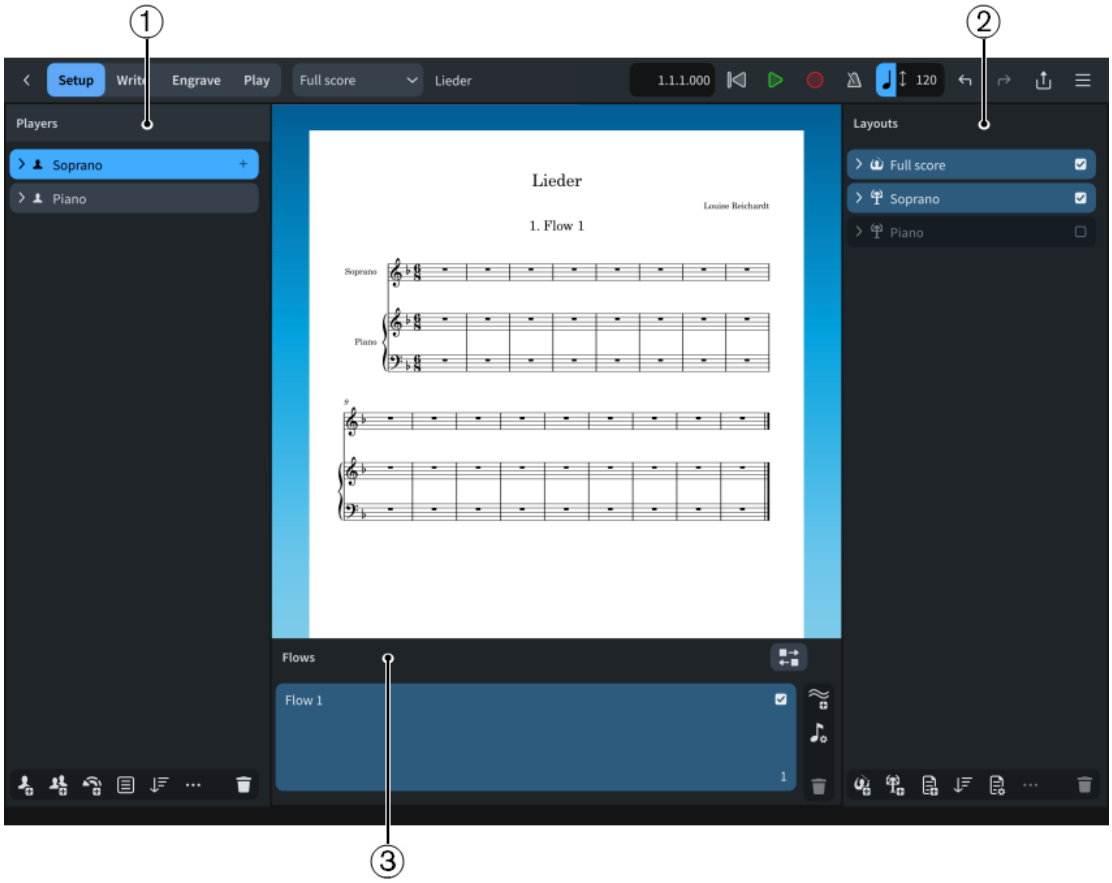
You can view music in the music area and switch between viewing other layouts, but you cannot select or interact with anything in the music area in Setup mode.

Project window in Setup mode

The project window in Setup mode contains panels with all the tools and functions that allow you to add players and instruments as well as to create layouts and flows for your project.

You can switch to Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-1**.
- In the toolbar, click **Setup**.



The following panels are available in Setup mode:

1 Players

Lists the players, instruments, and groups in your project. By default, players are assigned to all flows, all full score layouts, and their own part layout.

2 **Layouts**

Lists the layouts in your project. A single full score layout and a part layout for each player are created automatically, but you can create and delete layouts as required. By default, layouts contain all flows and full score layouts contain all players.

3 **Flows**

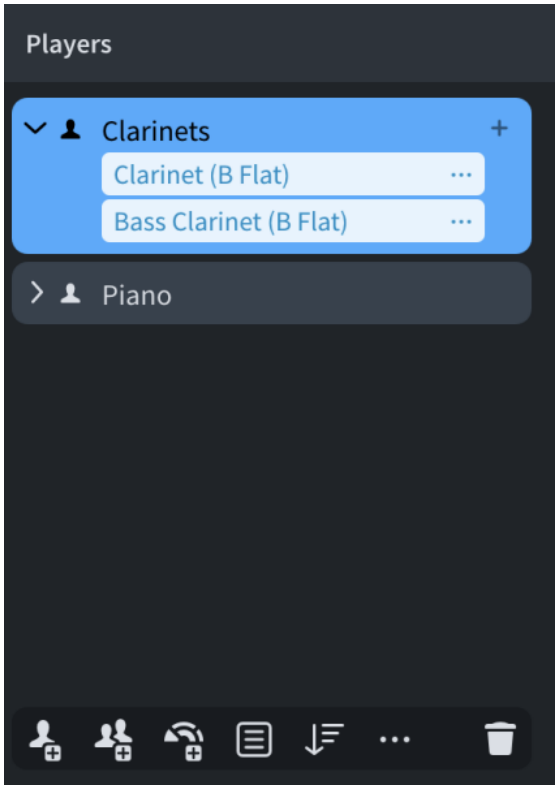
Shows the flows in your project, ordered left to right. By default, flows contain all players and are assigned to all layouts.

The three panels work together to allow you to control how and where the players, layouts, and flows in your project are used. When you select an item in one of the panels, that panel and the selected item are highlighted in a different color and checkboxes appear in cards in the other panels. You can activate/deactivate these checkboxes independently to change how material is distributed across players, layouts, and flows.

RELATED LINKS
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Project window on page 22
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58
Flows panel on page 60
Starting new projects on page 43

Players panel

The **Players** panel contains all the players and groups in the project, shown in a list. It is located on the left of the window in Setup mode.



The order in which players are listed in the Players panel sets the default player order used in all layouts. You can also set a custom player order in each layout independently.

In the **Players** panel, each player is shown as a card that contains the instruments held by that player. Each player card shows the following:

1 **Disclosure arrow**

Expands/Collapses the player card.

2 **Player type**

Shows the type of player from the following options:

- Single player
- Section player

3 **Player name**

Shows the name of the player. By default, player names contain the names of all instruments held by the player. You can also rename players manually.

4 **Add instruments icon**

Opens the instrument picker from which you can select an instrument for the player.

5 **Instrument labels**

Each instrument assigned to a player has its own instrument label. The instrument menu ··· in each instrument label opens a menu with further options that allow you to, for example, change the instrument names or move the instrument to another player.

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Add Single Player

Adds a single player to your project. Dorico for iPad also automatically adds a part layout for the player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Section Player

Adds a section player to your project. Dorico for iPad also automatically adds a part layout for the player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Ensemble

Adds multiple players to your project. Dorico for iPad also automatically adds part layouts for each player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Group

Adds a player group to your project. If no players were selected, an empty player group is added. If existing players were selected, they are grouped together.

Sort Players

Allows you to change the player sorting setting. You can click and hold **Sort Players** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **None**: New players are added at the bottom of the players list, regardless of their instrument.
- **Orchestral**: New players are sorted according to the accepted orchestral order convention. For example, woodwinds positioned above brass and strings.

Player Settings

Allows you to access settings and controls for the selected player, for example, to rename them or show chord symbols above their staves.

Delete Player

Deletes selected players or groups from the project. When you delete a player, a warning message appears that allows you to delete only the player but leave their part layouts in the project, delete both the player and their part layouts, or cancel.

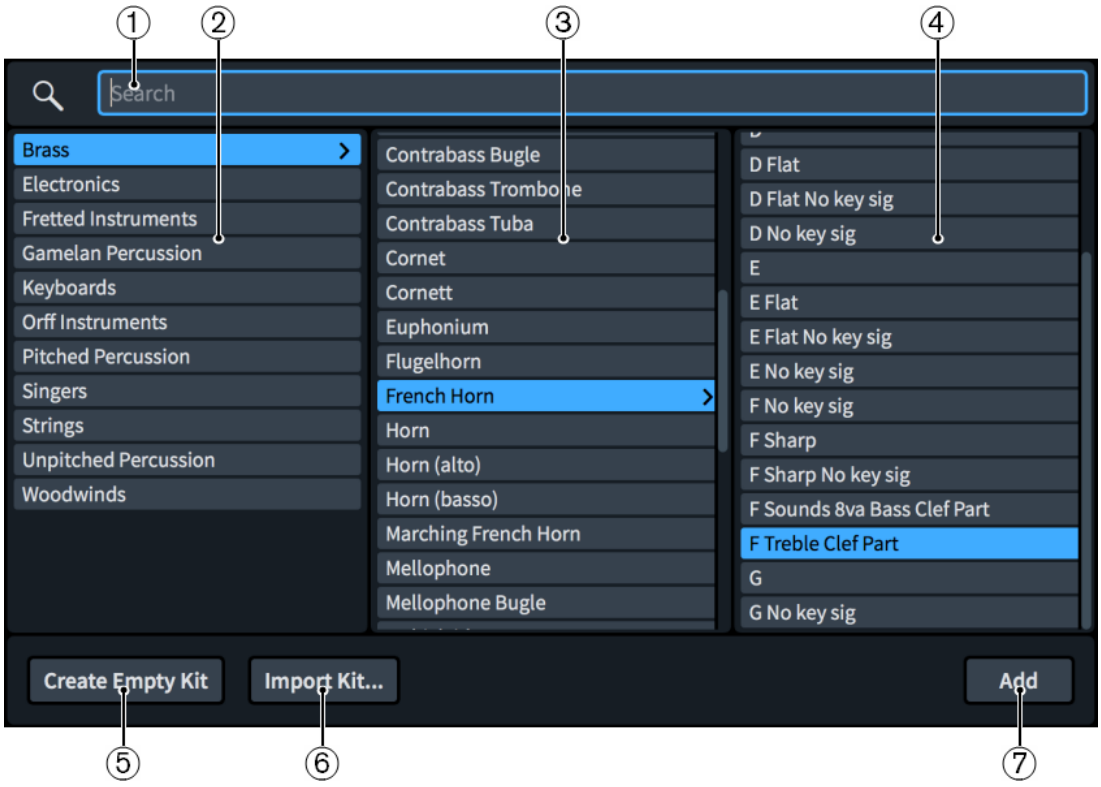
RELATED LINKS
Players on page 67
Ensembles on page 72
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Changing the default player order on page 70
Setting custom player orders on page 70
Renaming players on page 105
Player groups on page 93

Instrument picker

The instrument picker allows you to find and add instruments to your project. It contains multiple versions of some instruments that have specific formatting and tuning requirements, such as French Horn, which has a version whose part layouts are always in treble clef.

You can open the instrument picker in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Add a new player.
- In the **Players** panel, click **Add Instrument to Player** in player cards.
- In the **Players** panel, select a player and press **Shift-I**.
- In the **Players** panel, select a player, then click **Player Settings** in the action bar and choose **Add Instrument to Player**.



Instrument picker when adding an instrument

The instrument picker contains the following sections and options:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to enter the instrument you are searching for directly. You can enter only part of the instrument name, such as **cello** for Violoncello.

2 **Instrument family column**

Contains instrument families to help you focus your search.

3 **Instrument column**

Contains the instruments available in the selected instrument family.

4 **Instrument type column**

Contains options for multiple possible transpositions, tunings, key signature options, or different behavior in part layouts for the selected instrument. This column is not populated for instruments that do not have further options.

5 **Create Empty Kit**

Adds an empty percussion kit to the player.

6 **Import Kit**

Imports an existing percussion kit previously exported as a library file.

7 **Add**

Adds the selected instrument to the project.

In addition to entering the instrument you want directly into the **Search** field, you can click options in the instrument picker to select them, and you can also select other items in the same column by pressing **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.

You can cycle forwards through the instrument picker by pressing **Tab**, which navigates in the following order: **Search field**, **Instrument**, **Instrument type**, **Instrument family**. You can also cycle backwards by pressing **Shift-Tab**, which navigates in the opposite direction.

An enclosure line shows which instrument family or instrument is selected when using the keyboard to navigate.

RELATED LINKS
Players on page 67
Instruments on page 74
Transposing instruments on page 78
Adding players on page 68
Adding instruments to players on page 79
Changing instruments on page 81
Adding ensembles on page 72
Adding empty percussion kits to players on page 80
Importing percussion kits on page 885

Ensemble picker

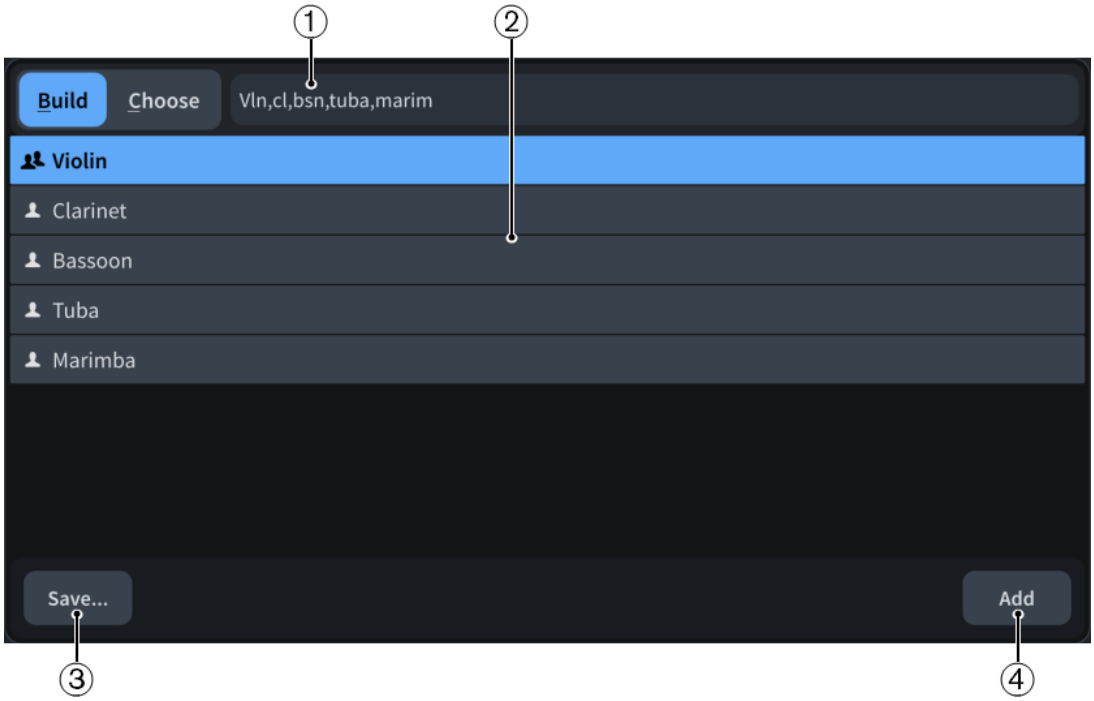
The ensemble picker allows you to find and add ensembles containing multiple players to your project. You can select existing ensembles and build new ones.

You can open the ensemble picker in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble** .
- In empty projects, click **Add Ensemble** in the project start area.

The ensemble picker contains **Build** and **Choose** tabs. You can switch between them using the options in the top left of the ensemble picker.

Build tab



The **Build** tab contains the following:

1 Search field

Allows you to enter the names or abbreviations of instruments you want to include in the ensemble, with each name/abbreviation separated by a comma.

2 **Player list**

Contains the instruments currently in the ensemble based on your entries in the **Search** field.

By default, instruments are held by single players. You can change the player type by double-clicking players in the list. Icons show the current player type from the following options:

- Single player
- Section player

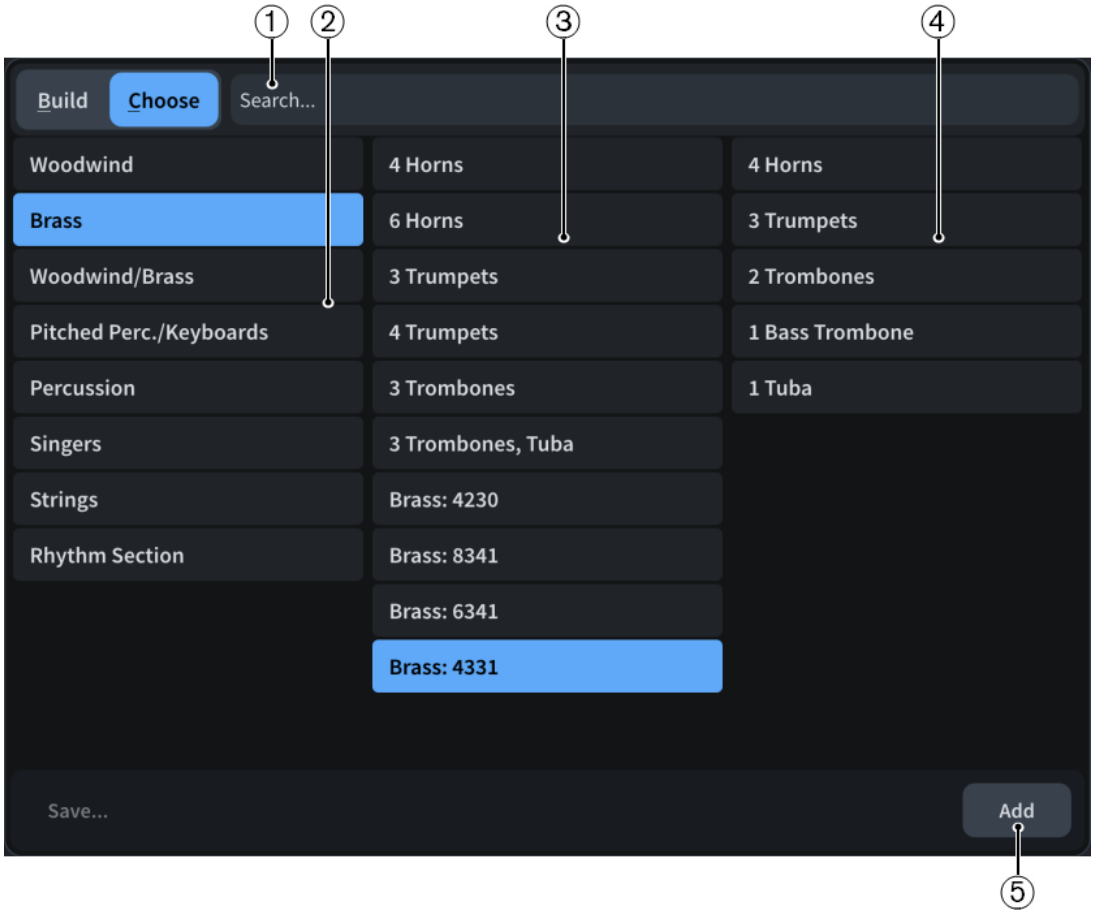
3 **Save**

Opens the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog, which allows you to name and save your ensemble for reuse in future projects.

4 **Add**

Adds the players in the custom ensemble to the project.

Choose tab



The **Choose** tab contains the following:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to enter the ensemble you are searching for directly.

2 **Ensemble category column**

Contains ensemble categories to help you focus your ensemble search.

3 **Ensemble column**

Contains the ensembles available in the selected instrument family.

4 **Ensemble contents column**

Displays the instruments included in the selected ensemble.

5 **Add**

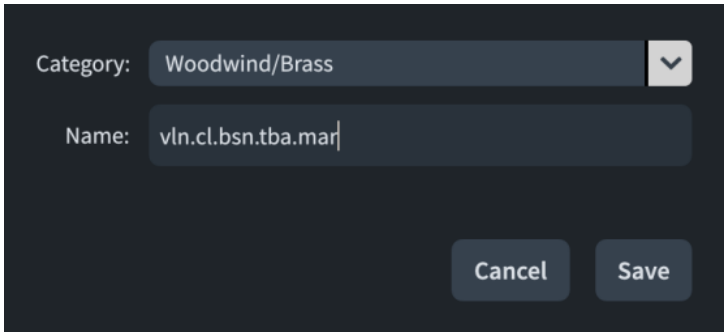
Adds the players in the selected ensemble to the project.

RELATED LINKS
Ensembles on page 72
Adding ensembles on page 72
Players on page 67
Adding players on page 68

Save Custom Ensemble dialog

The **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog allows you to name and save custom ensembles for reuse in future projects.

- You can open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog from inside the ensemble picker by building a custom ensemble and clicking **Save**.



The **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog contains the following options:

Category

Allows you to select an ensemble category for the custom ensemble.

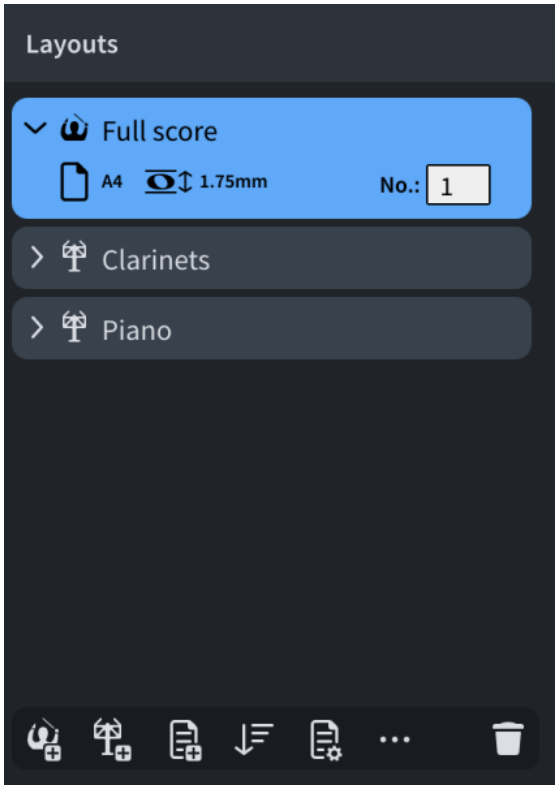
Name

Allows you to enter a name for the custom ensemble.

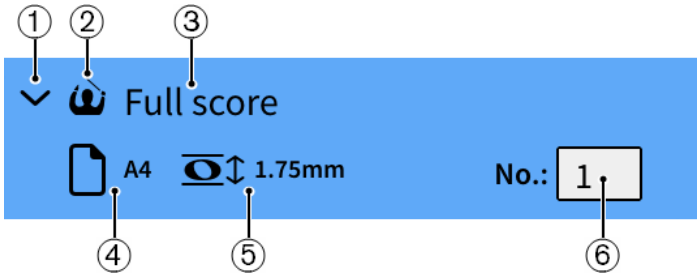
RELATED LINKS
Adding ensembles on page 72
Building and saving custom ensembles on page 73

Layouts panel (Setup mode)

The **Layouts** panel contains all the layouts in the project, shown in a list. In Setup mode, it is located on the right of the window.



In the **Layouts** panel, each layout is shown as a card. Each layout card shows the following:



1 **Disclosure arrow**

Expands/Collapses the layout card.

2 **Layout type**

Shows the type of layout from the following options:

- Full score layout
- Instrumental part layout
- Custom score layout

3 **Layout name**

Shows the name of the layout. Dorico for iPad automatically adds default names depending on the name of the instrument that is assigned to a player and on the type of layout that is added. For example, if you assign a flute to a player, the instrumental part layout automatically gets the same name. If you add an empty instrumental part layout, the layout name shows **Empty part** and an incremental number if you add multiple empty part layouts.

4 **Page size and orientation**

Shows the size and orientation of the layout as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

5 **Space size**

Shows the space size between two staff lines in points, as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**. This indicates the size of staves in the layout.

6 **Layout number**

Displays the unique number for the layout that is used in its file name when exported to PDF. This can be useful to ensure exported part layout files are organized in their orchestral order, as this is usually different to their alphabetical order.

There is a different layout number sequence for each layout type. For example, full score layouts are numbered independently of part layouts.

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Add Full Score Layout

Adds a full score layout to your project. By default, every player and flow is included in the layout.

Add Instrumental Part Layout

Adds an empty instrumental part layout to your project. You can then assign one or multiple players to the layout. By default, part layouts contain all flows that originated in the project.

Add Custom Score Layout

Adds an empty custom score layout to your project. You can then assign players and flows to the layout.

Sort Layouts

Sorts all layouts in the **Layouts** panel according to their type in the following order: full score layouts, instrumental part layouts, custom score layouts.

You can click and hold **Sort Layouts** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **Layout Number**: Sorts layouts within each category according to their current layout number.
- **Instrument Score Order**: Sorts layouts within each category according to the corresponding player order in the **Players** panel.

Layout Options

Opens the **Layout Options** dialog for the selected layouts.

Layout Settings

Allows you to access settings and controls for the selected layout, for example, to rename the layout.

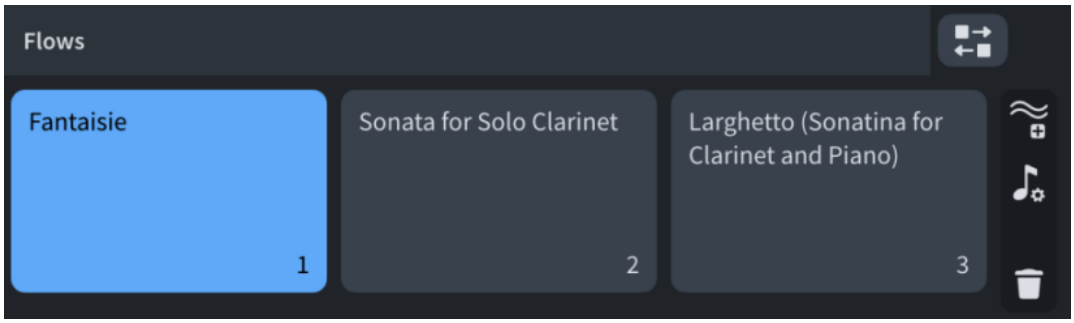
Delete Layout

Deletes selected layouts from the project.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Setup mode on page 50
Layouts on page 99
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Exporting to PDF on page 48
Assigning players to layouts on page 100
Assigning flows to layouts on page 101

Flows panel

The **Flows** panel contains all the flows in the project, shown in a horizontal list. It is located at the bottom of the window in Setup mode.



In the **Flows** panel, each flow is shown as a card. Each flow card shows the following:

1 **Flow name**

Shows the name of the flow. If you create multiple flows without renaming them, each flow name shows a number that increments with each new flow that you create.

2 **Flow number**

Shows the number of the flow. The number increments with each new flow that you create or import. The number also indicates the position of the flow in a layout.

The **Flows** panel contains the following options:

Reorder Flows

Allows you to reorder flows. When deactivated, you can scroll along flows in the **Flows** panel.

Add Flow

Adds a new flow to your project. By default, every new flow is included in all layouts, and every player is added to the new flow.

Notation Options

Opens the **Notation Options** dialog that provides multiple options that allow you to make changes that affect the way music is notated for each flow.

Delete Flow

Deletes the selected flows from the project.

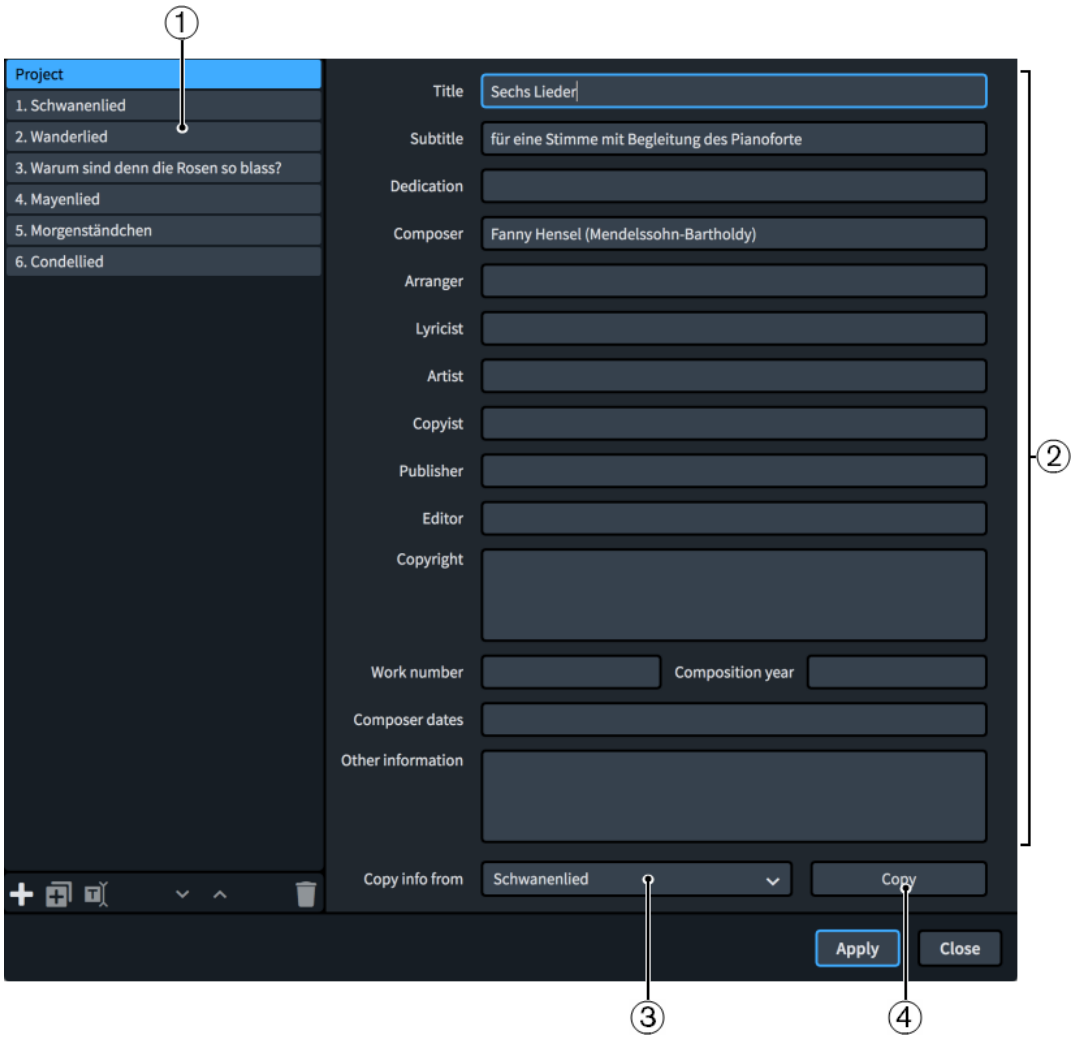
RELATED LINKS
Project window in Setup mode on page 50
Flows on page 96

Project Info dialog

The **Project Info** dialog allows you to specify information about the whole project and each flow within it separately, such as the title, composer, and lyricist, as these might be different for different flows. You can then refer to these entries using tokens in text frames.

You can open the **Project Info** dialog in any mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-I**.
- In the toolbar, click the project title.
- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Project Info**.



The **Project Info** dialog comprises the following:

1 Flows list

Contains all the flows in the project, with a separate entry for the project as a whole at the top. You can select individual or multiple flows in the flows list.

NOTE

The flows list uses the names of flows as shown in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode, which can be different to their entry in the **Title** field if you have changed their flow title.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **New Flow** : Creates a new flow with no information. Its default name is **New Flow**.
- **Duplicate Flow** : Creates a new flow with all the information of the selected flow. Its default name is **Copy of [selected flow]**.
- **Rename Flow** : Opens the **Rename Flow** dialog, which allows you to change the name of the flow.

  NOTE

  If you have already manually changed the flow title, changing the name of the flow does not automatically change the flow title.

- **Move Down** : Moves the selected flows down the flows list, which changes their order in the project.
- **Move Up** : Moves the selected flows up the flows list, which changes their order in the project.
- **Delete Flow** : Deletes the selected flows.

2 **Information fields**

Allow you to enter information about the currently selected flows or the whole project in the corresponding field, such as **Composer** and **Lyricist**. If you have selected multiple flows with different entries in the same fields, such as flows with different composers, those fields display **Mixed**.

3 **Copy info from menu**

Allows you to select another flow or the whole project whose information you want to copy, for example, for a project containing multiple flows that all have the same composer and lyricist.

4 **Copy**

Copies all the information from the specified flow/project to the selected flows/project.

TIP

- You can use tokens in text frames to refer to information in the **Project Info** dialog.
- You cannot specify line breaks in single-line fields. However, you can enter line breaks in larger fields, namely **Copyright** and **Other information**, which you can then copy into single-line fields.

RELATED LINKS
Text tokens on page 355
Flows on page 96
Flow names and flow titles on page 110
Reordering flows on page 98
Starting new projects on page 43
Opening projects/files on page 44

Layout Options dialog

The **Layout Options** dialog allows you to change various aspects of each layout independently. For example, you can change the physical properties of the layout, such as page size, staff size, or margins, and how the music appears and is laid out, such as note spacing or staff labels.

Options in **Layout Options** affect only the selected layouts but apply to all flows in those layouts.

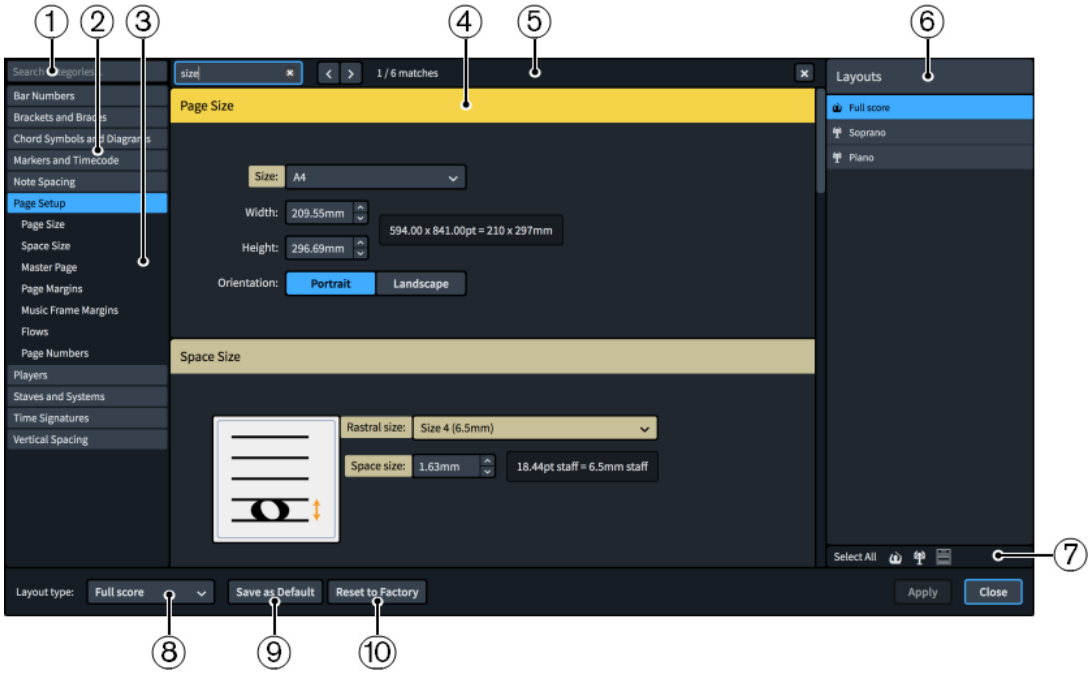
TIP

- You can save all options currently set in **Layout Options** as the default for new projects by selecting a layout type from the **Layout type** menu and clicking **Save as Default**.
- If you make changes and close the dialog without clicking **Apply**, you are prompted to save or discard your changes.

You can open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.

- In Setup mode, click **Layout Options** in the **Layouts** panel.



The **Layout Options** dialog contains the following:

1 Search categories field

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 Category list

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 Section titles

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 Section

Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

5 Search pages bar

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Cmd-F**.

- **Previous match**: Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Cmd-Shift-G**.
- **Next match**: Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Cmd-G**.
- **Close**: Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 **Layouts list**

Contains all the layouts in your project. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select multiple layouts in any of the following ways:

- Click one of the selection options in the action bar.
- Click and drag across multiple layouts.

7 **Action bar**

Contains selection options that allow you to select layouts in the **Layouts** list according to their type.

- **Select All** selects all layouts, regardless of their type.
- **Select All Full Score Layouts** selects all full score layouts only.
- **Select All Part Layouts** selects all part layouts only.
- **Select All Custom Score Layouts** selects all custom score layouts only.

8 **Layout type**

Allows you to select the layout type for which you want to save your settings as the default. For example, you can save new default settings for part layouts without affecting the default settings for full score layouts.

9 **Save as Default**

Saves all options currently set in the dialog as the default for the selected layout type in new projects.

10 **Reset to Factory/Reset to Saved Defaults**

This button has different functions depending on whether you have existing saved defaults for the selected layout type.

- If you have no saved defaults for the selected layout type, this button is **Reset to Factory**, which resets all the options in the dialog back to the default factory settings for the selected layout type.
- If you have existing saved defaults for the selected layout type, this button is **Reset to Saved Defaults**, which resets all the options in the dialog back to your saved defaults for the selected layout type.

RELATED LINKS

Staves on page 807
Page formatting on page 369
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 34

Players, layouts, and flows

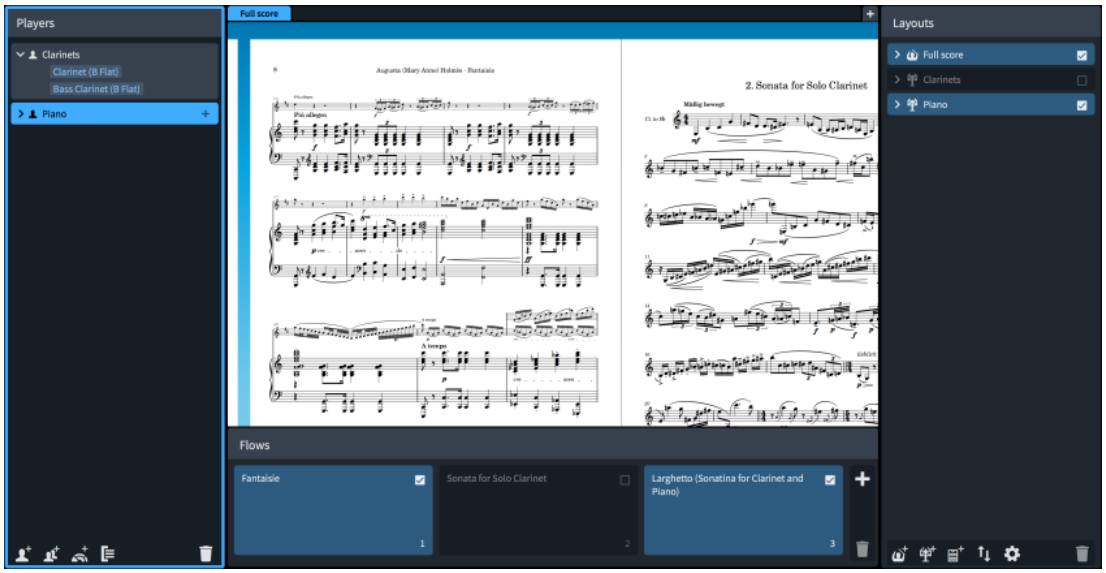
In Dorico for iPad, players, layouts, and flows are all connected to each other. Because they exist in the project rather than in a single score, you can, for example, have players and flows saved in the project without showing them in the full score.

- Players can be assigned to any combination of layouts and flows. For example, you can assign a single player to both the full score layout and their own part layout, and remove them from flows in which they do not play. By default, players are assigned to all flows that originated in the project, all full score layouts, and their own part layout.
- Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows. For example, you can assign all the singers to a single part layout, then remove the flows from the layout in which they do not sing. By default, layouts contain all flows and full score layouts contain all players.
- Flows can contain any combination of players and be assigned to/removed from layouts. By default, flows contain all players and are assigned to all layouts.

NOTE

- If you remove a player from a flow, any notes you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.
- Removing a flow from a layout automatically removes that layout from the flow, and vice versa. The same is true for players and layouts, and players and flows.

When you select a card in one of the panels in Setup mode, each card in the other panels shows a checkbox. Connected cards appear highlighted and have activated checkboxes, while unconnected cards are not highlighted and have deactivated checkboxes. For example, if you select a single player card in the **Players** panel, all the flows to which the player is assigned are highlighted and activated in the **Flows** panel and all layouts to which the player is assigned are highlighted and activated in the **Layouts** panel.



A piano player selected in the **Players** panel with connected flows and layouts highlighted in the **Flows** and **Layouts** panels

EXAMPLE

A work for string quartet and choir is divided into three movements. The string quartet is tacet for the third movement, which the choir sings a cappella.

The Dorico project contains three flows (one for each movement), four single players for the string quartet, four section players for the choir, and another single player for a piano reduction. It uses the following layouts to produce the required performance materials:

- Four instrumental part layouts, one for each string quartet player. Each part layout contains all three flows but because the string players are not assigned to the third flow, automatic tacets are shown for it.
- One full score layout containing all three flows, the string quartet players, and the choir players but omitting the piano reduction player.
- One custom score layout for the vocal score. It contains all three flows, the choir players, and the piano reduction player.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Setup mode on page 50
Flows on page 96
Layouts on page 99
Assigning flows to layouts on page 101
Assigning players to layouts on page 100
Assigning players to flows on page 97
Tacets on page 398
Flow headings on page 367

Players

In Dorico for iPad, a player can represent an individual musician or multiple musicians in the same section. Players hold instruments, so you must add at least one player to your project before you can add instruments.

In Dorico for iPad, there are the following types of players:

Single player

Represents an individual person who can play one or more instruments. For example, a clarinettist who doubles on alto saxophone or a percussionist who plays bass drum, clash cymbals, and triangle.

Section player

Represents multiple people who all play the same instrument. For example, a violin section player might represent all eight desks of the Violin I section in an orchestra, or a soprano section player might represent the whole soprano section in a mixed voice choir.

NOTE

Section players cannot double instruments.

When you add a player in Dorico for iPad, the following happens automatically:

- A part layout is created and the new player is assigned to it.
- The player is added to any full score layouts that already exist. If no full score layouts exist, a new full score layout is created.
- The player is assigned to all existing flows that originated in the project. It is not added to any flows that you imported into the project.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed. If you open a project that contains more than your maximum number of players, it opens in read-only mode.

RELATED LINKS

Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Read-only mode on page 49
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Flows on page 96
Layouts on page 99
Instruments on page 74
Adding players on page 68
Adding ensembles on page 72
Changing the default player order on page 70
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
Instrument numbering on page 75
Instrument changes on page 76

Adding players

You can add both single and section players to your project. Single players can hold multiple instruments.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed.

PROCEDURE

1. Add an empty-handed player and open the instrument picker in any of the following ways:
   - To add a single player, press **Shift-P**.
   - To add a section player, press **Shift-Opt-P**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Single Player**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Section Player**.
   - In an empty project, click **Add Single Player** in the project start area.
   - In an empty project, click **Add Section Player** in the project start area.

   TIP

   You can also open the instrument picker by selecting an existing player in the **Players** panel and pressing **Shift-I**.
2. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
3. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The single/section player is added and is automatically named after the selected instrument. By default, the player appears below any existing players in the **Players** panel. It is assigned to its own new part layout, all full score layouts, and all flows that originated in the project.

Dorico for iPad automatically loads sounds for the instrument according to the current playback template.

NOTE

- Players are not automatically added to flows that you imported into the project.
- If you want to add multiple instruments to your project at the same time, you can add ensembles or use a project template.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you added a single player and you want them to hold multiple instruments, you can add other instruments to the single player.
- You can change the default order of players in all layouts and set custom player orders in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Players panel on page 51
Instrument picker on page 53
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Instrument numbering on page 75
Layouts on page 99
Renaming players on page 105
Project start area on page 25
Adding instruments to players on page 79
Adding ensembles on page 72
Starting new projects on page 43
Opening projects/files on page 44

Duplicating players

You can duplicate existing players. This adds another player of the same type holding the same instruments as the original.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the player you want to duplicate.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Duplicate Player**.

RESULT

A new player is added, with the same instruments as the original player and is named after those instruments. By default, the player appears below the original player in the **Players** panel.

The original and new players are automatically numbered to ensure their names are unique. However, any existing music belonging to the original player is not duplicated.

The new player is assigned to its own new part layout, all full score layouts, and all flows that originated in the project.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Players panel on page 51
Renaming players on page 105
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Arranging tools on page 333
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 335
Setting custom player orders on page 70

Changing the default player order

You can change the default order in which players' staves appear in all layouts, for example, if you added a single player holding a violin instrument after adding all other players but want it to appear above the string section.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the players whose default position you want to change.
2. Click and drag the selected players upwards/downwards.

   An insertion line indicates where the players will be positioned.

RESULT

The default player order is changed. This does not change the player order in layouts with custom player orders.

TIP

You can also automatically sort players according to their type by clicking **Sort Players** in the **Players** panel. You can click and hold **Sort Players** to change the setting to either **None** or **Orchestral**.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 51
Adding players on page 68

Setting custom player orders

You can change the order in which players' staves appear in each layout independently, for example, if you want to have a different player order in a custom score layout than the default player order for your other layouts, as set by the order of players in the **Players** panel.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layout in which you want to set a custom player order.

NOTE

You can only set custom player orders in one layout at a time. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog.

3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Players** section, activate **Uses custom player order**.
5. In the list, select a player whose position you want to change.
6. Change its position relative to other players in one of the following ways:
   - Click **Move up**.
   - Click **Move down**.
7. Optional: Repeat steps 5 to 6 for other players in the selected layout whose position you want to change.
8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The player order in the selected layout is changed. This overrides the default player order. Any subsequent changes you make to the default player order in the **Players** panel are not reflected in layouts with custom player orders.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts on page 99
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Deleting players

You can delete players from your project, which also deletes all instruments held by those players.

IMPORTANT

Deleting instruments permanently deletes any music that you have input on their staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the players that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected players in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Delete Player**.
3. Choose one of the following options in the warning message that appears:
   - **Delete Player Only**: Deletes the player and the music that you created for the instruments belonging to that player.
   - **Delete Player and Part Layouts**: Deletes the player, the music, and all part layouts to which the player is assigned.

     NOTE

     The part layout cannot be deleted if it also contains other players.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 51
Deleting instruments on page 83
Deleting layouts on page 103

Ensembles

Ensembles are sets of multiple players that are commonly used together, such as a double woodwind section that contains two flutes, two oboes, two clarinets, and two bassoons. Dorico for iPad provides predefined ensembles but you can also build custom ensembles.

Ensembles can contain single and/or section players, depending on the ensemble. For example, woodwind ensembles contain single players whereas string ensembles contain section players.

You can use ensembles to add multiple players to your project simultaneously and build up the instrumentation quickly.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed. If you open a project that contains more than your maximum number of players, it opens in read-only mode.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Players on page 67
Ensemble picker on page 55
Save Custom Ensemble dialog on page 57

Adding ensembles

You can add multiple players simultaneously by adding ensembles, such as a complete string section or four-part choir. You can select existing ensembles and build new ones.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed. Only ensembles containing up to your maximum number of players are available.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the ensemble picker in any of the following ways:
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble** .
   - In an empty project, click **Add Ensemble** in the project start area.
2. Select or build the ensemble you want in the ensemble picker.
3. Optional: If you built a new ensemble that you want to reuse in future projects, click **Save** to open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog and save your ensemble.
4. Click **Add**.

RESULT

The players in the selected ensemble are added to the **Players** panel, as either single or section players depending on the ensemble type. They are assigned to all flows that originated in the project.

TIP

- You can use project templates to start projects with multiple players.
- You can assign a key command for **Add Ensemble** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Players panel on page 51
Ensemble picker on page 55
Save Custom Ensemble dialog on page 57
Renaming players on page 105
Project start area on page 25
Starting new projects on page 43
Project template categories on page 44
Opening projects/files on page 44
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Building and saving custom ensembles

You can build custom ensembles in the ensemble picker and save them for reuse in future projects, for example, if you frequently write music for an ensemble with unusual instrumentation.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the ensemble picker in any of the following ways:
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble** .
   - In an empty project, click **Add Ensemble** in the project start area.
2. Click **Build** to switch to the **Build** tab.
3. Enter the instruments you want into the **Search** field, separated by commas.

   For example, enter **vln,cl,bsn,tuba,marim** to build an ensemble containing a violin, clarinet, bassoon, tuba, and marimba.
4. Optional: To change the player type, double-click players in the list.

   The icons for each player show whether they are single players or section players .
5. Click **Save** to open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog.
6. Select an ensemble category from the **Category** menu.
7. Enter a name for your ensemble in the **Name** field.
8. Click **Save** to save your ensemble and close the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog.
9. Optional: Click **Add** to add the ensemble to the project and close the ensemble picker.

RESULT

Your ensemble is saved, allowing you to add it to future projects. If you clicked **Add** in the ensemble picker, the players in the ensemble are added to the project.

RELATED LINKS

Ensemble picker on page 55
Save Custom Ensemble dialog on page 57
Players on page 67
Adding players on page 68

Instruments

In Dorico for iPad, an instrument is an individual musical instrument, such as a piano, a flute, or a violin. Human voices, such as soprano or tenor, are also considered instruments.

In Dorico for iPad, instruments are held by players, just as real instruments are held by human players. Section players can only hold one instrument but single players can hold multiple instruments, which allows you to handle instrument changes easily, such as when an oboist doubling the cor anglais switches from one instrument to the other.

This means that before you can add instruments to a project, you must first add players or ensembles, which may in turn also be assigned to groups if needed. If you add ensembles, the appropriate instruments for the ensemble are automatically added to the players.

Each instrument automatically gets its own staff, but when instrument changes are allowed, the music for multiple instruments held by the same single player can appear on the same staff as long as no notes overlap. By default, Dorico for iPad allows instrument changes in all layouts and automatically shows instrument change labels. This means that only the top instrument held by players is shown automatically in the music area. You can see staves for all instruments in galley view, and you can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently. You can also hide/show empty staves in each layout independently.

Instruments in Dorico for iPad do not have limited ranges; it is possible to notate any pitch in any register on every instrument. However, in the piano roll editor in Play mode, only pitches that fall in the MIDI note range 0-127 can be represented. Similarly, if you input a pitch beyond the range of samples in the assigned VST instrument, the pitch does not sound in playback.

You can change instruments at any time, add/delete them from players, and move them between players.

RELATED LINKS

Players on page 67
Inputting notes on page 145
Adding instruments to players on page 79
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Staff labels on page 797
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings on page 92
Changing instruments on page 81
Moving instruments on page 82
Changing the default player order on page 70
Deleting instruments on page 83
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes on page 76
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376

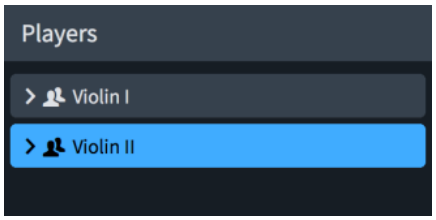
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83

Instrument numbering

It is customary to number instruments when there is more than one in a piece so that they can be easily identified, such as Horn 1 and Horn 2. Dorico for iPad automatically numbers instruments where there are multiple instruments of the same type in the same project.

For example, if there is only one flute in a project, it is called Flute, but if there are three flutes, they are automatically called Flute 1, Flute 2, and Flute 3.

One violin with no number



Adding a second violin automatically generates numbers for both violins

Instrument numbering applies to individual instruments, rather than players. For example, if an ensemble contains two flute players and a piccolo player, but the second flute is also holding a piccolo, then the instruments are numbered in the following way:

- Flute 1
- Flute 2 & Piccolo 1
- Piccolo 2

TIP

You can move individual instruments to different players if you want to change which numbered instruments are held by each player. For example, if you want the second flute to double second piccolo rather than first piccolo, you can swap the piccolo instruments between the players.

Dorico for iPad automatically generates instrument numbers for players if the following criteria are met:

- There are multiple instruments of the same type in the project.
- The instrument names are the same.
- The instruments have the same transposition.
- The players holding them are the same type, either single or section.
- The players are in the same group.

For example, if you have two flutes in your project, but one flute is a section player and the other flute is a single player, they are not numbered automatically. Similarly, if the two flutes are in different player groups, they are not numbered automatically.

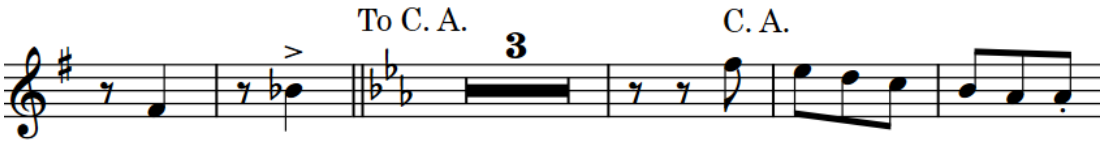
RELATED LINKS

Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Changing instrument names on page 106
Player groups on page 93
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 801
Moving instruments on page 82

Instrument names in staff labels on page 798
Transposing instruments on page 78

Instrument changes

Instruments changes are when a player holding multiple instruments switches from playing one instrument to a different instrument. They are usually indicated in full scores and parts with text indications both after the last note before the change and at the first note after the change.



An instrument change from Oboe to Cor Anglais

Dorico for iPad handles instrument changes automatically, including showing the appropriate instrument change labels, when the following criteria are met:

- You have added a single player holding at least two instruments.
- You have input notes on at least two instrument staves held by the single player, such as inputting oboe notes on the Oboe staff and cor anglais notes on the Cor Anglais staff.
- Notes for different instruments held by the same single player do not overlap.
- Instrument changes are allowed in the layout.

You can see staves for all instruments in galley view, and you can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS
Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes on page 76
Adding instruments to players on page 79
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Inputting notes on page 145
Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows on page 803
Changing instruments on page 81

Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes

You can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently, for example, if you want to show multiple percussion instruments on as few staves as possible in the score but on separate staves for each percussion instrument in the percussion part.

Disallowing instrument changes shows all instrument staves in the selected layouts, including multiple instruments held by one single player.

TIP

If you want to input notes for other instruments held by single players but keep instrument changes in the layout, you can switch to galley view to see all staves in the project.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to allow/disallow instrument changes.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, activate/deactivate **Allow instrument changes**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Instrument changes are allowed in the selected layouts when **Allow instrument changes** is activated, and disallowed when it is deactivated.

NOTE

Multiple instruments can only appear on the same staff with an instrument change if none of their notes overlap. If any of their notes do overlap, multiple staves are shown.

RELATED LINKS

Instruments on page 74
Inputting notes on page 145
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376
Changing instruments on page 81

Editing the default instrument change label text

You can change the default instrument change label prefix and whether instrument change labels show full or short instrument names by default in each layout independently, for example, if you want to show full instrument names in part layouts but short instrument names in full score layouts.

Using custom prefixes/suffixes also allows you to show instrument change labels in a different language, for example, if you want to recreate a French score.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default content in instrument change labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, choose one of the following options for **Instrument names to use in change labels**:
   - **Full Names**
   - **Short Names**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Prefix for instrument change warnings**:

- **To**
- **Take**
- **Custom**

6. Optional: If you chose **Custom**, enter the text you want in the **Custom prefix** and/or **Custom suffix** fields.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The length of instrument names and prefixes/suffixes in all instrument change labels in the selected layouts is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows on page 803
Staff labels on page 797

Transposing instruments

While most instruments produce notes at concert pitch, transposing instruments produce a note that is different to the one that is written. For example, two common orchestral transposing instruments are clarinet in B♭ and horn in F.

When a clarinet in B♭ plays a C, the sound produced is a B♭, one whole step (tone) below. When a horn in F plays a C, the sound produced is an F, a fifth below. Other instruments that conventionally produce a pitch different to the one notated include the piccolo (sounding an octave above written), double bass (sounding an octave below written), and glockenspiel (sounding two octaves above written).

Dorico for iPad stores all note information in concert pitch and automatically transposes notes as appropriate for the transposition of the instrument. This means notes, key signatures, and chord symbols are automatically changed in transposing layouts compared to non-transposing layouts. You can also change instruments at any time, and the music is adjusted automatically to ensure the correct pitches are shown.

You can also change the octave of individual clefs.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument picker on page 53
Instrument numbering on page 75
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 801
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 101
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures on page 569
Changing instruments on page 81
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 490
Clefs with octave indicators on page 491

Fretted instrument tuning

Fretted instruments can have different numbers of strings and frets. In order to display tablature for fretted instruments in Dorico for iPad, you must specify information about the tuning of fretted instruments.

Dorico for iPad requires the following information to display tablature:

- The number of strings the instrument has
- The open pitch of each string
- The number of frets
- The fret number at which each string starts, such as for the fifth string on a banjo
- The pitch intervals between frets

When you assign a fretted instrument to a player or change an existing instrument, any available tunings for that instrument are shown in the instrument picker.

You can also customize all aspects of fretted instruments in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.

NOTE

Any fretted instruments in projects created in earlier versions of Dorico for iPad are automatically assigned the standard set of strings and tunings associated with that instrument when the project is first opened in Dorico for iPad 3. The quickest way to change their tuning is changing the instrument type in the instrument picker.

RELATED LINKS
Instrument picker on page 53
Changing instruments on page 81
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 90

Adding instruments to players

You can add instruments to both single and section players. You can add multiple instruments to single players but only one instrument to section players.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the player to which you want to add instruments.

   NOTE

   - You can only add instruments to one player at a time.
   - You cannot add more than one instrument to a section player.

2. Open the instrument picker in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-I**.
   - Click the plus symbol in the player card.
3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
4. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The selected instrument is added to the selected player. Dorico for iPad automatically loads sounds for the instrument according to the current playback template.

NOTE

- Before you have input any notes, only the first instrument held by single players is shown in full scores in page view. All instrument staves are shown in galley view, so we recommend switching to galley view to input notes for any other instruments held by single players, for example, to create instrument changes.
- If you want to add multiple players to your project at the same time, you can add ensembles or use a project template.

RELATED LINKS
Players on page 67
Players panel on page 51
Instrument picker on page 53
Adding ensembles on page 72
Starting new projects on page 43
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Instrument changes on page 76
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Changing instrument names on page 106

Adding empty percussion kits to players

You can add empty percussion kits to players, to which you can then add unpitched percussion instruments.

NOTE

You cannot add percussion kits to section players that are already holding one instrument.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog in any of the following ways:
   - Select a player, press **Shift-I**, and click **Create Empty Kit** in the instrument picker.
   - Click the plus symbol in a player card and click **Create Empty Kit** in the instrument picker.
   - Select a player, then click **Player Settings** in the action bar and choose **Create Empty Kit**.
2. Add the percussion instruments you want to the kit in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 51
Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments on page 883
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Instrument picker on page 53
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888

Combining individual percussion instruments into kits

If a player is holding one or more individual percussion instruments, you can combine them into a percussion kit.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the player whose percussion instruments you want to combine into a kit.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Combine Instruments into Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Edit the new percussion kit.

   For example, you can change the order in which the instruments appear in a grid or on a five-line staff.

RESULT

A new kit is created containing all the instruments held by the player.

NOTE

If the player was already holding one or more kit instruments, all individual instruments and any other kits are combined into the first kit.

Changing instruments

You can change the type of instruments without affecting any music already entered onto their staves, for example, if your Clarinet part is very low and you want to change it to a Bass Clarinet or you want to change the tuning of a guitar.

NOTE

- You cannot change percussion kits into other instruments, you can only change individual unpitched percussion instruments.
- You cannot change a pitched instrument into an unpitched instrument, and vice versa.
- These steps describe changing the instrument type, not an instrument change partway through a flow.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player whose instrument you want to change.

   The card lists the instruments held by the player.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Change Instrument** to open the instrument picker.
3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
4. Press **Return** to change to the selected instrument.

RESULT

The selected instrument is changed without affecting any music on its staff.

NOTE

Where appropriate, new clefs are input. This means that notes can appear differently so that they are notated correctly according to the new clef.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the player order, for example, if the new instrument requires a different position according to orchestral convention.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Instrument picker on page 53
Fretted instrument tuning on page 78
Transposing instruments on page 78
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 90
Instrument changes on page 76
Changing the default player order on page 70

Moving instruments

You can move individual instruments without affecting any music already input for those instruments. You can move instruments between players or to a different position in the instrument list for a single player, for example, if you want to change the order of staves in the score.

PREREQUISITE

You have added the players to which you want to move instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the cards of the players holding the instruments you want to move.
2. Move instruments in any of the following ways:
   - To change the order of instruments for a single player, click and drag a single instrument and release it at the required position.
   - To move instruments to another player, click and drag a single instrument and release it over the player card to which you want to move them.
   - To move instruments to another player, click the instrument menu ··· in the instrument label and choose **Move Instrument to Player** > **[Player]**.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Adding players on page 68
Changing the default player order on page 70

Deleting instruments

You can delete individual instruments without deleting the player holding them or other instruments held by the same player.

IMPORTANT

Deleting instruments permanently deletes any music that you have input on their staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the instrument you want to delete.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Delete Instrument**.
3. Click **OK**.

RESULT

The instrument is deleted from the player.

TIP

If you want to delete all instruments held by a single player, you can also delete the player.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Deleting players on page 71

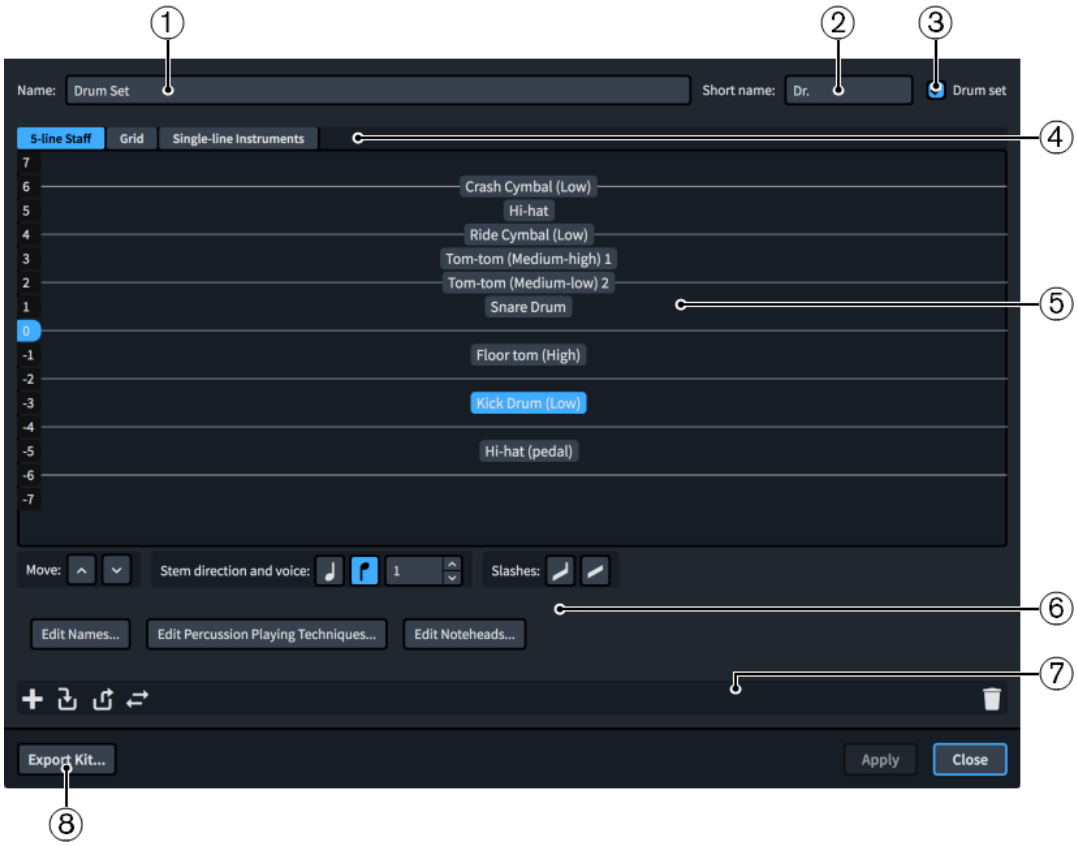
Edit Percussion Kit dialog

The **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog allows you to make changes to percussion kits, including which instruments are included in them and how instruments are arranged in the different available kit presentations.

- The **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog opens automatically when you create empty kits or combine existing instruments into a kit.
- You can also open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog manually for existing percussion kit instruments by expanding the card of the player holding the percussion kit in the **Players** panel in Setup mode, then clicking the instrument menu ··· in its kit instrument label and choosing **Edit Percussion Kit**.

NOTE

Percussion kit instrument labels are green in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.



1 Name

Allows you to enter or change the full name for the percussion kit. This is used in **Full** staff labels for percussion kits that use the five-line staff presentation type.

2 Short name

Allows you to enter or change the abbreviated name for the percussion kit. This is used in **Abbreviated** staff labels for percussion kits that use the five-line staff presentation type.

3 Drum set

Percussion kits are defined as drum sets when the checkbox is activated. Percussion kits that are defined as drum sets have different default settings, including for voicing and default stem directions.

4 Presentation types

Allows you to select a percussion kit presentation type in order to edit how the selected percussion kit appears in that presentation type.

- **5-line Staff**: Kit instruments are shown on a five-line staff. You can determine which instruments are shown on each line and in each space of the staff. A single staff label containing the name of the kit is shown.
- **Grid**: Kit instruments are shown on a grid, with each instrument on its own line. You can customize how large the gaps between each line are. Staff labels are shown for each instrument in a smaller font than normal staff labels.
- **Single-line Instruments**: Kit instruments are shown as individual instruments with their own lines. Normal-sized staff labels are shown for each instrument.

5 Editor

Displays the current arrangement of instruments in the selected percussion kit presentation type. You can change the order of instruments and the layout of lines and spaces in the grid presentation type by using the controls.

6 **Controls**

Allows you to change the order and stem direction of instruments in the selected percussion kit presentation type. It also allows you to add slash voices to the kit.

You can access dialogs to change the noteheads used for each instrument in the kit by clicking **Edit Noteheads**. You can also change how combinations of noteheads, articulations, and tremolos affect playback by clicking **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.

You can also change the names of individual instruments within percussion kits. Click **Edit Names** to open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.

NOTE

This changes the appearance of percussion instrument names in all presentations. Depending on the percussion kit presentation type, staff labels might use different information than these instrument names.

7 **Action bar**

Contains options that apply to all presentation types.

- **Add New Instrument** : Opens the instrument picker, which allows you to choose a new unpitched percussion instrument to be added to the kit.
- **Add Existing Instrument From Player** : Shows a menu listing the other players in your project that are holding individual percussion instruments not in kits. You can select a percussion instrument from another player to move to this kit, bringing its music with it.
- **Remove Instrument From Kit** : Removes the selected instrument from the kit, so it appears as an individual instrument. You can move individual instruments to other players or into other kit instruments.
- **Change Instrument** : Opens the instrument picker, which allows you to choose a new unpitched instrument to replace the selected instrument while retaining its music.
- **Delete Instrument** : Deletes the instrument from the kit, including its music.

8 **Export Kit**

Allows you to export the percussion kit as a library file so you can use it in other projects.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 884
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Changing the percussion kit presentation type on page 889
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 891
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 890

Adding instruments to percussion kits

You can add new instruments to percussion kits within the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit to which you want to add instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Add New Instrument** to open the instrument picker.

4. Select the percussion instrument you want in the instrument picker.
5. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.
6. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The selected instrument is added to the percussion kit.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888

Changing instruments in percussion kits

You can change existing instruments in percussion kits while retaining any existing music for that instrument.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to change instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the instrument you want to change.
4. Click **Change Instrument** in the action bar to open the instrument picker.
5. Select the percussion instrument you want in the instrument picker.
6. Press **Return** to change to the selected instrument.
7. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The instrument is changed to the one selected in the instrument picker. Any music input for the previous instrument is retained.

NOTE

Playing techniques expressed using playing technique-specific noteheads are not retained.

Defining percussion kits as drum sets

You can define individual percussion kits as drum sets. Drum sets use a different voicing than percussion kits when using the five-line staff presentation.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit you want to define as a drum set.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Activate **Drum set** in the top right of the dialog.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected percussion kit is defined as a drum set. The arrangement of voices for instruments in the kit when using the five-line staff presentation type follows the default settings for drum sets.

NOTE

If you no longer want a percussion kit to be defined as a drum set, you can deactivate **Drum set** in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog for that kit.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 891

Renaming groups in grid presentation percussion kits

Group names are shown as instrument labels. You can change the names of groups in percussion kits using grid presentation.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to change the names of groups in the grid presentation.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Double-click the group you want to rename to open the **Edit Percussion Grid Group Names** dialog.

   Groups are shown as colored blocks in the column to the left of the list of percussion kit instruments.
5. Enter the names you want to give the group in the corresponding fields in the **Edit Percussion Grid Group Names** dialog:
   - **Full Name**
   - **Short Name**
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

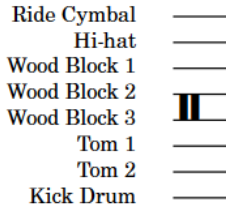
RESULT

The name of the group is changed. This also changes the staff label for the group.

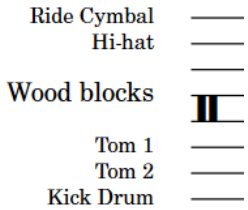
NOTE

Staff labels for groups in grid presentation percussion kits use a different paragraph style to the staff labels for non-grouped instruments in grid presentation percussion kits.

EXAMPLE



Ungrouped grid presentation percussion kit



Grid presentation percussion kit with wood blocks grouped

RELATED LINKS

Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804

Deleting groups within grid presentation percussion kits

You can delete groups in percussion kits using grid presentation without deleting the instruments within the group.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit from whose grid presentation you want to delete groups.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the group you want to delete.

   Groups are shown as colored blocks in the column to the left of the list of percussion kit instruments.
5. Click **Delete** .

RESULT

The group is deleted. The individual staff labels for each instrument in the group are restored.

Changing the positions of instruments within percussion kits

You can change the positions of instruments within percussion kits of all presentation types to change the order in which the instruments appear in the score and parts. In five-line staff presentation types, you can also change the staff position of slash voices.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to change the positions of instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the kit presentation type in which you want to change the order of instruments.

   For example, click **Grid** to change the order of instruments when the kit uses the grid presentation type.

4. Click the percussion instruments and/or slash voices whose position you want to change.

   NOTE

   When using the mouse, you can only move one instrument or slash voice at a time.

5. Change the position of the selected instruments/slash voices in any of the following ways:
   - Click **Move** up arrow to move them upwards.
   - Click **Move** down arrow to move them downwards.
   - Click and drag a single instrument upwards/downwards (five-line staff presentation only).
6. Optional: Repeat these steps for other instruments in the percussion kit, and for other kit presentation types for the same percussion kit.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The positions of the selected instruments and/or slash voices within the kit is changed. Multiple instruments can share the same staff position, but we recommend that they use different noteheads so that the player can tell them apart.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Moving notes to different instruments in percussion kits on page 886

Changing the size of gaps between lines in percussion grids

You can change the size of gaps between lines in percussion kits using the grid presentation type.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player in whose percussion kit you want to change the size of gaps in the grid presentation.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the instruments below which you want to change the gap size.
5. Change the value for **Gap**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The size of the gaps below the selected instruments is changed.

Removing individual instruments from percussion kits

You can remove individual instruments from percussion kits, for example, if you want to move an instrument from one percussion kit to another player.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit from which you want to remove instruments.

2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the instruments you want to remove from the kit.
4. Click **Remove Instrument From Kit** in the action bar.
5. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The selected instruments appears as individual instruments belonging to the same player but separate from the percussion kit.

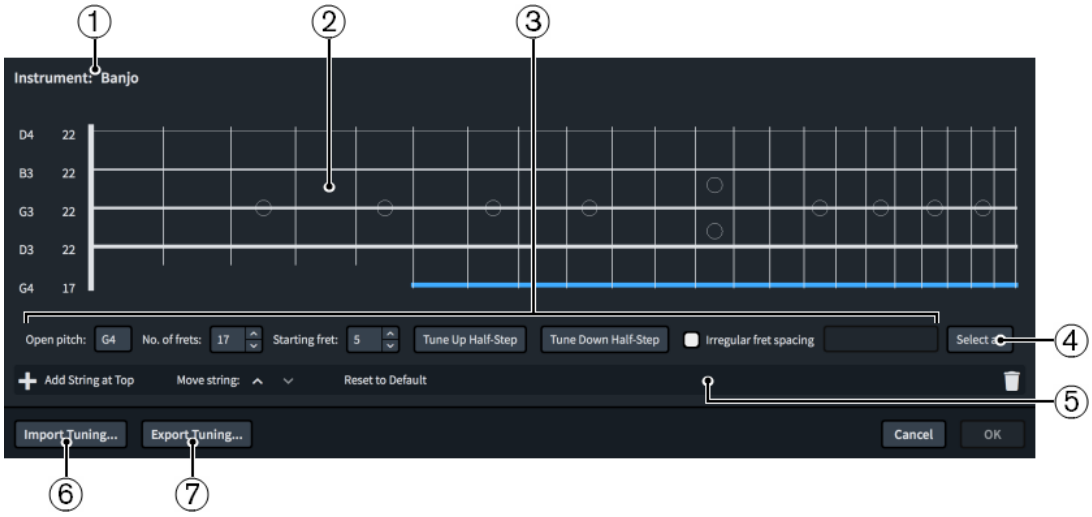
You can then move the instruments to other players if required.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 51
Moving instruments on page 82

Edit Strings and Tuning dialog

The **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog allows you to customize the tuning of individual fretted instruments by changing the number of strings and frets they have, the pitches of their open strings, and the spacing of their frets.

- You can open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog in Setup mode by expanding the card of the player holding the fretted instrument in the **Players** panel, then clicking the instrument menu ··· in its instrument label and choosing **Edit Strings and Tuning**.



The **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog comprises the following:

1 Instrument

Displays the name of the selected fretted instrument.

2 String editor

Allows you to select and edit individual or all strings of the fretted instrument. The arrangement of strings in the editor matches that of the real instrument. The pitch and total number of frets of each string is shown to the left of the vertical line that represents the nut.

3 Controls

Allow you to edit individual or multiple strings. The following controls are available when at least one string is selected in the string editor:

- **Open pitch**: Allows you to set the open pitch of the string using the note name and octave, such as **C4** for middle C. If necessary, you can add **#** for sharp and **b** for flat.
- **No. of frets**: Allows you to set the number of frets for the selected strings.
- **Starting fret**: Allows you to set the number of the first fret on the selected strings. For example, the fifth string on the banjo starts at fret 5.
- **Tune Up Half-Step**: Allows you to raise the open pitch of the selected strings by a half-step (semitone).
- **Tune Down Half-Step**: Allows you to lower the open pitch of the selected strings by a half-step (semitone).
- **Irregular fret spacing**: Allows you to set non-chromatic fret arrangements for instruments with fretboards that correspond to other scales, such as the dulcimer. Enter **1** for a half-step and **2** for a whole step, with each step separated by a comma. For example, enter **2,2,1,2,2,2,1** to set the pattern for a major scale.

4 **Select all**

Selects all strings at once.

5 **Action bar**

Contains options that allow you to change the number and arrangement of strings.

- **Add String**: Adds a new string below the lowest currently selected string. The new string is a duplicate of the lowest currently selected string.
- **Add String at Top**: Adds a new string at the top of the fretboard. The new string is a duplicate of the previous top string.
- **Move string buttons**: Allow you to move the currently selected strings up/down the fretboard.
- **Reset to Default**: Returns all strings and corresponding tunings to the factory default settings for the fretted instrument.
- **Delete String** : Deletes the selected strings.

6 **Import Tuning**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.doricotuning` file that you want to import and apply to the fretted instrument.

7 **Export Tuning**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the strings and tuning settings of the fretted instrument as a `.doricotuning` file. You can then import the `.doricotuning` file into other instruments/projects and share it with other users.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 51
Chord diagrams on page 480
Tablature on page 815
Fretted instrument tuning on page 78

Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings

You can change the open pitch of each fretted instrument string independently, for example, if your project requires an unconventional tuning that is not available as an instrument type in the instrument picker.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose open pitches you want to change.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Select the string whose open pitch you want to change.
4. Change the **Open pitch** value, for example, to **G2**.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 3 and 4 to change the open pitch of other strings.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The open pitches of the selected strings are changed. This affects the tuning of the instrument and the pitch of all fret positions on those strings.

The new tuning becomes available for chord diagrams.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Chord diagrams on page 480
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 481

Importing fretted instrument tunings

You can import custom fretted instrument tunings that you have already created and apply them to instruments. This allows you to reuse tunings without having to create them from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument to which you want to apply an imported tuning.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Click **Import Tuning** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Locate and select the `.doricotuning` library file you want to import.
5. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected `.doricotuning` file is applied to the fretted instrument. The imported tuning becomes available for chord diagrams.

Exporting fretted instrument tunings

You can export fretted instrument tunings so you can reuse them for other instruments and in other projects. Fretted instrument tunings are exported as `.doricotuning` library files.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose tuning you want to export.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Click **Export Tuning** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The tuning of the selected fretted instrument is exported and saved as a `.doricotuning` library file.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can import the library file into other projects to reuse the fretted instrument tuning.

Player groups

A group represents a collection of musicians that are considered together, such as one choir in a work for double choir or an off-stage ensemble. Player groups can have their own brackets, depending on the bracket grouping set for each layout.

Grouping players together means they are positioned together in the default player order, numbered independently of players outside the group, and are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

For example, if your project is for double choir (SATB/SATB), all voices are joined by a single bracket by default because they are in the same family. However, if you add each choir to its own group, they are bracketed separately. This is useful in works containing multiple groups, such as in Britten's “War Requiem”, which has three distinct groups, or in Walton's “Belshazzar's Feast” which requires two separate off-stage brass groups.

You can add as many player groups as required, for example, to allow easy separation of forces or to prevent automatic instrument numbering for percussion instruments when multiple percussion players hold the same instrument to accommodate instrument changes.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument numbering on page 75
Brackets and braces on page 466
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
Changing the default player order on page 70
Setting custom player orders on page 70

Adding player groups

You can organize players into groups, for example, if you want to bracket them together. Players in different groups are also numbered separately.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to add a group that includes existing players, select those players in the **Players** panel.
2. In the **Players** panel, click **Add Group**.

RESULT

A new player group is added to the **Players** panel. If you selected players, those players are added to the group. If you did not select players, the new group is empty.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can add players to groups and move them between groups.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Adding players to groups on page 94
Moving players between groups on page 95

Adding players to groups

You can add new players to existing player groups.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project depends on whether you are signed in/subscribed.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the group to which you want to add new players.
2. Add new players in one of the following ways:
   - To add a single player, click **Add Single Player** in the action bar.
   - To add a section player, click **Add Section Player** in the action bar.

   The instrument picker opens.

   TIP

   You can also open the instrument picker by selecting an existing player in the **Players** panel and pressing **Shift-I**.
3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
4. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The corresponding type of player is added to the selected group.

TIP

You can also move existing players to, from, or between groups.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Players panel on page 51
Instrument picker on page 53
Adding players on page 68
Moving players between groups on page 95

Renaming player groups

You can change the name of player groups after you have added them.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, double-click the name of the group.
2. Enter a new name for the group or edit the existing name.
3. Press **Return**.

Deleting player groups

You can delete groups of players, for example, if you no longer need a group of players that you created when importing a MIDI file. When deleting player groups, you can choose to keep the players within the group or delete them as well.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the groups that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected groups in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Delete Player**.
3. Choose one of the following options in the warning message that opens:
   - **Keep Players**: Deletes the group but keeps the players.
   - **Delete Players**: Deletes the group and the players it contains.

Moving players between groups

You can move players to, from, or between player groups. For example, you can move ungrouped players into existing groups and move players from one group to another.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select the players that you want to move.
2. Click and drag the selected players to the position you want.

   An insertion line indicates where the players will be positioned.

RESULT

The players are moved to the new position.

TIP

You can also add new players to player groups.

RELATED LINKS
Adding players to groups on page 94

Removing players from groups

You can remove players from groups.

PROCEDURE

- In the **Players** panel, remove players from groups in any of the following ways:
  - Select multiple players, then click and drag them out of the group.
  - Select one player, then click **Player Settings** ··· in the action bar and choose **Remove Player from Group**.

RESULT

The players are removed from their groups but remain in the project as individual players.

Flows

Flows are separate spans of music that are completely independent in musical content, meaning they can contain completely different players from each other and have different time signatures and key signatures. A single project can contain any number of flows.

Depending on the purpose of each project, a flow could be, for example, a single song in an album, a movement in a sonata or symphony, a number in a stage musical, or a short scale or sight-reading exercise of only a few bars in length.

Dorico for iPad automatically adds a flow to projects once you have added at least one player. You cannot add flows until you have added at least one player to the project.

When you add a flow in Dorico for iPad, the following happens automatically:

- The flow is assigned to all full score and part layouts in the project.
- All players are assigned to the new flow.

By default, all layouts include all flows in the project. If necessary, you can change the layouts to which flows are assigned and which players are assigned to flows.

IMPORTANT

If you exclude a player from a flow, any notes that you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.

RELATED LINKS
Flows panel on page 60
Players on page 67
Layouts on page 99
Tacets on page 398
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Starting new projects on page 43

Opening projects/files on page 44
Flow headings on page 367

Adding flows

You can add any number of new flows to your project, for example, when engraving a large work that comprises multiple movements.

PROCEDURE

- Add a flow in any of the following ways:
  - Press **Shift-F**.
  - In the **Flows** panel, click **Add Flow**.

RESULT

A new flow is added to your project. All existing players are assigned to new flows, and new flows are automatically assigned to all existing full score and part layouts.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can rename the flow.
- You can change the players assigned to the flow and the layouts to which the flow is assigned.

RELATED LINKS

Flows panel on page 60
Starting new projects on page 43
Opening projects/files on page 44
Renaming flows on page 110
Adding players on page 68
Assigning players to flows on page 97
Assigning flows to layouts on page 101

Assigning players to flows

By default, all players in your project are added to all flows that originated in the project. You can assign players to and remove players from flows manually, for example, if the soloists in a choral work do not sing for an entire flow.

NOTE

If you remove a player from a flow, any notes you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Flows** panel, select the flow whose assigned players you want to change.
2. In the **Players** panel, activate the checkbox in the card of each player you want to assign to the flow.

RESULT

Players are assigned to the selected flow when the checkbox in their player card is activated, and removed from the flow when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Flows panel on page 60
Tacets on page 398
Assigning flows to layouts on page 101
Assigning players to layouts on page 100

Reordering flows

You can change the order of flows, for example, if you want an imported flow to be the first flow rather than the last.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Flows** panel, activate **Reorder Flows** .
2. Click and drag flows to the right/left.

RESULT

The selected flows are moved to the specified position. Their flow numbers are automatically updated, as is their order in the **Project Info** dialog and in layouts by default.

TIP

You can also reorder flows in the **Project Info** dialog by selecting them in the flows list and clicking **Move Down** or **Move Up** in the action bar. This can be an easier method of reordering flows in projects that contain many flows.

RELATED LINKS

Project Info dialog on page 61
Flow names and flow titles on page 110
Flow headings on page 367
Text tokens on page 355

Deleting flows

You can delete flows that you no longer need. This deletes all music for all instruments and players in the flows.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Flows** panel, select the flows you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected flows in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Flows** panel, click **Delete Flow** .

Layouts

Layouts combine musical content, as represented by flows and players, with rules for page formatting and music engraving, and allow you to produce paginated music notation that can be printed or exported in various formats. For example, part layouts only include the music for that player whereas full score layouts contain all staves in the project.

You can control practically every aspect of the visual appearance of the music in each layout independently, including staff size, note spacing, and system formatting. Each layout can also have independent page formatting settings, such as page size, margins, running headers, and footers.

Dorico for iPad provides the following layout types:

Full score

A full score layout includes all players and all flows in your project by default. Full score layouts are concert pitch by default.

Part

A part layout is automatically created when you add a player to your project. You can also create empty part layouts and assign players to them manually.

By default, instrumental part layouts contain all flows. They are also transposed pitch by default.

You can propagate the formatting of part layouts.

Custom score

A custom score layout initially does not contain any players or flows. This allows you to create your score manually and, for example, assign only one flow instead of all flows or only vocal and piano players to create a vocal score. Custom score layouts are concert pitch by default.

TIP

You can combine players, layouts, and flows together in any combination. For example, you might add all percussion players to a single part layout so that the performers can manage instrument changes themselves. In a large-scale work, you might also create a piano reduction for choir rehearsals, but only assign that piano player to the vocal score, meaning it does not appear in the orchestral full score at all.

You can also create as many layouts as required.

RELATED LINKS

Page formatting on page 369
Flows on page 96
Players on page 67
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
Local vs. global properties on page 127

Creating layouts

You can create any number of full score, custom score, and part layouts in each project. By default, Dorico for iPad creates a single full score layout and a part layout for each player.

PROCEDURE

- In the **Layouts** panel, click one of the following layout types:
  - **Add Full Score Layout**
  - **Add Instrumental Part Layout**
  - **Add Custom Score Layout**

RESULT

The layout is added to the list of layouts in the **Layouts** panel.

NOTE

- Layouts are not available in the layout selector until you have assigned at least one player to them.
- You can also add new custom score layouts by pressing **Shift-L**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can assign players and flows to the layout.
- If you want to change the position of the new layout in the layouts list, you can sort and renumber layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58
Reordering layouts on page 103
Renumbering layouts on page 103
Switching between layouts on page 30

Assigning players to layouts

By default, all players are included in full score layouts and each player is automatically assigned its own part layout. You can assign players to and exclude players from layouts manually, for example, if you want to remove unnecessary players from the full score, or you want to add the soloists' music to the part for the accompanist.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layout whose assigned players you want to change.
2. In the **Players** panel, activate the checkbox in the card of each player you want to assign to the layout.

RESULT

Players are assigned to the selected layout when the checkbox in their player card is activated, and removed from the layout when the checkbox is deactivated. If you have not changed the name of the layout, it is automatically updated to reflect the players included in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

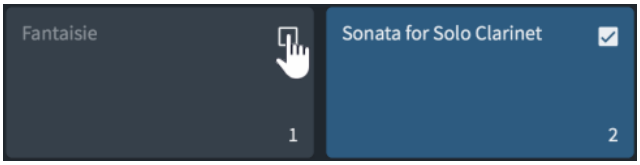
Players panel on page 51
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Renaming layouts on page 105
Assigning players to flows on page 97

Assigning flows to layouts

By default, all flows in your project are added to all layouts. You can exclude flows that you do not want to show in a layout. You can assign flows to and remove flows from layouts manually, for example, if a flow in your project contains specific performance instructions for strings that you want to show in string part layouts but not in other part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layout whose assigned flows you want to change.
2. In the **Flows** panel, activate the checkbox in the flow card of each flow you want to assign to the layout.



RESULT

Flows are assigned to the selected layout when the checkbox in their flow card is activated, and removed from the layout when the checkbox is deactivated.

Dorico for iPad automatically creates enough pages to display the flows assigned to the layout.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58
Flows panel on page 60

Making layouts transposing/concert pitch

You can change whether each layout in your project is transposing or concert pitch. In Dorico for iPad, full score layouts are concert pitch and part layouts are transposing by default.

For example, full scores are often concert pitch, to show notes at their sounding pitch, but part layouts are transposing so the player can read the notes they must play in order to achieve the desired sounding pitch.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts you want to make transposing/non-transposing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Players** section, activate/deactivate **Transposing layout**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected layouts are transposed pitch when **Transposing layout** is activated, and concert pitch when it is deactivated.

TIP

You can also change the layout transposition in the **View Options** dialog. This automatically updates the layout option but only for the layout currently open in the music area.

RELATED LINKS

Transposing instruments on page 78
Transposing selections on page 186
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 490
View Options dialog on page 120

Concert vs. transposed pitch

Layouts in Dorico for iPad can use concert or transposed pitch. This affects the pitches and key signatures on staves belonging to transposing instruments.

Concert pitch

When music is in concert pitch, all notes are written as they sound. This means that players with transposing instruments reading music in concert pitch must transpose the music themselves. For example, if a clarinet in B♭ reads a C in concert pitch, they must play the note D on their instrument to produce the sounding note C.

Transposed pitch

When music is in transposed pitch, the notes written are the ones each instrument must play in order to produce the desired sounding pitch. For example, if a clarinet in B♭ reads a D in transposed pitch, the pitch that sounds from the instrument is C.

Transposing scores and parts also transpose key signatures according to the transposition of the instrument.

RELATED LINKS

Transposing selections on page 186
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures on page 569
Clefs with octave indicators on page 491

Reordering layouts

You can change the order in which layouts appear in the **Layouts** panel and the layout selector, for example, if you added a custom score layout and want it to be positioned at the top next to the full score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts whose order you want to change.
2. Click and drag the selected layouts upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected layouts are moved to the specified position. This does not affect their layout numbers.

TIP

You can also automatically sort layouts according to their type by clicking **Sort Layouts** in the **Layouts** panel, which positions all full score layouts at the top, all part layouts in the middle, and all custom score layouts at the bottom. You can click and hold **Sort Layouts** to change the setting to either **Layout Number** or **Instrument Score Order**.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58

Renumbering layouts

You can renumber all the layouts in their project according to their current position in the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode, for example, after you have dragged layouts to different positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select any layout.
2. In the action bar, click **Layout Settings** and choose **Renumber Layouts**.

RESULT

All layouts are renumbered according to their current position in the panel. Full score layouts, custom score layouts, and part layouts are all numbered separately.

Deleting layouts

You can delete layouts without removing the corresponding music from the project. For example, if you only want to use a combined Violin I and II part layout, you can delete their separate part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected layouts in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Layouts** panel, click **Delete Layout**.

RESULT

The selected layouts are deleted without removing any music from the project.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can later restore all the part layouts that Dorico for iPad provides by default.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58
Players, layouts, and flows on page 66

Player, layout, and instrument names

In Dorico for iPad, you can use three different names to refer to the same player in different contexts. This allows you to show relevant information in different places in the score.

The following names relate to players and instruments:

Player name

The name of each player in the **Players** panel. Player names do not appear in any layouts by default. Instead, you can use the player name as part of your own workflow, independently of what instruments and players are called in staff labels and layout names.

Player names are automatically generated when you add instruments.

Layout name

The name for each layout in the **Layouts** panel. They are used at the top of individual part layouts by default.

Layout names for part layouts are automatically generated when you add instruments to the corresponding players, and are linked to the corresponding players' names until you rename the layout.

Instrument names

Used in staff labels. This means that the instrument label on each staff is relevant to the instrument or percussion kit currently being played by that player, rather than listing all instruments that player is playing in the flow.

For example, if a clarinettist is doubling bass clarinet, the staff label where the player plays clarinet automatically shows **Clarinet**, and the staff label automatically shows **Bass Clarinet** where the player plays bass clarinet.

All instruments in Dorico for iPad come with a set of instrument names that you can change for individual instruments, independently of other players in the project holding the same instrument. You can also save changes to instrument names as default, which are then used whenever you add that instrument again in the current project and all future projects.

NOTE

Changing the default instrument names does not change the instrument names of existing instruments of that type in your project.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument numbering on page 75
Text tokens on page 355
Staff labels on page 797
Percussion legends on page 896

Players on page 67
Layouts on page 99
Assigning players to layouts on page 100
Changing instrument names on page 106

Renaming players

You can change the player names of players, and reset renamed players to their default name. Player names do not appear in any layouts by default, but are used to generate layout names and appear in guide instrument labels in galley view for players holding multiple instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, select player you want to rename.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Rename Player** to open the **Rename Player** dialog.
3. Enter new names into the following fields:
   - **Full name**
   - **Short name**
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The corresponding names for the selected player are changed.

NOTE

This does not affect staff labels or the name at the top of part layouts. You can change the instrument names used in staff labels in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog, and rename layouts to change the name that appears at the top of part layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Players panel on page 51
Changing instrument names on page 106
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 107
Staff labels on page 797
Switching to galley/page view on page 32

Renaming layouts

You can rename layouts and reset renamed layouts to their default name, for example, to include the appropriate instrument transposition for layouts with transposition overrides. Layout names appear at the top of part layouts by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layout you want to rename.
2. Press **Return** to open the layout name text field.
3. Enter a new name, or click **Reset to Default** ↺ to revert the name to the player name.

TIP

If you want to include an accidental in the instrument transposition, you can enter the appropriate text token, such as **{@flat@}** for ♭.

4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected layout is renamed, or reverted to its default name.

NOTE

This does not affect staff labels. You can change the instrument names used in staff labels in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58
Text tokens on page 355
Staff labels on page 797

Changing instrument names

Instrument names are used in staff labels and instrument change labels shown above the staff. You can change the different instrument names used for each instrument, for example, if you want them to appear in a different language.

NOTE

Changing instrument names does not change the name shown at the top of part layouts. If you want to change the name used at the top of part layouts, rename the layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, click the disclosure arrow in the card of the player holding the instrument whose names you want to change.

   This expands the card to show the instruments held by the player.

2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Names** to open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.
3. Enter new names in any of the name fields.
4. Optional: Activate **Save as default for instrument**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The instrument names for the selected instrument are changed.

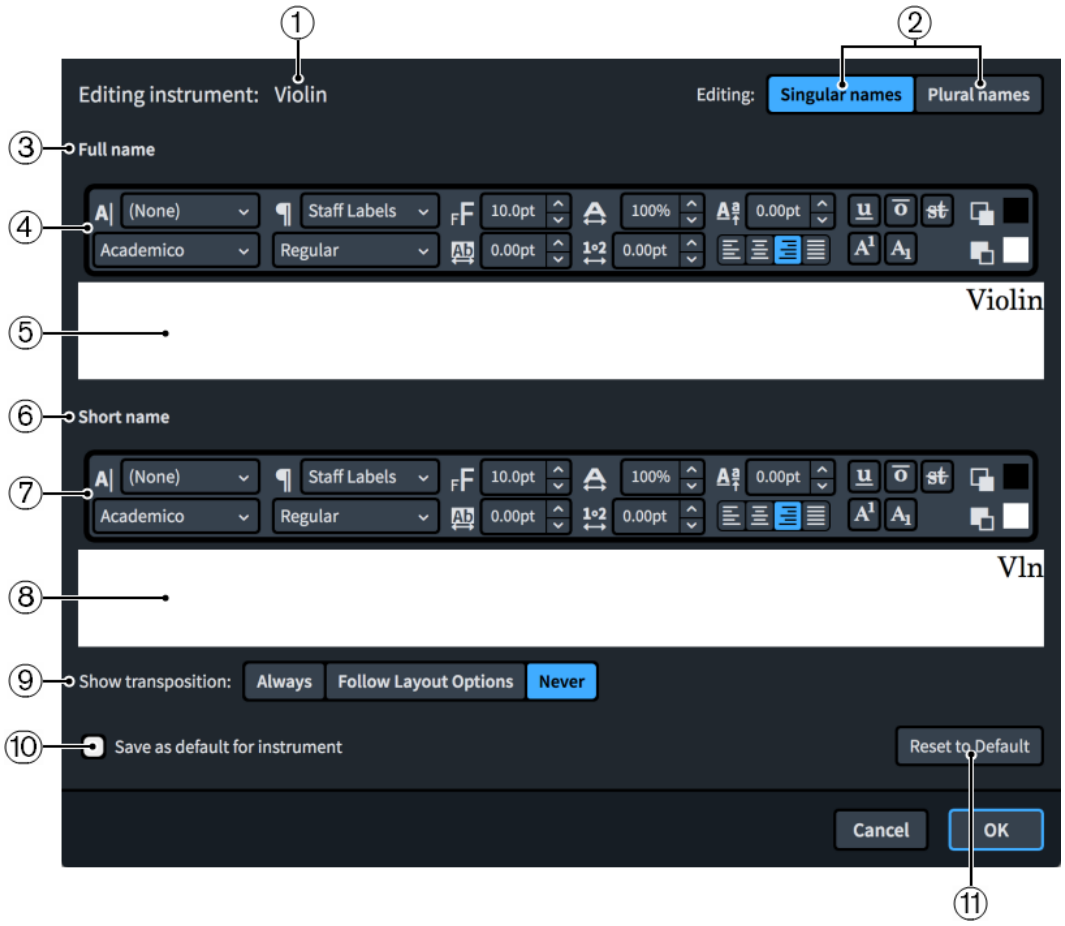
- If you did not save your changes as default, only the names of the selected instrument are changed. Any instruments of the same type added later or in future projects use the original default names.
- If you saved your changes as default, any instruments of the same type added later or in future projects use your new instrument names. This does not affect any existing instruments of that type unless you reset their names.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 51
Instruments on page 74
Instrument changes on page 76
Editing the default instrument change label text on page 77

Edit Instrument Names dialog

The **Edit Instrument Names** dialog allows you to change the content and formatting of each instrument's names, which are used in staff labels and instrument change labels shown above the staff. You can edit both singular/plural full instrument names and singular/plural short instrument names.

- You can open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog in Setup mode by clicking the instrument menu ··· in an instrument label in the **Players** panel and choosing **Edit Names**.



The **Edit Instrument Names** dialog contains the following options and sections:

1 **Editing instrument**

Displays the permanent underlying name of the instrument.

2 **Editing**

Allows you to switch between editing the **Singular names** and **Plural names** of the selected instrument.

Singular names is used when staff labels are shown by default, **Plural names** is used when the staff contains multiple players.

3 **Full name section**

Contains options that allow you to edit the appearance of the full instrument name.

4 **Full name text editor options**

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the long staff label of the selected instrument.

NOTE

The horizontal alignment of staff labels always uses the alignment of the paragraph style, not the alignment set in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.

5 **Full name text editing area**

Shows the current long name for the selected instrument, as it appears in **Full** staff labels. You can select any part of the instrument name and edit it independently of other parts, for example, if you want to add additional information on a new line and in italics. However, when used for instrument change labels above the staff, instrument names are always shown on a single line.

Staff labels are right-aligned by default, so appear at the right edge of the text editing area.

NOTE

Staff labels always use the alignment set for the paragraph style, they do not use the alignment set in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog. This ensures consistent alignment across the whole system.

6 **Short name section**

Contains options that allow you to edit the appearance of the short instrument name.

7 **Short name text editor options**

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the short staff label of the selected instrument.

NOTE

The horizontal alignment of staff labels always uses the alignment of the paragraph style, not the alignment set in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.

8 **Short name text editing area**

Shows the current short staff label for the selected instrument, as it appears in **Abbreviated** staff labels. You can select any part of the instrument name and edit it independently of other parts, for example, if you want to add additional information on a new line and in italics. However, when used for instrument change labels above the staff, instrument names are always shown on a single line.

Staff labels are right-aligned by default, so appear at the right edge of the text editing area.

NOTE

Staff labels always use the alignment set for the paragraph style, they do not use the alignment set in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog. This ensures consistent alignment across the whole system.

9 **Show transposition**

Allows you to choose when the transposition is shown in the instrument name for the selected instrument. It is common to see the transposition included in the name of transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in B♭.

You can choose when the transposition is shown from the following options:

- **Always**: Instrument transpositions are shown even if you have chosen to hide them on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.
- **Follow Layout Options**: Instrument transpositions can be hidden and shown, depending on your per-layout settings in **Layout Options**.
- **Never**: Instrument transpositions are never shown, even if you have chosen to show them in **Layout Options**.

10 **Save as default for instrument**

Activating the checkbox saves your changes in the dialog as the default. This affects all new instruments of that type that you add to the project and all future projects. It does not affect any existing instruments of that type unless you reset their names.

11 **Reset to Default**

Removes all your changes to the names of the selected instrument type and reverts them to the current default settings. If you changed the default name for an instrument type after adding an instrument, resetting its names changes them to your new default names.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Resetting instrument names on page 109
Staff labels on page 797
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799

Resetting instrument names

You can reset all your changes to the names of individual instruments and revert them to the current default settings for their instrument type.

NOTE

Resetting instrument names does not change the name shown at the top of part layouts. If you want to change the name used at the top of part layouts, rename the layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel, click the disclosure arrow in the card of the player holding the instrument whose names you want to reset.

   This expands the card to show the instruments held by the player.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Names** to open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.
3. Click **Reset to Default**.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The instrument names for the selected instrument are reset to the current default settings for its instrument type. If you changed the default name for the instrument type after adding the instrument, resetting its names changes them to your new default names.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Reset Instrument Names** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which resets all instrument names in the project to their default settings.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 51
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
Renaming layouts on page 105

Flow names and flow titles

Whenever you add a flow to a project, the default name of a flow is **Flow** plus an incremental number. In Dorico for iPad, flows have both a flow name and a flow title, which are the same by default but can be different if, for example, you want to organize sketch versions of flows without affecting their displayed titles in the music.

Flow names

Set either in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode or in the flows list in the **Project Info** dialog.

Flow titles

Set in the **Title** field for each flow in the **Project Info** dialog.

Flow titles automatically match the flow name until you change the flow title independently. Changing flow titles removes the link between their flow title and flow name.

Titles shown in layouts are linked to the **Title** fields in the **Project Info** dialog, using the **{@projectTitle@}** and **{@flowTitle@}** tokens. This allows you to organize flows with different names to their displayed title in the music.

TIP

You can change both flow names and flow titles in the **Project Info** dialog, and you can also change flow names in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode.

RELATED LINKS
Text tokens on page 355
Project Info dialog on page 61
Flows panel on page 60

Renaming flows

You can change the names of flows in Setup mode. This automatically updates the title of the corresponding flow until you change the title in the **Project Info** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Flows** panel in Setup mode, double-click the card of the flow you want to rename to open the flow name text field.
2. Enter a new name for the flow or edit the existing name.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The name of the flow is changed. If you have not entered a different title for the flow in the **Project Info** dialog, the title shown in the music area is updated to match the new flow name.

TIP

You can also rename flows in the **Project Info** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Flows panel on page 60

Changing flow titles

You can change flow titles in the **Project Info** dialog. Once you have done so, flow titles are no longer automatically changed if you change their flow name.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the **Project Info** dialog in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-I**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Project Info**.
2. Select the flow whose title you want to change in the flows list.
3. Enter a new title in the **Title** field.
4. Optional: Repeat steps 2 and 3 for other flows in your project.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The titles of the selected flows are changed.

NOTE

This breaks the link between flow names and the title shown in the music area.

RELATED LINKS
Project Info dialog on page 61

Write mode

Write mode allows you to input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. The available toolboxes and panels allow you to input all the notes and notation items that are most commonly used.

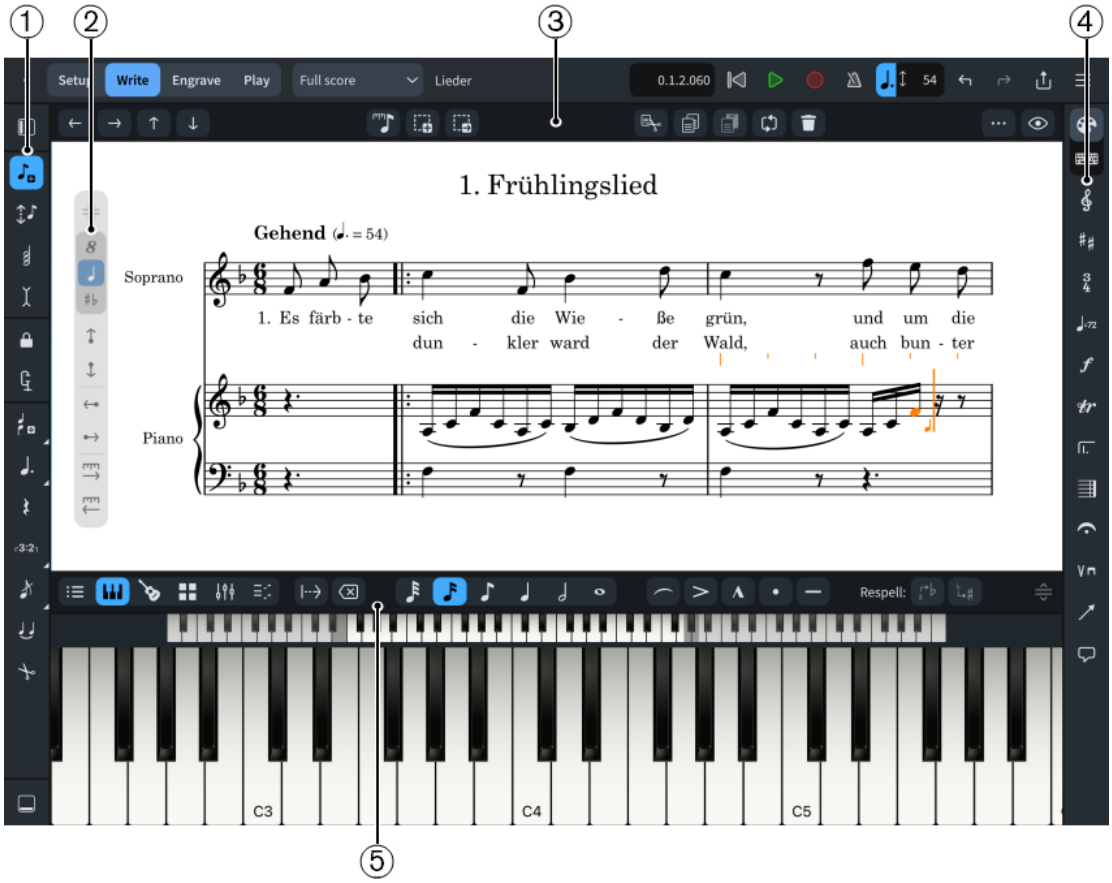
By design, you cannot move notes and items graphically in Write mode. Graphical adjustments are only possible in Engrave mode in Dorico Pro.

Project window in Write mode

The project window in Write mode contains toolboxes and panels with the tools and functions required to write your music.

You can switch to Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-2**.
- In the toolbar, click **Write**.



The following panels and toolboxes are available in Write mode:

1 Notes toolbox

Contains tools that affect note input and editing. Allows you to hide/show the left zone and lower zone.

The Notes panel in the left zone provides the note durations, accidentals, and articulations that are most commonly used during note input.

2 **Edit Notes Overlay**

Contains options for changing the pitch, rhythmic position, and duration of selected notes, both during note input and for existing notes.

3 **Secondary toolbar**

Contains navigation and edit options, such as **Copy**, **Paste**, and **Delete**. Allows you to access the context menu and **View Options** dialog.

4 **Notations toolbox**

Contains either panel or popover buttons, depending on whether **Panels** or **Popovers** is active.

Allows you to show panels for different notations in the right zone, open popovers, and input certain items directly, such as rehearsal marks and text.

5 **Lower zone**

Can display different panels, according to the current selection in the lower zone toolbar. Panels in the lower zone include the Properties panel, which allows you to make individual modifications to the currently selected notes and notations, and the Keyboard panel, which allows you to input notes.

NOTE

If the property scope is set to **Locally**, changing local properties only affects the current layout and frame chain. You can set the property scope to **Globally** if you want subsequent changes to local properties to affect all layouts and frame chains.

RELATED LINKS
Notes panel on page 117
Edit Notes Overlay on page 321
Notations toolbox on page 121
Right zone (Write mode) on page 124
Lower zone (Write mode) on page 125
Properties panel (Write mode) on page 126

Notes toolbox

The tools in the Notes toolbox allow you to start note input, modify notes, and change the type and scope of notes you input. The Notes toolbox is located on the left of the window in Write mode.

Show Left Zone

Hides/Shows the left zone. If you show the left zone when the lower zone is shown, the lower zone is automatically hidden.

Start Note Input

Starts/Stops note input by showing/hiding the caret. If a note, rest, or item is selected in the music area, note input starts at the selected rhythmic position. If nothing is selected in the music area, note input starts at the earliest rhythmic position on the top staff in view.

Pitch Before Duration

When this option is activated, you can select the pitch before specifying the duration during note input. This allows you to experiment with pitches without having to stop note input because you only input the note when you specify the duration.

You can also activate/deactivate **Pitch Before Duration** by pressing **K**.

Chords

Allows you to add multiple notes at the same rhythmic position in order to build a chord during note input. This function prevents the caret from advancing automatically after inputting a note. Chord mode also affects edits you make outside of note input, such as copying and pasting notes and items without overwriting any existing notes or items.

You can also start/stop chord input by pressing **Q**.

Insert

Allows you to insert notes before existing notes in the current voice ahead of the caret, instead of overwriting them, during note input. Insert mode also affects edits you make outside of note input, such as deleting notes or changing their duration. For example, reducing the duration of notes with Insert mode activated pulls them closer together without leaving rests between the notes. This applies to the selected voice only.

When inputting or changing time signatures, Insert mode instructs Dorico for iPad to add any extra beats required to fill bars.

You can also activate/deactivate Insert mode by pressing **I**.

Lock to Duration

Allows you to maintain the duration of notes while you change their pitches. Only available during note input.

You can also activate/deactivate **Lock to Duration** by pressing **L**.

Force Duration

Allows you to input notes/rests with the explicit duration you have selected during note input, and fixes the current notated duration of existing notes outside of note input. For example, you can activate **Force Duration** to force the input of a dotted quarter note on the second quarter beat of 4/4, where Dorico for iPad splits the note with a tie by default.

IMPORTANT

You can get unexpected results if you force the duration of notes and later change the time signature or move barlines, for example.

You can remove **Force Duration** from selected notes by resetting their appearance.

You can also activate/deactivate **Force Duration** by pressing **O**.

Create Voice

Allows you to create a new voice on the current staff into which you can input notes. Only available during note input.

You can click and hold **Create Voice** to access the following options:

- **Create Voice** : Creates a new voice on the current staff. You can also use the key command **Shift-V**.
- **Create Slash Voice** : Creates a new slash voice with each click. For example, the third new slash voice is stemless. You can also use the key command **Shift-Opt-V**.
- **Next Voice** : Cycles through active voices on the staff. You can also use the key command **V**.

Dotted Notes

Allows you to input dotted notes/rests based on the currently selected duration during note input. Outside of note input, allows you to add rhythm dots to, and remove rhythm dots from, existing notes/rests.

You can click and hold **Dotted Notes** to access the following options:

- **One Rhythm Dot** : Inputs notes/rests with one rhythm dot during note input. Adds one rhythm dot to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Two Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with two rhythm dots during note input. Adds two rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Three Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with three rhythm dots during note input. Adds three rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Four Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with four rhythm dots during note input. Adds four rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.

You can also activate/deactivate **Dotted Notes** by pressing **.**. You can cycle through the different numbers of rhythm dots by pressing **Opt-.**.

Rests

Allows you to input rests of the currently selected duration instead of notes.

You can also start/stop rest input by pressing **,**.

NOTE

If **Force Duration** is not activated, Dorico for iPad automatically combines adjacent rests as appropriate for their position in relation to notes and according to the current meter.

Tuplets

Inputs a triplet based on the currently selected note duration at the caret position or at the selected rhythmic position.

You can click and hold **Tuplets** to access the following options:

- **2:3** : Inputs a duplet, that is, two notes in the space of three.

- **3:2** : Inputs a triplet, that is, three notes in the space of two.
- **4:3** : Inputs a quadruplet, that is, four notes in the space of three.
- **5:4** : Inputs a quintuplet, that is, five notes in the space of four.
- **6:4** : Inputs a sextuplet, that is, six notes in the space of four.
- **7:8** : Inputs a septuplet, that is, seven notes in the space of eight.
- **x:y** : Opens the tuplets popover, into which you can enter any tuplet ratio.

Grace Notes

Allows you to input grace notes instead of normal notes at the caret position. Only available during note input.

You can click and hold **Grace Notes** to access the following options:

- **Unslashed Grace Notes** : Selects unslashed grace notes.
- **Slashed Grace Notes** : Selects slashed grace notes.

You can also start/stop grace note input by pressing **/**.

Tie

During note input, this ties the next note you input to the previous note of the same pitch, in the same voice, and on the same staff. Outside of note input, you can use this tool to tie together notes of the same pitch in different voices or to tie grace notes to rhythmic notes.

You can also activate **Tie** by pressing **T**.

NOTE

You cannot deactivate **Tie**. If you want to delete ties, you must use **Scissors**.

Scissors

Splits notes and explicit rests in two at the caret position during note input. Outside of note input, it deletes all ties in tie chains.

You can also activate **Scissors** by pressing **U**.

Show Lower Zone

Hides/Shows the lower zone. If you show the lower zone when either the left or right zone is shown, that zone is automatically hidden.

RELATED LINKS

Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 155
Inputting chords on page 174
Inputting grace notes on page 173
Inputting tuplets on page 177
Tuplets popover on page 179
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Resetting the appearance of items on page 327

Notes panel

The Notes panel contains buttons that allow you to select note and rest durations, and to input accidentals, slurs, and articulations. It is located on the left of the window in Write mode.

You can hide/show the Notes panel in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-7**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Left Zone**.

The upper part of the Notes panel contains note durations that you can select for input or to change the duration of existing notes. By default, only the most common note durations are shown. You can see all note durations by clicking the **Show/Hide All Notes** disclosure arrows at the top and bottom of the section.

In the middle part of the Notes panel, you can activate/deactivate accidentals and activate slurs.

In the bottom part of the Notes panel, you can activate/deactivate articulations.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Write mode on page 112
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting accidentals on page 168
Inputting articulations on page 194
Inputting slurs on page 195
Inputting nested slurs on page 783
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Deleting accidentals on page 409
Deleting articulations on page 420

Secondary toolbar (Write mode)

The secondary toolbar contains options that allow you to perform common operations when inputting and editing music, such as moving the caret, copying and pasting notes/items, and accessing the context menu. It is located at the top of the project window, below the toolbar.

In Write mode, the secondary toolbar contains the following options:

Navigate Left

During note input, allows you to move the caret to the left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Outside of note input, allows you to move the selection to the previous item or note in the same voice.

Navigate Right

During note input, allows you to move the caret to the right according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Outside of note input, allows you to move the selection to the next item or note in the same voice.

Navigate Up

During note input, allows you to move the caret to the staff above.

Outside of note input, allows you to move the selection to the closest note above the current selection. This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the lowest note/rest on the staff above. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the bottom note in the chord selected.

Navigate Down

During note input, allows you to move the caret to the staff below.

Outside of note input, allows you to move the selection to the closest note below the current selection. This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the highest note/rest on the staff below. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the top note in the chord selected.

Rhythmic Grid

Allows you to change the rhythmic grid resolution, which affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move. The button updates to show the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Add to Selection

Allows you to select additional notes/items without deselecting any notes/items already selected. Equivalent to **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking notes/items.

Extend Selection

Allows you to select everything between your first selection and subsequent selections. Equivalent to **Shift**-clicking notes/items.

Cut

Copies the selected notes/items to your clipboard and deletes them from their original positions.

Copy

Copies the selected notes/items to your clipboard.

Paste

Pastes the notes/items on your clipboard to the selected position.

Repeat

Repeats the selected notes/items directly after themselves.

Delete

Deletes the selected notes/items.

Context Menu

Allows you to access the context menu, which contains different options depending on your current selection.

View Options

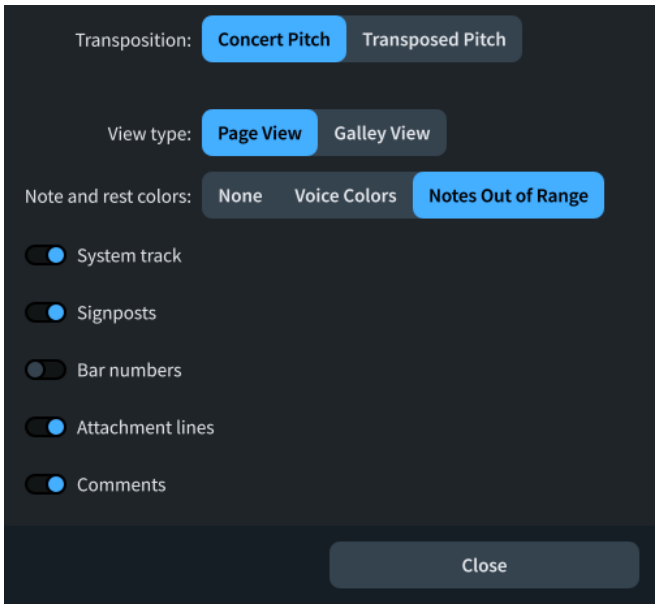
Opens the **View Options** dialog, which allows you to change the transposition of the layout and hide/show visual elements.

RELATED LINKS
View types on page 27
Caret on page 140
Navigation on page 329
Rhythmic grid on page 139
Arranging tools on page 333
Project window on page 22
Toolbar on page 23
Secondary toolbar (Engrave mode) on page 351

View Options dialog

The **View Options** dialog allows you to change the presentation of the current layout in the music area and the visual elements shown, including signposts and note and rest colors.

- You can open the **View Options** dialog in Write mode by clicking **View Options** in the secondary toolbar.



The **View Options** dialog contains the following options:

Transposition

Allows you to change the transposition of the current layout to concert pitch or transposed pitch.

View type

Allows you to change the view type of the current layout to page view or galley view.

NOTE

The view type is reset to your default setting when you switch layouts.

Note and rest colors

Allows you to hide/show colors for voices or notes out of range in all layouts.

System track

Allows you to hide/show the system track in all layouts.

Signposts

Allows you to hide/show signposts in all layouts.

Bar numbers

Allows you to hide/show guide bar numbers in the current layout.

Attachment lines

Allows you to hide/show attachment lines in all layouts.

Comments

Allows you to hide/show comments in all layouts.

RELATED LINKS
View types on page 27
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
System track on page 316
Signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 438
Comments on page 343

Notations toolbox

The Notations toolbox allows you to access panels and popovers, which you can use to input the different notations available. It is located on the right of the window in Write mode.

Panels

Allows you to access panels from the Notations toolbox. Panels allow you to input notations by clicking them in the panel.

Popovers

Allows you to access popovers from the Notations toolbox. Popovers allow you to input notations by typing entries on your computer keyboard. Popovers open above the top staff on which the caret is active or an item is selected, and at the caret position or the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

NOTE

Popovers are only available during note input or when at least one note/item is selected in the music area.

Panel buttons

Clefs

Hides/Shows the Clefs panel, which contains sections for clefs and octave lines.

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals

Hides/Shows the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel, which contains sections for key signatures, tonality systems, and accidentals. You can also create and edit custom tonality systems from this panel.

Time Signatures (Meter)

Hides/Shows the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, which contains sections for the different types of time signatures, including a section where you can create custom time signatures, such as interchangeable time signatures and time signatures with pick-up bars.

Tempo

Hides/Shows the Tempo panel, which contains sections for the different types of tempo changes, including gradual tempo changes, metronome marks, and tempo equations.

Dynamics

Hides/Shows the Dynamics panel, which contains sections for the different types of dynamics, including immediate, gradual, and custom combined dynamics.

Ornaments

Hides/Shows the Ornaments panel, which contains sections for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and guitar techniques.

Repeat Structures

Hides/Shows the Repeat Structures panel, which contains sections for the different types of repeat structures, including repeat endings and segments, repeat markers, single-note and multi-note tremolos, bar repeats, and slash regions.

Bars and Barlines

Hides/Shows the Bars and Barlines panel, which contains sections for bars, bar rests, and barlines.

Holds and Pauses

Hides/Shows the Holds and Pauses panel, which contains sections for fermatas, breath marks, and caesuras.

Playing Techniques

Hides/Shows the Playing Techniques panel, which contains sections for the various instrument family groups. Each section contains playing techniques for the corresponding instrument family.

Lines

Hides/Shows the Lines panel, which contains sections for horizontal and vertical lines.

Comments

Hides/Shows the Comments panel, which allows you to view, edit, and export comments in the current flow.

Popover and direct input buttons

Clefs

Opens/Closes the clefs and octave lines popover.

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals

Opens/Closes the key signatures popover.

Time Signatures (Meter)

Opens/Closes the time signatures popover.

Tempo

Opens/Closes the tempo popover.

Dynamics

Opens/Closes the dynamics popover.

Ornaments

Opens/Closes the ornaments popover.

Repeat Structures

Opens/Closes the repeats popover.

Bars and Barlines

Opens/Closes the bars and barlines popover.

Holds and Pauses

Opens/Closes the holds and pauses popover.

Playing Techniques

Opens/Closes the playing techniques popover.

Rehearsal Marks

Inputs a rehearsal mark.

Text

Opens the text editor for inputting text objects.

Lyrics

Opens the lyrics popover.

Chord Symbols

Opens the chord symbols popover.

Note Tools

Opens the note tools popover.

Fingering

Opens the fingerings popover.

Figured Bass

Opens the figured bass popover.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Write mode on page 112
Notations input on page 194
Note tools popover on page 181
Text editor options in Write mode on page 290
Comment dialog on page 345

Right zone (Write mode)

The right zone in Write mode can display different panels for the available notation items, according to your selection in the Notations toolbox. You can use panels in the right zone to input notations. The right zone is located on the right of the window in Write mode.

You can hide/show the right zone in any of the following ways, for example, if you want to find a notation to input but then want to increase the size of the music area after inputting it:

- Press **Cmd-9**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click the button for any panel you want to show, or the active button for the panel you want to hide.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Write mode on page 112
Hiding/Showing zones on page 31
Clefs panel on page 241
Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on page 201
Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 207
Tempo panel on page 215
Dynamics panel on page 228
Ornaments panel on page 253
Repeat Structures panel on page 304
Bars and Barlines panel on page 222
Holds and Pauses panel on page 246
Playing Techniques panel on page 276
Lines panel on page 286
Comments panel on page 345

Lower zone (Write mode)

The lower zone in Write mode can display different panels for inputting notes and editing notes/items.

You can use the panel selectors in the top left of the lower zone to display the corresponding panel:

Properties

Shows the Properties panel, which allows you to edit individual notes and notations, such as by changing their appearance or position.

Keyboard

Shows the Keyboard panel, which allows you to input notes using a piano keyboard layout and displays the pitches of selected notes as depressed keys.

Fretboard

Shows the Fretboard panel, which allows you to input notes for fretted instruments using the corresponding fretboard layout for the selected instrument type.

Drum Pads

Shows the Drum Pads panel, which allows you to input notes for unpitched percussion instruments using a drum pads layout.

Mixer

Shows the Mixer panel, which allows you to control the sounds produced in playback by instruments in the project, both for the master output and each individual instrument's channel.

Key Editor

Shows the Key Editor panel, which allows you to view and edit notes belonging to the selected instrument in a continuous piano roll.

RELATED LINKS

Project window in Write mode on page 112
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Mixer panel on page 132
Key Editor panel on page 134
Note input on page 140
Notations input on page 194

Properties panel (Write mode)

The Properties panel in Write mode provides options that allow you to edit individual notes and notations, such as by changing their appearance or position. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

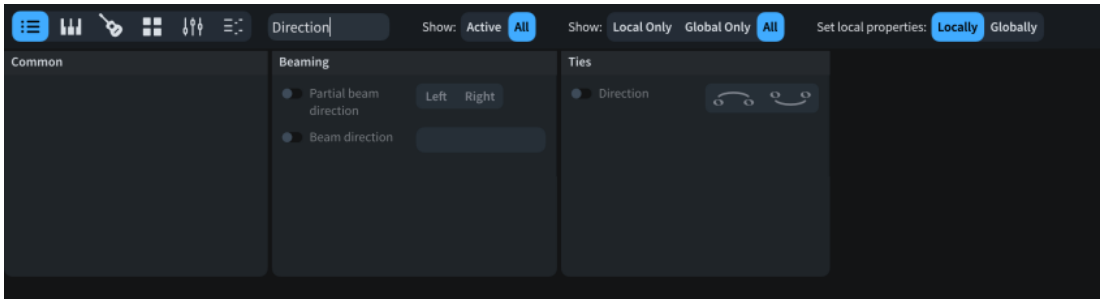
You can hide/show the Properties panel in Write mode and Engrave mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-8**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**, then choose **Properties** in the lower zone.

The Properties panel contains a group of properties for each notation item. When you select a note or item in the music area, the Properties panel displays the groups and options that you might require to edit the selected note or item. If there are more available groups than can fit in the panel simultaneously, you can scroll to the right/left along the displayed groups.

NOTE

- If you select multiple different types of notation items, only the groups that they have in common are displayed. For example, if you select a slur, the **Common** and **Slurs** groups are displayed in the Properties panel. However, if you select a slur and a note, only the **Common** group is displayed.
- If the property scope is set to **Locally**, changing local properties only affects the current layout and frame chain. You can set the property scope to **Globally** if you want subsequent changes to local properties to affect all layouts and frame chains.
- You can only change the properties of complete notes and items. For example, you can only change the line style of whole pedal lines, even if they extend across multiple systems.



Properties panel in Write mode, filtered by a search term

The Properties panel toolbar contains the following options:

Search

Allows you to filter properties according to your entry.

Show (active status)

Allows you to filter properties according to their activated status.

- **Active**: Shows only activated properties.
- **All**: Shows all properties.

Show (property scope)

Allows you to filter properties according to their property scope.

- **Local Only**: Shows only local properties.
- **Global Only**: Shows only global properties.

- **All**: Shows all properties.

Set local properties

Allows you to change the scope of subsequent local properties you change.

- **Locally**: Local properties only take effect locally.
- **Globally**: Local properties take effect globally.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Write mode on page 112
Changing the property scope on page 128
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 34
Resetting the appearance of items on page 327
Resetting the position of items on page 328

Local vs. global properties

Properties can affect items only in the current layout and frame chain or in all layouts and frame chains. This allows you to have the same items appear differently in different layouts, such as if you want to show gradual dynamics as hairpins in part layouts but as “cresc.” text in full score layouts.

Local properties

Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific. By default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts or other frame chains.

You can force local properties to apply globally by changing the property scope in the Properties panel to **Globally** before changing their setting. Local properties that have been set globally appear with a bolder font in the Properties panel than local properties that have been set locally. You can also show only local properties in the Properties panel by using the property scope filter.

NOTE

Changing local properties with the property scope set to **Globally** overrides any local settings for those properties for the selected notes or items in other layouts.

Global properties

Global properties affect items in all layouts and frame chains, including new layouts you subsequently create. They appear with a bolder font in the Properties panel than local properties. You can also show only global properties in the Properties panel by using the property scope filter.

RELATED LINKS
Layouts on page 99
Music frame chains on page 369
Properties panel (Write mode) on page 126
Properties panel (Engrave mode) on page 349

Changing the property scope

You can change the property scope of local properties, for example, if you want the subsequent properties you change to affect all layouts and frame chains.

PROCEDURE

- In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Set local properties**:
  - **Locally**
  - **Globally**

RESULT

The property scope is changed. All subsequent local properties you change take effect only in the current layout and frame chain if you chose **Locally**, or in all layouts and frame chains if you chose **Globally**.

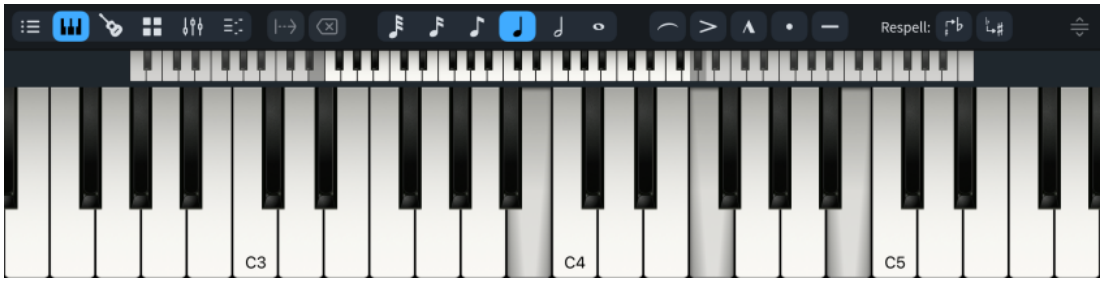
Keyboard panel

The Keyboard panel allows you to input notes using a piano keyboard layout and displays the pitches of selected notes as depressed keys. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Keyboard panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico for iPad plays the notes you press using the instrument sounds of your most recent selection but does not input them.

You can hide/show the Keyboard panel in Write mode and Play mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-8**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**, then choose **Keyboard** in the lower zone.



Between the toolbar and the keyboard, there is a keyboard range selector. The brighter keys indicate the keys shown in the panel. The shaded keys at each end of the range allow you to change the keys shown in the panel, for example, if you want to show fewer, wider keys.

The Keyboard panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret

Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left

Deletes the selected notes/items. During note input, deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position.

You can also delete notes/items by pressing **Backspace**.

Set Note Duration

Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

Slur

Inputs a slur, starting from the currently selected note or spanning the selected notes. During note input, slurs extend automatically as you input notes.

You can also input slurs by pressing **S**.

Set Articulation

Allows you to activate/deactivate articulations, both for the next notes you input during note input and to add articulations to existing notes.

You can also activate/deactivate articulations by pressing the corresponding key command.

NOTE

Notes cannot have both accent and marcato articulations, or both staccato and tenuto articulations.

Respell Using Note Name Above

Respells the selected notes upwards to show the enharmonic equivalent using the note name above, for example, respelling F♯ as G♭.

Respell Using Note Name Below

Respells the selected notes downwards to show the enharmonic equivalent using the note name below, such as respelling G♭ as F♯.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 140
Notes panel on page 117
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting chords on page 174
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Inputting slurs on page 195
Inputting articulations on page 194
Respelling notes on page 183

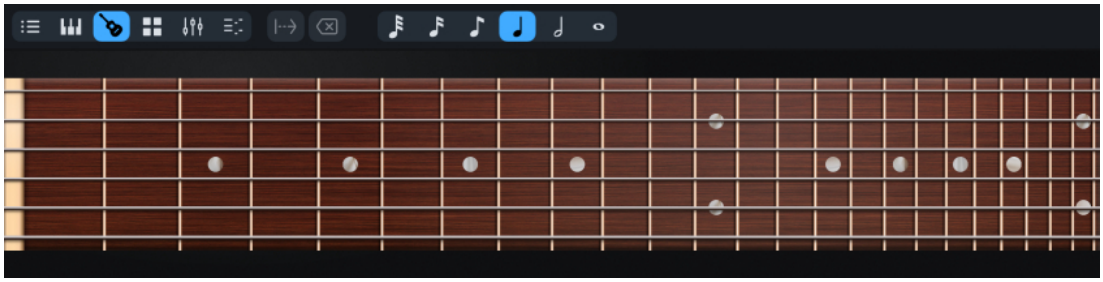
Fretboard panel

The Fretboard panel allows you to input notes for fretted instruments using the corresponding fretboard layout for the selected instrument type. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Fretboard panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico for iPad plays the notes you press using the instrument sounds of your most recent selection but does not input them.

You can hide/show the Fretboard panel in Write mode and Play mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-8**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**, then choose **Fretboard** in the lower zone.



The Fretboard panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret

Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

NOTE

When inputting notes using the Fretboard panel, the caret never advances automatically.

Delete Left

Deletes the selected notes/items. During note input, deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position.

You can also delete notes/items by pressing **Backspace**.

Set Note Duration

Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 140
Notes panel on page 117
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting notes on tablature on page 166
Inputting chords on page 174
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Fretted instrument tuning on page 78
Tablature on page 815
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 816

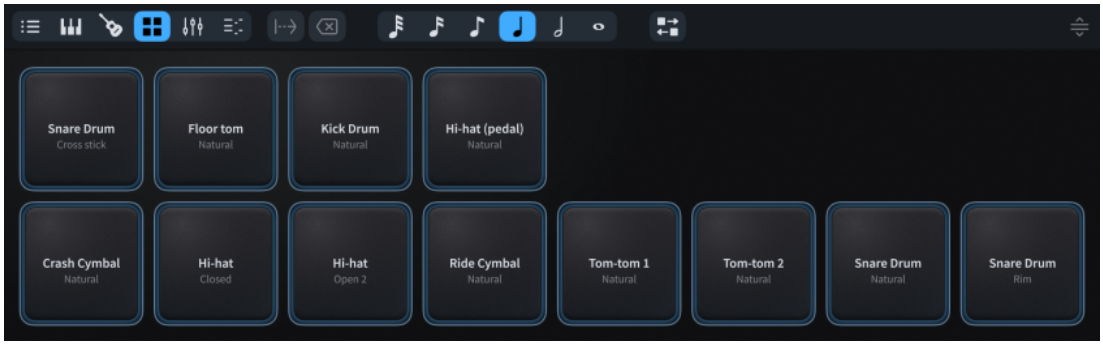
Drum Pads panel

The Drum Pads panel allows you to input notes for unpitched percussion instruments using a drum pads layout. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Drum Pads panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico for iPad plays sounds for the instruments and techniques you press but does not input them.

You can hide/show the Drum Pads panel in Write mode and Play mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-8**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**, then choose **Drum Pads** in the lower zone.



The Drum Pads panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret

Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left

Deletes the selected notes/items. During note input, deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position.

You can also delete notes/items by pressing **Backspace**.

Set Note Duration

Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

Reorder Drum Pads

Allows you to move drum pads in relation to each other, for example, to create a different arrangement for easier input in different circumstances.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 140
Notes panel on page 117
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Unpitched percussion on page 883
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 884
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Voices in percussion kits on page 899

Mixer panel

The Mixer panel allows you to control the sounds produced in playback by instruments in the project, both for the master output and each individual instrument's channel. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

You can hide/show the Mixer panel in Write, Engrave, and Play modes in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-8**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**, then choose **Mixer** in the lower zone.

The Mixer panel toolbar contains the following options:

Deactivate All Mute States

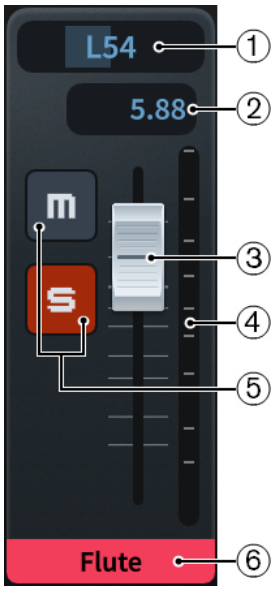
Allows you to deactivate all mute instrument states. Indicates whether any instruments have an active mute state.

Deactivate All Solo States

Allows you to deactivate all solo instrument states. Indicates whether any instruments have an active solo state.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.



Each channel in the Mixer panel provides the following controls and displays:

1 **Pan**

Allows you to position the sound of the track on the stereo spectrum for stereo playback.

2 **Fader value**

Displays the current volume value corresponding to the position of the fader.

3 **Fader**

Allows you to control the volume level of the track.

4 **Channel meter**

Indicates the output volume of the channel in real time.

5 **Mute/Solo**

Allows you to mute/solo the track. Indicates whether the corresponding track has an active solo or mute state.

6 **Channel name**

Displays the name of the channel.

Key Editor panel

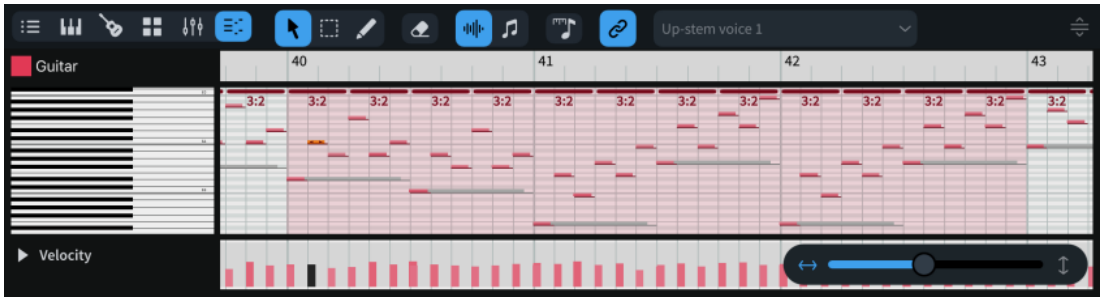
The Key Editor panel allows you to view and edit notes belonging to the selected instrument in a continuous piano roll. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

In the Key Editor panel, notes are positioned vertically according to their pitch, as indicated by a piano keyboard on the left. Notes are positioned horizontally according to their rhythm and duration.

The slider allows you to change the zoom manually, such as making notes wider and/or taller. You can click the buttons at each end to switch between horizontal and vertical zoom.

You can hide/show the Key Editor panel in Write mode and Play mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-8**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**, then choose **Key Editor** in the lower zone.



The Key Editor panel toolbar contains the following options:

Object Selection

Allows you to select events, such as notes in the piano roll and velocity bars.

Marquee Tool

Allows you to drag a rectangle to select multiple notes.

Draw

Allows you to input and edit notes in the piano roll editor and drum editor. You can click and drag in the piano roll editor to input notes with the durations you want. The ends of the notes you draw snap to rhythmic positions according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Also allows you to edit velocity bars.

Line

Allows you to draw straight lines across velocity bars to edit the values of all velocity bars in the range. Only available when the velocity lane is expanded.

Transform

Allows you to marquee select and edit a range of velocity bars. Only available when the velocity lane is expanded.

Erase

Deletes the selected notes.

Played Durations

Allows you to change when notes start/end in playback without affecting their notated durations. Displays the played durations of notes as a lighter event, above a thinner line that shows their notated duration.

Notated Durations

Allows you to change the rhythmic duration of notes, which affects the position and notation of those notes. Displays the full, notated durations of notes as single events.

Rhythmic Grid

Allows you to change the rhythmic grid resolution for the key editor, which affects the duration of notes you input in the key editor, the number of grid lines, and certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which notes move. The button updates to show the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Link

Automatically fits notes in the selected voice into the piano roll, with a highlighted region showing the boundaries of the corresponding system.

Voice selector

Allows you to select the voice whose notes you want to appear highlighted in the piano roll and into which you want to input notes. Automatically updates according to your current selection.

Only available when **Link** is deactivated.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Selecting multiple items using marquee selections on page 315
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341

Notation Options dialog

The **Notation Options** dialog allows you to change how music is notated by default in each flow independently. For example, there are options for beam, note, and rest grouping, voices, accidentals, and condensing.

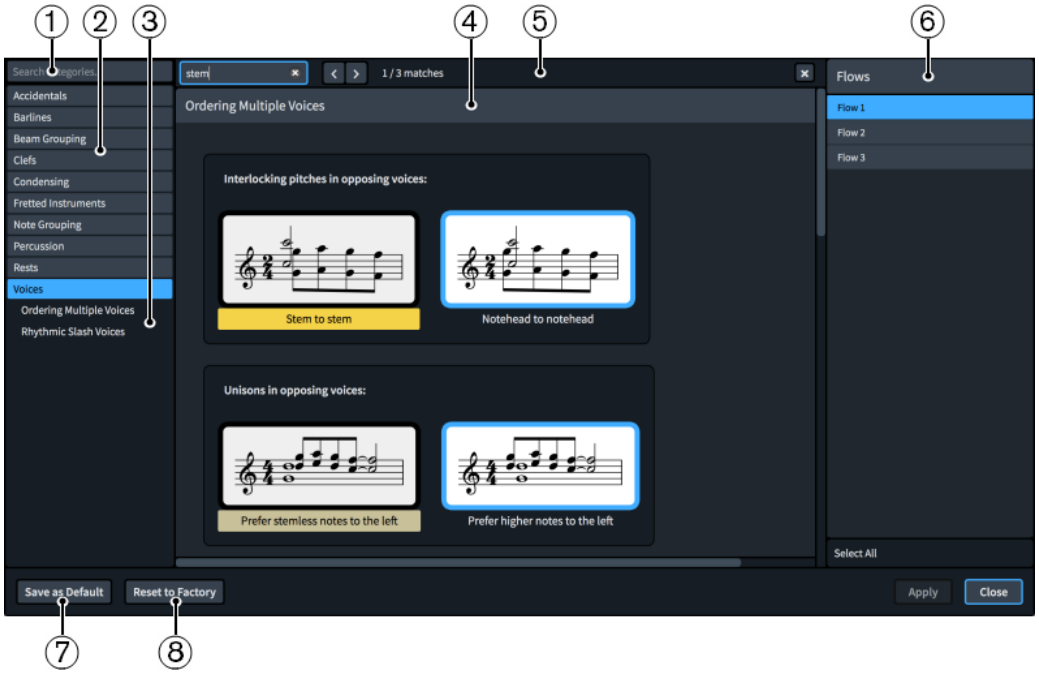
Options in **Notation Options** affect only the selected flows but apply to all layouts in which those flows appear.

NOTE

- Only available when you are subscribed.
- If you want to change notes and notations individually, you can use properties in the Properties panel.

You can open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
- In Setup mode, click **Notation Options** in the **Flows** panel.



The **Notation Options** dialog contains the following:

1 Search categories field

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 **Category list**

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 **Section titles**

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 **Section**

Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

5 **Search pages bar**

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match**: Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Cmd-Shift-G**.
- **Next match**: Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Cmd-G**.
- **Close**: Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 **Flows list**

Contains all the flows in your project. By default, the flow in which you have selected an item in the music area or that is selected in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode is selected when you open the dialog. You can select multiple flows in any of the following ways:

- Click **Select All** in the action bar to select all flows in the project.
- Click and drag across multiple flows.

7 **Save as Default**

Saves all options currently set in the dialog as the default for new projects.

8 **Reset to Factory/Reset to Saved Defaults**

This button has different functions depending on whether you have existing saved defaults.

- If you have no saved defaults, **Reset to Factory** resets all the options in the dialog back to the default factory settings.
- If you have existing saved defaults, **Reset to Saved Defaults** resets all the options in the dialog back to your saved defaults.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Flows on page 96
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 34

Inputting vs. editing

Dorico for iPad distinguishes the processes for inputting and editing music.

Inputting

If you can see the caret, you are inputting new music. The caret must be activated in order to input notes and notations. If the caret is activated, selecting tools or items in the Notes toolbox and the Notes panel affects the note or chord that you are about to input, as you can specify the duration, rhythm dot, accidentals, and articulations. Then you specify the pitch by clicking the note into the score, by pressing the letter name of the note on your computer keyboard, or by playing the note or chord on your MIDI keyboard.

When the caret is activated, notes and notations are input at the caret position.

If no notes or chords are selected in the music area and you select a duration, either by pressing its key command or by clicking it in the Notes panel, mouse input is activated. If you move the mouse pointer over the staff, a shadow note is displayed to indicate where the note will be input if you click.

NOTE

Deactivating mouse input prevents Dorico for iPad from starting mouse input in this circumstance.

Editing

If you cannot see the caret, you can edit existing music. Editing music includes deleting notes and notations, which you can only do in Write mode, although you can also delete notes in Play mode but not notations. You can switch back and forth between inputting and editing at any time.

When the caret is not activated, new items are input at the position of the first selected item in the music area. If there is no selection, the mouse pointer is loaded with the new item. The item is then created at the location where you click.

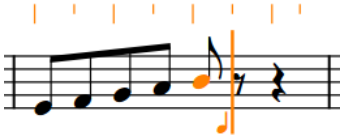
To edit existing notes and notations, you must select them in the music area. This allows you to update the selected notes or items when you select, for example, new note durations, accidentals, or articulations in the Notes panel.

We recommend that you spend a moment to understand the difference between how Dorico for iPad behaves if the caret is shown and if it is not. In the latter case, all editing functions operate on the items that you have selected in the music area.

RELATED LINKS
Editing items on page 320
Selecting notes/items on page 313
Caret on page 140
Note input on page 140
Notations input on page 194

Rhythmic grid

The rhythmic grid is a unit of rhythmic duration whose value affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move. However, it does not control the duration of notes and items that you input.



Rhythmic grid set to eighth notes (quavers) shown above the staff

The current rhythmic grid resolution is indicated by the button in the toolbar and ruler markings above the staff on which the caret is active. Longer lines in the rhythmic grid indicate beat divisions, while shorter lines indicate beat subdivisions. In Play mode, the rhythmic grid is shown by the frequency of vertical lines in tracks and in the ruler at the top of the event display.

The rhythmic grid controls the following:

- The possible input positions when using the caret or the mouse, and when copying and pasting. For example, setting the rhythmic grid resolution to 32nd notes allows you to input notes and items at a greater number of possible rhythmic positions than when the rhythmic grid is set to quarter notes.
- The amount by which the caret moves when using **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow** on a computer keyboard or **Navigate Right** →/**Navigate Left** ← in the secondary toolbar.
- The amount by which notes and items are lengthened/shortened.
- The amount by which notes and items move.

You can change the rhythmic grid resolution at any time.

RELATED LINKS
Rhythmic position on page 19
Caret on page 140
Moving the caret manually on page 144
Inputting notes on page 145

Changing the rhythmic grid resolution

You can change the resolution of the rhythmic grid. The resolution is indicated by the button in the toolbar and beat divisions/subdivisions in the ruler markings above the caret.

The rhythmic grid resolution is set to eighth notes (quavers) by default.

PROCEDURE

- Change the resolution of the rhythmic grid in any of the following ways:
  - To decrease the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Opt-]**.
  - To increase the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Opt-[**.
  - In the secondary toolbar, click **Rhythmic Grid** and choose the resolution you want.

RESULT

Decreasing the rhythmic grid resolution makes it finer by making the note value shorter. Increasing the rhythmic grid resolution makes it coarser by making the note value longer.

TIP

You can assign your own key commands for increasing and decreasing the rhythmic grid resolution.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Assigning key commands on page 38

Note input

In Dorico for iPad, you can only input notes during note input, which is when the caret is activated. This reduces the risk of you adding notes to staves accidentally.

You can also input notations at the same time as inputting notes. Notations are input at the caret position or on the selected note.

You can input notes in different ways and using any of the following devices, including switching between them at any time:

- MIDI keyboard
- Computer keyboard
- Mouse or touchpad
- Keyboard, Fretboard, and Drum Pads panels

TIP

A MIDI keyboard can be the fastest way to input notes.

RELATED LINKS
Notes on page 591
Inputting notes on page 145
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 169
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Notations input on page 194

Caret

In Dorico for iPad, the caret is a vertical line that extends above and below five-line staves but appears shorter on percussion staves and tablature. It shows the rhythmic position at which notes, chords, or notation items are input, which can be partway through tie chains.

A caret is a mark that is commonly used when proofreading published text to denote the position at which something should be inserted or added, for example, a missing letter or a word. In software, the caret shows where something is inserted. The caret is also known as an “insertion point” or “cursor”. In this documentation, we use “caret” to refer to the line that appears during note input, and “cursor” to refer to the line that appears during text input.

If you are inputting notes, the caret advances to the next rhythmic position automatically. If you are inputting chords or notes on tablature, the caret does not move automatically, and you must move it to the next rhythmic position manually. The caret has a note symbol beside it, which

indicates the stem direction and type of the currently selected voice. It is accompanied by a + symbol if the voice is new.

The caret

The appearance of the caret changes depending on the input mode and the currently selected voice number.

Multiple staves

The caret extends vertically across all the staves onto which notes and notations will be input. This allows you to input, for example, the same dynamics or playing techniques on multiple staves simultaneously or play in chords on a MIDI keyboard and distribute the notes in those chords onto multiple staves. The note symbol and rhythmic grid also appear for each included staff.

Caret when inputting notes onto multiple staves

Insert

The caret shows V and inverted V shapes at the top and bottom. In Insert mode, inserted notes shift all music in the current voice after the caret along by the input duration instead of replacing existing notes. Similarly, reducing the duration of notes with Insert mode activated pulls them closer together without leaving rests between the notes.

Caret in Insert mode

Chords

The caret shows a plus symbol at the top left. During chord input, you can input multiple notes at the same rhythmic position.

Caret when inputting chords

Lock to Duration

The caret is dashed. **Lock to Duration** allows you to repitch notes without changing their duration or rhythm.

Caret when **Lock to Duration** is activated

Grace Notes

The caret is shorter than the default caret. It allows you to input grace notes at the caret position.

Caret when inputting grace notes

Voices

If you input multiple voices, the caret shows the following:

- A plus symbol at the bottom left
- The voice number into which you are inputting notes
- An up-stem note or a down-stem note symbol to indicate the stem direction of the voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new down-stem voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem voice

Slash voices

The note beside the caret indicates a slash notehead.

If you input multiple slash voices, the caret shows the following:

- A plus symbol on the left at the bottom

- The number of the slash voice into which you are about to input notes
- An up-stem slash note or a down-stem slash note symbol indicating the stem direction of the voice, and whether it has stems or is stemless

Caret when inputting notes into an up-stem slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, stemless slash voice

Percussion kits

The caret appears significantly smaller than usual when inputting notes into percussion kits. The name of the kit instrument into which you are currently inputting notes is shown above the rhythmic grid.

Caret when inputting notes into percussion kits

Tablature

The caret appears significantly smaller than usual when inputting notes into tablature. On tablature, the caret behaves as if chord input is always active, meaning you must advance the caret and move it to other string lines manually.

Caret when inputting notes on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 160
Inputting chords on page 174
Repitching notes without changing their rhythm on page 185
Inputting grace notes on page 173
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Inputting notes on tablature on page 166
Ties on page 839

Activating/Deactivating the caret

When the caret is activated, you can input notes and notations at the caret position, for example, if you want to input a dynamic in the middle of a tie chain. When the caret is deactivated, you cannot input notes, instead you can select and edit items in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. Activate the caret and start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select an item and press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click a rhythmic position on a staff.
2. Deactivate the caret and stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**, **Return**, or **Esc**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Switch to another mode.

RELATED LINKS
Moving the caret manually on page 144
Inputting notes on page 145
Notations input on page 194

Moving the caret manually

During normal note input, the caret moves automatically as you input notes, but you can also move it manually. For example, the caret does not move automatically when inputting chords or when using the Fretboard panel.

PROCEDURE

- Move the caret in any of the following ways:
  - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous note/rest, whichever is closest, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow** or click **Navigate Right** / **Navigate Left** in the secondary toolbar.
  - To advance the caret according to the note value currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
  - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Cmd-Left Arrow**.
  - To move the caret to the staff above/below, press **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow** or click **Navigate Up** / **Navigate Down** in the secondary toolbar.
  - To move the caret to the top/bottom staff in the system, press **Cmd-Up Arrow** / **Cmd-Down Arrow**.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting chords on page 174
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131

Inputting notes

You can input notes into your project during note input, which is when the caret is activated. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots, articulations, and accidentals not in the prevailing key signature before inputting notes. However, you can also select them after inputting notes. If you change this setting, you must perform step 7 before steps 4 to 6.
- You do not have to input rests between notes, as Dorico for iPad automatically shows implicit rests of the appropriate duration between the notes you input. Similarly, you do not have to input ties, as Dorico for iPad shows notes as tie chains if necessary.
- You can also input notations alongside notes without deactivating note input.

PREREQUISITE

- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.
- You have chosen the appropriate note-based notation input setting.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use for note input.
- If you want to input notes into multiple instruments held by a single player or instruments not visible in the score in page view, you are in **Galley View**.
- If your music requires a key signature, you have input that key signature.

PROCEDURE

1. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

     NOTE

     If you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input** in the Notes toolbox.
   - Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.
2. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
3. Optional: Select any required rhythm dots.
4. Optional: If you want to input a pitch whose accidental is not in the prevailing key signature, select the appropriate accidental.

5. Optional: Select any required articulations.
6. Input the pitches you want in any of the following ways:
   - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.

     TIP

     Dorico for iPad automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. However, you can force a different register.

     - To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Opt** as well as the letter for the note, for example, **Shift-Opt-A**.
     - To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl** as well as the letter for the note, for example, **Ctrl-A**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
   - Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.
7. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   TIP

   You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.
8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input with the selected duration at the caret position or where you click and are played back as you input them by default. Their pitch follows the prevailing key signature. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F♯ is input automatically.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them. However, accidentals not in the prevailing key signature are only added to the first note you input after selecting them.

Dorico for iPad notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the current time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico for iPad fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

If you input notes on notation staves belonging to fretted instruments, Dorico for iPad automatically allocates these notes to the strings on which they can be played closest to the nut. Because this calculation is done for each note separately, multiple notes can be allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

TIP

You can specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move notes to different rhythmic positions and other staves after they have been input.

You can also show brackets on noteheads individually.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 113
Edit Notes Overlay on page 321
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148
Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 151
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 169
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Notes panel on page 117
Rhythmic grid on page 139
Caret on page 140
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 155
Inputting accidentals on page 168
Inputting articulations on page 194
Inputting chords on page 174
Inputting rests on page 169
Inputting tuplets on page 177
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 181
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Notations input on page 194
Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection on page 319
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 817
Disabling MIDI input devices on page 193
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763
Ties on page 839
Key signatures on page 566
Arranging tools on page 333
Bracketed noteheads on page 601

Register selection during note input

Dorico for iPad automatically selects the register of pitches during note input, but you can override this and select the register manually.

During note input, Dorico for iPad automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. For example, if you input an F and then press **A**, an A is input a third above the F, rather than a sixth below.

You can override this automatic register selection in the following ways:

- To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Opt** as well as the letter for the note, for example, **Shift-Opt-A**.

- To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl** as well as the letter for the note, for example, **Ctrl-A**.

Register selection when inputting chords

During chord input, Dorico for iPad automatically inputs notes above the highest note at the caret position. For example, if you press **A** then **E** then **A**, a chord of A-E-A is input at the caret position.

You can input notes below the lowest note at the caret position instead by pressing **Ctrl** as well as the letter for the note name, for example, **Ctrl-A**.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 169

Inputting notes using pitch before duration

You can input notes into your project by specifying their pitch before their duration, meaning you can test pitches before inputting them without leaving note input. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

By default in Dorico for iPad, you must specify the duration before the pitch of notes.

NOTE

- These steps describe selecting the pitch before the duration when inputting notes. However, you can also specify the duration before the pitch instead, which is the default note input behavior in Dorico for iPad.
- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots, articulations, and accidentals not in the prevailing key signature before inputting notes. However, you can also select them after inputting notes. If you change this setting, you must perform steps 7 and 8 before steps 4 to 6.
- When inputting notes on tablature using pitch before duration, you must select note durations by clicking them in the Notes panel.
- You do not have to input rests between notes, as Dorico for iPad automatically shows implicit rests of the appropriate duration between the notes you input. Similarly, you do not have to input ties, as Dorico for iPad shows notes as tie chains if necessary.
- You can also input notations alongside notes without deactivating note input.

PREREQUISITE

- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.
- You have chosen the appropriate note-based notation input setting.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use for note input.
- If you want to input notes into multiple instruments held by a single player or instruments not visible in the score in page view, you are in **Galley View**.
- If your music requires a key signature, you have input that key signature.

PROCEDURE

1. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

NOTE

If you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.

- Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input** in the Notes toolbox.
- Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.

2. Activate **Pitch Before Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **K**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Pitch Before Duration**.
3. Optional: If you want to input a pitch whose accidental is not in the prevailing key signature, select the appropriate accidental.
4. Optional: Select any required articulations.
5. Optional: Select any required rhythm dots.
6. Select a pitch in any of the following ways:
   - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.

     TIP

     Dorico for iPad automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. However, you can force a different register.

     - To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Opt** as well as the letter for the note, for example, **Shift-Opt-A**.
     - To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl** as well as the letter for the note, for example, **Ctrl-A**.

     When inputting notes using pitch before duration, you can press these key commands multiple times to select higher/lower octaves.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
   - Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.

   Once you have selected a pitch, a shadow note of the corresponding pitch appears at the caret position. You can release the pitch after selecting it.
7. Select a note duration and input the note in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.

     NOTE

     When inputting notes on tablature, you must click durations in the Notes panel.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
8. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:

- Press **Space**.
- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

TIP

You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input with the selected duration at the caret position or where you click and are played back as you input them by default. Their pitch follows the prevailing key signature. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F♯ is input automatically.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them. However, accidentals not in the prevailing key signature are only added to the first note you input after selecting them.

Dorico for iPad notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the current time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico for iPad fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

If you input notes on notation staves belonging to fretted instruments, Dorico for iPad automatically allocates these notes to the strings on which they can be played closest to the nut. Because this calculation is done for each note separately, multiple notes can be allocated to the same string. Similarly, when you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

TIP

- You can switch between using pitch before duration and duration before pitch note input at any time by pressing **K** or clicking **Pitch Before Duration**, for example, duration before pitch can be easier when inputting a sequence of notes with the same duration.
- You can specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.
- You can change whether note input uses pitch before duration or duration before pitch by default on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move notes to different rhythmic positions and other staves after they have been input.

You can also show brackets on noteheads individually.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 151
Notes toolbox on page 113
Edit Notes Overlay on page 321
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Inputting notes on page 145

Register selection during note input on page 147
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 169
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Notes panel on page 117
Rhythmic grid on page 139
Caret on page 140
Notations input on page 194
Disabling MIDI input devices on page 193

Changing the note-based notation input setting

You can change your default setting for whether rhythm dots, accidentals, and articulations apply to the last input note or the next note you input during note input. This setting also affects whether or not the last input note remains selected after entry when using pitch before duration for inputting notes.

For example, changing the setting to **After inputting note** when using pitch before duration for notes ensures the last input note remains selected after you input it, making it easier to change its enharmonic spelling when inputting notes using a MIDI keyboard. The last input note is always selected when using duration before pitch for notes, regardless of your note-based notation input setting.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Note Input and Editing** in the category list.
3. In the **Note Input** section, choose one of the following options for **Specify accidental, rhythm dot and articulations** in the **Pitch and Duration** subsection:
   - **After inputting note**
   - **Before inputting note**
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The setting is changed in the current project and for all future projects. If you chose **Before inputting note**, notes do not remain selected after you input them during pitch before duration note input.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148
Inputting accidentals on page 168
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 155
Inputting articulations on page 194

Selecting note/rest durations

You can select different durations for notes/rests, both during note input and for existing notes/rests.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to select a note duration not shown in the Notes panel, click the **Show/Hide All Notes** disclosure arrows at the top and bottom of the notes list to show more note durations.
2. Select a note/rest duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
3. Optional: Add rhythm dots to the duration in one of the following ways:
   - For a single rhythm dot, press **.**.
   - For multiple rhythm dots, press **Opt-.** to cycle through different numbers of rhythm dots. You can specify up to four rhythm dots.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Dotted Notes** to add the displayed number of rhythm dots.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Dotted Notes** to access different numbers of rhythm dots.

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 113
Edit Notes Overlay on page 321
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Notes panel on page 117
Caret on page 140
Inputting notes on page 145

Changing the duration of notes

You can lengthen/shorten the duration of notes after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose duration you want to change.

   NOTE

   If you want to extend a note to the end of the current selection, select both that note and an item at the rhythmic position to which you want to extend the note.
2. Change the duration in any of the following ways:

- Press the key command of the duration you want. For example, press **4** for a 16th note (semiquaver).
- In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
- To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To double the length of notes, press **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To halve the length of notes, press **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.
- To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, click **Lengthen Duration by Grid Value** in the Edit Notes Overlay.
- To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, click **Shorten Duration by Grid Value** in the Edit Notes Overlay.

RESULT

The duration of the selected notes is changed. Dorico for iPad automatically notates and beams the notes appropriately according to their new duration, the current time signature, and their position in the bar.

When extending notes, their duration fills in any intervening rests. Extending notes to the end of the current selection does not delete any intervening notes, instead they combine with the extended note to create chords where necessary.

TIP

You can assign your own key commands to lengthen/shorten notes by specific durations and to extend them. You can find these by searching for **Shorten duration by**, **Lengthen duration by**, and **Extend to** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Notes panel on page 117
Notes toolbox on page 113
Edit Notes Overlay on page 321
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
Insert mode on page 161
Chord mode on page 176
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322

Forcing the duration of notes/rests

Dorico for iPad automatically notates and beams notes/rests appropriately according to the current time signature and their position in the bar. You can force the duration of notes/rests to specify their notation.

For example, if you input a half note at the start of a 6/8 bar, it is notated as a dotted quarter note (crotchet) tied to an eighth note (quaver). This is because, according to convention, 6/8 bars are subdivided into two groups of three eighth notes. To reflect this for a half note (four eighth notes), Dorico for iPad automatically divides the note to show the correct grouping but you can force the note duration to show a half note instead.

TIP

If you want to force the duration of all notes on a staff to imply a different meter, for example, to show three quarter note groups in 6/8 to indicate a hemiola, you can also input a time signature only on those staves to group notes according to that meter. You can then hide the time signatures if required.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Selecting existing notes whose duration you want to force.
2. Optional: If you want input rests with forced durations, start rest input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **,**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Rests**.
3. Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **O**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration**.
4. Select the note/rest duration you want.

   TIP

   When forcing the duration of existing notes notated as tie chains, you must reduce their duration first, then increase it to the duration you want.
5. Optional: During note or rest input, input the notes or rests you want.

RESULT

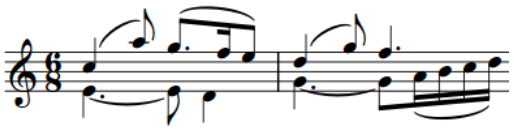
During note or rest input, any notes you input are notated with their whole rhythmic value, whatever their position in the bar. If you move them later, they keep the same notation. Rests are input as explicit rests. Notes that cross barlines are notated as tied notes.

Forcing the duration of existing notes or rests preserves their current duration or any duration to which you subsequently change them.

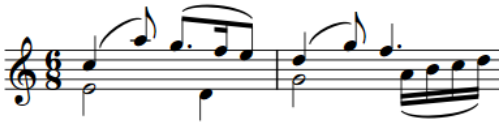
TIP

Force position and duration in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated automatically for rests input with forced durations. You can also use this property to force the duration and position of rests.

EXAMPLE



Default notation of notes in 6/8



Notes in the down-stem voice input with forced durations

RELATED LINKS

Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763
Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Caret on page 140
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting rests on page 169
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 464
Turning explicit rests into implicit rests on page 765

Inputting notes with rhythm dots

The **Dotted Notes** tool allows you to input notes with rhythm dots and add rhythm dots to existing notes. You can input notes with up to four rhythm dots.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots before inputting notes. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify rhythm dots after inputting notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select existing notes to which you want to add rhythm dots.
2. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
3. Activate **Dotted Notes** in any of the following ways:

- Press **.**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Dotted Notes**.

4. Optional: Change the number of rhythm dots in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Opt-.** to cycle through different numbers of rhythm dots.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Dotted Notes**, then click the number of rhythm dots you want.

   Dotted Notes in the Notes toolbox updates to indicate the current number of rhythm dots. You can input notes with up to four rhythm dots.
5. Optional: Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **O**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration**.

   If **Force Duration** is not activated, the notes you input might be shown as tied notes rather than dotted notes, depending on their position in the bar and the prevailing meter.
6. Input the dotted notes you want.

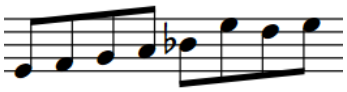
   Dotted Notes remains activated until you either select a different note duration or deactivate it.
7. Press **.** or click **Dotted Notes** again to deactivate **Dotted Notes**.
8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

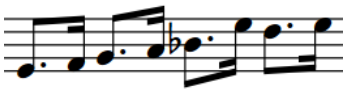
During note input, notes are input as dotted notes until you deactivate **Dotted Notes** or change the note duration.

When you add rhythm dots to multiple existing notes that would then overlap, Dorico for iPad adjusts the duration of notes in the selection to avoid deleting notes at the end of the selection.

EXAMPLE



A phrase containing eighth notes



After adding rhythm dots to the whole selection

RELATED LINKS

Note and rest grouping on page 464
Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Caret on page 140
Insert mode on page 161
Chord mode on page 176
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Activating/Deactivating the caret on page 144
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 160

Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 151

Inputting notes into multiple voices

By default, notes are input into the first up-stem voice, as indicated by the symbol of an up-stem quarter note beside the caret. You can input notes directly into other voices during note input, and switch between voices as required.

You can also create new voices on staves with existing notes and input notes into those voices anywhere else on those staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input multiple voices.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
3. Select the voice into which you want to input notes in one of the following ways:
   - To create a new voice, press **Shift-V** or click **Create Voice** in the Notes toolbox.

     When a new voice is added, a + sign appears beside the symbol of a quarter note beside the caret. The quarter note symbol indicates the stem direction, and the number beside the quarter note indicates the voice number if applicable.

     Caret when adding the first down-stem voice

     TIP

     You can press **Shift-V** as many times as you require. For example, on a staff containing no notes, creating one new voice allows you to input notes into the first down-stem voice, but you can also create another new voice immediately if you want to input notes into the second up-stem voice.

   - To select an existing voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice** in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.

     NOTE

     - You can switch between voices as often as you like.
     - If you have three or more voices on a single staff, you can only cycle through all the voices in a set order. For example, if you have two up-stem voices and two down-stem voices, the order is: first up-stem voice, first down-stem voice, second down-stem voice, second up-stem voice.
4. Input the notes you want.
5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.

- In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input into the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret. If you are inputting notes into a new voice on a staff that already contains notes in another voice, the stem directions of existing notes at the same rhythmic position change automatically as necessary.

TIP

You can show voice colors to check which notes are in which voice. Additionally, the pitches of selected notes are indicated by depressed keys in the Keyboard panel.

EXAMPLE

Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem voice

Caret when inputting notes into the first down-stem voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem voice

RELATED LINKS

Caret on page 140
Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Rhythmic grid on page 139
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 170
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 181
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341
Voices on page 902
Stem direction on page 819
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 903
Keyboard panel on page 128
Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap on page 904
Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices on page 768
Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions on page 757
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 903

Inputting notes into slash voices

You can input notes into multiple slash voices, for example, if you want to indicate a precise rhythm without specifying pitches. By default, the first slash voice is up-stem, but you can add extra slash voices both with and without stems, and switch between them as often as you want.

You can also input notes into new slash voices on a staff with existing notes. Once you have created a slash voice somewhere on a staff, you can input notes into that slash voice anywhere else on the same staff.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input slash voices.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
3. Select the slash voice into which you want to input notes in one of the following ways:
   - To create a new slash voice, press **Shift-Opt-V**. You can also click and hold **Create Voice** in the Notes toolbox, then choose **Create Slash Voice**.

     When a new slash voice is added, a + sign appears beside the symbol of a note beside the caret, which now appears as a slash note. The slash note symbol indicates the stem direction, and the number beside the slash note symbol indicates the voice number if applicable.

     Caret when adding the first down-stem slash voice

     TIP

     You can press **Shift-Opt-V** as many times as you require. For example, on a staff containing no notes in slash voices, creating one new slash voice allows you to input notes into the first up-stem slash voice. You can also create a second new slash voice immediately if you want to input notes into a down-stem slash voice, or a third new slash voice if you want to input notes into a stemless slash voice.

   - To select an existing slash voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice** in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.
4. Input the notes you want.

   Notes in slash voices appear at the same staff position, regardless of their pitch. By default, this is the middle line of the staff, but this changes in multiple-slash-voice contexts.
5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input into new slash voices, as indicated by the caret indicator. The slash note symbol beside the caret changes to indicate which voice is currently selected and into which notes are input.

You can switch between voices as often as you like.

NOTE

- If you are inputting notes into a new slash voice on a staff that already contains notes in other voices/slash voices, the stem directions of existing notes and the staff positions of slash voices at the same rhythmic position change automatically as necessary.

- If you have three or more voices of any type on a single staff, you must cycle through all the voices in a set order. For example, if you have two up-stem voices, two down-stem voices, and a slash voice, the order is: first up-stem voice, first down-stem voice, second down-stem voice, second up-stem voice, slash voice.

EXAMPLE

Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into the first down-stem slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new stemless slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem slash voice

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 113
Slash voices on page 908
Rhythm slashes on page 754
Inputting slash regions on page 311
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341

Inputting notes in Insert mode

In Insert mode, you can input notes before existing notes in a single voice without overriding them. This allows you to push existing notes ahead at the same time as inputting new notes at their previous positions.

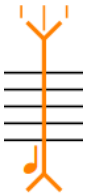
NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- You can only input chords in Insert mode when using a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Optional: Press **V** to select the voice into which you want to insert notes.
3. Activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.

   In Insert mode, the caret shows V and inverted V shapes at the top and bottom.



4. Input the notes you want.
5. Optional: Press **I** or click **Insert** again to deactivate Insert mode and return to normal note input.
6. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are inserted before existing notes in the voice indicated by the caret indicator, without overwriting any existing notes in the same voice at rhythmic positions after the caret. They are input at the caret position or where you click. Any existing notes in the same voice after the caret are pushed ahead to subsequent rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 113
Rhythmic grid on page 139
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting chords on page 174
Moving the caret manually on page 144

Insert mode

Insert mode changes how notes are input and how edits you make outside of note input affect the music. When Insert mode is activated, notes are pushed to subsequent rhythmic positions instead of being overwritten if you input new notes or lengthen existing notes. Similarly, deleting notes or reducing their duration with Insert mode activated pulls surrounding notes closer together without leaving rests between them.

For example, if you input four quarter notes with Insert mode activated, all subsequent notes in the same voice are pushed four quarter note beats back to accommodate the new notes.

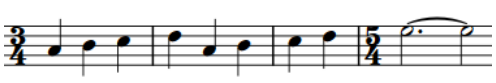
Edits outside of note input that are affected by Insert mode include copying/pasting notes, deleting notes, changing the duration of notes including by adding/removing rhythm dots, or inputting time signatures.

- You can activate/deactivate Insert mode in Write mode by pressing **I** or clicking **Insert** in the Notes toolbox.

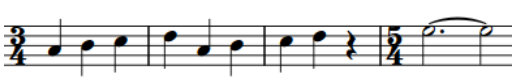
NOTE

- Insert mode applies to the selected voices only.
- You cannot have both Insert mode and Chord mode activated simultaneously.

When Insert mode is not activated, Dorico for iPad does not add extra beats before an existing time signature if you change a previous time signature. When Insert mode is activated, Dorico for iPad inserts beats before existing time signatures to fill the final bar.



3/4 time signature input without Insert mode activated



3/4 time signature input with Insert mode activated

RELATED LINKS
Chord mode on page 176
Caret on page 140
Inputting notes on page 145
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 335
Changing the duration of notes on page 152
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 155
Deleting notes/items on page 333

Inputting notes for unpitched percussion

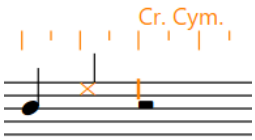
You can input notes for individual unpitched percussion instruments and on all percussion instruments in percussion kits using any presentation type, including selecting playing techniques, such as playing technique-specific noteheads, for individual instruments.

When inputting notes in percussion kits, the caret is smaller than when inputting notes on pitched instrument or individual percussion instrument staves. Instead of occupying the whole height of the staff, the caret in percussion kits is positioned at a particular staff position.

The name of the percussion instrument or slash voice currently selected by the caret, and any applicable playing technique, is shown directly above the rhythmic grid display.

NOTE

- You can only input notes into slash voices in percussion kits when using the five-line staff presentation.
- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.



Inputting notes on instruments with five-line staff kit presentation

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use additional playing techniques for instruments in the kit, you have defined these in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the unpitched percussion instrument/kit staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

     NOTE

     If you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input** in the Notes toolbox.
   - Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.

3. Optional: When inputting into percussion kits, move the caret up/down to other instruments in the kit in any of the following ways:
   - To move it up, press **Up Arrow**.
   - To move it down, press **Down Arrow**.
4. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
5. Select an appropriate playing technique for the instrument currently selected by the caret before inputting notes.
   - To cycle upwards through playing techniques, press **Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To cycle downwards through playing techniques, press **Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - Play the pitch for the playing technique you want on a MIDI keyboard.

     NOTE

     You can define MIDI pitches for playing techniques on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.
6. Input notes in one of the following ways:
   - Any kit presentation type/Individual instruments: Press **Y** to input notes for the instrument and playing technique shown above the rhythmic grid.
   - Any kit presentation type/Individual instruments: Click on the staff where you want to input notes, and at the rhythmic positions where you want them.
   - Five-line staff presentation type: Press letters on a computer keyboard or play notes on a MIDI keyboard, corresponding to staff positions for the clef set in **Preferences**. For example, press **B** to input notes for the instrument assigned to the middle line of a five-line staff when **Treble G clef** is set.
   - Grid and single-line instruments presentation types/Individual instruments: Press the letter of any note name **A** to **G** on a computer keyboard or play any note on a MIDI keyboard to input notes for the instrument on whose line the caret is currently positioned.

     NOTE

     Notes played on MIDI keyboards are interpreted differently, depending on whether **Use percussion map** or **Use staff position** is set for the different kit presentation types in the **Note Input** section of the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.
7. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

TIP

You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input at the caret position or where you click with the selected duration and are played back as you input them by default. If you selected playing techniques, their noteheads appear as set in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog for the corresponding instrument and playing technique, or in the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog for five-line staff presentations only.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them.

Dorico for iPad notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the current time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico for iPad fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

NOTE

- You can specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.
- You cannot delete rests from unpitched percussion instruments.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Caret on page 140
Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments on page 883
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 884
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 890
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 891
Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes on page 893
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Inputting notes on page 145

Note input setup for percussion kits

Inputting music for unpitched percussion instruments works differently than for pitched instruments. You can use any of the usual methods for unpitched percussion input, but using a MIDI keyboard or a computer keyboard is most efficient.

- You can find options relating to note input for percussion in the **Note Input** section of the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

There is one set of options for input onto five-line staves, and another set of options for input onto grids and individual instruments.

The main choice affects input via MIDI keyboards and computer keyboards.

Use percussion map

A percussion map defines which MIDI notes produce which sound for a particular patch in a sound library. For example, in General MIDI percussion, C2 (note 36) produces bass drum, and D2 (note 38) produces snare drum, and so on.

If you know a particular mapping well, you may find it helpful to use the mapping directly for input.

Use staff position

This option uses the staff position defined in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. For example, on a drum set, the bass drum is normally positioned in the bottom space of the staff, while the snare drum is positioned in the third space from the bottom.

You can think of staff positions relative to what they would be when using a treble G clef (F4 and C5 respectively) or using a bass F clef (A2 and E3 respectively).

You can choose which clef is used to interpret staff positions for five-line staves:

- **Treble G clef**
- **Bass F clef**

When you select **Use staff position**, you can designate one octave of your MIDI keyboard to input playing techniques.

By default, the **Input techniques from MIDI key** option is set to MIDI note 48, which is C3, the C one octave below middle C (C4 = MIDI note 60). You can click the MIDI learn button and then play a note on your MIDI keyboard to change the starting pitch. Assuming a starting pitch of C3, ascending notes operate as follows:

- C3 (48): Previous playing technique
- C♯3 (49): Next playing technique
- D3 (50): First mapped playing technique
- E♭3 (51): Second mapped playing technique
- E3 (52): Third mapped playing technique

And so on, up to:

- B3 (59): Tenth mapped playing technique

In general, we recommend that you set **Use staff position** for percussion input. **Use percussion map** is normally only useful when you are inputting notes onto a drum set and you have already memorized the General MIDI percussion map.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 34
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes on page 893

Default note selection during note input for percussion kits

During note input in percussion kits, you can press the letters on a computer keyboard that correspond to staff positions for kits using the five-line staff presentation type. For example, you can press **F** to input a note on the F space or line.

In **Preferences**, you can set options for inputting notes into percussion kits in the **Note Input** section of the **Note Input and Editing** page. For example, if you want to use staff positions to determine notes, choose **Use staff position** for **Input onto kit or grid**.

If you have the staff positions set relative to **Treble G clef**, then F could mean either the bottom space on the staff or the top line on the staff. In a standard drum set, this means either the kick drum in the bottom space, or the ride cymbal on the top line.

When inputting notes in pitched instruments, Dorico for iPad chooses the lower or upper possible staff position based on which is closer to the current position of the caret.

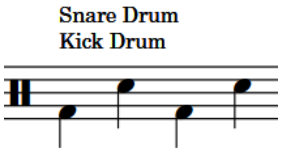
However, when inputting notes in percussion kits, Dorico for iPad chooses the staff position of the note with the same stem direction as the last input note, rather than the staff position that is closest to the current position of the caret. This makes it easier to input common note patterns used in percussion kits.

For example, inputting kick drum and snare drum notes on a standard drum set is a common pattern. The kick drum is in the bottom space, and the snare drum is two spaces above: five staff positions away from the bottom space, and four staff positions away from the top line.

You can press **F** for the kick drum and **C** for the snare drum.

The default stem direction behavior for inputting notes in kits in Dorico for iPad means that you can alternate pressing **F** and **C**, and the notes are input at the positions of the kick drum and snare drum, even though the top line is the closer position after inputting a snare drum note.

This is because the kick drum uses the same stem direction, and therefore voice, as the snare drum.



NOTE

Dorico for iPad automatically changes the directions of stems according to the positions of notes on the staff when only one voice on the staff contains notes, regardless of their voice.

RELATED LINKS
Stem direction on page 819

Inputting notes on tablature

You can input notes directly into tablature in the same ways as inputting normal notes. When inputting notes on tablature, the caret is smaller than when inputting notes on standard five-line staves and behaves as if chord input is always active, meaning you must advance the caret manually to input notes at other rhythmic positions.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

When inputting notes on tablature using pitch before duration, you must select note durations by clicking them in the Notes panel.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the tablature and at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes.

NOTE

If both notation staves and tablature are shown in the current layout, you must select an item on the notation staff and then move the caret to the tablature after starting note input.

2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
3. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - To select the next longer duration, press **=**.
   - To select the next shorter duration, press **-**.
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Fretboard panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
4. Input the pitch you want for the current string in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard or numeric keypad that corresponds to the fret number you want. For example, press **6** for fret 6.

     For fret numbers 10 and above, press the two digits quickly.
   - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.

     NOTE

     When using letters, Dorico for iPad automatically chooses the octave closest to the nut on the corresponding string.
   - In the Fretboard panel, click the corresponding string and fret position.
   - Play the note on a MIDI keyboard.
5. Move the caret up/down to input notes on different strings at the same rhythmic position in any of the following ways:
   - To move it up, press **Up Arrow**.
   - To move it down, press **Down Arrow**.
6. Move the caret to other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
   - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Right Arrow**/**Left Arrow** or click **Navigate Right**/**Navigate Left** in the secondary toolbar.
   - To advance the caret according to the note duration currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret** in the Fretboard panel toolbar.
   - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Cmd-Right Arrow**/**Cmd-Left Arrow**.

RESULT

Notes are input at the caret position with the selected duration on the string indicated by the caret and are played back as you input them by default. Notes continue to be input at the caret position until you move the caret manually and overwrite any previous note on the same string. If you attempt to input a note that is impossible on the current string, it is input on the closest available string in addition to any existing notes.

If you have input two or more notes on the same string at the same rhythmic position, they are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. Similarly, when you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord

are allocated to the same string. You can then select them individually and change their string allocation.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 140
Moving the caret manually on page 144
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Fretboard panel on page 130
Tablature on page 815
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 816
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 817
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148

Inputting accidentals

You can input accidentals during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also change the accidentals of existing notes.

NOTE

- Accidentals that are part of the prevailing key signature are input automatically. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F♯ is input automatically. You would only need to specify an accidental if you want to input an F♮, for example.

  This also applies if you are using a MIDI keyboard, though you can respell notes if the accidentals chosen automatically are not the ones that you expected.
- These steps describe selecting accidentals before inputting each note. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify accidentals after inputting notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the existing notes to which you want to add accidentals or whose accidentals you want to change.
2. Select the accidental you want to input in one of the following ways:
   - For a flat accidental, press **-**.
   - For a sharp accidental, press **=**.
   - For a natural accidental, press **0**.
   - In the Notes panel, click the accidental you want.

   TIP

   You can find more accidentals, such as double sharps/flats or microtonal accidentals, in the **Accidentals** section of the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on the right of the window.
3. Optional: During note input, input the note you want with your selected accidental.

RESULT

The accidental is added to the selected existing notes. If you selected existing notes with different accidentals, they are changed to have the accidental you selected.

During note input, the selected accidental is only input on the next note you input. You must reselect the accidental for each subsequent note.

NOTE

- Due to the default accidental duration rule in Dorico for iPad, subsequent accidentals for the same note in the same register do not appear in the same bar.
- If you input notes using a MIDI device, Dorico for iPad automatically shows an accidental if necessary. It selects a sharp, flat, or natural based on key signature and context. You can later respell notes so they are shown as their enharmonic equivalents with different accidentals.

RELATED LINKS
Accidentals on page 409
Inputting notes on page 145
Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 151
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Accidental duration rules on page 415
Respelling notes on page 183

Accidental selection during MIDI input

Dorico for iPad interprets MIDI data to create accidentals, and automatically determines the spelling of notes according to preset rules.

Dorico for iPad automatically displays an accidental if one is required. It selects a sharp or flat based on key signature and context.

The algorithm for this takes into account the key signature and the intervals between successive notes and chords. Therefore Dorico for iPad prefers sharp accidentals in a key with sharps, and flats in a key with flats. If you change the spelling of an accidental, Dorico for iPad follows your spelling preference whenever that note is used again in the score.

If you input notes with accidentals outside the key signature, Dorico for iPad uses sharps if the figure is rising, and flats if it is falling. The spelling is also calculated vertically, meaning a simpler interval is produced where possible, such as a major third rather than a diminished fourth.

By default, Dorico for iPad makes retrospective changes to how it has spelled accidentals, depending on how your music develops. For example, in C major, if you input a sequence of pitches C-E-G♯, but then input a G♭, the G♯ is respelled as an A♭.

Inputting rests

Dorico for iPad automatically shows rests as appropriate in the gaps between the notes you input. However, you can also input rests manually, for example, to show fermatas on specific beats for players without notes in that bar.

NOTE

These steps describe selecting the duration before inputting rests. However, you can also input rests when **Pitch Before Duration** is active, in which case step 7 is unnecessary.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input rests.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-N**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

3. Start rest input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **,**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Rests**.
4. Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **O**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration**.
5. Select the rest duration you want.
6. Input rests in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Y** or any of the letters from **A** to **G**.
   - Click the staff at the rhythmic position of each rest you want to input.

     A shadow rest appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the rest will be input.
   - Play notes on a MIDI keyboard.
7. Optional: Press **,** or click **Rests** again to stop rest input.
8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Rests of the selected duration are input. If **Force Duration** is not activated, Dorico for iPad automatically combines adjacent rests as appropriate for their position in relation to notes and according to the current meter.

RELATED LINKS

Rests on page 762
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Caret on page 140
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 153
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148

Inputting bar rests into specific voices

When inputting music in multiple voices, rests are normally created automatically when there is a gap in the secondary voice. However, if you want secondary voices to begin with explicit bar rests in strict contrapuntal music, you can input a bar rest into those voices.

For music in a single voice, you do not have to input bar rests as they appear in each new bar automatically when you advance the caret. You can also hide/show bar rests in all empty bars in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Select the appropriate secondary voice by pressing **V** until the voice direction indicator shows the correct voice.

   Alternatively, if you want to input bar rests into a new voice, press **Shift-V** until the voice direction indicator shows the correct voice.
3. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
4. Enter **rest** into the popover to add a bar rest.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Press **Cmd-Right Arrow** to advance the caret to the start of the next bar after the bar rest.
7. Optional: If you want to show bar rests in multiple bars for the selected voice, repeat steps 3 to 6 as many times as required.

RESULT

Bar rests are input into the selected voice at the caret position. If the caret position is within a bar that contains notes for the selected voice, these notes are replaced by the bar rest.

NOTE

Alternatively, you can click **Insert Bar Rest** in the **Insert Bar Rest** section of the Bars and Barlines panel to input bar rests during note input.

RELATED LINKS

Bars on page 424
Bars and barlines popover on page 219
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157
Caret on page 140
Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars on page 767
Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices on page 768

Inputting ties

You can input ties manually to join two notes of the same pitch, both during note input and by joining two existing notes with a tie. You can tie existing notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument, or that are not rhythmically adjacent.

For example, you might have input a melody across multiple voices in order to accommodate passing notes, but want to tie two notes together even though they are in different voices. Similarly, you might have written multiple notes before a chord that are all held down and want to reduce the number of tied notes.

TIP

Dorico for iPad automatically creates ties as required for note durations in each meter. For example, if you want to input a tie between two quarter notes across a barline, you can input a half note at the rhythmic position where you want to input the first quarter note. Dorico for iPad automatically splits the half note into two quarter notes, one on each side of the barline, and joins them with a tie.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to preserve the durations of existing notes, you have forced their duration. For example, if you want to specify subdivisions within a tie chain that are different than the prevailing meter.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the note from which you want the tie to start. If you want to input a tie between two specific notes or between a grace note and a normal note, select those two notes.

     NOTE

     The two notes must be the same pitch but can be in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument.
2. Optional: During note input, input the note that you want at the start of the tie.
3. Input a tie in any of the following ways:
   - Press **T**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Tie**.
4. Optional: During note input, input the note that you want at the end of the tie.

   NOTE

   The second note must be the same pitch as the first note.

RESULT

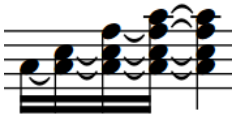
During note input, the two notes input are joined by a tie.

If you selected a single existing note, it is joined by a tie to the next note of the same pitch in the same voice and staff. If you selected two existing notes, they are tied together, provided they are the same pitch and belong to the same instrument.

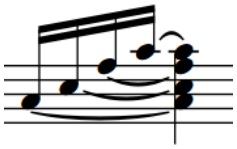
NOTE

- During note input, Dorico for iPad ties the first note you input after inputting the tie to the previous note of the same pitch in the same voice and staff, even if there are other notes of other pitches between them.
- Depending on the current time signature and the position of the start of the note in the bar, inputting a tie between two notes can instead create a single note of a different duration, such as a half note instead of two tied quarter notes. You can override your note grouping settings and fix your notated rhythm by forcing their duration. Dorico for iPad then notates your input notes with the rhythmic durations specified, as long as they can fit inside the bar.

EXAMPLE



Spread chord with ties between all adjacent notes



Spread chord with ties between non-adjacent notes

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 145
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 153
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Notes toolbox on page 113
Ties on page 839
Ties vs. slurs on page 841
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448

Inputting grace notes

You input grace notes in the same ways as normal notes, and they can have any rhythmic note value, accidental, and articulation. You can only input grace notes during note input.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input grace notes.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
3. Start grace note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **/**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Grace Notes**.
4. Press the number for the note duration you want. For example, press **5** for eighth grace notes.
5. Optional: Switch between inputting slashed/unslashed grace notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Opt-/**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Grace Notes**, then click **Unslashed Grace Notes** or **Slashed Grace Notes**.

   Grace Notes in the Notes toolbox updates to indicate the current grace note type.
6. Input the grace notes you want.

TIP

There is no limit to the number of grace notes that can exist at the same rhythmic position.

7. Press **/** or click **Grace Notes** again to stop grace note input and return to normal note input.

RESULT

The pitches you enter are input as grace notes at the caret position.

TIP

- You can also change the type of grace notes after they have been input.
- Slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

RELATED LINKS

Grace notes on page 555
Grace notes in playback on page 560
Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Caret on page 140
Inputting notes on page 145
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152
Inputting accidentals on page 168
Inputting articulations on page 194
Changing the type of grace notes on page 558
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148

Inputting chords

You can input chords during note input when both note input and **Chords** are activated. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

  When inputting chords using pitch before duration, you must use your computer keyboard or a MIDI keyboard and complete step 6 before step 5.
- You can only input chords in Insert mode when using a MIDI keyboard.
- You can input chords without activating **Chords** when using the Keyboard panel, Fretboard panel, or a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input chords.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

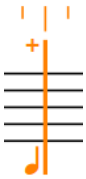
NOTE

If you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.

- Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input** in the Notes toolbox.
- Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.

3. Start chord input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Q**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Chords**.

   In chord input, a + sign appears at the top of the caret. This allows you to input multiple notes at the caret position.



4. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
5. Input the pitches you want in any of the following ways:
   - Press the corresponding letters on your keyboard.

     TIP

     Dorico for iPad automatically inputs notes above the highest note at the caret position when **Chords** is activated.

     You can input notes below the lowest note at the caret position instead by pressing **Ctrl** as well as the letter for the note name, for example, **Ctrl-A**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
   - Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.
6. Optional: Advance the caret to input chords at other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   During chord input, notes are input at the same rhythmic position and above the previous note until you advance the caret manually.

TIP

You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

7. Press **Q** or click **Chords** again to stop chord input.
8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Multiple notes are input at the caret position.

- If entering pitches by clicking with the mouse, you can put the same pitch into the chord twice by clicking again on the same line.
- If entering pitches with the keyboard, repeated notes are automatically input an octave above. You can change the register of notes by forcing the register selection during note input, or by transposing them after they have been input.

NOTE

- You can stop chord input and immediately continue inputting notes as before, with a single note at each rhythmic position and the caret advancing automatically to the next rhythmic position.
- When chords contain two pitches in the same register but with different accidentals, that is known as an altered unison. Altered unisons are shown as split stems by default in Dorico for iPad.
- When you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 136
Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Register selection during note input on page 147
Caret on page 140
Moving the caret manually on page 144
Altered unisons on page 414
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148
Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 151

Chord mode

Chord mode changes how notes are input and how edits you make outside of note input affect the music. When Chord mode is activated, notes can overlap or stack on top of each other to

create chords rather than overwriting existing notes. During chord input, the caret does not advance automatically.

Edits outside of chord input that are affected by Chord mode include copying/pasting notes or changing their duration. For example, if you copy four notes and paste them to a staff that already has notes with Chord mode activated, the existing notes are not overwritten but instead combine with the new notes to make chords.

- You can activate/deactivate Chord mode in Write mode by pressing **Q** or clicking **Chords** in the Notes toolbox.

NOTE

You cannot have both Insert mode and Chord mode activated simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS
Insert mode on page 161
Caret on page 140
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 335
Changing the duration of notes on page 152
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 155

Inputting tuplets

You can input all types of tuplets using the tuplets popover. Tuplets are input like normal notes, and so can only be input during note input.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

When inputting tuplets using pitch before duration, Dorico for iPad determines the base value of the tuplet on either the first note you input after specifying the tuplet or the note value included in your tuplet ratio.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input tuplets.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
3. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **;**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then choose **x:y**.

   Dorico for iPad automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.
4. Enter the tuplet you want into the popover as a ratio followed by the beat unit.

   For example, enter **3:2e** to input triplets based on eighth notes or **5:4x** to input quintuplets based on sixteenth notes.

NOTE

If you do not specify the beat unit, the tuplet is based on the note value currently selected in the Notes panel.

5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

   The tuplet is entered.

6. Optional: Change the selected note duration.

   For example, you can input a tuplet based on eighth notes but input a quarter note within that tuplet.

7. Enter or play in the pitches you want.

   Dorico for iPad automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.

8. Optional: Advance the caret to continue inputting tuplets of the same ratio at later rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:

   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

9. Stop tuplet input in one of the following ways:

   - To return to inputting normal notes, press **:** or move the caret with the arrow keys.
   - To stop note input completely, press **Esc**.

RESULT

The pitches you enter or play in are input as tuplets, starting from the caret position.

If you want to input a different type of tuplet immediately after inputting tuplets, you must stop the first type of tuplet before inputting the second type. If you do not stop the first type, the second type is input as a nested tuplet.

TIP

You can also input tuplets by clicking and holding **Tuplets** in the Notes toolbox, then clicking the tuplet you want.

RELATED LINKS

Tuplets on page 874
Nested tuplets on page 875
Turning existing notes into tuplets on page 876
Turning tuplets into normal notes on page 876
Notes toolbox on page 113
Notes panel on page 117
Notations toolbox on page 121
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Caret on page 140
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 148

Tuplets popover

The table contains examples of what you can enter into the tuplets popover to input different types of tuplets. The tuplets popover can only be opened during note input.

You can open the tuplets popover during note input in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Press ;.

  As tuplets are often described in ratios, such as 3:2, the tuplets popover uses the semicolon key to be memorable.
- In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then choose **x:y**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notes toolbox on the right of the window.

Tuplets popover with an example entry

Tuplets button in the Notes toolbox

When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico for iPad continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet until any of the following happens:

- You press : to return to inputting normal notes.
- You move the caret with the arrow keys.
- You stop note input.

Type of tuplet	Popover entry
Triplet, three notes in the space of two.	**3**, **3:2**, or **3 2**
Triplet, three notes in the space of four.	**3:4** or **3 4**
Quadruplet, four notes in the space of three.	**4:3** or **4 3**
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of four.	**5:4** or **5 4**
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of two.	**5:2** or **5 2**
Sextuplet, six notes in the space of four	**6:4** or **6 4**
Septuplet, seven notes in the space of four.	**7:4** or **7 4**
Duplet, two notes in the space of three. Often used in compound meters.	**2:3** or **2 3**
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of six. Often used in compound meters.	**5:6** or **5 6**

Type of tuplet	Popover entry
Quintuplet, five dotted quarter notes in the space of four. NOTE When using a number to specify the beat unit, you must separate the tuplet ratio from the beat unit using a space or hyphen.	**5:4q.**, **5 4q.**, or **5:4-6.**

This list is not comprehensive. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different tuplets.

NOTE

Unless you specify a beat unit in your entry, the total duration of the tuplet depends on the note value selected when you open the popover. For example, if a quarter note is selected when you input a triplet, the triplet input is three quarter notes in the space of two.

Tuplet beat units

Tuplet beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	**z** or **2**
32nd note	**y** or **3**
16th note	**x** or **4**
Eighth note	**e** or **5**
Quarter note	**q** or **6**
Half note	**h** or **7**
Whole note	**w** or **8**
Double whole note	**2w** or **9**
Rhythm dot	**.** (period)

RELATED LINKS
Turning existing notes into tuplets on page 876
Selecting note/rest durations on page 152

Adding notes above/below existing notes

You can add notes above/below existing notes. You can add multiple notes at the same time, according to their intervals relative to the existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes to which you want to add notes.
2. Open the note tools popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-I**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Note Tools**.
3. Enter the intervals of the notes you want, relative to your selected notes.

   For example, enter **-m3,4** to add notes a minor third below and a fourth above the selected notes.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

Notes are added to the selected notes according to the intervals specified.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121

Note tools popover

The note tools popover allows you to add notes above and below existing notes, and also transpose existing notes. It makes much of the functionality provided by the **Add Notes Above or Below** and **Transpose** dialogs accessible directly via the keyboard.

You can open the note tools popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when notes are selected, including during note input:

- Press **Shift-I**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Note Tools**.
- In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** and choose **Add Intervals**.

The table contains examples of what you can enter into the note tools popover to transpose notes or add notes above/below existing notes.

Example action	Popover entry
Transpose notes upwards by a third.	**t3**
Transpose notes downwards by a sixth.	**t-6**
Add notes a third above.	**3** or **3rd**
Add notes a fourth below.	**-4** or **-4th**

Example action	Popover entry
Add multiple notes. NOTE Separate notes with commas, not with spaces.	**3,6** or **-3,3,4**
Add notes above and/or below all notes in selected chords. NOTE Separate notes with commas, not with spaces.	**3 all** or **-M2,m3 to all**
Add notes only to the top notes in chords.	**-3 top** or **dim5 top**
Add notes only to the bottom notes in chords.	**aug4 bottom** or **-2 bottom**
Specify perfect interval.	**p**, **per**, or **perf**
Specify major interval.	**M**, **maj**, or **major**
Specify minor interval.	**m**, **min**, or **minor**
Specify diminished interval.	**d**, **dim**, or **diminished**
Specify augmented interval.	**a**, **aug**, or **augmented**
Specify diatonic interval.	**diat** or **diatonic**
Transpose notes by microtonal intervals. NOTE The first number is the interval degree. The second number is the number of quarter tones.	**t 3 8 qt**

If you do not otherwise specify it, the interval is calculated by adding or transposing notes by the number of staff positions specified. For example, in C major, if the selected note is a D♯ and you specify 3 to add a third above, the added note is an F♯. You can specify the quality of the interval by including it before the interval.

If the selected material already includes chords, notes are added above the top note in the chord, and added below the bottom note in the chord. You can add notes to all notes in selected chords by including **all** or **to all** at the end of your entry.

For microtonal transpositions, the first number is the interval degree, and the second number is the number of quarter tones. For example, if you have a C♯ and you enter **T 3 8 qt**, it changes to an E♯.

RELATED LINKS
Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover on page 184

Changing the pitch of individual notes

You can raise/lower the pitch and register of individual notes, including grace notes, after they have been input by octave divisions, staff position, and octaves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose pitches you want to change.
2. Raise/Lower the pitches of the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - To move notes up one staff position, such as from C to D, press **Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move notes down one staff position, such as from D to C, press **Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes up a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes down a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes up an octave, press **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes down an octave, press **Cmd-Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - In the Edit Notes Overlay, choose **Octave** 𝄗, **Staff Position** 𝅗𝅥, or **Octave Division** ♯♭, then click **Transpose Up** ↕ or **Transpose Down** ↕.

RESULT

The pitch or register of the selected notes is changed. Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is updated automatically.

If the pitch is now impossible to play on a fretted instrument, such as if a note would have to be played below the nut on the lowest string, it appears on tablature as a question mark.

NOTE

You can press **Opt-Up Arrow** and **Opt-Down Arrow** to change the staff positions of notes in percussion kits using grid and five-line staff presentation types. However, this also changes the instrument playing the note.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Notes Overlay on page 321
Equal Division of the Octave (EDO) on page 571
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 181
Inputting accidentals on page 168
Figured bass on page 522

Respelling notes

You can change the enharmonic spelling of notes so they are shown as their enharmonic equivalents, for example, to show the stepwise movement in a phrase clearly, or to avoid altered unisons in a chord. You can do this for all layouts or just for part layouts.

Dorico for iPad uses an algorithm that automatically decides the spelling of pitches, based on key signature and context.

There are always at least three options for every pitch, as Dorico for iPad allows enharmonic spellings to show up to two accidental glyphs. This means the same note can be spelled four ways if the original pitch can be spelled with the note name either two notes below or two notes above, using a maximum of two accidental glyphs. For example, B𝪫 is a possible enharmonic spelling of G♯ because a triple-flat uses a single accidental glyph, whereas an F𝪪 uses two accidental glyphs.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to respell accidentals.

   NOTE

   If you respell accidentals in a full score layout, this also affects their spelling in part layouts. However, if you respell accidentals in part layouts, this only affects their spelling in that part layout.

2. Select the notes you want to respell.
3. Respell the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - To respell them upwards, press **Opt-=**.
   - To respell them downwards, press **Opt--**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Respell Using Note Name Above**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Respell Using Note Name Below**.

RESULT

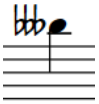
The enharmonic spelling of the selected notes is changed.

EXAMPLE

A G sharp

When respelled downwards, the G sharp becomes an F triple-sharp

When respelled upwards, the G sharp becomes an A flat



When respelled upwards again, the G sharp becomes a B triple-flat

RELATED LINKS

Accidentals on page 409

Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover

You can change the pitch of notes after they have been input using the note tools popover.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to transpose.
2. Open the note tools popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-I**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Note Tools**.

3. Enter the transposition interval you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **t3** to transpose the notes up a third, or **t-min6** to transpose the notes down a minor sixth.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The selected notes are transposed by the degree specified. Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is also transposed accordingly.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Note tools popover on page 181
Figured bass on page 522

Repitching notes without changing their rhythm

You can repitch notes after you have input them while keeping their durations the same, for example, if you want to duplicate the rhythm but have different pitches.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the first note you want to repitch.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
3. Activate **Lock to Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **L**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Lock to Duration**.
4. Enter the pitches you want.
5. Optional: Press **L** or click **Lock to Duration** again to deactivate **Lock to Duration**.

   NOTE

   Lock to Duration automatically deactivates when you reach the last existing note on the staff. By default, normal note input continues using the previous note value selected before you activated **Lock to Duration**.

RESULT

Existing notes on the selected staff are repitched without their rhythms being changed. The caret automatically advances from note to note, even if there are large rests between notes on the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Caret on page 140

Transposing selections

You can transpose whole flows or specific selections, including selected key signatures, using the **Transpose** dialog.

TIP

Dorico for iPad automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: In Write mode, make a selection in the music area.

   NOTE

   - If you want to transpose key signatures, you must include them in your selection.
   - If nothing is selected, the whole flow in which you last selected a note/item is transposed.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Transpose** to open the **Transpose** dialog.
3. Adjust the parameters required for your transposition, such as interval and quality.

   TIP

   - We recommend using the **Calculate interval** section to determine your required settings, for example, if you want to transpose from G♭ major to G major.
   - Different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, if you want to set your transposition parameters manually, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.

4. Optional: If you want to transpose any key signatures in the flow or included in your selection, activate **Transpose key signatures**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

All notes in your selection, or all notes in the flow if nothing was selected, are transposed according to the interval or number of divisions of the octave specified in the **Transpose** dialog. If your selection included key signatures and you activated **Transpose key signatures**, all key signatures in the selection are also transposed.

Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is also transposed accordingly.

Key signatures that apply to all staves are transposed on all staves in the layout, even if your selection did not include all staves. Key signatures that apply only to single staves are transposed if they are included in a selection, but this does not affect any other staff in the layout.

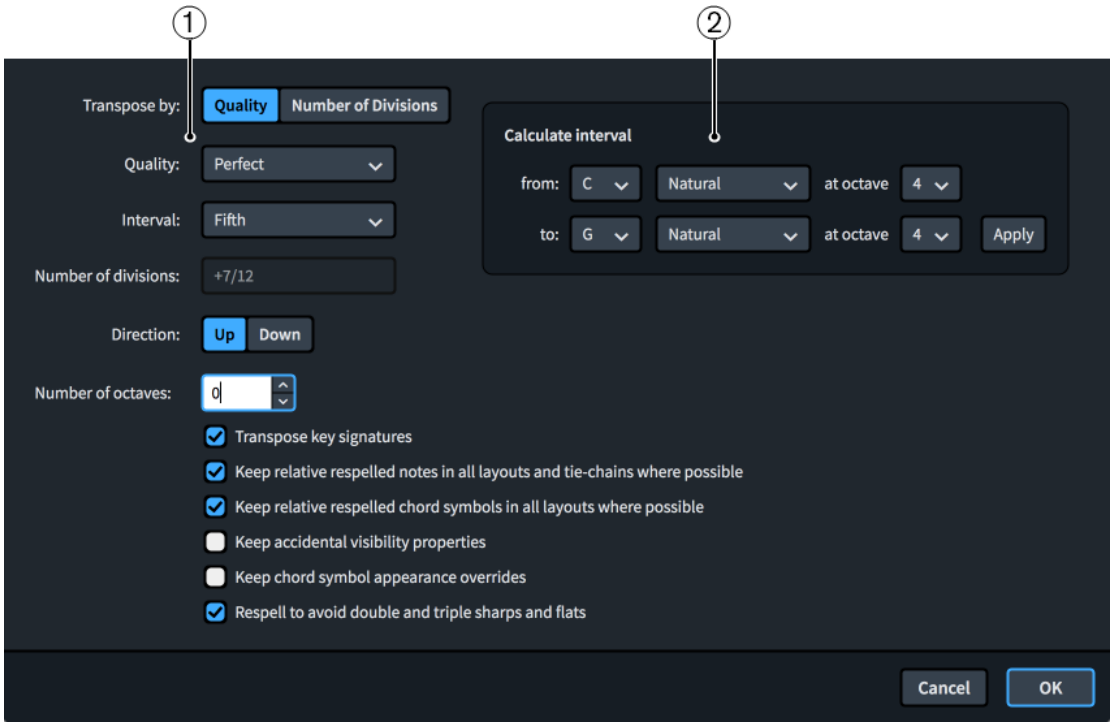
RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Large selections on page 315
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 313
Figured bass on page 522
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures on page 569
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 101

Transpose dialog

The **Transpose** dialog allows you to transpose whole flows or selections of notes, including key signatures. You can transpose according to an interval and quality or by a set number of octave divisions.

- You can open the **Transpose** dialog in Write mode by clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Transpose**.



The **Transpose** dialog contains the following sections:

1 Transposition options

Contains options that allow you to specify the transposition you want. For example, you can choose to transpose by an interval quality, such as a major third, or by a set number of divisions of the octave. You can choose the direction of the transposition, whether it includes octaves, and the interval and quality or number of divisions by which you want to transpose your selection.

According to convention, different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.

Additional options also allow you to transpose any key signatures included in your selection, keep relative respelled notes and chord symbols where possible, and avoid double and triple accidentals.

NOTE

You can only use **Respell to avoid double and triple sharps and flats** when transposing music in tonality systems that are compatible with 12-EDO.

2 Calculate interval

Allows you to set transposition options according to a starting note and the resulting note you want. For example, if you want to transpose a selection relative to a C♮ becoming a G♯ but you are not certain of the interval and quality required, you can enter those two notes in the

Calculate interval section, click **Apply**, and Dorico for iPad automatically sets the required transposition options for you.

NOTE

The **Transpose** dialog does not allow transpositions that would result in impossible notations, such as sharper than a triple sharp, or that require a microtonal accidental that does not exist in the tonality system in place at the position of your selection.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Note tools popover on page 181
Equal Division of the Octave (EDO) on page 571
Tonality systems on page 571

MIDI recording

MIDI recording is a way of inputting notes into Dorico for iPad by playing them in real time on a MIDI device. This can be particularly useful if, for example, you prefer to improvise your music rather than plan pitches and note durations in advance.

In Dorico for iPad, you can record MIDI notes using any MIDI device.

Outside of note input, Dorico for iPad uses the instrument sounds of your most recent selection for the notes you play on your MIDI device. In Play mode, this is the most recent track header you clicked, while in Write mode, this is the last instrument staff on which you selected an item, started note input, or into which you recorded MIDI. During note input, Dorico for iPad always uses the instrument sounds of the instrument into which you are recording notes.

TIP

You can enable/disable MIDI thru on the **Play** page in **Preferences**, for example, if you do not want to hear sounds in Dorico for iPad when playing on your MIDI keyboard.

As you play notes on your MIDI device, Dorico for iPad uses an algorithm to produce the correct enharmonic spelling for those notes.

RELATED LINKS
Optimization for MIDI recording on page 192
Preferences dialog on page 34

Inputting notes using MIDI recording

You can input notes by recording what you play on a MIDI device in real time. You can record notes in both concert and transposed pitch.

PREREQUISITE

- You have connected the MIDI device you want to use.
- You have set the quantization options in the **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog as appropriate for the music you intend to record.
- You have set the options in the **Recording** section of the **Play** page in **Preferences** as appropriate for the music you intend to record.
- You have input enough bars or empty rhythmic space for the amount of music you want to record. Dorico for iPad does not automatically add extra bars or rhythmic space.

- If you want to hear a click during your recording, you have input a time signature. There is no click in open meter or when there is no time signature.
- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note or rest on the staff/instrument track into which you want to record notes, at the position from which you want to record. You can do this in Write mode and Play mode.

   NOTE

   - In Play mode you cannot select rests, meaning you can only record into instrument tracks that already contain at least one note.
   - You can also record MIDI during note input, but this prevents Dorico for iPad from using both staves in grand staff instruments.

2. Optional: If you want to record notes without overwriting any existing notes on the staff, press **Q** to activate **Chords**.
3. Optional: If you want to record into a specific voice on the staff, press **Shift-N** to start note input and then do one of the following:
   - If the voice you want already exists on the staff, press **V** until the note symbol beside the caret indicates the correct voice.
   - If the voice you want does not exist on the staff yet, press **Shift-V** until the note symbol beside the caret indicates the correct voice.
4. Press **Cmd-R** to start recording.

   During recording, the playhead appears red and moves along in time. By default, there is one bar of count-in before the playhead reaches the rhythmic position of either your original selection or the caret.
5. Play the notes you want on your MIDI device.

   In Write mode, no music appears on the staff until you stop recording. In Play mode, notes appear in the piano roll in real time.
6. Press **Space or Enter** or **Cmd-R** to stop recording.

RESULT

The notes you played on the MIDI device are input onto the selected staff. If you did not specify the voice, notes are recorded into the first available voice on the staff, which is usually the first up-stem voice. If you activated **Chords**, the notes you played are merged into the first available voice on the staff without overwriting any existing notes.

The notated duration of the notes follows your quantization settings, but their played durations are retained for playback.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If the notes you played in are not notated as you intended, you can requantize them.

RELATED LINKS

Disabling MIDI input devices on page 193
Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import on page 193
Repeats in MIDI recording on page 190
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157

Retrieving played notes that you did not record

During playback, you can play notes on your MIDI keyboard and hear them without recording them into the score. You can use retrospective recording to retrieve these notes and input them into the project without previously explicitly recording them.

PREREQUISITE

You have started playback, played notes on a MIDI device alongside playback, then stopped playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input the retrieved notes.
2. Optional: If you want to input retrieved notes without overwriting any existing notes on the staff, press **Q** to activate **Chords**.
3. Press **Cmd-Opt-R**.

RESULT

All the notes you played on your MIDI device during the previous playback are input on the selected staff, starting from the selected rhythmic position. They are input into the first available voice on the staff and overwrite any existing notes in that voice by default. If you activated **Chords**, the retrieved notes are merged into the first available voice on the staff without overwriting any existing notes.

NOTE

The retrospective recording buffer is cleared each time you start playback, meaning you cannot retrieve music you played before the most recent playback.

Repeats in MIDI recording

When recording MIDI into flows that contain repeat structures, such as repeat barlines, Dorico for iPad records the notes you play during each playthrough and merges them together into the same voice.

Any differences in rhythms between the recordings are notated according to the current meter.

Requantizing notes

You can requantize notes using different quantization settings, for example, if you want to change notated rhythms after importing MIDI or recording notes using a MIDI device. This does not affect the played duration of notes in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Select all the notes you want to requantize.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Requantize** to open the **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog.
3. Change the quantization settings as appropriate for your selection.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The notated durations of all selected notes are changed according to the quantization options you set. This does not affect their played duration in playback.

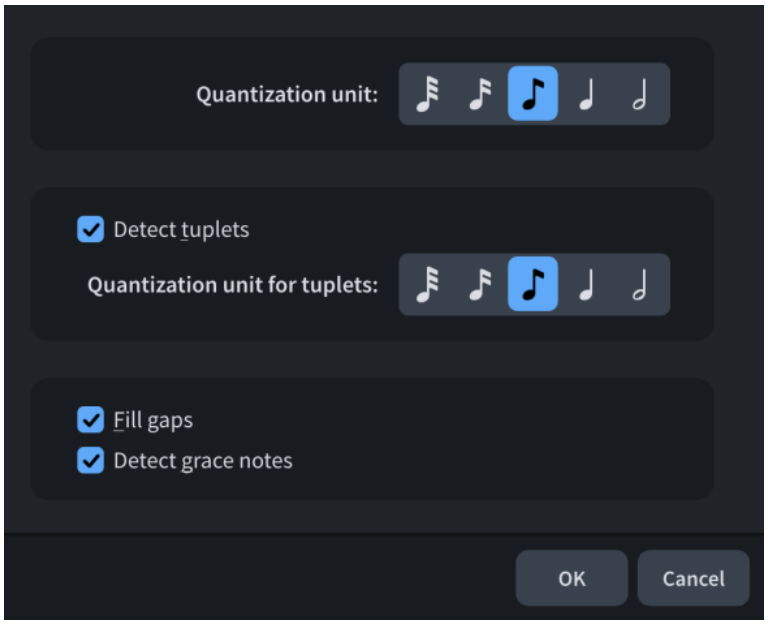
RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
MIDI Quantize Options dialog on page 191
Large selections on page 315
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 313

MIDI Quantize Options dialog

The **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog allows you to customize the quantization settings you want to apply to notes, for example, after inputting notes using MIDI recording.

- You can open the **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog by selecting notes in the music area, then clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Requantize**.



The **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog contains the following options:

Quantization unit

Allows you to set the smallest beat unit to which you want notes to be quantized. For example, if the smallest intentional note duration in your imported file is an eighth note, set **Quantization unit** to eighth notes.

Detect tuplets

Allows you to control whether off-beat notes can be considered tuplets. If you know there are no intentional tuplets in your imported MIDI file, deactivating **Detect tuplets** ensures no notes are imported as tuplets.

Quantization unit for tuplets

Allows you to set the smallest beat unit to which you want tuplet notes to be quantized. For example, if the smallest intentional tuplet note duration in your imported file is a quarter note, set **Quantization unit for tuplets** to quarter notes.

Fill gaps

Allows you to determine whether Dorico for iPad fills in gaps between short notes. If you are importing already precisely quantized music, we recommend that you deactivate **Fill gaps** to ensure that note and rest durations are notated exactly as quantized.

Detect grace notes

Allows you to determine whether Dorico for iPad interprets grace notes. When deactivated, Dorico for iPad turns grace notes into normal notes.

RELATED LINKS
MIDI recording on page 188
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Optimization for MIDI recording

Depending on your operating system and the MIDI devices you use for recording, you might find that the notes you record are not notated with the durations or at the rhythmic positions you expected. Optimizing the settings related to MIDI recording can help you achieve better results.

Because there can be a time latency between you pressing keys on a MIDI device and the notes being picked up by Dorico for iPad, we recommend that you check the latency by inputting a simple rhythm against the click, for example, recording quarter notes in a 4/4 time signature.

Depending on the results, there are different settings you can change:

- If your notes are notated with incorrect durations, such as sixteenth notes notated as eighth notes, we recommend that you change your quantization settings in the **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog.
- If your notes are notated ahead of the beat, we recommend that you increase the latency compensation value.
- If your notes are notated behind the beat, we recommend that you reduce the buffer size for your audio device to the lowest possible value that still produces stable playback with no drop-outs.

NOTE

The built-in audio device on Windows computers cannot always achieve a low enough latency for reliable input in real time. In such cases, we recommend that you use an external USB audio interface with ASIO support.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import on page 193

Changing the MIDI latency compensation value

You can change the MIDI latency compensation value to correct any discrepancy between when you press keys during MIDI recording and where the corresponding notes are notated relative to the beat.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.

2. Click **Play** in the category list.
3. In the **Recording** subsection, change the value for **MIDI input latency compensation**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Increasing the latency compensation value increases the time between pressing the key and the note being notated. This is useful if the notes you record were previously notated ahead of the beat.

Decreasing the latency compensation value decreases the time between pressing the key and the note being notated. This is useful if the notes you record were previously notated behind the beat.

Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import

You can change your default setting for whether Dorico for iPad interprets sustain pedal controllers as pedal lines when recording MIDI and importing MIDI files.

NOTE

These options are also available in the **MIDI Import Options** dialog, and your settings are linked between this dialog and **Preferences**.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Play** in the category list.
3. In the **Recording** subsection, activate/deactivate **Import CC64 as pedal lines**.
4. Optional: If you activated **Import CC64 as pedal lines**, activate/deactivate **Snap pedal lines to previous beat**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When **Import CC64 as pedal lines** is activated, the MIDI controller CC64 is interpreted as pedal lines.

When **Snap pedal lines to previous beat** is activated, the start of pedal lines is automatically moved back to the start of the beat.

Disabling MIDI input devices

By default, Dorico for iPad accepts MIDI input from all connected MIDI devices. You can disable MIDI devices individually, for example, if you are using devices that continuously output MIDI data.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.

- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.

2. Click **Play** in the category list.
3. In the **Recording** subsection, click **MIDI Input Devices** to open the **MIDI Input Devices** dialog.
4. Deactivate the checkbox for each MIDI input device you want to disable.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Notations input

You can input many types of notations, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes and music. In Dorico for iPad, “notation” is a broad term that includes many different items, including articulations, slurs, dynamics, and more.

In Dorico for iPad, you can input most notations with the keyboard by using popovers and with the mouse by using panels.

Inputting articulations

You can input notes with articulations during note input, and you can add articulations to notes after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps describe selecting articulations before inputting notes. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify articulations after inputting notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the existing notes to which you want to add articulations.
2. Select the articulations you want to input in any of the following ways:
   - Press the key commands for the articulations you want.
   - In the Notes panel, click the articulations you want.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click the articulations you want.
3. Optional: During note input, input the notes or chords you want with your selected articulations.

RESULT

The selected articulations are added to the selected notes. They are positioned between noteheads or stems and tuplet brackets, so they are closer to the notes than tuplet brackets or tuplet numbers/ratios.

During note input, the selected articulations are added to all notes that are input until the articulations are deactivated.

NOTE

Some combinations of articulations on the same notes are not possible. For example, you cannot have both staccato and staccatissimo marks on the same notes, as both articulations indicate that notes are played shorter.

RELATED LINKS
Articulations on page 419
Note input on page 140
Notes panel on page 117
Keyboard panel on page 128

Key commands for articulations

In addition to clicking them in the Notes panel, you can input common articulations by pressing key commands on your computer keyboard.

You can use the following key commands to input articulations with the keyboard:

Type of articulation	Key command
Accent: >	[
Marcato: ^	'
Stressed: ´	{
Unstressed: ˘	"
Staccato: ·	]
Tenuto: –	\
Staccatissimo: ', ', or '	}
Combined tenuto and staccato: ‾	|

RELATED LINKS
Articulations on page 419

Inputting slurs

You can input slurs, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add slurs to existing notes on multiple staves at the same time and to notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument, for example, when phrases span both staves of grand staff instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

- Select the notes to which you want to add slurs.

  TIP

  - If you only select a single note, the slur connects that note to the next note in the same voice on the staff. To input slurs between notes in different voices, you must select both notes, for example, by selecting the first note, activating **Add to Selection** in the secondary toolbar, then clicking the second note.
  - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff slurs. However, you cannot create cross-staff slurs between different instruments.
  - You can select notes on multiple staves to input slurs on those staves simultaneously.

2. Input a slur in any of the following ways:
   - Press **S**.
   - In the Notes panel, click **Slur**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.

   NOTE

   If you added slurs to existing notes, stop here.

3. During note input, input the notes you want.

   The slur extends automatically, even if there are rests between the notes you input.

4. During note input, end the slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.

RESULT

During note input, slurs begin from the currently selected note on all staves across which the caret extends, not from the caret position. Slurs extend automatically as you input notes, and end on the currently selected note.

When adding slurs to existing notes, the selected notes are connected by slurs. For example, if you select two notes belonging to one instrument and two notes belonging to another, two slurs are input connecting the notes on each selected staff. If you selected notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument, a cross-staff slur is input.

Slurs are placed either above or below the notes, depending on the stem direction of the notes within the selection.

TIP

When nothing is selected, you can also click **Slur** in the Notes panel or Keyboard panel toolbar, and then click and drag to input a slur and extend it to your preferred length.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the curvature direction of individual slurs.

RELATED LINKS

Notes panel on page 117
Keyboard panel on page 128

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Slurs on page 771
Inputting nested slurs on page 783
Inputting notes on page 145
Slurs in playback on page 796
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 782
Changing the curvature direction of slurs on page 781
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322

Inputting fingerings

You can input fingerings on existing notes using the fingerings popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

- You can only add fingerings to notes at one rhythmic position at a time, and you can only input as many fingerings as there are notes at each rhythmic position. For example, you can input three fingerings at the rhythmic position of a chord containing three notes, but only one fingering at the rhythmic position of a single note.
- If you select notes in multiple voices, fingerings are only input into the top voice.
- Although they contain two numbers, substitution fingerings are considered one fingering, meaning you can add substitution fingerings to single notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an existing note on a single staff to which you want to add fingering.

     If you want to add fingerings to all notes in a chord, select all the notes in the chord.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the fingerings popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-F**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Fingerings**.
4. Optional: If you are inputting fingerings for fretted instruments, change the hand in one of the following ways:
   - To switch to the right hand, press **Down Arrow**.
   - To switch to the left hand, press **Up Arrow**.

   The popover icon updates to show the current hand.

Fingerings popover when inputting right-hand fingerings

Fingerings popover when inputting left-hand fingerings

5. Enter the fingerings you want into the popover.

   For example, enter:

- **3-2** for a substitution fingering from the third finger to the second finger.
- **1,3,5** for a chord.
- **12** to show the first two valves should be depressed on a valved brass instrument.
- **p** for a right-hand thumb fingering or **t** for a left-hand thumb fingering.

6. Optional: When adding fingerings to existing notes, move the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To advance the popover to the next note/chord in the current voice, press **Space**.
   - To move the popover back to the previous note/chord in the current voice, press **Shift-Space**.
   - To advance the popover to the first note/chord in the current voice in the next bar, press **Tab**.
   - To move the popover back to the first note/chord in the current voice in the previous bar, press **Shift-Tab**.
   - To move the cursor and popover to the right/left and to the next/previous note/fingering in the current voice, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The fingerings are input on the selected notes, including during note input. The popover advances through notes in the voice as indicated by the caret or in the same voice as your initial selection.

RELATED LINKS

Fingering on page 531
Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings on page 533
Fingerings for valved brass instruments on page 546
Deleting fingerings on page 538

Fingerings popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the fingerings popover to input the different types of fingerings available. The fingerings popover behaves differently for fretted instruments compared to other instruments, so there is a separate table for fretted instrument fingerings.

You can open the fingerings popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either a note is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-F**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Fingerings**.

When inputting fingerings for non-fretted instruments, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting fingerings for fretted instruments, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover indicates whether you are inputting left-hand or right-hand fingerings.

Fingerings popover with an example entry for inputting a non-fretted instrument fingering

Fingerings popover with an example entry for a left-hand fretted instrument fingering

Fingering button in the Notations toolbox

Fingerings popover with an example entry for a right-hand fretted instrument fingering

Non-fretted instruments

Type of fingering	Example popover entry
Single fingerings for individual notes, including for brass valve numbers and trombone slide positions	**1**, **2**, **3**, and so on
Valved brass instruments	**12**
Single fingerings for each note in chords For keyboard instruments, Dorico for iPad automatically orders numbers appropriately according to the hand playing the notes. The default is: • Right hand for the upper staff • Left hand for the lower staff	**1,3,5**
Left-hand fingerings (non-fretted instruments)	**L2**, **G2**, **S5**, **I2**, or **H2**
Right-hand fingerings (non-fretted instruments)	**R5**, **D5**, or **M5**
Thumb indicator (non-fretted instruments)	**T**
Multiple fingerings for individual notes, for example, for ornaments such as mordents or turns	**2343**
Single fingerings for multiple notes: enter the same fingering number for two adjacent notes. For example, in keyboard music the thumb may depress two keys simultaneously.	**1,1**
Alternative fingerings	**2(3)**

Type of fingering	Example popover entry
Editorial fingerings	**[4]**
Finger substitutions	**1-3**

Fretted instruments

Type of fingering	Example popover entries
Left-hand fingerings	**0**, **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**
Left-hand thumb	**t**
Right-hand fingerings	**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5** **p**, **i**, **m**, **a**, **e**
Right-hand thumb	**p**, **t**, or **1**
Right-hand pinky finger	**e**, **x**, **c**, **o**, or **5**

These lists are not comprehensive as there are many possible fingerings. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entries to input different types of fingerings.

NOTE

Finger substitutions are shown as immediate by default, but you can change the rhythmic position of the substitution by changing the deferral duration.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Fingering on page 531
Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings on page 533
Fingerings for valved brass instruments on page 546

Input methods for key signatures

You can input key signatures with the keyboard by using the key signatures popover, and with the mouse by using the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.

RELATED LINKS
Key signatures on page 566

Key signatures popover

The table contains the entries for the key signatures popover that you can use to input the different key signatures available.

You can open the key signatures popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-K**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Key Signatures**.
- Select an existing key signature and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.

Key signatures popover with an example entry

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals button in the Notations toolbox

Type of key signature	Popover entry
Open or atonal key signature	**open** or **atonal**
Major keys (capital letters)	**C**, **D** or **G#**, **Ab**, and so on
Minor keys (lowercase letters)	**g**, **d**, **f#**, **bb**, and so on
Number of sharps	**3s**, **2#**, and so on
NOTE Assumes the major key for that many sharps.	
Number of flats	**4f**, **5b**, and so on
NOTE Assumes the major key for that many flats.	

This list is not comprehensive as you can input every possible key signature. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of key signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Key signatures on page 566

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel

The Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel allows you to create and input common key signatures. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

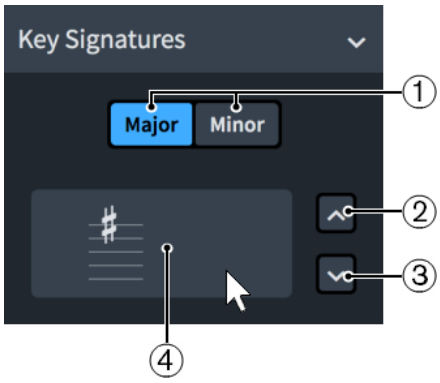
The Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel contains the following sections:

Used in This Flow

Contains all the key signatures currently used in the flow.

Key Signatures

Allows you to create key signatures.



The **Key Signatures** section contains the following parts:

1 **Major/Minor**

Allow you to choose whether your key signature is **Major** or **Minor**.

2 **More Sharps/Fewer Flats**

Each time you click, you add one sharp accidental to the key signature, or remove one flat accidental from the key signature.

3 **Fewer Sharps/More Flats**

Each time you click, you remove one sharp accidental from the key signature, or add one flat accidental to the key signature.

4 **Input key signature**

Shows how the key signature looks on a staff. Clicking this button inputs the displayed key signature. If nothing in the project is selected, the key signature is loaded onto the mouse pointer.

Accidentals

Contains all accidentals available in the currently selected tonality system.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Key signatures on page 566

Inputting key signatures with the popover

You can input key signatures using the key signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

It is not necessary to input different key signatures for transposing instruments, as Dorico for iPad automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

- Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a key signature.

2. Open the key signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-K**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Key Signatures**.
3. Enter the key signature you want into the popover.
   For example, enter **g** for G minor or **3s** for 3 sharps.

   NOTE

   Entering **3s** creates a key signature of A major, rather than F♯ minor.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, key signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of a bar. However, it is preferable to input key signature changes at barlines.

All subsequently input notes follow the input key signature, until the next existing key signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. If playing in notes using a MIDI keyboard, accidentals are spelled according to the key signature.

When adding key signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing key signature, the new key signature directly replaces the existing one.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

RELATED LINKS
Key signatures popover on page 200
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 169
Key signatures on page 566
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Transposing instruments on page 78
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 101
Signposts on page 332

Inputting key signatures with the panel

You can input key signatures using the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

It is not necessary to input different key signatures for transposing instruments, as Dorico for iPad automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a key signature.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals** to show the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
3. Optional: If you have not already used the key signature you want in the current flow, create the key signature you want using the **Key Signatures** editor in the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
4. In the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel, click the key signature you want.

RESULT

During note input, key signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of a bar. However, it is preferable to input key signature changes at barlines.

All subsequently input notes follow the input key signature, until the next existing key signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. If playing in notes using a MIDI keyboard, accidentals are spelled according to the key signature.

When adding key signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing key signature, the new key signature directly replaces the existing one.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

NOTE

An individual key signature on a single staff is not intended for transposing instruments. Transpositions of notes and key signatures are done automatically for transposing instruments.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Key signatures on page 566
Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on page 201
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 169
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Transposing instruments on page 78
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 101
Signposts on page 332

Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars

You can input time signatures, including time signatures with pick-up bars, with the keyboard by using the time signatures popover, and with the mouse by using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.

NOTE

You can create most types of custom time signatures using the **Create Time Signature** section of the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, but certain time signatures are only possible using the time signatures popover. For example, you can only specify beat subdivisions with the time signatures popover.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 34
Time signatures on page 855

Types of time signatures on page 857

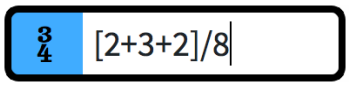
Time signatures popover

The table contains the entries for the time signatures popover that you can use to input the different types of time signatures available.

You can open the time signatures popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-M**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
- Select an existing time signature and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Time signatures popover with an example entry

Time Signatures (Meter) button in the Notations toolbox

Time signatures

Type of time signature	Popover entry
Simple time signatures For example, 2/4, 6/8, 3/4, 5/4 and so on	**2/4**, **6/8**, **3/4**, **5/4**, and so on
Alternating time signatures, such as 6/8+3/4	**6/8 + 3/4** NOTE You must include spaces either side of the plus sign.
Common time, the equivalent of 4/4	**c**
Cut common time, the equivalent of 2/2	**cutc**, **cut**, or **¢**
Open meter indicated by X	**X** or **x**
Open meter with no indication NOTE A time signature signpost is shown at the position of the open meter.	**open**
Additive time signature with explicit beat grouping	**3+2+2/8**, **3+2/4**, and so on

Type of time signature	Popover entry
Beat grouping specified but not shown in the time signature For example, a time signature of 7/8 is shown but beams are subdivided into 2+3+2 eighth notes.	**[2+3+2]/8**
Aggregate time signature with dashed barlines shown in each bar, indicating the divisions between the different meters	**2/4|6/8**
Aggregate time signature without dashed barlines shown in each bar	**2/4:6/8**
Interchangeable time signature with different styles: parenthesized, slash, equals sign, and dashed	**2/4 (6/8)**, **2/4 / 6/8**, **2/4 = 6/8**, or **2/4 – 6/8** NOTE You must include spaces either side of the slashes, equals signs, or dashes, and before opening parentheses.

Pick-up bars

Example time signature with pick-up bar	Popover entry
4/4 time signature with a dotted quarter note pick-up	**4/4,1.5**
6/8 time signature with a pick-up of two eighth notes	**6/8,2**
2/2 time signature with a quarter note pick-up	**2/2,0.5**

TIP

The number after the comma indicates multiples of the rhythmic unit specified by the denominator of the time signature.

These lists are not comprehensive, as there are many possible time signatures and pick-up bars. They are intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different time signatures and pick-up bars.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Time signatures on page 855
Types of time signatures on page 857
Time signature styles on page 862
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 208

Inputting pick-up bars with the popover on page 210
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 464

Time Signatures (Meter) panel

The Time Signatures (Meter) panel allows you to input different time signatures. In the **Create Time Signature** section of the panel, you can create uncommon time signatures. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Time Signatures (Meter) panel contains the following sections:

Used in This Flow

Contains any time signatures already used in the current flow.

Common

Contains common time signatures, such as 4/4, 3/4, 6/8, and 7/8.

Create Time Signature

Allows you to design your own time signatures, including alternating time signatures and aggregate time signatures.

The **Create Time Signature** section contains the following parts:

1 **Time signature type menu**

Allows you to select one of the following types of time signatures:

- **Regular**
- **Additive**
- **Interchangeable**
- **Aggregate**
- **Alternating**

2 **Time signature spaces**

Allows you to combine up to four time signatures. For example, you can specify only one time signature for a regular time signature, but for an alternating time signature, you might want to include three time signatures.

3 **Pick-up bar of**

Allows you to include a pick-up bar before the time signature. A pick-up bar is not a complete bar, and so allows you to include only a few beats before the first complete bar.

You can select one of the following options for the number of beats in a pick-up bar:

- **1/2 beat**
- **1 beat**
- **2 beats**
- **3 beats**

4 **Input time signature button**

Click the button that displays the time signature to input it. If nothing in the project is selected, the time signature is loaded onto the mouse pointer.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Time signatures on page 855
Types of time signatures on page 857
Time signature styles on page 862
Inputting time signatures with the panel on page 209
Inputting pick-up bars with the panel on page 211

Inputting time signatures with the popover

You can input time signatures using the time signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico for iPad to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
3. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-M**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
4. Enter the time signature you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **4/4** for a 4/4 time signature or **[2+2+3]/8** for a 7/8 time signature with a custom beat grouping.

5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, time signatures are added at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding time signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico for iPad automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly.

RELATED LINKS

Time signatures popover on page 205
Time signatures on page 855
Pick-up bars on page 859
Time signature styles on page 862
Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures on page 864
Inputting pick-up bars with the popover on page 210
Insert mode on page 161
Inputting barlines with the popover on page 224

Inputting time signatures with the panel

You can input time signatures using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico for iPad to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)** to show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
4. Optional: If you want to input a time signature that is not available in the **Used in This Flow** or **Common** sections, select the type of time signature you want to input from the menu in the **Create Time Signature** section.
5. Optional: Enter the time signatures you want into the available spaces.
6. In the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, click the time signature you want.

RESULT

During note input, time signatures are added at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding time signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico for iPad automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 207
Time signatures on page 855
Pick-up bars on page 859
Time signature styles on page 862
Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures on page 864
Inputting pick-up bars with the panel on page 211
Inputting barlines with the panel on page 225
Insert mode on page 161

Inputting pick-up bars with the popover

You can input pick-up bars as part of time signatures using the time signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a pick-up bar.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico for iPad to add beats at the end of the region affected by the pick-up bar if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
3. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-M**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
4. Enter the time signature and the number of pick-up beats you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **3/4,0.75** for a 3/4 time signature with a dotted eighth note (dotted quaver) upbeat or **4/4,1** for a 4/4 time signature with one quarter note upbeat. The number after the comma indicates multiples of the rhythmic unit specified by the denominator of the time signature.

5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, pick-up bars are added at the caret position as part of the specified time signature, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding pick-up bars to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item as part of the specified time signature. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature with pick-up bar directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico for iPad automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad does not automatically insert beats at the start of existing music to which you add time signatures with pick-up bars. If you add a pick-up bar at the start of a flow, that flow now begins in the pick-up bar, not in the first full bar. You can insert beats at the start to push existing music to later rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS

Time signatures popover on page 205
Pick-up bars on page 859
Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars on page 859
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 208
Inputting bars/beats with the popover on page 222
Inputting bars with the system track on page 224
Inputting barlines with the popover on page 224
Rhythmic position on page 19
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 160
Insert mode on page 161

Inputting pick-up bars with the panel

You can input pick-up bars as part of time signatures using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a pick-up bar.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico for iPad to add beats at the end of the region affected by the pick-up bar if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.

3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)** to show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
4. In the **Create Time Signature** section, select the type of time signature you want from the menu.
5. Enter the time signatures you want into the available spaces.
6. Activate **Pick-up bar of** section and select one of the following options:
   - **1/2 beat**
   - **1 beat**
   - **2 beats**
   - **3 beats**

   NOTE

   Not all pick-up bar lengths are possible when using the panel. For example, you cannot produce a single eighth note upbeat in 6/8 with the available options. In such cases, you must use the time signatures popover.
7. In the **Create Time Signature** section, click the input time signature button.

RESULT

During note input, pick-up bars are added at the caret position as part of the specified time signature, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding pick-up bars to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item as part of the specified time signature. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature with pick-up bar directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico for iPad automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad does not automatically insert beats at the start of existing music to which you add time signatures with pick-up bars. If you add a pick-up bar at the start of a flow, that flow now begins in the pick-up bar, not in the first full bar. You can insert beats at the start to push existing music to later rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 207
Pick-up bars on page 859
Inputting pick-up bars with the popover on page 210
Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars on page 859
Inputting bars/beats with the popover on page 222
Inputting bars with the system track on page 224
Inputting barlines with the panel on page 225
Rhythmic position on page 19
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 160
Insert mode on page 161

Input methods for tempo marks

You can input tempo marks with the keyboard by using the tempo popover, with the mouse by using the Tempo panel, and in the **Time** track in Play mode. You can input a tempo mark containing just a text instruction, just a metronome mark, or a combination of the two.

RELATED LINKS
Tempo marks on page 826

Tempo popover

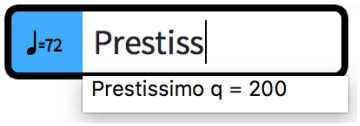
The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the tempo popover to input tempo marks, tempo equations, and rhythmic feels for swing playback.

When you start entering a tempo into the tempo popover, a menu appears with suggestions containing the letters/words you enter. You can select one of these suggestions to input, or enter your own tempo into the popover.

You can open the tempo popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-T**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Tempo**.
- Select an existing tempo mark and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Tempo popover with an example entry

Tempo button in the Notations toolbox

Tempo marks

Example tempo mark	Popover entry
Adagio	**Adagio**
Presto ♩ = 176	**Presto q = 176** or **Presto q=176**
Largo (𝅗𝅥 = 52)	**Largo (q = 52)** or **Largo (q=52)**
♩ = 96-112	**q = 96-112**, **q=96-112**, **6 = 96-112**, or **6=96-112**
♩. = 84	**q. = 84**, **q.=84**, **6. = 84**, or **6.=84**
𝅗𝅥 = 60	**h = 60**, **h=60**, **7 = 60**, or **7=60**
♪ = 120	**e = 120**, **e=120**, **5 = 120**, or **5=120**

Example tempo mark	Popover entry
rit.	**rit.** or **rit**
ritardando	**ritardando**
accel.	**accel.** or **accel**
accelerando	**accelerando**
più	**più** or **piu**
meno	**meno**
Faster, with energy	**Faster, with energy**

This list is not comprehensive as you can enter tempos freely and there are many possible metronome marks, tempo marks, and tempo equations. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of tempo marks and metronome marks.

NOTE

The tempo popover is case-sensitive. If you want your tempo mark to start with a capital letter, you must enter a capital letter into the popover.

Metronome mark beat units

Metronome mark beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	**z** or **2**
32nd note	**y** or **3**
16th note	**x** or **4**
Eighth note	**e** or **5**
Quarter note	**q** or **6**
Half note	**h** or **7**
Whole note	**w** or **8**
Double whole note	**2w** or **9**
Rhythm dot	**.** (period)

Tempo equations

Example tempo equation	Popover entry
♪ = ♪.	**e = e.**, **e=e.**, **5 = 5.**, or **5=5.**
♩ = ♪	**q = e**, **q=e**, **6 = 5**, or **6=5**

Rhythmic feels for swing playback

Rhythmic feel	Popover entry
Light 16th note swing rhythmic feel	**light swing 16ths**
Light eighth note swing rhythmic feel	**light swing 8ths**
Medium 16th note swing rhythmic feel	**medium swing 16ths**
Medium eighth note swing rhythmic feel	**medium swing 8ths**
Heavy 16th note swing rhythmic feel	**heavy swing 16ths**
Heavy eighth note swing rhythmic feel	**heavy swing 8ths**
Straight rhythmic feel	**straight (no swing)**
Triplet 16th fixed rhythmic feel	**2:1 swing 16ths (fixed)**
Triplet 8th fixed rhythmic feel	**2:1 swing 8ths (fixed)**
Dotted 16th-32nd fixed rhythmic feel	**3:1 swing 16ths (fixed)**
Dotted 8th-16th fixed rhythmic feel	**3:1 swing 8ths (fixed)**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Tempo marks on page 826
Types of tempo marks on page 827

Tempo panel

The Tempo panel contains the different types of tempo marks available in Dorico for iPad, organized into sections. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Tempo panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Tempo** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

Used in This Flow

Contains any tempo marks already used in the flow, including custom tempo marks added using the tempo popover.

Tap Tempo

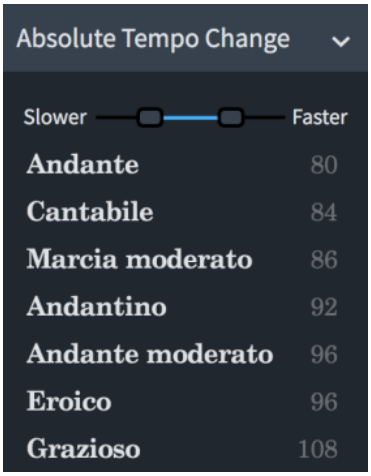
Allows you to create an absolute tempo change based on the speed with which you click the **Tap** button. It appears as a metronome mark with no text by default. The metronome mark value is always rounded to the nearest integer.

You can use the available options to set the beat unit on which you want to base the tempo.

Absolute Tempo Change

Contains a range of tempos with both an Italian tempo indication and a metronome mark. You can later choose to show or hide the metronome mark for individual tempo marks.

You can change the range shown in the list by adjusting the slider at the top.



Gradual Tempo Change

Contains tempo marks that indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando* or *accelerando*.

You can add modifiers to gradual tempo changes. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section.

Relative Tempo Change

Contains tempo marks that indicate a change in tempo that is relative to the previous tempo, such as *mosso* (movement, or with movement). They often include modifiers that qualify the change, such as *poco meno mosso* (a little less movement), and are not defined by a metronome mark.

You can add modifiers to relative tempo changes. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section.

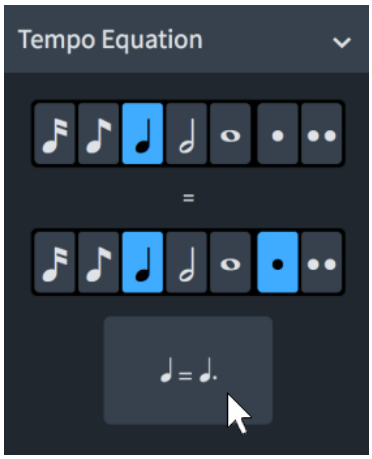
You can later set a relative metronome mark change as a percentage of the previous metronome mark for individual tempo marks.

Reset Tempo

Contains tempo marks that indicate a return to the previous tempo, such as *A tempo*, or a previously defined tempo, such as *Tempo primo*.

Tempo Equation

Allows you to input a tempo equation, using beat units from 16th notes to whole notes and up to two rhythm dots.



RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Tempo marks on page 826
Types of tempo marks on page 827
Changing the metronome mark value on page 833

Inputting tempo marks with the popover

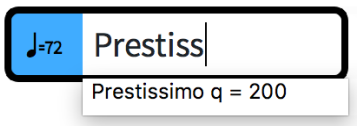
You can input tempo marks using the tempo popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a tempo mark. If you want to input a gradual tempo change across a duration, select items that span that duration.
2. Open the tempo popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-T**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Tempo**.
3. Enter the tempo you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **q=72** or **Allegretto**.

   When you start entering a tempo into the tempo popover, a menu appears that shows suggested tempos containing the letters/words you enter. You can select one of these suggestions or you can enter your own tempo into the popover.



NOTE

If you want to show gradual tempo changes separated into syllables spread across their duration, such as *rit-e-nu-to*, we recommend selecting a suggested entry from the menu. Only gradual tempo changes with valid full text appear separated into syllables.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, tempo marks are input at the caret position. Gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*, are also input at the caret position with a default duration of a quarter note. Gradual tempo changes do not extend as you input notes.

When adding tempo marks to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Gradual tempo changes span the duration of the selected items.

NOTE

Metronome mark values appear as integers without decimal places, even if you input decimal places. However, the exact metronome mark value you input is always reflected in playback.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can lengthen/shorten gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

Tempo marks on page 826
Tempo mark components on page 827
Gradual tempo changes on page 835
Metronome marks on page 833
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the style of gradual tempo changes on page 836

Inputting tempo marks with the panel

You can input tempo marks using the Tempo panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

You cannot specify decimal places for metronome marks using the panel. You can specify decimal places using the popover or by changing the metronome mark value of existing tempo marks.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a tempo mark. If you want to input a gradual tempo change across a duration, select items that span that duration.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Tempo** to show the Tempo panel.
3. In the Tempo panel, click the tempo mark you want.

   TIP

   If you want Dorico for iPad to calculate the metronome mark for you, you can click **Tap** in the **Tap Tempo** section multiple times at the required speed.

4. Optional: Select a modifier from the available options.

   NOTE

   You can only add modifiers to a **Gradual Tempo Change** or a **Relative Tempo Change**.

RESULT

During note input, tempo marks are input at the caret position. Gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*, are also input at the caret position with a default duration of a quarter note. Gradual tempo changes do not extend as you input notes.

When adding tempo marks to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Gradual tempo changes span the duration of the selected items.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can lengthen/shorten gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Tempo marks on page 826
Changing the metronome mark value on page 833
Changing the style of gradual tempo changes on page 836

Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines

You can input both bars and barlines with the keyboard by using the bars and barlines popover, and also with the mouse by using the available options in the Bars and Barlines panel. The bars and barlines popover also allows you to input beats. Additionally, you can input bars using the system track.

Normally you do not need to create bars in Dorico for iPad, as they are created automatically as needed when you input music. However, you can add bars in advance if, for example, you are copying or arranging an existing piece of music.

RELATED LINKS

Bars on page 424
Barlines on page 428
System track on page 316
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 170

Bars and barlines popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the bars and barlines popover to add and delete bars and beats, and the entries you can use to input the different barlines available.

You can open the bars and barlines popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-B**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.

Bars and barlines popover with an example entry for inputting bars

Bars and barlines popover with an example entry for a barline

Bars and Barlines button in the Notations toolbox

Bars

Example action	Popover entry
Add two bars	**2** or **+2**
Add fourteen bars	**14** or **+14**
Delete one bar	**–1**
Delete six bars	**–6**
Add a bar rest	**rest**
Delete empty bars at the end of the flow	**trim**

This list is not comprehensive, as you can add and delete any number of bars using the popover. This table is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input and delete bars, and input bar rests.

Beats

You can specify a number of beats that you want to add/delete by entering the number of beats you want followed by either the number that corresponds to the beat unit, such as **5** for eighth notes, or the letter that corresponds to the beat unit, such as **h** for half notes. When using numbers for both the number of beats and the beat unit, you must separate them with a space or hyphen. You can also specify beats in the form of a time signature, such as 3/4 for three quarter note beats.

Example action	Popover entry
Add one whole note beat	**1w**, **1-8**, **1 8**, or **4/4**
Add two quarter note beats	**2q**, **2-6**, **2 6**, or **2/4**
Add four eighth note beats	**4e**, **4-5**, **4 5**, **4/8**, or **2/4**
Delete two quarter note beats	**–2q**, **-2-6**, **-2 6**, or **-2/4**

This list is not comprehensive, as you can add and delete any number of beats using the popover. This table is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input and delete beats.

Beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	**z** or **2**
32nd note	**y** or **3**
16th note	**x** or **4**
Eighth note	**e** or **5**
Quarter note	**q** or **6**
Half note	**h** or **7**
Whole note	**w** or **8**
Double whole note	**2w** or **9**
Rhythm dot	**.** (period)

Barlines

Type of barline	Popover entry
Normal (Single)	**|**, **single**, or **normal**
Double	**||** or **double**
Final	**|]** or **final**
Triple	**triple**
Start repeat	**|:** or **start**
End repeat	**:|** or **end**
End/Start repeat	**:|:**, **:||:**, **end-start**, or **endstart**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 170
Bars on page 424
Barlines on page 428
Deleting bars/beats on page 424

Bars and Barlines panel

The Bars and Barlines panel allows you to input bars, bar rests, and different types of barlines. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Bars and Barlines panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Bars and Barlines** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Bars and Barlines panel contains the following sections:

Insert Bars

Allows you to determine how many bars you want to insert and where to insert them, such as at the end of the flow.

Insert Bar Rest

Allows you to insert a bar rest.

Create Barline

Contains the different barlines you can input.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Hiding/Showing zones on page 31

Inputting bars/beats with the popover

You can input bars/beats using the bars and barlines popover, both during note input and by adding them to or inserting them into existing music.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input bars, you have input a time signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to add bars/beats.

     Bars/Beats are added after selected barlines and before other selected items, including time signatures.
2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
3. Enter the number of bars/beats you want to input.

   For example, enter **2** to input two bars or **2q** to input two quarter note beats.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The number of bars or beats specified is input.

During note input, bars/beats are input from the caret position. If the caret is in the middle of the bar when inputting bars, sufficient beats are added to ensure that the final bar created has the correct number of beats. The caret position stays at its previous position so you can continue inputting music from the same position.

When you add bars/beats to existing music, they are added after selected barlines and before other selected items, including time signatures.

TIP

Another way to add bars is by choosing a note duration, such as a whole note when in a 4/4 time signature, and pressing **Space** repeatedly during note input.

RELATED LINKS
Bars and barlines popover on page 219
Bars on page 424
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 208

Inputting bars with the panel

You can input bars using the Bars and Barlines panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a time signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an existing barline after which you want to input bars.
   - Select an existing item before which you want to input bars.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Bars and Barlines** to show the Bars and Barlines panel.
3. In the **Insert Bars** section of the Bars and Barlines panel, change the number of bars you want to input by changing the value in the value field.
4. Select one of the following options for where you want to input bars:
   - **Start of Flow**: Bars are input at the beginning of the flow.
   - **Start of Selection**: Bars are input from the selected note or rest.
   - **End of Flow**: Bars are input at the end of the flow.

     NOTE

     If you want to input bars from the caret position, make sure that you have selected **Start of Selection** from the menu.
5. Click **Insert Bars**.

RESULT

The number of bars specified is input. During note input, bars are input from the caret position.

If you selected **Start of Selection**, bars are input directly after a selected barline, and directly before a selected note, bar, or time signature.

TIP

Another way to add bars is by choosing a note duration, such as a whole note when in a 4/4 time signature, and pressing **Space** repeatedly during note input.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Bars on page 424
Inputting time signatures with the panel on page 209

Inputting bars with the system track

You can add bars within existing music using the system track, for example, if you decide you want to repeat several bars before the next section.

NOTE

You cannot use the system track during note input.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the system track, select the region whose duration you want to insert.

   For example, if you want to insert two bars, select two bars in the system track immediately before where you want the two new bars to be input.
2. Click **Add** above the system track.

RESULT

The rhythmic duration selected in the system track is added immediately after the end of the selection. Existing music after the selection is pushed back after the inserted bars/beats.

RELATED LINKS
System track on page 316
Hiding/Showing the system track on page 317
Selecting bars with the system track on page 317

Inputting barlines with the popover

You can input barlines using the bars and barlines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also change the type of existing barlines.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a barline.
2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
3. Enter the barline you want into the popover.

For example, enter **||** for a double barline.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, barlines are input at the caret position.

When you add barlines to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of clefs and to the left of other items. If you selected an existing barline, the new barline directly replaces the existing one.

Surrounding music automatically adjusts to accommodate the barline. For example, note grouping, rests, and tied notes all adjust if necessary. Inputting final barlines at the end of the last bar of flows can automatically trim the flow if there is no further music and depending on the time signature.

NOTE

Normal barlines that you have input directly, such as to replace an existing double barline, are still considered explicit barlines and break multi-bar rests. Deleting barlines resets them completely.

RELATED LINKS

Bars and barlines popover on page 219
Barlines on page 428
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 208
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Deleting bars/beats on page 424

Inputting barlines with the panel

You can input barlines using the Bars and Barlines panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also change the type of existing barlines.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a barline.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Bars and Barlines** to show the Bars and Barlines panel.
3. In the **Create Barline** section, click the barline you want.

RESULT

During note input, barlines are input at the caret position.

When you add barlines to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of clefs and to the left of other items. If you selected an existing barline, the new barline directly replaces the existing one.

Surrounding music automatically adjusts to accommodate the barline. For example, note grouping, rests, and tied notes all adjust if necessary. Inputting final barlines at the end of the last bar of flows can automatically trim the flow if there is no further music and depending on the time signature.

NOTE

Normal barlines that you have input directly, such as to replace an existing double barline, are still considered explicit barlines and break multi-bar rests. Deleting barlines resets them completely.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Barlines on page 428
Bars and barlines popover on page 219
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting time signatures with the panel on page 209

Input methods for dynamics

You can input dynamics with the keyboard by using the dynamics popover, and with the mouse by using the Dynamics panel.

RELATED LINKS
Dynamics on page 498
Inputting dynamics with the popover on page 229
Inputting dynamics with the panel on page 231
Niente hairpins on page 507
Adding modifiers to existing dynamics on page 509

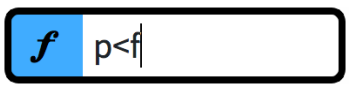
Dynamics popover

The table contains examples of what you can enter into the dynamics popover to input the different dynamics available.

You can open the dynamics popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-D**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Dynamics**.
- Select an existing dynamic and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Dynamics popover with an example entry

Dynamics button in the Notations toolbox

Dynamics popover entries

Dynamic or modifier	Popover entry
pianissimo: ***pp***	**pp**

Dynamic or modifier	Popover entry
piano: 𝒑	**p**
mezzo piano: 𝒎𝒑	**mp**
mezzo forte: 𝒎𝒇	**mf**
forte: 𝒇	**f**
fortissimo: 𝒇𝒇	**ff**
fortepiano without separator: 𝒇𝒑	**fp**
fortepiano with separator, such as 𝒇-𝒑	**f-p**, **f:p**, or **f/p**
subito	**subito**, **sub**, or **sub.**
possibile	**possibile**, **poss**, or **poss.**
poco	**poco**
molto	**molto**
più	**piu** or **più**
meno	**meno**
mosso	**mosso**
crescendo: <	**<**
cresc. (text)	**cresc**
diminuendo: >	**>**
dim. (text)	**dim**
crescendo then *diminuendo messa di voce*: <>	**<>**
diminuendo then *crescendo messa di voce*: ><	**><**
niente hairpins that start/end with a small circle	**o<** or **>o**
niente hairpins that start/end with the letter “n”	**n<** or **>n**
sforzando: 𝒔𝒇𝒛	**sfz**
rinforzando: 𝒓𝒇𝒛	**rfz**

This list is not comprehensive as you can enter anything as a dynamic modifier. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of dynamics.

TIP

You can input hairpins directly into the score without the popover by pressing **<** for a crescendo hairpin and **>** for a diminuendo hairpin.

You can also change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics after they have been input.

Inputting modifiers into the dynamics popover

You can enter modifiers into the dynamics popover, such as *poco*, *molto*, *subito*, *espressivo*, or *dolce*. It appears in the correct italic font beside the dynamic. However, you must also enter an accompanying immediate dynamic, such as **p** or **f**, and separate the two with a space, for example, **f molto** or **p espressivo**.

You can hide immediate dynamics if you only want to show the modifier.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Dynamics on page 498
Dynamic modifiers on page 508
Niente hairpins on page 507
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 505
Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics on page 512
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 506
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 506
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 509

Dynamics panel

The Dynamics panel contains the different dynamics available in Dorico for iPad, including gradual dynamics and dynamic modifiers, such as *poco* and *possibile*. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Dynamics panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Dynamics** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Dynamics panel contains the following sections:

Immediate Dynamics

Contains dynamics such as ***pp*** and ***f***, and modifiers, such as *subito* and *possibile*. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section in boxes.

You can only input modifiers alongside a dynamic.

Gradual Dynamics

Contains dynamics such as ≺ and ≻, and modifiers, such as *poco* and *niente*. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section in boxes.

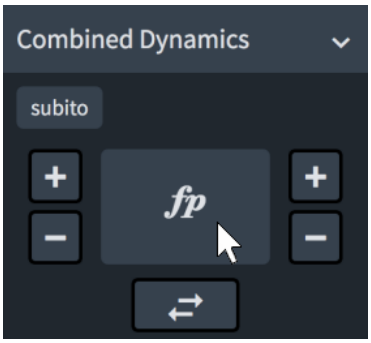
You can only input modifiers alongside a dynamic.

Force/Intensity of Attack

Contains dynamics such as ***sfz*** and ***fz***.

Combined Dynamics

Allows you to create custom combinations of dynamics, such as *fff pp*. The controls allow you to increase and decrease the dynamic on each side, and to swap their order.



RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Dynamics on page 498
Dynamic modifiers on page 508

Inputting dynamics with the popover

You can input dynamics and modifiers using the dynamics popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

TIP

You can also change dynamics during note input by following these steps when the caret is at the rhythmic position of the dynamic you want to change.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input dynamics. If you want to input dynamics across a duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. Open the dynamics popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-D**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Dynamics**.
3. Enter the dynamic you want into the popover.

   For example, **p**, **p<f>p**, or **f>**.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend open-ended gradual dynamics, such as **p<**, in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   Open-ended gradual dynamics also extend automatically as you continue inputting notes.

6. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended dynamics by pressing **?** or by opening the dynamics popover again and inputting another immediate dynamic, such as **f**.

RESULT

The specified dynamics are input. They apply to all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments.

Adjoining dynamics, or dynamics that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding dynamics to existing music.

During note input, dynamics are input at the caret position, and extend automatically if you included an open-ended gradual dynamic.

When you add dynamics to existing music, immediate dynamics are added to the first item in the selection while gradual dynamics are added across the selection.

NOTE

- If you entered a dynamic phrase into the popover during note input, such as **p<f>p**, each gradual dynamic lasts a quarter note (crotchet). You can lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics and groups of dynamics later.
- Some modifiers, such as *molto*, appear before immediate dynamics rather than after them, even if you do not enter them in that order. This follows the generally accepted practice for the placement of that text.

  You can add modifiers before and after existing dynamics. You can also hide immediate dynamics later if you only want to show the modifier.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move dynamics within dynamic phrases and change the placement of dynamics relative to the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Dynamics on page 498
Notations toolbox on page 121
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131
Gradual dynamics on page 511
Groups of dynamics on page 518
Dynamic modifiers on page 508
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 509
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 506
Changing dynamic levels on page 505
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 513
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 505
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326

Inputting dynamics with the panel

You can input dynamics and modifiers using the Dynamics panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

You can also change dynamics during note input by following these steps when the caret is at the rhythmic position of the dynamic you want to change.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input dynamics. If you want to input dynamics across a duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Dynamics** to show the Dynamics panel.
3. In the Dynamics panel, click the dynamics you want.

   NOTE

   - If you want to add expressive or qualifying text to the dynamics, do not deselect them.
   - Gradual dynamics have a default duration of a quarter note. You can lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics later.
4. Optional: In the Dynamics panel, click the expressive/qualifying texts you want in the **Immediate Dynamics** and **Gradual Dynamics** sections.

RESULT

The specified dynamics are input. They apply to all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments.

Adjoining dynamics, or dynamics that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding dynamics to existing music.

During note input, dynamics are input at the caret position. Gradual dynamics are input with a default duration of a quarter note.

When you add dynamics to existing music, immediate dynamics are added to the first item in the selection while gradual dynamics are added across the selection.

NOTE

- Some modifiers, such as *molto*, appear before immediate dynamics rather than after them, even if you do not enter them in that order. This follows the generally accepted practice for the placement of that text.

  You can add modifiers before and after existing dynamics. You can also hide immediate dynamics later if you only want to show the modifier.
- You can also input gradual dynamics by clicking the gradual dynamic you want in the Dynamics panel when nothing is selected in the music area. Then click and drag to input the gradual dynamic and extend it to the length you want.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move dynamics within dynamic phrases and change the placement of dynamics relative to the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Dynamics on page 498
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 506
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 506
Changing dynamic levels on page 505
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 505

Input methods for chord symbols

You can input chord symbols in Dorico for iPad with the computer keyboard and any connected MIDI keyboard.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbols on page 472
Inputting chord symbols on page 237
Navigation during chord symbol input on page 236

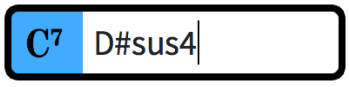
Chord symbols popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the chord symbols popover to input the different possible chord symbol components. You can enter them in any combination.

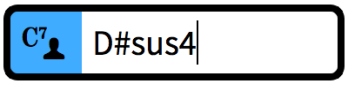
You can open the chord symbols popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-Q**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Chord Symbols**.
- Select an existing chord symbol and press **Return**.

When inputting global chord symbols, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting local chord symbols, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover appears smaller and includes the icon for a single player.



Chord symbols popover with an example entry for a global chord symbol



Chord symbols popover with an example entry for a local chord symbol

Chord Symbols button in the Notations toolbox

NOTE

You can combine multiple types of entries to create more complex chord symbols if you enter them one after another into the chord symbols popover without spaces between them. For example, enter **Eblocrian** for the following chord symbol:

E♭Loc.

Chord symbol roots

Type of chord symbol root	Popover entry
English note names C, D♭, F♯, B, and so on	**C**, **Db**, **F#**, **B**, and so on
German note names C, D♭, F♯, H, and so on	**C**, **Des**, **Fis**, **H**, and so on
Fixed-do solfège C, D♭, F, F♯, B, and so on	**do**, **reb**, **fa**, **fa#**, **ti**, and so on
Nashville numbers representing scale degrees Assuming C major: C, D♭, F♯, B, and so on	**1**, **2b**, **4#**, **7**, and so on

Chord symbol qualities

Chord symbol quality	Popover entry
Major	**maj**, **M**, **ma**, or nothing after entering the root.
Minor	**m**, **min**, or **mi**
Diminished	**dim**, **di**, or **o**
Augmented	**aug**, **au**, **ag**, or **+**
Half-diminished	**half-dim**, **halfdim**, or **hd**
6/9	**6/9**, **69**, or **%**

Chord symbol intervals

Interval	Popover entry
Major 7th	**^7** or **^**
Major 9th	**^9**, **maj9**, or **9maj7**

Chord symbol alterations

Type of chord symbol alteration	Popover entry
Alterations	**b5**, **-5**, **#9**, **+9**, and so on
Added notes	**add#11**, **add+11**, **addb9**, **add-9**, **addF#**, **addBb**, and so on
Suspensions	**sus4**, **sus9**, and so on
Omissions	**omit3**, **no7**, and so on

Chord symbols with altered bass notes

Example altered bass note chord symbols	Popover entry
G7/D	**G7,D** or **Gmaj7,D**
C(♭5)/E♭	**CMb5/Eb** or **Cmajb5/Eb**
Fm/D♯	**Fm/D#** or **Fmi/D#**

Polychord chord symbols

Example polychord chord symbols	Popover entry
G/E	**G;E** or **Gmaj;E**
Cmaj7/D	**CM7|D** or **Cmaj7|D**
Fm/D♯	**Fm|D# Fmi|D#**

No chord symbols

No chord symbol	Popover entry
No chord	**N.C.**, **NC**, **no chord**, or **none**

Modal chord symbols

Modal chord symbol	Popover entry
Ionian	**ionian**

Modal chord symbol	Popover entry
Dorian	**dorian**
Phrygian	**phrygian**
Lydian	**lydian**
Mixolydian	**mixolydian**
Aeolian	**aeolian**
Locrian	**locrian**
Melodic minor	**melodicminor**
Harmonic minor	**harmonicminor**
Whole tone	**wholetone**
Octatonic or diminished half-whole	**diminishedhalfwhole**, **diminishedsemitonetone**, **octatonichalfwhole**, or **octatonicsemitonetone**
Octatonic or diminished whole-half	**diminishedwholehalf**, **diminishedtonesemitone**, **octatonicwholehalf**, or **octatonictonesemitone**

This list is not comprehensive, as there are many possible chord symbols. It is intended to illustrate the different components you can use to input different chord symbols.

NOTE

The appearance of the resulting chord symbols is determined by Dorico for iPad's default settings. The structure of your entry in the chord symbols popover is not considered. For example, entering a C major chord as **C**, **Cmaj**, or **CM** results in the same chord symbol.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Chord symbols on page 472

Navigation during chord symbol input

You can move the chord symbols popover manually by different amounts to input chord symbols at other positions without closing and reopening the popover each time.

Navigating with a computer keyboard

Popover navigation	Key command
Advance the popover to the next beat, according to the current time signature.	**Space**
Move the popover back to the previous beat, according to the current time signature.	**Shift-Space**
Advance the popover to the start of the next bar.	**Tab**
Move the popover back to the start of the previous bar.	**Shift-Tab**
Move the cursor and popover to one of the following positions, whichever is closest: • Next/Previous note or rest • Next/Previous rhythmic grid position • Next/Previous character in existing chord symbol's entry	**Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**
Move the popover to the next/previous chord symbol.	**Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Cmd-Left Arrow**

Navigating with a MIDI keyboard

When inputting chord symbols using a MIDI keyboard, by default the popover advances automatically to the next beat after you play a chord.

You can define specific keys or buttons on your MIDI keyboard to trigger different navigation behaviors. Use the **MIDI Learn** button on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences** to assign specific keys to the **Note Input** > **Advance Chord Symbol Input** commands.

RELATED LINKS
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
Assigning MIDI commands on page 38
Assigning key commands on page 38

Inputting chord symbols

You can input chord symbols using the chord symbols popover, both for all instruments or only for individual instruments. You can also open the chord symbols popover during note input; however, inputting a chord symbol stops note input.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input chord symbols using a MIDI device, you have connected the MIDI device you want to use.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a chord symbol.
2. Open the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-Q**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Chord Symbols**.

   NOTE

   If you selected an item on a staff that has local chord symbols at earlier rhythmic positions, the chord symbols popover is automatically set to input local chord symbols when it opens.
3. Enter the chord symbol you want into the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:
   - Enter the appropriate letters and numbers using the computer keyboard.
   - Play the chord in the Keyboard panel.
   - Play the chord using a MIDI keyboard.
4. Optional: Press **Space** to advance the popover to the next beat according to the current time signature.

   TIP

   You can also navigate the popover forwards and backwards by different amounts.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The chord symbol specified is input. If you selected an item belonging to an instrument that was not already set to show chord symbols in the current layout, the corresponding player is automatically updated to show chord symbols for all instruments.

Global chord symbols apply to all instruments in the project and appear on all staves set to show chord symbols. Local chord symbols only apply to the selected instrument. Local chord symbols always appear, even if global chord symbols exist at the same rhythmic positions.

NOTE

The chord symbol may look different to what you entered into the popover because Dorico for iPad provides a single default chord symbol appearance preset that applies to all chord symbols.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can hide/show chord symbols above specific staves and hide/show chord diagrams alongside them.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Keyboard panel on page 128
Chord symbols on page 472
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474
Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts on page 475
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 481
Disabling MIDI input devices on page 193

Inputting polychord chord symbols

Polychord chord symbols indicate that multiple different chords, commonly two, are played simultaneously. You can input polychords when inputting chord symbols with a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the chord symbols popover.
2. Play the first chord of the polychord with one hand.

   Keep the keys of the first chord depressed.
3. Play the second chord with the other hand.

RESULT

The two chords you played are input as a polychord chord symbol.

TIP

You can also input polychords by entering the two chords separated by a semicolon or pipe character into the chord symbols popover.

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbols popover on page 232

Indicating root notes in chord symbols

You can indicate the root note of chord symbols when inputting chord symbols with a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the chord symbols popover.
2. Indicate the root note of a chord symbol in any of the following ways when using a MIDI keyboard:
   - First play the root with one finger, and then play the remaining notes of the chord while still holding down the root.
   - Play all the notes of the chord together, then release them all, then replay the root note.

     TIP

     To input a chord symbol that consists only of the root note, just play a single note.

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbols popover on page 232

Indicating altered bass notes in chord symbols

You can indicate that chords have altered bass notes when inputting chord symbols with a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the chord symbols popover.
2. Indicate which note is the altered bass note of a chord in any of the following ways on your MIDI keyboard:
   - Play all notes of the chord together with the altered bass note at the bottom.
   - Play the chord and its altered bass note separately: Hold down the keys for the chord, then play the altered bass note while keeping the rest of the keys of the chord depressed.

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbols popover on page 232

Input methods for clefs and octave lines

You can input clefs and octave lines with the keyboard by using the clefs and octave lines popover, and also with the mouse by using the Clefs panel.

Clefs and octave lines share the same popover and panel as both affect the pitch and register of notes.

RELATED LINKS
Clefs on page 488
Octave lines on page 493

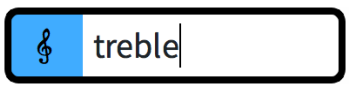
Clefs and octave lines popover

The following tables contain the entries for the clefs and octave lines popover that you can use to input the different clefs and octave lines available.

You can open the clefs and octave lines popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-C**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Clefs**.
- Select an existing clef or octave line and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Clefs and octave lines popover with an example entry for a clef

Clefs and octave lines popover with an example entry for an octave line

Clefs button in the Notations toolbox

Clefs

Type of clef	Popover entry
Treble G clef	**g**, **G**, **g2**, **sol**, or **treble**
Bass F clef	**f**, **F**, **f4**, **fa**, or **bass**
Tenor C clef	**ct**, **CT**, **c4**, **ut4**, or **tenor**
Alto C clef	**ca**, **CA**, **c3**, **ut3**, or **alto**
Treble G clef, octave below	**g8ba**, **G8ba**, **g8d**, **G8d**, **treble8ba**, or **treble8d**
Unpitched percussion	**perc**
4-string tablature	**tab4**
6-string tablature	**tab6**

NOTE

The rectangular percussion clef is available in the Clefs panel.

Octave lines

Function of octave line	Popover entry
Shifts notes up by 1 octave.	**8va**, **8**, **8u**, or **1u**
Shifts notes up by 2 octaves.	**15ma**, **15**, **15u**, or **2u**
Shifts notes up by 3 octaves.	**22ma**, **22**, **22u**, or **3u**
Shifts notes down by 1 octave.	**8ba**, **8vb**, **8d**, or **1d**
Shifts notes down by 2 octaves.	**15ba**, **15vb**, **15d**, or **2d**
Shifts notes down by 3 octaves.	**22ba**, **22vb**, **22d**, or **3d**
Loco indication	**loco**
End of octave line For example, enter **stop** to specify where an octave line ends during note input.	**|** or **stop**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Clefs on page 488

Octave lines on page 493

Clefs panel

The Clefs panel contains the different types of clefs and octave lines available in Dorico for iPad. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Clefs panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Clefs** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Clefs panel contains the following sections:

Common Clefs

Contains the clefs you are most likely to need, including treble clef and bass clef.

Octave Lines

Contains octave lines, indicating up to three octaves above and below, and a *loco* line.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Clefs on page 488
Octave lines on page 493
Inputting clefs with the panel on page 242
Inputting octave lines with the panel on page 244

Inputting clefs with the popover

You can input clefs using the clefs and octave lines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also use the popover to change the type of existing clefs.

NOTE

- If you do not want to show any clef in any layout, you must input an invisible clef. You can also hide/show clefs according to the layout transposition.
- Many instruments in Dorico for iPad have different types that show alternative clefs by default. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a clef.
2. Open the clefs and octave lines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-C**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Clefs**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the clef you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **bass** for a bass clef or **alto** for an alto clef.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, clefs are input at the caret position. Note input continues after inputting the clef, so you can continue inputting notes and clefs as required.

When you add clefs to existing music, clefs are added directly before a selected notehead, and apply to all notes on that staff until the next clef, or the end of the flow.

Clefs apply to all notes on the staff until the next clef or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

RELATED LINKS

Clefs on page 488
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 490
Changing instruments on page 81
Adding instruments to players on page 79

Inputting clefs with the panel

You can input clefs using the Clefs panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- If you do not want to show any clef in any layout, you must input an invisible clef. You can also hide/show clefs according to the layout transposition.
- Many instruments in Dorico for iPad have different types that show alternative clefs by default. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a clef.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Clefs** to show the Clefs panel.
3. In the Clefs panel, click the clef you want.

RESULT

During note input, clefs are input at the caret position. Note input continues after inputting the clef, so you can continue inputting notes and clefs as required.

When you add clefs to existing music, clefs are added directly before a selected notehead, and apply to all notes on that staff until the next clef, or the end of the flow.

Clefs apply to all notes on the staff until the next clef or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Clefs on page 488
Universal Indian Drum Notation on page 901

Inputting octave lines with the popover

You can input octave lines using the clefs and octave lines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add an octave line.
2. Open the clefs and octave lines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-C**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Clefs**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the octave line you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **8va** for an octave line that shifts notes up one octave.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend the octave line in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   The octave line also extends automatically as you continue inputting notes.
6. Optional: During note input, stop any octave line by opening the clefs and octave lines popover again and entering **|** or **stop**.

RESULT

During note input, octave lines are input from the caret position. When you stop octave lines, they end at the caret position.

When adding octave lines to existing music, they are input either above or below your selection, depending on whether the octave line indicates that notes are played higher or lower than notated.

The pitches of notes within octave lines are adjusted automatically. For example, notes within octave above lines appear an octave lower than they do without the octave above line.

TIP

You can also lengthen/shorten octave lines after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

Clefs and octave lines popover on page 239
Octave lines on page 493
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Notations toolbox on page 121
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131

Inputting octave lines with the panel

You can input octave lines using the Clefs panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add an octave line.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Clefs** to show the Clefs panel.
3. In the **Octave Lines** section, click the octave line you want.

RESULT

During note input, octave lines are input at the caret position. They are input with a default duration of a quarter note.

When adding octave lines to existing music, they are input either above or below your selection, depending on whether the octave line indicates that notes are played higher or lower than notated.

The pitches of notes within octave lines are adjusted automatically. For example, notes within octave above lines appear an octave lower than they do without the octave above line.

TIP

You can also lengthen/shorten octave lines after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Octave lines on page 493
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183

Input methods for holds and pauses

You can input holds and pauses with the keyboard by using the holds and pauses popover in Write mode, and with the mouse by using the Holds and Pauses panel.

RELATED LINKS

Holds and pauses on page 561
Correct positioning for caesura input on page 248

Holds and pauses popover

The table contains the entries for the holds and pauses popover that you can use to input the different holds and pauses available.

You can open the holds and pauses popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-H**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Holds and Pauses**.
- Select an existing hold or pause and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.

Holds and pauses popover with an example entry

Holds and Pauses button in the Notations toolbox

Type of hold or pause	**Popover entry**
Fermata	**fer** or **fermata**
Very long fermata	**fermataverylong**
Long fermata	**fermatalong**
Short fermata	**fermatashort**
Very short fermata	**fermataveryshort**
Short fermata (Henze)	**fermatashorthenze**
Long fermata (Henze)	**fermatalonghenze**
Curlew (Britten)	**curlew**
Caesura	**caesura** or **//**
Thick caesura	**caesurathick**
Curved caesura	**caesuracurved**
Short caesura	**caesurashort**
Breath mark (Comma-like) ,	**breathmarkcomma**, **comma**, or **,** (comma)
Breath mark (Tick-like)	**breathmarktick**
Breath mark (Upbow-like)	**breathmarkupbow**
Breath mark (Salzedo)	**breathmarksalzedo**

NOTE

The Curlew mark was originally devised by Benjamin Britten for “Curlew River”, a parable for church performance inspired by Japanese Noh theater. It indicates that a player should hold a note or a rest until a synchronization point in asynchronous music.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Holds and pauses on page 561
Types of fermatas on page 561
Types of caesuras on page 563
Types of breath marks on page 562

Holds and Pauses panel

The Holds and Pauses panel allows you to input all the different types of holds and pauses available in Dorico for iPad, including alternative versions of fermatas. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Holds and Pauses panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Holds and Pauses** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Holds and Pauses panel contains the following sections:

- **Fermatas**
- **Breath Marks**
- **Caesuras**

NOTE

Holds and pauses do not currently have an effect in playback, but this is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Inputting holds and pauses with the panel on page 247
Holds and pauses on page 561
Types of fermatas on page 561
Types of caesuras on page 563
Types of breath marks on page 562

Inputting holds and pauses with the popover

You can input holds and pauses using the holds and pauses popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a hold or pause.

     NOTE

     You can only input one hold or pause at a time.
2. Open the holds and pauses popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-H**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Holds and Pauses**.

3. Enter the hold or pause you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **fermata** for a pause or **caesura** for a caesura.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, the specified hold or pause is input at the caret position. When adding holds or pauses to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

- Fermatas appear on all staves at the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata.
- Breath marks appear to the right of the caret or selected note.
- Caesuras appear on all staves to the left of the caret or selected note.

RELATED LINKS

Holds and pauses on page 561

Inputting holds and pauses with the panel

You can input holds and pauses using the Holds and Pauses panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a hold or pause.

     NOTE

     You can only input one hold or pause at a time.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Holds and Pauses** to show the Holds and Pauses panel.
3. In the Holds and Pauses panel, click the hold or pause you want.

RESULT

During note input, the specified hold or pause is input at the caret position. When adding holds or pauses to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

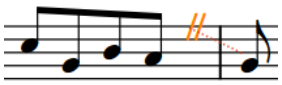
- Fermatas appear on all staves at the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata.
- Breath marks appear to the right of the caret or selected note.
- Caesuras appear on all staves to the left of the caret or selected note.

RELATED LINKS

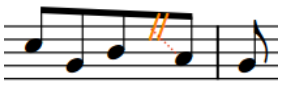
Notations toolbox on page 121
Holds and pauses on page 561

Correct positioning for caesura input

Caesuras are commonly placed at the end of a bar, before a barline. In Dorico for iPad, caesuras must be attached to the note immediately after the position where you want it to appear, as then Dorico for iPad can automatically position them correctly.



A correctly input caesura. The dotted attachment lines are attached to the notehead after the barline, meaning the caesura is correctly positioned before the barline.



An incorrectly input caesura. By clicking to the left of the barline, the caesura is attached to the last eighth note in the bar.

When input correctly, the dotted attachment lines link the caesura to the notehead immediately after the barline.

If your dotted attachment lines do not link the caesura to the notehead immediately after the barline, delete the caesura and re-input it. Caesuras can cause spacing issues when input incorrectly.

RELATED LINKS
Holds and pauses on page 561
Types of caesuras on page 563

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations

You can input ornaments, including arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations with the keyboard by using the ornaments popover, and with the mouse by using the Ornaments panel.

You can input ornaments and arpeggio signs during note input and by adding them to existing notes, but you cannot input glissando lines during note input. You can only input glissando lines by adding them to existing notes.

You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments on page 618
Arpeggio signs on page 633
Glissando lines on page 639
Jazz articulations on page 667
Jazz ornaments on page 668
Lines on page 710
Input methods for lines on page 286

Ornaments popover

The following tables contain the entries for the ornaments popover that you can use to input the different ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations available.

You can open the ornaments popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-O**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
- Select an existing ornament and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.

Ornaments popover with an example entry

Ornaments button in the Notations toolbox

Ornaments

Type of ornament	Popover entry
Trill:	**tr** or **trill**
Short trill:	**shorttr**
Mordent:	**mor** or **mordent**
Turn:	**turn**
Inverted turn:	**invturn** or **invertedturn**

Trill intervals

Trill interval	Popover entry
Major second/Whole step	**tr 2** or **tr M2**
Minor third	**tr m3**
Perfect fifth	**tr p5**
Augmented fourth	**tr aug4**
Diminished fifth	**tr dim5**

This list is not comprehensive, as there are many possible trill intervals. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different trill intervals.

Jazz ornaments

Type of jazz ornament	Popover entry
Bend	**brassbend**
Flip	**flip**
Jazz turn	**jazz** or **shake**
Smear	**smear**

Jazz articulations

Type of jazz articulation	Popover entry
Plop (bend)	**plop**
Plop (smooth)	**plopsmooth**
Scoop	**scoop**
Doit (bend)	**doit**
Doit (smooth)	**doitsmooth**
Fall (bend)	**fall**
Fall (smooth)	**fallsmooth**

TIP

Other ornaments are available in the Ornaments panel. You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

Arpeggio signs

Type of arpeggio sign	Popover entry
Up arpeggio sign	**arp**, **arpup**, or **arpeggioup**
Down arpeggio sign	**arpdown** or **arpeggiodown**
Non arpeggio sign	**nonarp** or **nonarpeggio**
Curved arpeggio sign	**slurarp**

Glissando lines

Type of glissando line	Popover entry
Straight glissando line	**gliss**
Wavy glissando line	**glisswavy**

Guitar techniques

Type of guitar technique	Popover entry
Guitar bend	**bend**
Vibrato bar dive and return	**vibbend**
Vibrato bar scoop	**vibscoop**
Vibrato bar dip	**vibdip**
Vibrato bar line NOTE Must have duration to show its line.	**wbar** or **w/bar**
Hammer-on NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with ascending pitch directions, such as C-D.	**ho** or **hammer**
Pull-off NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	**po** or **pull**

Type of guitar technique	Popover entry
Hammer-on then pull-off or pull-off then hammer-on (*ligado*) NOTE You must select at least three notes assigned to the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C or D-C-D.	**hp**, **hopo**, **hammerpull**, **lig**, or **ligado**
Right-hand tapping	**tap**
Right-hand tapping with pull-off NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	**tappull**
Left-hand tapping	**lhtap**
Left-hand tapping with pull-off NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	**lhtappull**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover on page 255
Inputting glissando lines with the popover on page 257
Inputting jazz articulations with the popover on page 259
Inputting guitar bends with the popover on page 261
Inputting vibrato bar dives on page 263
Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover on page 265
Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the popover on page 267
Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover on page 268
Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs on page 271
Inputting tapping on page 272
Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 817
Ornaments on page 618
Trill intervals on page 624
Arpeggio signs on page 633
Glissando lines on page 639
Guitar bends on page 644
Guitar techniques on page 660

Jazz articulations on page 667
Jazz ornaments on page 668
Playing technique duration on page 703

Ornaments panel

The Ornaments panel allows you to input all the different types of ornaments available, including jazz articulations, as well as arpeggio signs, glissando lines, guitar bends, and vibrato bar techniques. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Ornaments panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Ornaments** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Ornaments panel contains the following sections:

Jazz

Contains ornaments and pitch alterations commonly used in jazz music, such as bends, scoops, and falls.

Baroque and Classical

Contains ornaments commonly used in Baroque and Classical music, such as mordents, turns, and trills.

Arpeggiation

Contains the different types of arpeggio signs.

NOTE

You cannot input arpeggio signs with the mouse during note input.

Glissandi

Contains the different types of glissando lines.

Guitar

Contains techniques and pitch alterations commonly associated with guitars, such as guitar bends and vibrato bar scoops.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel on page 254
Inputting arpeggio signs with the panel on page 256
Inputting glissando lines with the panel on page 258
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 260
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 260

Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover

You can input ornaments, trills, and jazz ornaments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. When inputting trills, you can specify the trill interval, such as a minor third.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

- Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input an ornament. If you want to input a trill with a specific duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.

2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the ornament you want into the popover.
   For example, enter **tr m3** for a trill with a minor third interval or **mor** for a mordent.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the ornament.

RESULT

During note input, ornaments are input at the caret position. Trills last the duration of the rhythmic value of the note input at the caret position or the duration by which the caret advanced. Trills have a default interval of a second, either major or minor depending on the context. If you specified an interval for your trill, the interval applies only to the first note in the selection, but you can also change the interval partway through trills.

When adding ornaments to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Trills are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item, with an extender line across the rest of the selection.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments on page 618
Trills on page 621
Trill intervals on page 624
Changing trill intervals on page 626
Changing trill intervals partway through trills on page 626
Trill interval appearance on page 628
Jazz ornaments on page 668
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting jazz articulations with the popover on page 259

Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel

You can input ornaments, trills, and jazz ornaments using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input an ornament. If you want to input a trill with a specific duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the Ornaments panel, click the ornament you want.

RESULT

During note input, ornaments are input at the caret position. Trills are input with a default duration of a quarter note.

When adding ornaments to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Trills are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item, with an extender line across the rest of the selection.

TIP

You can specify trill intervals when inputting trills using the popover.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 260

Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover

You can input arpeggio signs using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also input arpeggio signs across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

NOTE

You can only input one arpeggio sign at a time.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select at least one note in each voice to which you want to add an arpeggio sign.

     NOTE

     - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff arpeggio signs. However, you cannot create cross-staff arpeggio signs between different instruments.
     - Arpeggio signs are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic position.
2. If you started note input, press **Q** to start chord input.

   NOTE

   You can only input arpeggio signs during chord input.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the arpeggio sign you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **arpup** for an up arpeggio sign or **arpdown** for a down arpeggio sign.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

6. Optional: During chord input, input the notes you want.

RESULT

During chord input, arpeggio signs are input at the caret position.

When adding arpeggio signs to existing notes, they are input to the left of the selected notes.

Arpeggio signs automatically span the pitch range of all notes at that rhythmic position in the current voice during chord input, and all notes in the selected voices/staves when adding arpeggio signs to existing notes.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Arpeggio signs on page 633
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting chords on page 174

Inputting arpeggio signs with the panel

You can input arpeggio signs on existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can also input arpeggio signs across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select at least one note in each voice to which you want to add an arpeggio sign.

   NOTE

   - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff arpeggio signs. However, you cannot create cross-staff arpeggio signs between different instruments.
   - Arpeggio signs are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic position.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Arpeggiation** section, click the arpeggio sign you want.

RESULT

The arpeggio sign specified is input to the left of the selected note or chord. Arpeggio signs automatically span the pitch range of all notes in the selected voices/staves at that rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Arpeggio signs on page 633

Inputting glissando lines with the popover

You can input glissando lines between existing notes using the ornaments popover. You can input glissando lines between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input glissando lines during note input or on the last note on a staff. Instead, you can input a jazz articulation.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a glissando.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a glissando line.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note, two notes in different voices, or two notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument.
2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the glissando line you want into the popover.
   - Enter **gliss** for a straight glissando line.
   - Enter **glisswavy** for a wavy glissando line.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The glissando line specified is input between the selected notes.

NOTE

- If you select a single note and input a glissando line, the glissando line specified starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- Glissando lines do not automatically adjust around any notes or rests between the selected notes. If glissando text is shown, the text can collide with notes or rests, in which case we recommend that you make further adjustments, such as not showing glissando text for that glissando line.
- By default, glissando line text is hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments. However, you can show glissando line text manually.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Glissando lines on page 639
Changing glissando line text on page 641
Changing when glissando line text is shown on page 641
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 260

Inputting glissando lines with the panel

You can input glissando lines between existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can input glissando lines between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input glissando lines during note input or on the last note on a staff. Instead, you can input a jazz articulation.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a glissando.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a glissando line.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note, two notes in different voices, or two notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Glissandi** section, click the style of glissando line you want.
   - **Glissando (Straight)**
   - **Glissando (Wavy)**

RESULT

The glissando line specified is input between the selected notes.

NOTE

- If you select a single note and input a glissando line, the glissando line specified starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- Glissando lines do not automatically adjust around any notes or rests between the selected notes. If glissando text is shown, the text can collide with notes or rests, in which case we recommend that you make further adjustments, such as not showing glissando text for that glissando line.
- By default, glissando line text is hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments. However, you can show glissando line text manually.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Glissando lines on page 639
Changing glissando line text on page 641
Changing when glissando line text is shown on page 641
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 260

Inputting jazz articulations with the popover

You can input jazz articulations using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

You can input jazz ornaments, such as flips or jazz turns, in the same ways as inputting ornaments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add jazz articulations.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the jazz articulation you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **scoop** for a scoop or **fall** for a fall.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The jazz articulation you specify is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

NOTE

When using the popover, all jazz articulations are input with a default line style for their type. You can change their type/length after they have been input.

When using the panel, you can specify the line style of jazz articulations when you input them.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover on page 253
Jazz articulations on page 667
Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations on page 669
Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations on page 670

Inputting jazz articulations with the panel

You can input jazz articulations using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

You can input jazz ornaments, such as flips or jazz turns, in the same ways as inputting ornaments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add jazz articulations.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
4. In the **Jazz** section, click the jazz articulation you want.

RESULT

The jazz articulation you specify is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel on page 254

Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques

You can input guitar bends (including pre-bends and post-bends), vibrato bar techniques (including dips, dives, scoops, and dives and returns) and tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications with the keyboard by using the ornaments popover, and with the mouse by using the Ornaments panel.

You can also input guitar pre-bends, post-bends, and vibrato bar pre-dives using properties in the Properties panel.

You can input guitar techniques during note input and by adding them to existing notes, but you cannot input guitar bends during note input. You can only input guitar bends by adding them to existing notes.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Ornaments panel on page 253
Guitar bends on page 644
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 647
Guitar post-bends on page 648

Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Tapping on page 661
Hammer-ons and pull-offs on page 662

Inputting guitar bends with the popover

You can input guitar bends between existing notes, including between grace notes and normal notes, using the ornaments popover. You can input guitar bends between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input guitar bends during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a guitar bend.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a guitar bend.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note or two notes in different voices.
2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter **bend** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The guitar bend is input between the selected notes.

Guitar bends automatically appear as guitar bends or returns on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

TIP

- If you select a single note and input a guitar bend, the guitar bend starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- You can assign a key command for inputting guitar bends. The command is called **Create Guitar Bend** and is in the **Note Input** category on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Guitar bends on page 644
Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 262
Inputting guitar post-bends on page 263
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Inputting guitar bends with the panel

You can input guitar bends between existing notes, including between grace notes and normal notes, using the Ornaments panel. You can input guitar bends between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input guitar bends during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a guitar bend.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a guitar bend.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note or two notes in different voices.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Guitar Bend**.

RESULT

The guitar bend is input between the selected notes.

Guitar bends automatically appear as guitar bends or returns on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

TIP

- If you select a single note and input a guitar bend, the guitar bend starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- You can assign a key command for inputting guitar bends. The command is called **Create Guitar Bend** and is in the **Note Input** category on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Guitar bends on page 644

Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can input guitar pre-bends on any existing notes belonging to fretted instruments. You can also specify that pre-bends should be played using the vibrato bar, a technique that is known as a “pre-dive”.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes before which you want to input guitar pre-bends/pre-dives. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend interval** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
3. Change the interval as required.
4. Optional: To turn the guitar pre-bends into guitar pre-dives, activate **Vibrato bar pre-bend** and the corresponding checkbox in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.

RESULT

Guitar pre-bends of the specified interval are input before the selected notes. They are shown as guitar pre-dives when **Vibrato bar pre-bend** and the corresponding checkbox are both activated.

RELATED LINKS

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 647
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Properties panel (Write mode) on page 126

Inputting guitar post-bends

You can input guitar post-bends on any existing notes belonging to fretted instruments. You can also specify that post-bends are microtonal.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes after which you want to input guitar post-bends. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Post-bend interval** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Change the interval as required.
   - To turn the guitar post-bends into microtonal post-bends, activate **Microtone bend** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group.

RESULT

Guitar post-bends of the specified interval are input after the selected notes. They are shown as microtonal when **Microtone bend** is activated.

RELATED LINKS

Guitar post-bends on page 648
Properties panel (Write mode) on page 126
Inputting guitar bends with the popover on page 261

Inputting vibrato bar dives

You can input vibrato bar dives, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

Vibrato bar dives are notated using a smooth fall jazz articulation combined with a vibrato bar indication.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar dives.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-O**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.

4. Enter **fallsmooth** into the popover to input a smooth fall jazz articulation.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Optional: During note input, move the caret back to the position of the note with the smooth fall.
7. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
8. Enter **wbar** into the popover to input a vibrato bar indication.
9. Press **Return** to close the popover.
10. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar indication.

RESULT

The smooth fall jazz articulation is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position. When adding vibrato bar indications to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

NOTE

When using the popover, all jazz articulations are input with a default line style for their type. You can change their type/length after they have been input.

You can also input both smooth fall jazz articulations and vibrato bar indications using the Ornaments panel. When using the panel, you can specify the line style of jazz articulations when you input them.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want vibrato bar indications to show a line, you can lengthen them to give them duration.

RELATED LINKS

Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments popover on page 248
Ornaments panel on page 253
Moving the caret manually on page 144
Jazz articulations on page 667
Inputting jazz articulations with the popover on page 259
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 260
Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations on page 669
Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations on page 670
Deleting jazz articulations on page 671
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Playing technique duration on page 703

Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover

You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between existing notes using the ornaments popover. You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input vibrato bar dives and returns during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least three notes with alternating pitch directions, such as D-C-D, that you want to join with a vibrato bar dive and return.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar dive.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have a descending pitch direction, such as D-C.

2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter **vibbend** into the popover to input the dive.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar return.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D.

6. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
7. Enter **vibbend** into the popover to input the return.
8. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

Vibrato bar dives are input between notes with descending pitch directions and vibrato bar returns are input between notes with ascending pitch directions. If a vibrato bar dive ends on the same note that a vibrato bar return starts on, they appear as a V on tablature with the bend interval shown at the point. If you input vibrato bar dives on consecutive notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, they are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar dive.

Vibrato bar dives and returns automatically point upwards or downwards on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649

Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Guitar bends on page 644
Inputting guitar bends with the popover on page 261

Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the panel

You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input vibrato bar dives and returns during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least three notes with alternating pitch directions, such as D-C-D, that you want to join with a vibrato bar dive and return.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar dive.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have a descending pitch direction, such as D-C.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Guitar Bend with Vibrato Bar** to input the vibrato bar dive.
4. Select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar return.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D.

5. Click **Guitar Bend with Vibrato Bar** to input the vibrato bar return.

RESULT

Vibrato bar dives are input between notes with descending pitch directions and vibrato bar returns are input between notes with ascending pitch directions. If a vibrato bar dive ends on the same note that a vibrato bar return starts on, they appear as a V on tablature with the bend interval shown at the point. If you input vibrato bar dives on consecutive notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, they are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar dive.

Vibrato bar dives and returns automatically point upwards or downwards on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Guitar bends on page 644
Inputting vibrato bar dives on page 263

Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the popover

You can input vibrato bar scoops using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar scoops.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter **vibscoop** into the popover.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

Vibrato bar scoops are input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves, not tablature. They are positioned to the left of notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input vibrato bar indications to clarify the vibrato bar scoops should be played using the vibrato bar.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover on page 269
Deleting guitar techniques on page 666

Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the panel

You can input vibrato bar scoops using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar scoops.

2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
4. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Scoop**.

RESULT

Vibrato bar scoops are input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves, not tablature. They are positioned to the left of notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input vibrato bar indications to clarify the vibrato bar scoops should be played using the vibrato bar.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel on page 270
Deleting guitar techniques on page 666

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover

You can input vibrato bar dips using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar dip.
2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter **vibdip** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar dip.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar dips are input at the caret position. When adding vibrato bar dips to existing music, they are input at the position of the earliest selected item.

By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals, are placed above the staff, and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248

Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 664
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover on page 269
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the panel

You can input vibrato bar dips using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar dip.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Dip**.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar dips are input at the caret position. When adding vibrato bar dips to existing music, they are input at the position of the earliest selected item.

By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals, are placed above the staff, and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Ornaments panel on page 253
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 664
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel on page 270
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326

Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover

You can input vibrato bar indications/lines using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. When vibrato bar indications are input across a range of items, they are input with duration and show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar indication. If you want to input a vibrato bar line, select items on the staff that span the required duration.
2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter **wbar** into the popover to input the vibrato bar indication.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

5. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar indication.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position.

When adding vibrato bar indications to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding vibrato bar indications to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection. Vibrato bar indications with duration show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

By default, vibrato bar indications/lines are placed below the staff and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 248
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Playing technique duration on page 703

Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel

You can input vibrato bar indications/lines using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. When vibrato bar indications are input across a range of items, they are input with duration and show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar indication. If you want to input a vibrato bar line, select items on the staff that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Line** w/ bar.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position.

When adding vibrato bar indications to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding vibrato bar indications to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection. Vibrato bar indications with duration show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

By default, vibrato bar indications/lines are placed below the staff and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments panel on page 253
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Playing technique duration on page 703

Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs

You can input hammer-ons/pull-offs on any notes belonging to fretted instruments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. If you select multiple notes, Dorico for iPad automatically inputs the appropriate slurs. You can also add tapping with hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add hammer-ons/pull-offs.

     NOTE

     - If you want to input hammer-ons, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with ascending pitch directions, such as C-D.
     - If you want to input pull-offs or tapping with pull-offs, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.
     - If you want to input *ligados*, you must select at least three notes assigned to the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C for a hammer-on then pull-off or D-C-D for a pull-off then hammer-on.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the hammer-on/pull-off you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **ho** for a hammer-on or **hopo** for a hammer-on then pull-off.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The hammer-on/pull-off you specify is input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

If you selected multiple adjacent notes assigned to the same string, Dorico for iPad automatically inputs slurs spanning the selected notes and centers hammer-on/pull-off indications on the slurs. For slurs with multiple hammer-on/pull-off indications, each indication is centered over the range of notes in the corresponding direction.

By default, hammer-ons/pull-offs appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff.

TIP

You can also add hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes by selecting them, activating **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel, and selecting the appropriate indication from the menu. To show hammer-on/pull-off indications centered on slurs, select all notes except the first note under each slur.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments popover on page 248
Hammer-ons and pull-offs on page 662
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 665
Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 817
Deleting guitar techniques on page 666

Inputting tapping

You can input right-hand and left-hand tapping indications on any notes belonging to fretted instruments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add tapping with hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add tapping indications.

     NOTE

     If you want to input tapping with pull-offs, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the tapping indication you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **tap** for right-hand tapping or **lhtappull** for left-hand tapping with pull-off.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The tapping indication you specify is input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, tapping indications appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff.

TIP

You can also add tapping indications to existing notes by selecting them, activating **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel, and selecting the appropriate indication from the menu.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments popover on page 248
Tapping on page 661
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 665
Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 817
Deleting guitar techniques on page 666

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams

You can input playing techniques with the keyboard by using the playing techniques popover, and with the mouse by using the Playing Techniques panel. Pedal lines are considered playing techniques in Dorico for iPad because both affect the sound that the instrument produces.

You can input string indicators outside the staff in the same ways, using either the playing techniques popover or Playing Techniques panel. However, you can only input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover.

You can input string indicators inside the staff using a property in the **String Indicators** group of the Properties panel.

RELATED LINKS
Playing techniques on page 697
Pedal lines on page 683
Harp pedaling on page 675
String indicators on page 549
Inputting playing techniques with the popover on page 277
Inputting playing techniques with the panel on page 279
Inputting pedal lines and retakes with the popover on page 280
Inputting pedal lines and retakes with the panel on page 281
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 283
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover on page 283
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel on page 284
Inputting string indicators inside the staff on page 285

Playing techniques popover

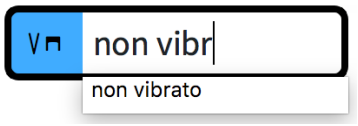
The following tables contain the entries for the playing techniques popover that you can use to input playing techniques, pedal lines, and retakes.

When you start entering a playing technique into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid playing techniques containing the letters/words you enter. You can then select one of these playing techniques to input.

You can open the playing techniques popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-P**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
- Select an existing playing technique and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Playing techniques popover with an example entry for inputting a playing technique

Playing techniques popover with an example entry for inputting a pedal line

Playing Techniques button in the Notations toolbox

Playing techniques

Playing technique	Popover entry
Vibrato	**vibrato**
Senza vibrato	**senza vibrato**
Naturale (nat.)	**nat**
Con sord.	**con sord**
Strong air pressure	**strong air pressure**
Double-tongue	**double-tongue**
Down bow	**downbow**
Up bow	**upbow**
Sul ponticello	**sul pont**
Sul tasto	**sul tasto**
Poco sul tasto	**pst**
Pizzicato	**pizz**
Spiccato	**spicc**
Arco	**arco**
Tongue click (Stockhausen)	**tongue click**
Finger click (Stockhausen)	**finger click**
Vibraphone motor on	**motor on**
Vibraphone motor off	**motor off**
Open	**open**

Playing technique	Popover entry
Damp	**damp**
Damp (large)	**damp large**
Full barré	**full barre**
Half barré	**half barre**
Strum up	**strum up**
Strum down	**strum down**
Left hand	**lh**
Right hand	**rh**

This list is not comprehensive as there are many valid playing techniques. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of common playing techniques.

If you do not know the correct entry for a playing technique, start entering part of the playing technique and see if it becomes available in the popover menu.

NOTE

- To give playing techniques duration, add **->** at the end of your entry, such as **vibrato->**. During note input, the duration of the playing technique extends as you continue inputting notes or advance the caret. When adding playing techniques to existing music, they are added as a group.
- As playing techniques correspond to specific samples, they must be input as described or selected from the popover menu.

Pedal lines

Type of pedal line or retake	Popover entry
Sustain pedal line	**ped**
Retake in sustain pedal line	**^**, **notch**, or **retake**
Remove retake in sustain pedal line	**nonotch**
Stop sustain pedal line	*****
Sostenuto pedal line	**sost**
Stop *sostenuto* pedal line	**s***

Type of pedal line or retake	Popover entry
Una corda pedal line	**unacorda**
Stop *una corda* pedal line	**u***

Harp pedaling

Example harp pedaling	Popover entry
D, C, Bb, Eb, F, G, A	**DCBbEbFGA**, **BbEb**, or **--^|^---**
D, C♯, B, E, F♯, G♯, A	**DC#BEF#G#A**, **C#F#G#**, or **-v-|-vv-**

TIP

The pipe character is optional.

String indicators outside the staff

Example string indicator	Popover entry
1	**string1**
3	**string3**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Playing techniques on page 697
Groups of playing techniques on page 707
Pedal lines on page 683
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684
Harp pedaling on page 675
Adding retakes to existing pedal lines with the popover on page 281
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 283
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover on page 283

Playing Techniques panel

The Playing Techniques panel contains the different playing techniques available in Dorico for iPad, divided into instrument families. It is located in the right zone in Write mode. Pedal lines are included in the **Keyboard** section.

- You can hide/show the Playing Techniques panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Playing Techniques panel contains the following sections:

Common

Contains commonly used playing techniques that also apply to multiple different instrument families, such as “mute” and “legato”.

Wind

Contains playing techniques typically only used for wind instruments, such as “key clicks” and “whistle tones”.

Brass

Contains playing techniques typically only used for brass instruments, such as “cup mute” and “stopped”.

Unpitched Percussion

Contains playing techniques typically only used for unpitched percussion instruments, such as “rim” and “scrape”.

Pitched Percussion

Contains playing techniques typically only used for pitched percussion instruments, such as “motor on” and “½ Ped.” for vibraphones.

Keyboard

Contains playing techniques typically only used for keyboard instruments, such as “Ped.” and different pedal depression levels.

Choral

Contains playing techniques typically only used for the voice, such as “mouth open” and “tongue click”.

Strings

Contains playing techniques typically only used for string instruments, such as “col legno battuto” and “down bow”.

Guitar

Contains playing techniques typically only used for guitars and fretted instruments, such as string indicators, “half barré”, and “strum up”.

TIP

You can hover your mouse pointer over the options in each section to show the name of each playing technique.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel on page 284

Inputting playing techniques with the popover

You can input playing techniques using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

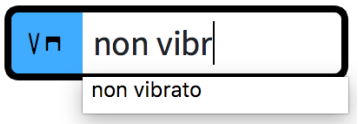
You can only enter one playing technique into the popover during note input. You can enter two playing techniques when adding playing techniques to existing music if they are separated by **->**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a playing technique. If you want to input playing techniques with duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the playing technique you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **pizz** or **non vibrato->**.

   When you start entering a playing technique into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid playing techniques containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select. If you want the playing technique to have duration, you can add **->** at the end.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

   Open-ended playing techniques, such as **non vibrato->**, automatically extend during note input as you continue inputting notes, or if you advance the caret by pressing **Space** or clicking **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
5. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended playing techniques by opening the playing techniques popover again and entering one of the following entries:
   - To end the current playing technique with another playing technique, enter that playing technique. For example, enter **vibrato**. This joins the current playing technique to the following one with a continuation line.
   - To end the current playing technique with another open-ended playing technique, enter that playing technique followed by **->**. For example, enter **vibrato->**. This joins the current playing technique to the following one with a continuation line.
   - To end the current playing technique without inputting another playing technique, enter **?** into the popover. This leaves the current playing technique with a duration line rather than a continuation line.

RESULT

The specified playing techniques are input. They are considered voice-specific by default, meaning they only apply to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding playing techniques to existing notes. They are automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

Adjoining playing techniques, or playing techniques that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding playing techniques to existing notes.

During note input, playing techniques are input at the caret position and extend automatically if you included an open-ended playing technique with duration.

When adding playing techniques to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding playing techniques to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest select item and have duration, which

applies until the end of the selection. For playing techniques whose continuation type is set to show lines, the appropriate continuation line is shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move playing techniques within playing technique groups, lengthen/shorten playing techniques, and hide/show playing technique duration lines.

RELATED LINKS
Groups of playing techniques on page 707
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines on page 705
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337

Inputting playing techniques with the panel

You can input playing techniques using the Playing Techniques panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

You cannot input playing techniques with duration in sequence, which automatically groups them, when using the panel. If you want to input playing techniques with duration in sequence, you can use the popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a playing technique. If you want to input playing techniques with duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, click the playing technique you want.

RESULT

The specified playing technique is input. It is considered voice-specific by default, meaning it only applies to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding playing techniques to existing notes. It is automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, playing techniques are input at the caret position.

When adding playing techniques to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding playing techniques to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest select item and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection. For playing techniques whose continuation type is set to show lines, the appropriate continuation line is shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to show transition lines between playing techniques, you can group them together.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121

Grouping playing techniques together on page 708

Inputting pedal lines and retakes with the popover

You can input pedal lines using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. Because the pedal line extends automatically as you input notes during note input, you can input retakes when you reach the appropriate rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - On the staff where you want to input a pedal line, select items that span the required duration.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the pedal line you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **ped** for a sustain pedal line.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

   The pedal line is input.
5. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend the pedal line in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   The pedal line also extends automatically as you continue inputting notes.
6. Optional: During note input, input retakes by opening the playing techniques popover again at the appropriate rhythmic position and entering **^** or **retake** into the popover.
7. Optional: During note input, stop the pedal line by opening the playing techniques popover again and enter the appropriate entry into the popover.

   For example, enter ***** to stop a sustain pedal line.
8. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, pedal lines start at the caret position, and end at the caret position.

When you add pedal lines to existing music, pedal lines are added across the selected items.

NOTE

Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

RELATED LINKS

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684
Positions of pedal lines on page 687
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 691
Inputting notes on page 145
Notations toolbox on page 121
Keyboard panel on page 128

Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131

Adding retakes to existing pedal lines with the popover

You can add retakes to sustain pedal lines using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

You cannot add retakes to *sostenuto* or *una corda* pedal lines. Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a sustain pedal line.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want the retake to apply.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
3. Enter **^** or **retake** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, retakes are input at the caret position.

Outside of note input, retakes are input at the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684
Playing techniques popover on page 273
Moving the caret manually on page 144

Inputting pedal lines and retakes with the panel

You can input pedal lines and retakes using the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

When using the panel, you cannot input pedal lines or retakes during note input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select items on the staff where you want to input a pedal line that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Keyboard** section.

4. Click the pedal line you want.

   Alternatively, with nothing selected, click the pedal line you want in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel, then click and drag in the score to create a pedal line and extend it to the duration you want.

5. Optional: Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a retake.
6. Optional: In the Playing Techniques panel, click **Retake Pedal** in the **Keyboard** section.

RESULT

The pedal line is input across the selected range.

NOTE

Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

RELATED LINKS

Playing Techniques panel on page 276
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 691

Adding retakes to existing pedal lines with the panel

You can add retakes to existing sustain pedal lines using the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

You cannot add retakes to *sostenuto* or *una corda* pedal lines. Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a sustain pedal line.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item at the rhythmic position where you want the retake to apply.
2. Input the retake in one of the following ways:
   - In the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel, click **Retake Pedal**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Pedal Lines** > **Add Retake**.

RESULT

The retake is input at the selected rhythmic position.

TIP

Alternatively, if nothing is selected in the score, you can click **Retake Pedal** in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel, and then click at the rhythmic position where you want to input the retake.

RELATED LINKS

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684
Playing Techniques panel on page 276

Inputting harp pedal diagrams

You can input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico for iPad assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major. Any pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedaling, excluding the two lowest harp strings, appear red when colors for notes out of range are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input on a harp staff.
   - Select an item on a harp staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a harp pedal diagram.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the harp pedals you want.

   For example, enter **C#F#G#** for C♯, F♯, and G♯ pedals, such as in A major.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The corresponding harp pedal diagram is input at the selected rhythmic position. Depending on your per-layout settings, it is either displayed as a diagram, using note names, or not shown and instead indicated by a signpost.

During note input, harp pedal diagrams are input at the caret position.

RELATED LINKS

Playing techniques popover on page 273
Harp pedaling on page 675
Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts on page 677
Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams on page 676
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 600

Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover

You can input string indicators outside the staff using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a string indicator outside the staff. If you want to input a string indicator with a duration line, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.

3. Enter the appropriate entry for the string indicator you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **string1** for just a string 1 indicator or **string3->** for a string 3 indicator with duration.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

   Open-ended string indicators, such as **string3->**, automatically extend during note input as you continue inputting notes, or if you advance the caret by pressing **Space** or clicking **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.

5. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended string indicators by opening the playing techniques popover again and entering **?** into the popover.

   This leaves the current string indicator with a duration line. You can also enter another string indicator into the popover, but this joins the current string indicator to the following one with a continuation line rather than a duration line, which is a less common notation.

RESULT

The specified string indicators are input. They are considered voice-specific by default, meaning they only apply to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding string indicators to existing notes. They are automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, string indicators are input at the caret position, and extend automatically if you included an open-ended string indicator with duration.

When adding string indicators to a single existing note, they are added to the selected note only and have no duration. When adding string indicators to a range of notes, they are added to the first note in the selection and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection.

By default, string indicators have dashed duration lines with a hook cap at the end.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you input string indicators without duration but want to show dashed duration lines, you can add them.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS

Playing techniques popover on page 273
String indicators on page 549
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Notations toolbox on page 121
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131

Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel

You can input string indicators outside the staff using the Playing Techniques panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

You cannot input string indicators with duration during note input when using the panel. You can only do so when using the popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a string indicator outside the staff. If you want to input a string indicator with a duration line, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Guitar** section.
4. Click the string indicator you want.

RESULT

The specified string indicator is input. It is considered voice-specific by default, meaning it only applies to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding string indicators to existing notes. It is automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, string indicators are input at the caret position.

When adding string indicators to a single existing note, they are added to the selected note only and have no duration. When adding string indicators to a range of notes, they are added to the first note in the selection and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection.

By default, string indicators have dashed duration lines with a hook cap at the end.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you input string indicators without duration but want to show dashed duration lines, you can add them.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS

Playing Techniques panel on page 276

Inputting string indicators inside the staff

You can show a string indicator inside the staff for each fretted instrument note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. Dorico for iPad automatically detects a string that each pitch could be played on, but you can also specify the string manually.

NOTE

These steps only apply to notes belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes belonging to fretted instruments beside which you want to show string indicators. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show** in the **String Indicators** group.

RESULT

String indicators are shown in the staff beside each selected note. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Unless you have specified a string for each note, the string number shown in the string indicators is calculated automatically. String indicators inside the staff for open strings appear as a bold number zero without a circle enclosure.

By default, string indicators appear on the left of noteheads without left-hand fingerings and on the right of noteheads with left-hand fingerings.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can specify the string on which notes are played, which affects the number shown in their corresponding string indicators.
- You can change the notehead-relative position of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS

String indicators on page 549
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539
Fretted instrument tuning on page 78
Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Changing the notehead-relative position of string indicators on page 551
Changing the property scope on page 128

Input methods for lines

You can input both horizontal and vertical lines by using the Lines panel. There is no popover for lines.

TIP

If you want lines to represent specific notations that affect playback if applicable, you can instead input these notations directly. For example, dynamics, arpeggios, glissandi, and trills all have dedicated features in Dorico for iPad.

RELATED LINKS

Lines on page 710
Input methods for dynamics on page 226
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 239
Input methods for tempo marks on page 213
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 300

Lines panel

The Lines panel contains the different types of lines available in Dorico for iPad. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Lines panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Lines** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Lines panel contains the following sections:

Horizontal

Contains the different horizontal lines available. The options at the top of the section allow you to determine the attachment type for the start and end of horizontal lines you subsequently input. Horizontal lines can be attached to noteheads, barlines, or rhythmic positions, and the start and end can have different attachment types.

Vertical

Contains the different vertical lines available.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Lines on page 710
Line components on page 712

Inputting horizontal lines

You can input horizontal lines between existing notes or spanning a specified duration using the Lines panel. Horizontal lines can be attached to noteheads, barlines, or rhythmic positions, and can have different attachment types at their start and end.

NOTE

- You cannot change the attachment type of horizontal lines after they have been input.
- If you want to input notehead-attached horizontal lines to represent glissandi, you can instead input glissando lines directly.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - If you want to input notehead-attached lines, select the notes you want to join with a line.

     TIP

     The notes can be in different voices, on different staves, and belong to any instruments held by the same player.

   - If you want to input barline-/rhythmic position-attached lines, select items that span the required duration of the line.
   - If you want to input horizontal lines that are attached to noteheads at one end but are attached to barlines/rhythmic positions at the other end, select the required note and any item at the required rhythmic position of the other end.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Lines** to show the Lines panel.
3. In the **Horizontal** section, choose one of the following options for both **Start** and **End**:
   - **Attach to notehead**
   - **Attach to barline (where available)**
   - **Attach to rhythmic position**
4. Click the line you want.

RESULT

A horizontal line with the specified attachments is input. They are positioned according to their attachment types and their rhythmic positions.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the placement and staff position of barline-/rhythmic position-attached lines.
- You can add text to lines.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Lines on page 710
Positions of lines on page 713
Length of lines on page 717
System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Adding text to lines on page 722
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 715
Inputting glissando lines with the popover on page 257

Inputting vertical lines

You can input vertical lines on existing notes using the Lines panel, including across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

NOTE

- If you want to input vertical lines to represent arpeggios, you can instead input arpeggio signs directly.
- You can only input one vertical line at a time.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select at least one note at the same rhythmic position in each voice to which you want to add a vertical line.

   NOTE

   - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff vertical lines. However, you cannot create cross-staff vertical lines between different instruments, even if they are held by the same player.
   - Vertical lines are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic position.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Lines** to show the Lines panel.
3. In the **Vertical** section, click the line you want.

RESULT

The vertical line specified is input to the left of the selected notes. Its length is adjusted automatically so that it spans the range of all notes in the selected voices/staves at that rhythmic position.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the order of lines when multiple exist at the same rhythmic position and show vertical lines on the right of notes.
- You can lengthen/shorten vertical lines.
- You can add text to lines.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Lines on page 710
Length of lines on page 717
Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines on page 718
Adding text to lines on page 722
Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes on page 714
Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines on page 714
Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover on page 255

Inputting text

You can input text at specific rhythmic positions in the score. You can input text for single staves or input system text that applies to all staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input text.
2. Open the text editor in any of the following ways:
   - To input staff text, press **Shift-X** or click **Popovers**, then **Text** in the Notations toolbox.
   - To input system text, press **Shift-Opt-X**.
3. Enter the text you want.
4. Optional: Press **Return** to insert a line break.
5. Optional: Use the text editor options to format the text.
6. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Return** to close the text editor.

RESULT

During note input, the text you entered into the text editor is input at the caret position. It is automatically placed above the staves to which it applies, using the default paragraph style, and follows the default settings for the vertical position of text.

When adding text to existing music, it is input at the position of the earliest selected item.

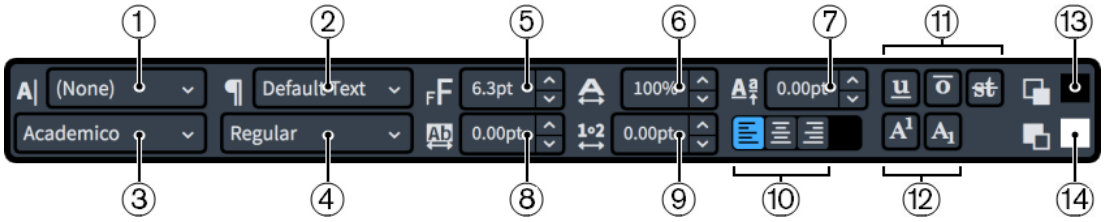
NOTE

- In Dorico for iPad, system text is categorized as a system object. Therefore, system text follows your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.
- You can assign key commands for inputting text with specific paragraph styles, for both **Create Text** and **Create System Text**, on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Hiding/Showing text objects on page 365
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
System objects on page 811
Text objects vs. text in text frames on page 354
Adding borders to text objects on page 362
Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance on page 362
Aligning text objects with the start of systems on page 361

Text editor options in Write mode

The text editor allows you to add and format text. In Write mode, it opens when you add or change staff text or system text.



Text editor in Write mode

The text editor provides the following options:

1 **Character Style**

Allows you to change the appearance of selected text within paragraphs. This overrides the paragraph style applied to the corresponding paragraph.

2 **Paragraph Style**

Allows you to change the paragraph style applied to the whole paragraph, which can change the appearance, formatting, and alignment of the text.

Staff text and system text are always treated as single paragraphs.

3 **Font**

Allows you to change the font family of selected text.

4 **Font Style**

Allows you to change the font style of selected text.

NOTE

- Depending on the font selected, some font styles might not be available.
- You can also change the font style using the following standard key commands:
  - **Cmd-B** for bold
  - **Cmd-I** for italic

5 **Font Size**

Allows you to change the size of selected text.

TIP

You can also change the font size using the following key commands:

- **Cmd-Shift-.** to increase the font size

- **Cmd-Shift-,** to decrease the font size

6 **Font Stretch**

Allows you to make selected text wider or narrower.

7 **Baseline Shift**

Allows you to shift the baseline of selected text gradually up or down.

8 **Letter Spacing**

Allows you to increase/decrease the space between the characters of selected text.

9 **Word Spacing**

Allows you to increase/decrease the space between the words of selected text.

10 **Alignment**

Allows you to choose the alignment of selected text relative to the rhythmic position of the text in the score. For text in a text frame, the text is aligned along the left margin of a text frame.

You can choose from the following alignments:

- **Align Left**
- **Align Center**
- **Align Right**

11 **Line Types**

Allows you to show any of the following types of lines, in any combination, on selected text:

- **Underline**

  TIP

  You can also make selected text underlined by pressing **Cmd-U**.

- **Overline**
- **Strikethrough**

12 **Script Types**

Allows you to position selected text in one of the following positions relative to the text on the baseline:

- **Superscript**
- **Subscript**

13 **Foreground Color**

Allows you to change the color of selected text.

14 **Background Color**

Allows you to change the background color of selected text.

Editing text

You can edit the text shown in text objects added to staves, including changing the text and changing its formatting.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the text editor for the text object in any of the following ways:
   - Select the text object and press **Return**.
   - Double-click the text object.

2. Optional: Change the text in the text frame/object.
3. Optional: Use the text editor options to format the text.
4. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Return** to close the text editor.

RELATED LINKS
Text objects vs. text in text frames on page 354
Hiding/Showing text objects on page 365
Aligning text objects with the start of systems on page 361

Inputting lyrics

You can input lyrics by entering text into the lyrics popover, and you can advance the lyrics popover to the next note on the staff without closing and reopening it for every note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the note on the staff from which you want to start inputting lyrics.
2. Open the lyrics popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-L**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Lyrics**.
3. Optional: Change the type of lyric in one of the following ways:
   - To change the lyric line number, press **Down Arrow**.
   - To input lyrics above the staff, press **Shift**-**Up Arrow**.
   - To input chorus lines, press **Up Arrow**.
   - To input lyric line translations, press **Alt/Opt**-**Down Arrow**.
4. Enter the word or syllable you want to add to the selected note into the popover.
   - To enter multiple words on a single note, press **Shift-Opt-Space**.
   - To include a hyphen within a single word or syllable, press **Opt--** (hyphen).
   - To include an elision in a lyric, press **_** (underscore).
5. Advance the popover to the next note in one of the following ways:
   - If you entered a complete word, or the final syllable in a multi-syllabic word, press **Space**.
   - If you entered one syllable of a multi-syllabic word that is not the final syllable, press **-** (hyphen).
   - If you do not want the syllable to be followed by an extension line or hyphen, press **Right Arrow**.

   TIP

   For lyrics sung over multiple notes, you can press these key commands multiple times until the lyrics popover reaches the note where you want to input the next lyric.
6. Continue entering words and syllables into the popover for the rest of the notes to which you want to add lyrics.
7. Press **Return** or **Esc** to close the popover.
   The popover closes automatically when you reach the last note on the staff.

RESULT

The text you entered into the popover is input as lyrics of the type indicated by the icon on the left-hand side of the popover.

When you advance the popover to the next note by pressing **-**, a hyphen appears after the last entered lyric. This is used for multi-syllabic words across multiple notes.

When you advance the popover by pressing **Space**, a gap appears after the last entered lyric. This is used for single-syllable words or for the final syllable in multi-syllabic words.

TIP

- You can later change whether a gap or a hyphen appears between lyrics by changing their syllable type.
- You can also input lyrics by copying and pasting them, for example, from an external text editor.

RELATED LINKS

Copying/Pasting lyrics on page 578
Lyrics on page 573
Navigation during lyric input on page 294
Types of lyrics on page 575
Types of syllables in lyrics on page 577
Lyric line numbers on page 586
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 585

Lyrics popover

You can input lyrics, including chorus lines and lyric line translations, using the lyrics popover. You can use key commands to change the type of lyric being input at any time.

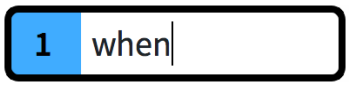
You can open the lyrics popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-L**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Lyrics**.
- Select an existing lyric and press **Return**.

Lyric lines

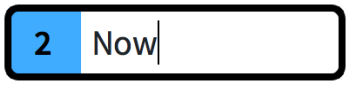
The popover automatically opens ready to input lyrics into Line 1, except if you are changing an existing lyric.

The number shown on the left-hand side of the lyrics popover indicates the lyric line into which the lyric is input.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for Line 1

You can change the lyric line number by pressing **Down Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for Line 2

Lyric lines above the staff

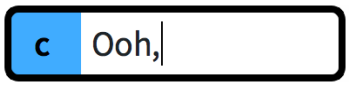
You can input lyrics into lines above the staff by pressing **Shift** - **Up Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.

You can then press **Up Arrow** and **Down Arrow** to change the lyric line number above the staff.

Chorus lines

You can input chorus lines by pressing **Up Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open. You can do this when inputting lyrics below the staff and above the staff.

A **c**, for "chorus lines", is shown on the left-hand side of the popover.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for a chorus line

Lyric line translations

You can input lyric line translations by pressing **Alt/Opt** - **Down Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.

An asterisk (*****) is shown beside the lyric line number to which you want to add a lyric line translation on the left-hand side of the popover.

The lyrics popover with an example entry for a lyric line translation

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Inputting lyrics on page 292
Lyrics on page 573
Types of lyrics on page 575

Navigation during lyric input

You can move the lyrics popover to input new lyrics and edit existing lyrics without having to close and reopen the lyrics popover.

Popover navigation	Key command
Finish the current word and advance the popover to the next note or chord.	**Space**
Finish the current syllable and advance the popover to the next note or chord.	**-** (hyphen)
Advance the popover to the next note without showing an extension line or hyphen.	**Right Arrow**
Move the cursor to the next/previous letter. If the next/previous letter is in another lyric, the popover advances to that lyric.	**Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**

Popover navigation	Key command
Move the popover forwards/backwards from syllable to syllable within lines of lyrics.	**Opt-Right Arrow** / **Opt-Left Arrow**
Add spaces within a word or syllable without advancing the popover.	**Shift-Opt-Space**
Add a hyphen within a single word or syllable without advancing the popover.	**Opt--** (hyphen)
Add an elision slur within a word or syllable.	_ (underscore)

RELATED LINKS
Lyrics on page 573
Inputting lyrics on page 292

Inputting figured bass

You can input figured bass using the figured bass popover, both for all instruments or only for individual instruments. You can also open the figured bass popover during note input; however, inputting a figure stops note input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to start inputting figured bass.
2. Open the figured bass popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-G**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Figured Bass**.

   NOTE

   If you selected an item on a staff that has local figures at earlier rhythmic positions, the figured bass popover is automatically set to input local figures when it opens.
3. Enter the figure you want into the figured bass popover.

   For example, enter **4->3d=4r=2** for a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note. If you want Dorico for iPad to follow your entry exactly, include **O**, **o**, or **!** at the start of your entry. For example, to force Dorico for iPad to show 5,3 figures.
4. Optional: Press **Space** to advance the popover to the next beat according to the current time signature.

   TIP

   You can also navigate the popover forwards and backwards by different amounts.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The figured bass specified is input. If you selected an item belonging to an instrument that was not already set to show figured bass in the current layout, its player is automatically updated to show them. If Dorico for iPad cannot identify the bass note at the position of a figure, such as if you input a figure on a rest, it appears as a signpost.

Dorico for iPad calculates and saves the pitches implied by the figures you enter in relation to the lowest note at that rhythmic position. This semantic understanding of the harmony implied by figures allows Dorico for iPad to update the displayed figures on different staves and if you transpose or change the pitch of notes.

Global figures apply to all instruments in the project and appear on all staves whose players are set to show figured bass. Local figures only apply to the selected instrument, and by default refer to its lowest staff. Local figures always appear, even if global figures exist at the same rhythmic positions.

NOTE

- Unless you included an entry for **Follow input literally** at the start of your popover entry, the appearance of the resulting figure is determined by the default settings in Dorico for iPad
- In addition to lengthening/shortening figures after they have been input, you can use the **Duration** property in the **Figured Bass** group of the Properties panel to change the duration of figured bass figures in quarter notes. The left value field allows you to change the duration, and the right value field allows you to specify that the hold line ends at the position of a grace note.

  For suspensions, you can use the **Resolution pos.** property to change the position of the resolution figure relative to the suspension figure.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can hide/show figured bass above specific players in each layout independently.
- You can simplify compound figures, that is, figures 9 and above.
- You can show figures on individual rests.

RELATED LINKS

Figured bass on page 522
Figured bass hold lines on page 525
Navigation during figured bass input on page 299
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts on page 523
Simplifying figured bass compound intervals on page 529
Showing figured bass on rests on page 524
Fixing the current appearance of figured bass on page 529
Resetting figured bass on page 530

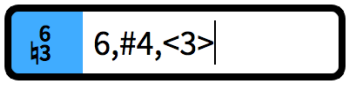
Figured bass popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the figured bass popover to input the different possible figured bass figures, including alterations and suspensions.

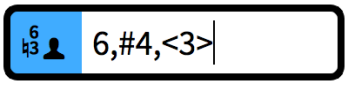
You can open the figured bass popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either a note is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-G**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Figured Bass**.

When inputting global figured bass, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting local figured bass, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover appears smaller and includes the icon for a single player.



Figured bass popover with an example entry for a global figure



Figured bass popover with an example entry for a local figure

Figured Bass button in the Notations toolbox

Figures and suspensions

Type of figure	Example popover entry
Figures (1-19)	**1**, **2**, **3** and so on up to **19**
Figures determined by chord symbols Dorico for iPad automatically converts chord symbols, as you would enter into the chord symbols popover, into correct figured bass.	**Em7**, **Amaj7**, or **G/B** and so on
Hold duration	**d=2** (number of quarter notes) or **d=1/2n** (fraction of bass note duration)
Multiple figures TIP You can separate figures with commas to remove ambiguity.	**6#42** or **6,#4,2**
Hide figures	**<3>** or **{3}**
Suspensions	**4->3**, **4_3**, or **4~3**
Suspension duration	**r=2** (number of quarter notes) or **r=1/2n** (fraction of bass note duration)
Hold and suspension durations both specified In this example, the hold duration is a whole note, the suspension duration is a half note, and the bass note at this position is a whole note.	**4->3d=4r=2**, **4->3,d=4,r=2**, **4->3d=1nr=1/2n**, or **4->3,d=1n,r=1/2n**
Follow Engraving Options for this figure only NOTE Must be at the start of the popover entry.	**R**, **r**, **V**, **v**, or **?**

Type of figure	Example popover entry
Follow input literally for this figure only NOTE Must be at the start of the popover entry.	**O**, **o**, or **!**

This list is not comprehensive. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different tuplets.

NOTE

Unless you include an entry for **Follow input literally** at the start of your popover entry, the appearance of resulting figures is determined by Dorico for iPad's default settings.

Accidentals and alterations

Type of accidental/alteration	Popover entry
Sharp TIP For raised thirds, you can enter just without the number.	**#** or **s**
Flat	**b** or **f**
Natural	**N** or **n**
Double sharp	**x**, **##**, or **ds**
Triple sharp	**x#**, **#x**, **###**, or **ts**
Double flat	**bb** or **db**
Triple flat	**bbb** or **tb**
Raise figure by a half-step (semitone)	**+**
Lower figure by a half-step (semitone)	**-**
Diminished figure	**d**
Unaltered figure	**u**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Figured bass on page 522

Chord symbols popover on page 232

Navigation during figured bass input

You can move the figured bass popover manually by different amounts to input figured bass figures at other positions without closing and reopening the popover each time.

Popover navigation	Key command
Advance the popover to the next beat, according to the current time signature.	**Space**
Move the popover back to the previous beat, according to the current time signature.	**Shift-Space**
Advance the popover to the start of the next bar.	**Tab**
Move the popover back to the start of the previous bar.	**Shift-Tab**
Move the cursor and popover to one of the following positions, whichever is closest: • Next/Previous note or rest • Next/Previous rhythmic grid position • Next/Previous character in existing figure's entry	**Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**
Move the popover to the next/previous figure.	**Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Cmd-Left Arrow**

RELATED LINKS
Inputting figured bass on page 295
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
Assigning key commands on page 38

Inputting rehearsal marks

You can input rehearsal marks with the mouse and the keyboard. You can input rehearsal marks during note input and later by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a rehearsal mark. For example, a barline or a note.

     NOTE

     You can only input one rehearsal mark at a time, even if multiple items are selected.
2. Input a rehearsal mark in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-A**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Rehearsal Marks**.

RESULT

A rehearsal mark is input at the selected barline, or at the rhythmic position of other selected items.

The order of rehearsal marks is updated automatically, meaning you can input them in any order, including before and between existing rehearsal marks.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to change the letter/number displayed in the rehearsal mark, you can change its index and/or sequence type.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 121
Rehearsal marks on page 728
Changing the index of rehearsal marks on page 729
Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type on page 730
Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks on page 731

Inputting markers/timecodes

You can input markers at specific positions in time. In Dorico for iPad, timecodes are automatically shown alongside markers.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, move the playhead to the time position where you want to input a marker.
2. Press **Shift-Opt-M** to open the **Add Marker** dialog.
3. Enter the marker text you want into the **Text** field.
4. Optional: Change the timecode in the **Timecode** field.
5. Click **OK** to input the marker and close the dialog.

RESULT

A marker is input at the timecode position set in the **Add Marker** dialog, which by default is the position of the playhead. It shows the text you entered, or the default text “Marker” if you did not change the marker text, and a timecode reflecting its position.

RELATED LINKS

Markers on page 732
Timecodes on page 735
Editing marker text on page 734

Input methods for repeats and tremolos

You can input repeats and tremolos, including repeat endings, repeat markers, and rhythm slashes, with the keyboard by using the repeats popover, and with the mouse by using the Repeat Structures panel.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

TIP

To indicate repeats using repeat barlines, you can input repeat barlines using the available input methods for barlines.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Barlines on page 428
Types of barlines on page 429
Repeat endings on page 738
Repeat markers on page 743
Tremolos on page 868
Rhythm slashes on page 754
Bar repeats on page 748

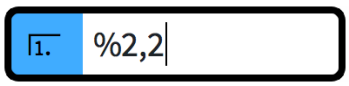
Repeats popover

The following tables contain the entries for the repeats popover that you can use to input the different tremolos, bar repeats, rhythm slash regions, repeat markers, and repeat endings available.

You can open the repeats popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-R**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
- Select an existing repeat marker, slash region, or bar repeat and press **Return**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Repeats popover with an example entry

Repeat Structures button in the Notations toolbox

Repeat endings

Part of repeat ending	Popover entry
Whole repeat ending	**end** or **ending**
Additional repeat ending segment	**add**

Repeat markers

Type of repeat marker	Popover entry
D.C.	**dc**, **D.C.**, **da capo**, and so on

Type of repeat marker	Popover entry
D.C. al Fine	**dcalf**, **DC al Fine**, **D.C. al Fine**, and so on
D.C. al Coda	**dcalc**, **DC al Coda**, **D.C. al Coda**, and so on
D.S.	**ds**, **D.S.**, **dal segno**, and so on
D.S. al Fine	**dsalf**, **DS al Fine**, **D.S. al Fine**, and so on
D.S. al Coda	**dsalc**, **DS al Coda**, **D.S. al Coda**, and so on
to Coda	**toc**, **tc**, **to coda**, **To Coda**, and so on
Segno	**s**, **seg**, **segno**, and so on
Fine	**f**, **fin**, **fine**, and so on
Coda	**c**, **co**, **coda**, and so on

The list of entries for repeat markers is not comprehensive, as the flexibility of the popover means you can enter any reasonable version or abbreviation of the type of repeat marker you want and the popover recognizes it in most cases.

Single-note tremolos

Type of tremolo	Popover entry
One stroke	**/**, ****, or **1**
Two strokes	**//**, ****, or **2**
Three strokes	**///**, ****, or **3**
Four strokes	**////**, ****, or **4**
Z on stem (buzz roll)	**z** or **zonstem**
Remove all tremolos	**0** or **clear**

Multi-note tremolos

Type of tremolo	Popover entry
One stroke	**/2**, **\2**, or **12**
Two strokes	**//2**, **\\2**, or **22**

Type of tremolo	Popover entry
Three strokes	**///2**, **\\\2**, or **32**
Four strokes	**////2**, **\\\\2**, or **42**
Z on stem (buzz roll)	**z** or **zonstem**
Remove all tremolos	**0** or **clear**

Slash regions

Slash region	Popover entry
New slash region	**slash**

Bar repeats

Type of bar repeat	Popover entry
Repeat last bar	**%** or **%1**
Repeat last 2 bars	**%2**
Repeat last 4 bars	**%4**
Repeat last bar, group in 2	**%1,2**
Repeat last bar, group in 4	**%1,4**
Repeat last 2 bars, group in 2	**%2,2**
Repeat last 4 bars, group in 4	**%4,4**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Inputting repeat endings with the popover on page 304
Inputting repeat markers with the popover on page 308
Inputting tremolos with the popover on page 309
Inputting slash regions on page 311
Inputting bar repeats on page 312
Bars and barlines popover on page 219
Repeat endings on page 738
Repeat markers on page 743
Tremolos on page 868
Rhythm slashes on page 754
Bar repeats on page 748

Repeat Structures panel

The Repeat Structures panel contains the different types of repeat notations, including repeat endings, repeat markers, tremolos, rhythm slashes, and bar repeats. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

- You can hide/show the Repeat Structures panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.

The Repeat Structures panel contains the following sections:

Repeat Endings

Contains options that allow you to input new repeat endings and add additional endings to existing repeat endings.

Repeat Jumps

Contains different types of repeat markers that instruct players to jump to a specific point in the piece, such as “D.S. al Coda”.

Repeat Sections

Contains different sections used in conjunction with repeat jumps, such as “Coda”.

Tremolos

Contains different types of single-note and multi-note tremolos.

Rhythm Slashes

Allows you to input a region that displays rhythm slashes that are automatically formatted to be compatible with the prevailing time signature.

Bar Repeats

Allows you to input a region that indicates a set number of bars is repeated without re-notating those bars.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121

Inputting repeat endings with the popover

You can input repeat endings using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select at least one item in each bar that you want to include in the first ending.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.

- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.

3. Enter **end** or **ending** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The repeat ending is input, with the first ending segment covering the bars in which you selected items, and a second ending segment created automatically in the following bar.

An end repeat barline is created at the end of the first ending if none exists already.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 301
Repeat endings on page 738

Adding additional repeat endings with the popover

You can have more than two possible endings in each repeat ending structure by adding additional segments using the repeats popover. You can add repeat ending segments both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select the bars that you want to include in the additional ending.

     NOTE

     Your selection must start from the first bar following the previous repeat ending segment.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter **add** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Optional: Repeat these steps as many times as required for the number of additional endings you want.

RESULT

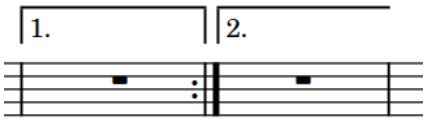
A new repeat ending segment is added. The existing previous repeat ending segment now ends with a closed line, with an end repeat barline created if necessary.

TIP

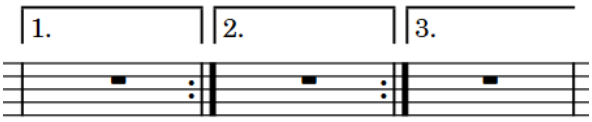
You can also add additional repeat ending segments by selecting the repeat ending and changing the value for **No. endings** in the **Repeat Endings** group of the Properties panel.

However, **No. endings** only adds additional repeat ending segments that contain one bar, and does not automatically input or reposition repeat barlines. You must input repeat barlines as appropriate manually.

EXAMPLE



Default repeat ending structure with two endings



Repeat ending structure with additional third ending

RELATED LINKS
Repeat endings on page 738
Repeats popover on page 301

Inputting repeat endings with the panel

You can input repeat endings using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select at least one item in each bar that you want to include in the first ending.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Repeat Endings** section, click **Create Repeat Ending**.

RESULT

The repeat ending is input, with the first ending segment covering the bars in which you selected items, and a second ending segment created automatically in the following bar.

An end repeat barline is created at the end of the first ending if none exists already.

RELATED LINKS
Repeat endings on page 738

Adding additional repeat endings with the panel

You can have more than two possible endings in each repeat ending structure by adding additional segments using the Repeat Structures panel. You can add repeat ending segments both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select the bars that you want to include in the additional ending.

     NOTE

     Your selection must start from the first bar following the previous repeat ending segment.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Repeat Endings** section, click **Add Section To Repeat Ending**.

   NOTE

   If increasing the number of endings makes the repeat ending collide with any part of another repeat ending, the other repeat ending is deleted. However, its repeat barlines are not deleted.

4. Optional: Repeat these steps as many times as required for the number of additional endings you want.

RESULT

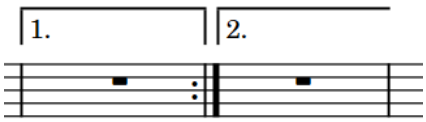
A new repeat ending segment is added. The existing previous repeat ending segment now ends with a closed line, with an end repeat barline created if necessary.

TIP

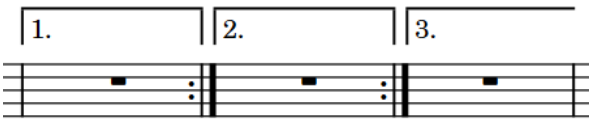
You can also add additional repeat ending segments by selecting the repeat ending and changing the value for **No. endings** in the **Repeat Endings** group of the Properties panel.

However, **No. endings** only adds additional repeat ending segments that contain one bar, and does not automatically input or reposition repeat barlines. You must input repeat barlines as appropriate manually.

EXAMPLE



Default repeat ending structure with two endings



Repeat ending structure with additional third ending

RELATED LINKS
Repeat endings on page 738

Inputting repeat markers with the popover

You can input repeat markers, including repeat jumps and repeat sections, using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a repeat marker.

     For repeat jumps, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the end of the jump instruction to align. For repeat sections, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the start of the section marker to align.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of repeat marker you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **coda** to input a coda section or enter **$** to input a segno.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, repeat markers are input at the caret position. Coda sections are automatically formatted so that there is a gap between the coda and the preceding material.

When adding repeat markers to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

Repeat markers that indicate the end of a section, such as *Fine* and *D.C. al Coda*, are right-aligned with the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS
Repeats popover on page 301
Repeat markers on page 743

Inputting repeat markers with the panel

You can input repeat markers using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a repeat marker.

     For repeat jumps, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the end of the jump instruction to align. For repeat sections, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the start of the section marker to align.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. Click the repeat marker you want to input in any of the following sections:
   - **Repeat Jumps**
   - **Repeat Sections**

RESULT

During note input, repeat markers are input at the caret position. Coda sections are automatically formatted so that there is a gap between the coda and the preceding material.

When adding repeat markers to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

Repeat markers that indicate the end of a section, such as *Fine* and *D.C. al Coda*, are right-aligned with the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

Repeat markers on page 743
Repeat Structures panel on page 304

Inputting tremolos with the popover

You can input both single-note and multi-note tremolos using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add tremolos.

NOTE

If you want to input multi-note tremolos, you must select at least two notes on the same staff or cross-staff notes that have the same notated duration. The notes can also be tuplets.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of tremolo you want into the popover.
   For example, to input a three-stroke multi-note tremolo, enter **///2**.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 3 to input other tremolos on the selected notes.
   For example, if you want notes to have both single-stem and multi-stem tremolos.

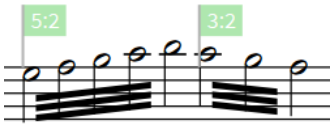
RESULT

Single-note tremolos are input on the selected notes with the number of tremolo strokes specified.

Multi-note tremolos with the number of tremolo strokes specified are input between selected individual notes and the notes immediately after them, or between selected pairs of notes.

When tuplets are selected, multi-note tremolos are input across the selected tuplets, with the tremolo strokes positioned in the center of all notes in the tuplet. The tuplet bracket is hidden, and a signpost is shown at the start of each tuplet indicating its ratio.

EXAMPLE



Multi-note tremolos with three tremolo strokes across tuplets

RELATED LINKS
Repeats popover on page 301
Tremolos on page 868

Inputting tremolos with the panel

You can input both single-note and multi-note tremolos using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add tremolos.

NOTE

If you want to input multi-note tremolos, you must select at least two notes on the same staff or cross-staff notes that have the same notated duration. The notes can also be tuplets.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Tremolos** section, click the button with the number of single-note or multi-note tremolo strokes you want.

   For example, click **Two Strokes Single-note Tremolo** to input single-note tremolos with two strokes or click **Three Strokes Multi-note Tremolo** to input multi-note tremolos with three strokes.

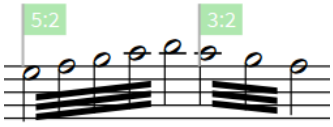
RESULT

Single-note tremolos are input on the selected notes with the number of tremolo strokes specified.

Multi-note tremolos with the number of tremolo strokes specified are input between selected individual notes and the notes immediately after them, or between selected pairs of notes.

When tuplets are selected, multi-note tremolos are input across the selected tuplets, with the tremolo strokes positioned in the center of all notes in the tuplet. The tuplet bracket is hidden, and a signpost is shown at the start of each tuplet indicating its ratio.

EXAMPLE



Multi-note tremolos with three tremolo strokes across tuplets

RELATED LINKS
Tremolos on page 868
Deleting tremolos on page 871

Inputting slash regions

You can input slash regions using the repeats popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - On the staff where you want to input a slash region, select items that span the required duration.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-R**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.

3. Enter **slash** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, slash regions are input spanning the duration of the selected note or item, which is usually the last input note. When adding slash regions to existing music, they span the selected duration.

Slash regions are automatically formatted as appropriate for the meter. If you later change the time signature, slash regions retain their duration but the appearance of slashes within them automatically updates.

TIP

You can also input slash regions by clicking **Create Slash Region** in the **Rhythm Slashes** group of the Repeat Structures panel.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 301
Rhythm slashes on page 754
Slash regions on page 754
Slash voices on page 908

Inputting bar repeats

You can input bar repeat regions when at least one bar before the region contains notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the bars on a single staff that you want to show as a bar repeat.

   NOTE

   You cannot input bar repeat regions in the first bar of a flow.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of bar repeat region you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **%2,2** to repeat the previous two bars, grouped in two.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

A region of the selected duration is input, in which the specified type of bar repeat symbol is shown in the staff at the intervals specified.

NOTE

- You can also input bar repeat regions during note input; however, this inputs bar repeat regions from the bar containing the currently selected note. As bar repeats are mostly shown in empty bars, this is likely to produce unintended results.

- You can also input bar repeat regions by clicking **Create Bar Repeat Region** in the **Bar Repeats** group of the Repeat Structures panel. However, this only inputs a bar repeat region containing single-bar repeats.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change how bar repeats are grouped.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 301
Bar repeats on page 748
Bar repeat grouping on page 752
Changing bar repeat grouping on page 753

Selecting notes/items

In Dorico for iPad, there are multiple different ways you can select notes and items in your project, from selecting items individually to making large selections covering multiple staves. You can also change whether notes play back during note input/selection.

RELATED LINKS

Large selections on page 315
System track on page 316
Filters on page 318
Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection on page 319
Playing all/individual notes in chords during note input/selection on page 320

Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually

You can select/deselect existing notes and other notation items individually in the music area, for example, if you want to add articulations to a selection of notes or delete a short passage of music.

TIP

If you want to select a large number of notes/items, we recommend that you use one of the larger selection methods.

PROCEDURE

1. Select individual notes/items in the music area in any of the following ways:
   - Click a single note/item.
   - In the secondary toolbar, activate **Add to Selection**, then click individual notes/items.
   - In the secondary toolbar, activate **Extend Selection**, then click items at the start and end of the range you want to select.
   - To select all notes in a beam group, click the beam.
   - To select all notes in a chord, click the stem.
   - To select everything in a bar, click on the staff in that bar, but not on any notes, stems, or items.
   - Make a marquee selection around multiple notes/items.
   - Navigate to other items from an existing selection.

- If nothing is selected in the music area, press any arrow key on your computer keyboard to select the first note, rest, or other item on the top staff in the current layout.

2. Deselect all currently selected items in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-D**.
   - Click outside of the staves within the music area.

     NOTE

     Add to Selection and **Extend Selection** must be deactivated.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Selecting multiple items using marquee selections on page 315
Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection on page 319
Navigating to other items in the music area on page 329
Filters on page 318

Selecting more items of the same type

You can incrementally extend your current selection to more items of the same type and notes in the same voices, which is particularly helpful if you want to select multiple different items at once, such as dynamics and lyrics.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes and items you want to select more of. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   TIP

   You can select notes and items on multiple staves and in specific voices, for example, if you only want to select notes in up-stem voices on four staves.

2. Press **Cmd-Shift-A** to expand your selection.
3. Optional: Continue pressing **Cmd-Shift-A** to extend your selection further.

RESULT

More of the same types of items and notes in the same voices as your original selection are selected, with the range of selected items expanding each time you press the key command: firstly to the boundaries of the bar, secondly to the boundaries of the system, and finally to the rest of the flow. If there are no other items available in the bar, Dorico for iPad automatically advances to the second expansion. In galley view, the second expansion is to the entire flow directly as there is only a single system in galley view.

For items that span multiple bars and systems, they are selected in the earliest bar/system in which they exist.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad selects the following items differently if you select only a single one of them:

- Lyrics: The selection expands only to other lyrics with the same line number, placement, and line type as the originally selected lyric.

- Dynamics: The first expansion is to all other dynamics in the same group and on the same staves as the original selection, with further expansions selecting other dynamics in other groups.
- Playing techniques: The selection expands only to playing techniques of the same category, such as **Strings** or **Choral**. Additionally, if you select either an up bow or down bow playing technique, the selection expands only to other up bow and down bow playing techniques. It does not select any other playing techniques.

Selecting multiple items using marquee selections

You can use a marquee selection to select multiple notes and notations at the same time within a specific area in Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area but not on any notes/items, click and hold until the marquee tool appears.

   The marquee tool appears as a moving gray square.

2. Drag across the area where you want to select everything.

   A gray rectangle indicates which notes and notations will be selected. We recommend dragging from one corner of the area you want to select diagonally across to the other corner.

RESULT

All notes and notations in the area within the gray rectangle are selected.

NOTE

Only items completely within the area are selected. However, if any part of a note/tie chain is within the area, the whole note/tie chain is selected.

Large selections

You can make large selections, including selecting the contents of whole staves or the whole flow.

Select everything in a specific area

You can use marquee selections to specify an area in which you want to select everything.

Select everything in the whole flow

- Press **Cmd-A**.

Select everything on a single staff

- Select the first note on the staff, click **Extend Selection** in the secondary toolbar, then select the last note on the staff.

Select everything on multiple adjacent staves

- Select one whole staff at the top/bottom of the range of staves you want to select, click **Extend Selection** in the secondary toolbar, then click the staff at the other end of the range of staves you want to select.

Select more of the currently selected types of items

You can press **Cmd-Shift-A** to expand your current selection horizontally and incrementally to other items of the same types and in the selected voices and staves in both Write mode and Engrave mode. For items that span multiple bars and systems, they are selected in the earliest bar/system in which they exist.

1. The first expansion is to the boundaries of the current bar, both to the left and right. If there is nothing to select within the bar, such as if you selected a whole note in a 4/4 bar, Dorico for iPad automatically advances to the second expansion.
2. The second expansion in page view is to the boundaries of the current system, both to the left and right. In galley view, the second expansion is to the rest of the flow, as there is only a single system in galley view.
3. In page view, the third expansion is to the entire flow.

Select everything in the system within a range of beats/bars

You can use the system track to select a region of beats/bars and then select everything on all staves in the system within that region.

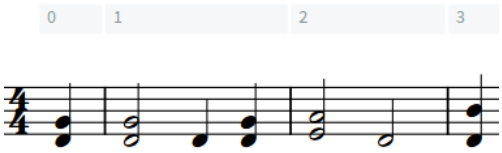
TIP

If you want to select only a certain type of item, such as lyrics or dynamics, you can then use the corresponding filters.

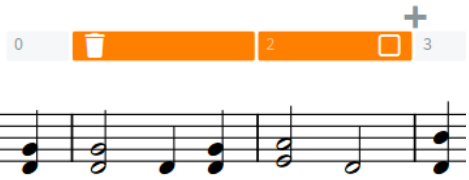
RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 318
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 313
Selecting more items of the same type on page 314

System track

The system track is a translucent line above the top of each system in Write mode. It allows you to add and delete bars and beats, and to select everything on all staves in the system.



The system track above a staff, showing bars



The system track with a region selected

When you have selected a region in the system track, it appears highlighted and the following options are available:

1 Delete

Allows you to delete the selected region.

2 System Track Select

Allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected region.

3 **Add**

Allows you to add bars or beats of the same duration as the selection in the system track. The extra time is inserted immediately after the end of the selection.

NOTE

Selections on the system track are cleared whenever you make any other kind of selection, or when you switch layouts. However, selections on the system track are retained when switching between page and galley view.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting bars with the system track on page 224
Deleting bars with the system track on page 425
System objects on page 811

Hiding/Showing the system track

The system track is shown by default in new projects, but you can hide/show it at any time.

PROCEDURE

1. In the secondary toolbar, click **View Options** to open the **View Options** dialog.
2. Activate/Deactivate **System track**.
3. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The system track is shown when **System track** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

TIP

If you do not want the system track to be shown in all future projects by default, deactivate **Show system track in new projects** in the **View** section of the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 34
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
View Options dialog on page 120

Selecting bars with the system track

The system track allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected bars.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Click a bar in the system track.
2. Optional: Select additional bars in any of the following ways:

- In the secondary toolbar, activate **Extend Selection**, then click bars to the right/left along the system track.
- Click and drag to the right/left along the system track.

3. Click **System Track Select** in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.

RESULT

Everything on all staves in the selected bars is selected and highlighted, including system objects, notations, and signposts.

NOTE

If you then delete your selection, any signposts included are also deleted. This can affect the page layout, for example, by removing ossia staves whose signposts were included in the selection.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing the system track on page 317
Deleting the contents of bars on page 426
Deleting bars with the system track on page 425
System objects on page 811

Filters

Filters in Dorico for iPad allow you to select only a specific type of item from a larger selection. Dorico for iPad includes a filter for every notation item.

- You can find the available filters by clicking **Context Menu** in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Filter** > **[Item]** > **[Item type]**.

All significant notation items have their own filter, for example, arpeggio signs, chord symbols, key signatures, and playing techniques. You can also filter for note spacing changes.

The following items have multiple filters because they have multiple types:

Notes
Allows you to filter notes, grace notes, and chords. You can also filter notes according to their position in chords.

Voices
Allows you to filter voices according to their stem-direction. You can also filter slash voices.

Dynamics
Allows you to filter all dynamics, or just gradual or immediate dynamics.

Tempos
Allows you to filter all tempo marks, or just absolute, relative, or gradual tempo changes.

Lyrics
Allows you to filter all lyrics, or just lyrics with a specific line number, type, or staff-relative placement.

NOTE

There is no filter for barlines. You also cannot filter fingerings, beams, articulations, or tremolos, as they are considered part of the notes to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS
Filters for lyrics on page 574
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Changing filters to select/deselect

You can change whether the available filter options select or deselect the specified items. By default, filters select items, meaning that the resulting selection only includes the item being filtered.

When filters are set to deselect, the resulting selection includes everything except the item being filtered.

PROCEDURE

- Change the filter behavior in one of the following ways:
  - To change filters to select, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Filter** > **Select**.
  - To change filters to deselect, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Filter** > **Deselect**.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Filters for lyrics on page 574

Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection

You can change your default setting for whether notes are played back as you input them or not. By default, notes are played back with the prevailing dynamic but you can set a fixed volume instead.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** ≡ and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Note Input and Editing** in the category list.
3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Play notes during note input and selection** in the **Auditioning** subsection.
4. Optional: If you want notes to play back with a fixed volume instead of the prevailing dynamic, activate **Use fixed volume to play selected notes** and change the value in the value field.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When the option is activated, notes play back as you input them during note input and when you select them. When it is deactivated, notes do not play back.

When **Use fixed volume to play selected notes** is activated, notes play back with the set volume. When it is deactivated, notes play back with the prevailing dynamic.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 145
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 313
Input methods for dynamics on page 226

Playing all/individual notes in chords during note input/selection

You can change your default setting for whether all notes in chords are played when you select any note in the chord or whether only the selected notes are played.

PREREQUISITE

Notes are played during note input/selection.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Note Input and Editing** in the category list.
3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Play all notes in chord when any is selected** in the **Auditioning** subsection.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When the option is activated, all notes in chords are played when any note in the chord is selected. When it is deactivated, only the selected notes are played.

Editing items

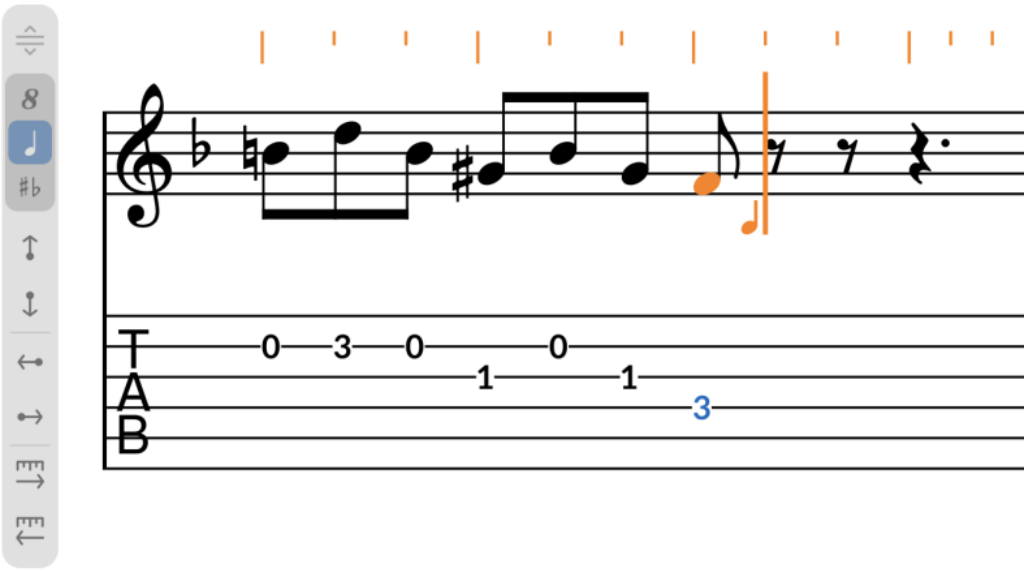
In Dorico for iPad, there are editing methods that are common to most notations, including lengthening/shortening items and changing their staff-relative placement.

RELATED LINKS

Selecting notes/items on page 313
Arranging tools on page 333
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337

Edit Notes Overlay

The Edit Notes Overlay allows you to change the pitch of notes, move notes rhythmically, and lengthen/shorten notes. It appears in the music area in Write mode when at least one note is selected.



Edit Notes Overlay to the left of a system during note input

The Edit Notes Overlay contains the following options:

Octave

Sets the transposition interval to octaves.

Staff Position

Sets the transposition interval to staff positions, such as F to G.

Octave Division

Sets the transposition interval to octave divisions, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO.

Transpose Up

Transposes the selected notes up according to the selected transposition interval.

Transpose Down

Transposes the selected notes down according to the selected transposition interval.

Move Left by Grid Value

Moves the selected notes rhythmically to the left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Move Right by Grid Value

Moves the selected notes rhythmically to the right according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Lengthen Duration by Grid Value

Lengthens the duration of the selected notes according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Shorten Duration by Grid Value

Shortens the duration of the selected notes according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

RELATED LINKS
Selecting notes/items on page 313
Rhythmic grid on page 139
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Changing the duration of notes on page 152
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Equal Division of the Octave (EDO) on page 571

Lengthening/Shortening items

You can lengthen/shorten items with duration rhythmically after they have been input, for example, if you want an octave line to cover more/fewer notes.

Lengthening figured bass or playing techniques, including string indicators outside the staff and vibrato bar indications, that were input without a specified duration gives them duration and shows duration or hold lines if required.

NOTE

Lengthening/Shortening playing techniques does not affect playback. The sounds produced in playback rely on the playback technique associated with the playing technique and the audio units loaded in the project.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the items you want to lengthen/shorten.

   NOTE

   - When multiple items are selected, you can only lengthen/shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution.
   - You can only lengthen/shorten one of the following items at a time: slurs, gradual dynamics, groups of gradual dynamics, and bar repeat regions.

- When using the mouse, you can only lengthen/shorten a single item at a time. Figured bass and playing techniques, including string indicators and vibrato bar lines, must have duration already.
- When lengthening/shortening multiple figured bass or playing techniques using the keyboard, they must all have duration already.
- You can only lengthen/shorten non-grouped playing techniques or the last playing technique in a group.
- You can only lengthen/shorten cross-staff slurs to notes on the same staff as the corresponding endpoint, and you can only lengthen/shorten cross-voice slurs to notes in the same voice as the corresponding endpoint.

2. Lengthen/Shorten the selected items in any of the following ways:

- To lengthen them by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next notehead, whichever is closer, press **Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the previous notehead, whichever is closer, press **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.

  NOTE

  Bar repeat regions are lengthened/shortened by the duration of their grouping.

- To lengthen a single item to the next notehead, press **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.
- To shorten a single item to the previous notehead, press **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.
- Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

  NOTE

  Playing technique groups only have a single handle at their start and end, not individual handles for each playing technique within the group.

RESULT

The selected items are lengthened/shortened by moving their end rhythmically to the right/left. Most items are lengthened/shortened either by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous notehead, whichever is closer, or directly to the next/previous notehead.

Bar repeat regions are lengthened/shortened by the duration of their grouping. Slurs are lengthened/shortened to notes.

If figured bass or playing techniques previously had no duration, they now have duration and show duration or hold lines if required.

If any part of slash regions now overlap rhythmic positions with other slash regions, the staff positions of slashes are automatically adjusted to accommodate multiple slash regions at the same positions.

Dynamic groups are lengthened/shortened proportionally by lengthening/shortening the gradual dynamics and moving any other type of dynamic in the group. This retains the relative durations of the gradual dynamics in the group.

NOTE

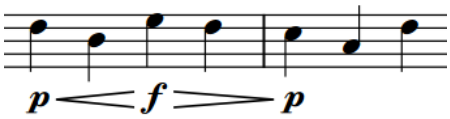
- The minimum length of a bar repeat region is one bar. If you shorten regions with longer groupings, such as every four bars, the length of the region is halved until a one-bar repeat region remains.

- Only a single bar repeat region or chord symbol region can exist at each rhythmic position on each staff. If a bar repeat region or chord symbol region collides with another item of the same type when it is lengthened/shortened, the existing item is deleted or shortened accordingly. For bar repeat regions, this can mean the grouping of other bar repeat regions is changed.

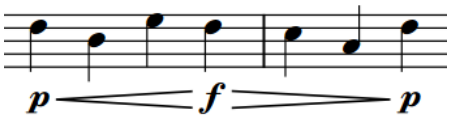
  You can undo this action and restore the previous lengths of the other regions. However, if you lengthened/shortened a bar repeat region or chord symbol region using the mouse and it overwrote another region of the same type completely, the other region is permanently deleted.

EXAMPLE

In the example, lengthening the phrase moves the *p* at the end two quarter notes to the right, but moves the *f* in the middle only one quarter note to the right. This keeps the lengths of the gradual dynamics equal.



Original dynamic phrase



Lengthened dynamic phrase

RELATED LINKS

Changing the duration of notes on page 152
Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings on page 739
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines on page 705
Notations input on page 194
Bar repeat grouping on page 752
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Playing technique duration on page 703
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 690
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 755
Octave lines in Engrave mode on page 495
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 782
Groups of dynamics on page 518
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 513
Hiding/Showing figured bass suspension hold lines on page 525

Changing existing items

You can change all items that have an associated popover, rather than deleting them and inputting new ones. For example, if you want to change an 8va octave line into a 15va octave line or change a short fermata into a long fermata.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the item or the signpost of the item you want to change.

2. Open the popover for that item in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Return**.
   - Double-click the item.
3. Change the existing entry in the popover.
   For chord symbols, you can also play the new chord on your MIDI keyboard.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The selected item is changed according to the new entry in the popover. This changes different parameters for different items, such as the duration of a hold or pause or the volume of a dynamic.

NOTE

- Any properties previously set on the item are reset.
- If you change a fermata to a breath mark, only the fermata on the top staff is changed to a breath mark. If you change a caesura to a breath mark, a breath mark is input on the top staff at the end of the bar to which the caesura is attached. However, the existing caesura also remains on all staves.
- If you open the playing techniques popover in this way, Dorico for iPad inputs your new entry as a separate playing technique and does not delete the previous one.
- If you change an immediate dynamic to a combined dynamic, such as *f* to *fp*, or vice versa, Dorico for iPad inputs your new entry as a separate dynamic and does not delete the previous one.

RELATED LINKS

Popovers on page 17
Properties panel (Write mode) on page 126
Editing existing lyrics on page 579
Assigning key commands on page 38
Changing dynamic levels on page 505

Changing the size of notes/items

You can change the size of individual notes and items using the default scale sizes for cues, grace notes, a custom scale size, or a custom scale size in addition to a default scale size. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

TIP

If you want to change the size of notes because you want them to be grace notes or cues, you can input them as either grace notes or cues instead.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/items whose size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Common** group:

- If you want to use a default scale size, activate **Scale**.
- If you want to use a custom scale size, activate **Custom scale**.
- If you want to use a custom scale size based on a default scale size, activate both **Scale** and **Custom scale**.

3. Optional: If you activated **Scale**, select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Normal**
   - **Grace**
   - **Cue**
   - **Cue grace**
4. Optional: If you activated **Custom scale**, change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The size of the selected notes/items is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- If you activated **Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the selected default scale size.
- If you activated **Custom Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the custom percentage scale size you set.
- If you activated both **Scale** and **Custom Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the custom percentage scale size of the selected default scale size. For example, if you selected **Grace** for **Scale** then set **Custom Scale** to **50**, the size of the selected notes/items is half the size of grace notes.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting grace notes on page 173
Notehead set designs on page 592
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the staff-relative placement of items

You can flip any item that can be placed both above/below the staff to change their staff-relative placement, for example, if you want to change the stem direction of notes quickly. For many items, you can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to text in text frames or pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items you want to flip. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - You cannot flip items during note input. You cannot flip text items when the text editor is open.

- If you want to select parts of items, such as articulations, a single notehead within a tie chain, or a single fermata, you must be in Engrave mode.
- To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Flip the selected items in any of the following ways:
   - Press **F**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Flip**.

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected items is changed by setting **Placement**, **Position**, or **Direction** properties appropriately in the corresponding groups of the Properties panel. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain for items whose staff-relative placement properties are local.

Deactivating these properties resets items to their default placement.

NOTE

If you flipped multiple multi-segment slurs or tuplet brackets with different hook directions at the same time, all selected items are set to either above or below the staff, unless they all originally had compatible directions set.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Filters on page 318
Large selections on page 315
Local vs. global properties on page 127
Changing the property scope on page 128
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821
Changing the staff-relative placement of beams on page 452
Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings on page 534
Changing the staff-relative placement of tuplet brackets on page 879
Moving items graphically on page 351
Positions of lyrics on page 582

Resetting the appearance of items

You can reset all changes you have made to the appearance of individual items, which returns them to the default settings. For some items, you can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

Properties relating to the appearance of items include those that change their style, type, and some additions, such as *poco a poco* text for dynamics.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose appearance you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Reset Appearance**.

RESULT

All properties that affect the appearance of the selected items are reset to their default settings. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, any properties that are layout-specific and frame chain-specific are only reset in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Local vs. global properties on page 127
Changing the property scope on page 128
Filters on page 318
Large selections on page 315

Resetting the position of items

You can reset the position of individual items you have moved graphically, which returns them to their default position. For some items, you can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

Properties relating to the position of items include horizontal and vertical offsets, beat-relative position, and staff-relative placement.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose position you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Reset Position**.

RESULT

All properties that affect the position of the selected items are reset to their default settings. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, any properties that are layout-specific and frame chain-specific are only reset in the current layout and frame chain.

Hiding non-printing elements

You can temporarily hide all visible elements that do not print, such as signposts and selection highlights. This allows you to view the current layout as it will appear when printed/exported without switching to Print mode.

PROCEDURE

- Press and hold `.

RESULT

All non-printing elements in the current layout are hidden until you release the key command. Printing elements appear as they will when printed/exported.

TIP

You can also hide/show individual non-printing elements permanently.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing the system track on page 317
Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 438
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 600
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 903

Navigation

There are different ways you can navigate around the layout currently open in the music area, such as moving the selection to different items or bringing specific bar numbers or pages into view. Many navigation methods function in multiple modes.

If you have an item selected, you can navigate to other notes/items, which moves the selection to those notes/items.

RELATED LINKS

Workspace setup on page 30
Moving the caret manually on page 144

Navigating to other items in the music area

You can navigate to other notes and items in the music area after you have selected a note/item, for example, if you want to move the selection to other notes along the staff without using the mouse.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item in the music area.
   - If you want to navigate through notes, select a note.
   - If you want to navigate through a particular type of item, such as rehearsal marks, select an item of that type.

NOTE

You can only navigate forwards/backwards through items on the same staff. You cannot navigate to other items of the same type on other staves.

2. Navigate to other notes or items in any of the following ways:
   - To navigate to the next item or note in the same voice, press **Right Arrow** or click **Navigate Right** in the secondary toolbar.
   - To navigate to the previous item or note in the same voice, press **Left Arrow** or click **Navigate Left** in the secondary toolbar.
   - To navigate to the closest note above the current selection, press **Up Arrow** or click **Navigate Up** in the secondary toolbar.

     This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the lowest note/rest on the staff above. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the bottom note in the chord selected.
   - To navigate to the closest note below the current selection, press **Down Arrow** or click **Navigate Down** in the secondary toolbar.

     This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the highest note/rest on the staff below. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the top note in the chord selected.
   - To navigate forwards to the note/rest at the start of the next bar, press **Cmd-Right Arrow**.
   - To navigate backwards to the note/rest at the start of the previous bar, press **Cmd-Left Arrow**.
   - To navigate to the top staff in the system, press **Cmd-Up Arrow**.
   - To navigate to the bottom staff in the system, press **Cmd-Down Arrow**.
3. Optional: Switch the selection to another type of item at the same rhythmic position in one of the following ways:
   - To cycle forwards through items, press **Tab**.
   - To cycle backwards through items, press **Shift-Tab**.

   NOTE

   You cannot switch the selection to system objects, such as system text or rehearsal marks. However, you can select system objects directly and navigate through them.
4. Optional: After switching the selection to another type of item, navigate to other items of that type.

RELATED LINKS
System objects on page 811
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Going to bars

You can go to any specific bar in any flow in the current layout, for example, to jump quickly to the exact bar that requires changes when editing music.

These steps function in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Cmd-G** to open the **Go To Bar** dialog.
2. Select the flow containing the bar to which you want to go from the **Flow** menu.
3. Enter the bar number to which you want to go into the **Bar** field.
4. Click **OK**.

RESULT

The music area updates to show the corresponding bar. Dorico for iPad automatically positions the top staff towards the top left of the music area.

In Play mode, the playhead moves to the start of the corresponding bar. Dorico for iPad automatically positions the playhead at the start of the ruler.

Dragging pages in the music area

You can drag pages in the music area in Write mode to bring other parts of your music into view, including in galley view.

PROCEDURE

- Click and drag in any empty space within the page boundaries in the music area.

Zooming in/out of the music area

You can change the zoom level in the music area, for example, if you want a larger overview when inputting notes but to see notes and notations more closely when making detailed graphical amendments.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to keep a specific item in the center of the music area when you zoom in/out, you have selected that item.

PROCEDURE

1. Zoom in in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-= or Z**.
   - Spread two fingers outwards on the screen or a touchpad.
2. Zoom out in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-- or X**.
   - Pinch two fingers together on the screen or a touchpad.

RESULT

The zoom level in the music area is changed. If you had anything selected, Dorico for iPad uses your selection as the focal point of the zoom. If you had nothing selected, Dorico for iPad focuses on the area previously in the center of the view.

RELATED LINKS

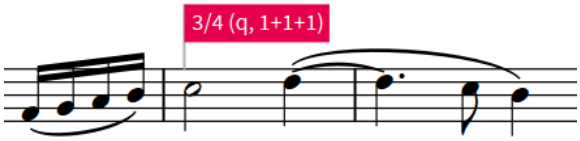
Workspace setup on page 30

Signposts

In Dorico for iPad, signposts indicate the positions of important items or changes that cannot be seen in the score, such as key signatures with no accidentals, hidden items, and rhythmic feel changes.

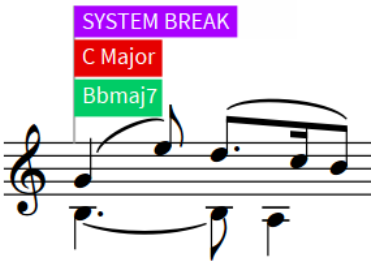
Signposts have different colors depending on the item they mark because many items can show signposts, such as hidden bar numbers and time signatures. They are selectable, meaning you can use signposts to change properties of hidden/invisible items, for example, by selecting system break signposts in order to change the staff size from that position.

Signposts include a text summary of the hidden/invisible item to help you identify it. For example, time signature signposts include the time signature, expressed as a fraction, and its beat subdivision.



The signpost of a hidden time signature

When multiple signposts can exist at a single rhythmic position, they stack vertically so that they do not overlap and remain legible.



Multiple signposts for different items at the same rhythmic position

NOTE

By default, signposts are not printed or included when you export graphics files.

Hiding/Showing signposts

You can hide/show all signposts at any time in Write mode.

PROCEDURE

1. In the secondary toolbar, click **View Options** to open the **View Options** dialog.
2. Activate/Deactivate **Signposts**.
3. Click **Close**.

RESULT

All signposts are shown when **Signposts** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

View Options dialog on page 120

Arranging tools

Arranging tools in Dorico for iPad allow you to allocate notes to different staves and voices quickly and efficiently.

These tools include copying notes and items to multiple staves at the same time, and multiple times within a selected range, moving notes between staves, and changing the voices of notes.

RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 318
Changing the duration of notes on page 152

Deleting notes/items

You can delete any notes/items you have input into your project independently of each other, such as deleting repeat endings without deleting the notes in them. However, you must be in Write mode. You cannot delete notes and items in Setup mode or Engrave mode.

You can also delete notes in Play mode, but not other notation items.

NOTE

You cannot delete initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system. If you do not want any clef to appear on a staff, you can input an invisible clef.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes, items, and/or the signposts of items you want to delete.

   NOTE

   - You must select barlines directly, not their signposts.
   - If you delete some but not all dynamics from a dynamics group that is linked to other staves, the selected dynamics are also deleted from all linked staves.
   - Deleting only tuplets does not delete the notes within them, and vice versa.
   - To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Delete the selected notes/items in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Delete**.

RESULT

All selected notes/items are deleted from your project. Deleted notes are replaced by implicit rests as appropriate. Dorico for iPad moves your selection to the most logical and nearby item to the deleted items. For example, if you deleted a note, Dorico for iPad's first choice is the nearest note in the same voice.

If a slur began or ended on a deleted note, the slur is automatically repositioned to the next/previous notehead. If only one note is left under a slur, the slur is automatically deleted.

Holds and pauses are not automatically deleted if they are not selected when you delete notes. They are positioned above the note/rest closest to their rhythmic position, or over whole bar rests if you delete all notes in a bar.

Any repeat barlines input as part of repeat endings are not deleted automatically when you delete repeat endings.

When you delete barlines, the two bars on either side combine into one bar, containing the same number of beats but without changing the time signature. This might cause note, rest, and beam groupings to change.

When you delete time signatures, subsequent bars are re-barred according to the previous time signature in the score, up until the next time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Flows without time signatures are notated in an open meter, but notes and items retain their duration and positions.

When you delete clefs and key signatures, the pitches of notes are not changed but they are automatically notated according to the previous clef and key signature on the staff, such as with additional accidentals, up to the next existing one or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Flows without any key signatures are treated as if there were an open/atonal key signature rather than A minor or C major.

When you delete octave lines, any notes to which the deleted octave lines previously applied are shown at either concert pitch or transposed pitch, depending on your current setting for the layout.

If you delete some but not all dynamics in a dynamics group that is linked to other staves, the selected dynamics are also deleted from all linked staves. However, if you select and delete the whole group of dynamics from a single staff, those dynamics are not deleted from other linked staves. Deleting immediate dynamics immediately before/after hairpins can automatically adjust the length of hairpins, depending on the context.

When you delete rehearsal marks, any subsequent rehearsal marks are adjusted until the next change in the sequence or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. For example, if you delete the first rehearsal mark, the second rehearsal mark shows either the letter A, the number 1, or the bar number, depending on your choice of sequence type.

Deleting tempo marks also removes them from the **Time** track in Play mode. The tempo in playback follows the previous tempo mark, or the default tempo of 120 bpm if there is no previous tempo mark.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you deleted notes/items because you want to change where they occur, you can input new notes/items at the new positions.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Signposts on page 332
Editing items on page 320
Selecting notes/items on page 313
Filters on page 318
Selecting lyrics using filters on page 575
Deleting rests on page 766
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Turning existing notes into tuplets on page 876
Turning tuplets into normal notes on page 876
Insert mode on page 161
Groups of dynamics on page 518
Linked dynamics on page 519
Accidental duration rules on page 415
Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type on page 730
Inputting notes on page 145
Notations input on page 194

Copying and pasting notes/items

You can copy and paste items, including notes and notations, to other rhythmic positions and staves in different ways.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Copy the selected notes/items to other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-C**, select the position to which you want to paste them, then press **Cmd-V**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Copy**, select the position to which you want to paste them, then click **Paste** in the secondary toolbar.
   - To repeat the material directly after itself, press **R** or click **Repeat** in the secondary toolbar.
   - To copy notes/items to the staff above, select them, then click **Context Menu** in the secondary toolbar and choose **Paste Special** > **Duplicate to Staff Above**.
   - To copy notes/items to the staff below, select them, then click **Context Menu** in the secondary toolbar and choose **Paste Special** > **Duplicate to Staff Below**.

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied without deleting them from their original positions.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Filters on page 318
Large selections on page 315
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 313
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 340
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 337
Repitching notes without changing their rhythm on page 185
Linked dynamics on page 519
Linked slurs on page 785
Insert mode on page 161
Chord mode on page 176

Copying and pasting notes/items to multiple staves

You can copy and paste notes and other items to multiple staves at once, for example, to copy a single phrase to all the woodwind staves when they are playing in unison.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy to multiple staves.

TIP

To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Copy the selected notes/items.
3. Select an item on each staff to which you want to paste the selected items.
4. Paste the selected notes/items.

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied to all of the selected staves.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

TIP

If you selected a range of notes/items on each staff, the selected notes/items are also pasted multiple times to fill the selected range.

RELATED LINKS

Filters on page 318
Large selections on page 315
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 335
Linked dynamics on page 519
Linked slurs on page 785
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 337

Copying and pasting notes/items to fill a selected range

You can copy and paste items, including notes and notations, multiple times within a selected range at once, for example, if you want to fill multiple bars with the same phrase.

NOTE

You can only copy and paste items that have a duration to fill a selection. For example, you can copy and paste gradual dynamics to fill a selection but not immediate dynamics.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy throughout a range.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Copy the selected notes/items.
3. Select the range throughout which you want to paste the selected notes/items.
4. Paste the selected notes/items.

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied as many times as will fit within the selected range without extending beyond it.

TIP

If you selected a range on multiple staves, the selected items are also pasted to multiple staves.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 318
Large selections on page 315
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 335

Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting

By default, dynamics and slurs are automatically linked when you copy them to other staves at the same rhythmic position. You can disable this behavior so dynamics and slurs are not linked by default.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **Note Input and Editing** in the category list.
3. In the **Editing** section, deactivate **Link dynamics and slurs to existing items when pasting**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Linked dynamics on page 519
Linked slurs on page 785

Moving notes/items rhythmically

You can move notes and items to new rhythmic positions to the right/left along staves after they have been input. For example, if you want a *cresc.* dynamic to start a beat later. You can also move individual dynamics and playing techniques within a group.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to the following items: barlines, notehead brackets, glissando lines, notehead-attached horizontal lines, fingerings and fingering slides, jazz articulations, guitar bends, vibrato bar dives/returns, pedal retakes, and tremolo strokes. If you want to change the rhythmic positions of these items, you must delete them from their original positions and input new ones at the new positions.

  We recommend deleting and inputting new arpeggio signs and vertical lines rather than moving them. If you move arpeggio signs and vertical lines to the rhythmic position of a rest, they are deleted.
- Because markers have a fixed position in time, moving markers relative to the notated music automatically changes the tempo on either side of the marker. If you want to move a marker

to a new time position, for example, if you want to move it from 25 seconds to 28 seconds, you must change the timecode of the marker.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes, items, or signposts that you want to move.

   NOTE

   - If you want tuplet notes to remain tuplets, you must also select their tuplet numbers/ratios, brackets, or tuplet signposts, otherwise notes become normal notes of their rhythmic value when you move them beyond the boundaries of tuplets.
   - You can only move a single slur, marker, repeat ending, or bar repeat region at a time.
   - When using the mouse, you can only move a single item at a time. You cannot move notes or the following items using the mouse: tuplets, lyrics, slash regions, time signatures, arpeggio signs, and vertical lines.
   - You can only select clefs that you have input. You cannot select initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system.
   - To move a single dynamic within a group, you must click and drag it with the mouse. If you use the key commands, the whole group is moved.
   - Moving multiple playing techniques or dynamics in the same group at the same time ungroups them.

2. Optional: If you selected notes and do not want them to overwrite existing notes they pass over as part of their move, activate one of the following:

   - If you want the selected notes to overlap with existing notes, activate Chord mode by pressing **Q** or clicking **Chords** in the Notes toolbox.
   - If you want the selected notes to move through existing notes, activate Insert mode in Write mode by pressing **I** or clicking **Insert** in the Notes toolbox.

     NOTE

     Moving notes rhythmically with Insert mode activate can affect the durations of existing notes the selected notes move through.

3. Move the notes, items, and/or signposts in any of the following ways:

   - To move them to the right, press **Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move them to the left, press **Opt-Left Arrow**.

     NOTE

     Most items move according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. A single selection of the following items moves to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines: dynamics, ornaments, slurs, lines, octave lines, pedal lines, playing techniques, rehearsal marks, repeat endings, and bar repeat regions.

   - To move items to the right according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Cmd-Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move items to the left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Cmd-Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - Click and drag the selected item to the right/left.

NOTE

The following items move to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines: dynamics, ornaments, slurs, horizontal lines, octave lines, pedal lines, playing techniques, rehearsal marks, repeat endings, and bar repeat regions.

RESULT

The selected notes, items, and/or signposts are moved to new rhythmic positions. Most items move according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. However, a single selection of some items automatically moves to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines. When multiple items are selected, they move as a block according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

NOTE

For many items, only a single instance can exist at each rhythmic position on each staff. If an item passes over another item of the same type as part of its move, the existing item is deleted or shortened accordingly.

You can undo this action, but any items deleted in the process are only restored if you moved items using the keyboard.

Items that can have multiple instances at the same rhythmic position on the same staff include dynamics, octave lines, playing techniques, horizontal lines, slash regions, and text objects. However, if you move multiple items together, any existing items of the same type between the selected items or that they pass over as part of the move are deleted or shortened accordingly unless Insert mode is active.

Notes are automatically positioned according to their rhythmic duration and position relative to other notes.

If a tuplet number/ratio or tuplet bracket is included in the selection, the whole tuplet is moved along the staff. If it crosses a barline, the tuplet is automatically adjusted to compensate. However, tuplets are not automatically adjusted at the mid-point of bars, where it is convention to split tuplets to show the beat division. You must enter two tuplets manually to show the beat division at the mid-point of bars.

Items such as clefs, key signatures, and time signatures take effect from their new positions until the next item of the same type or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Barlines on either side of a moved time signature are automatically updated up to the previous/next existing time signature, or the start/end of the flow.

If you moved divisi change signposts, any music on divisi staves outside of divisi passages is automatically hidden, and any unison ranges before/after divisi passages are automatically updated.

If you moved harp pedal diagrams and colors are shown for notes out of range, any notes that no longer fit with the prevailing harp pedal diagram appear red.

The position of holds and pauses you have moved might not appear to change. For example, if one staff has a bar rest and you move a fermata rhythmically within the bar, the fermata still appears above the bar rest.

The rhythmic duration of slurs is usually maintained. However, depending on the rhythms they cross as they move, slurs may cover longer/shorter durations than before the move.

Moving repeat endings does not automatically input, delete, or move repeat barlines.

When you move markers, their fixed position of markers in time is not changed. Therefore, the tempo immediately preceding the marker automatically updates so that the marker occurs at the correct time. For example, moving a marker to the right increases the preceding tempo. Any

gradual tempo changes between the preceding tempo change or the start of the flow and the marker are removed. The tempo change affects the positions of all other markers in the flow relative to the notated music.

RELATED LINKS
Rhythmic grid on page 139
Notes toolbox on page 113
Note spacing on page 393
Chord mode on page 176
Insert mode on page 161
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Tuplet brackets on page 878
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 881
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 340
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456
Splitting pedal lines on page 688
Moving items graphically on page 351
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 600
Groups of dynamics on page 518
Groups of playing techniques on page 707
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Input methods for lines on page 286
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 260
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 239
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 300
Adding retakes to existing pedal lines with the popover on page 281
Adding retakes to existing pedal lines with the panel on page 282
Inputting fingerings on page 197
Hiding/Showing fingering slides on page 545
Showing brackets on noteheads on page 603

Moving notes/items to other staves

You can move notes and items to other staves of any type, for example, if you want to move individual notes from one keyboard staff to another after importing a keyboard part from a MIDI file.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to pedal lines or system objects.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes and/or items you want to move to another staff.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Move the selected notes/items another staff in one of the following ways:
   - To move them to the staff above, press **Opt-N**.

- To move them to the staff below, press **Opt-M**.
- In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Paste Special** > **Move to Staff Above**.
- In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Paste Special** > **Move to Staff Below**.

RESULT

The selected notes and/or items are moved to another staff by cutting them from their original staff and pasting them to the new staff. By default, notes are pasted into the first voice active on that staff.

Notes within tuplets remain tuplets even if you did not select the tuplet bracket, tuplet number/ratio, or tuplet signpost.

RELATED LINKS

Filters on page 318
Large selections on page 315
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Copying and pasting notes/items to multiple staves on page 335
Changing the duration of notes on page 152
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273

Changing the voice of existing notes

You can change the voice of notes after they have been input, including notes in slash voices. For example, you can change notes in an up-stem voice to a down-stem voice or a slash voice.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose voice you want to change.

   NOTE

   - If you want tuplet notes to remain tuplets, you must also select their tuplet numbers/ratios, brackets, or tuplet signposts, otherwise notes become normal notes of their rhythmic value when you change their voice.
   - You can use large selections and filters to select many notes in the same voice quickly.

2. Change the voice in any of the following ways:
   - To change the selected notes to a normal voice, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Voices** > **Change Voice** > **[Voice]**.
   - To change the selected notes to a slash voice, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Voices** > **Change Voice** > **[Slash Voice]**.

   TIP

   If there is only one voice on the staff, you can create a new voice for your selected notes.

RESULT

The voice of the selected notes is changed, which might cause Dorico for iPad to change the stem directions of the selected notes and other notes on the staff, and add implicit rests to ensure correct notation based on convention.

If you changed notes to a slash voice, they no longer play back.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can later delete or hide rests and change the stem direction of notes manually.

You can also change whole voices into slash voices.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 903
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157
Inputting notes into slash voices on page 158
Large selections on page 315
Filters on page 318
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 764
Deleting rests on page 766
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821
Changing the slash voice type on page 909
Changing the duration of notes on page 152
Tuplets on page 874
Signposts on page 332

Swapping the contents of voices

You can swap the contents of two voices that contain musical material.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes in two voices that you want to swap.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Voices** > **Swap Voice Contents**.

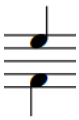
RESULT

The contents of the voices are swapped. For example, the notes previously in an up-stem voice are now in a down-stem voice, and the notes previously in a down-stem voice are now in an up-stem voice.

NOTE

Depending on the pitches involved in the swap and their stem directions, the notes might overlap. Dorico for iPad automatically positions notes with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and maintain the clarity of the rhythm. However, if you want to change this arrangement, you can change the order of voices or change the voice column index.

EXAMPLE



An E is in the up-stem voice, an F in the down-stem voice.

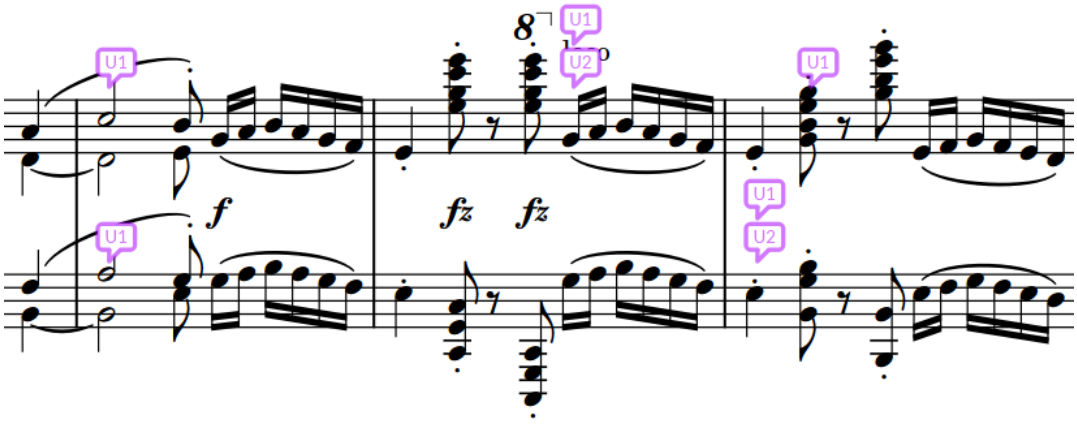
After swapping their voice contents, the E is in the down-stem voice, and the F is in the up-stem voice.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Swapping the order of voices on page 906
Voice column index on page 905

Comments

Comments allow you to add notes or instructions at precise positions in your project without affecting the music. They are considered annotations in Dorico for iPad, meaning they are not printed by default.

Comments exist outside of the music, so they do not affect note spacing, vertical spacing, or casting off. However, you can attach them to specific items and staves in order to show the precise subject of each comment.



A passage with comments and replies

By default, comments are shown in the music area. They appear as speech bubble symbols as close as possible to their attached position. Comments that are replies are stacked vertically below the original comment.

All comments in the current flow are listed in the Comments panel in Write mode. Clicking a comment, either in the Comments panel or in the music area, automatically moves the view to bring that rhythmic position into focus.

In addition to its content, each comment identifies the following:

- Author of the comment, using either the current user account name or a custom name

  On macOS, the user account name uses the long account name; on Windows, it uses the full name associated with the account. If Dorico for iPad cannot determine your account name, a

dialog appears into which you can add the name and initials you want to use for comments. You can also change these in **Preferences**.

- Date the comment was added
- Instrument to which the comment applies
- Bars to which the comment applies

NOTE

In the music area, only the initials of the author are shown. In the Comments panel, all information is shown.

You can hide/show comments at any time, and you can choose to include them, alongside other view options, when printing/exporting layouts.

RELATED LINKS
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Comments panel on page 345
Changing the author name used for comments on page 347

Adding comments

You can add comments at any rhythmic position in your project, including adding different comments to multiple staves at the same rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to add a comment. If you want your comment to apply to a range, select multiple items.
2. Press **Opt-C** to open the **Comment** dialog.
3. Enter your comment into the dialog.
4. Click **OK** to close the dialog and add the comment.

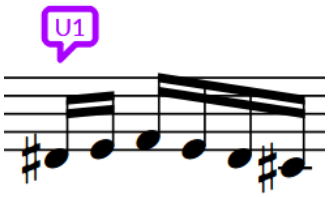
RESULT

The text you entered into the dialog is saved as a comment. In the music area, it is indicated by a speech bubble symbol that contains your initials. In the Comments panel, the text you entered is shown alongside your full username, the date, and the instrument and bar number to which you added the comment.

TIP

You can also add comments by clicking **Create Comment** in the Comments panels action bar.

EXAMPLE

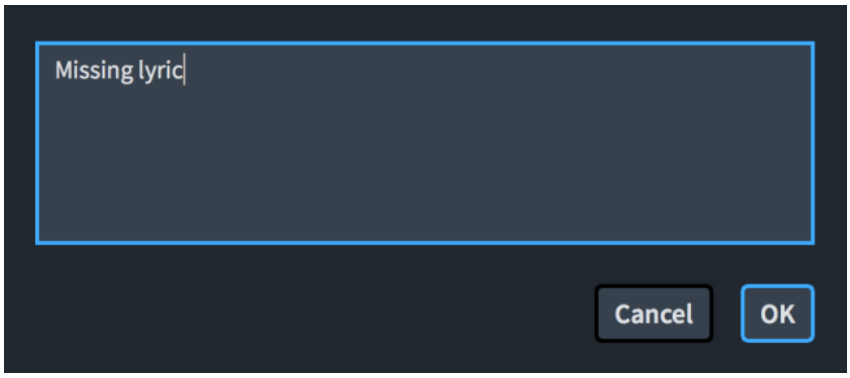


A comment in the music area

Comment dialog

The **Comment** dialog allows you to enter and edit text as comments.

- You can open the **Comment** dialog by adding a comment, replying to a comment, or double-clicking an existing comment, either in the music area or in the Comments panel.

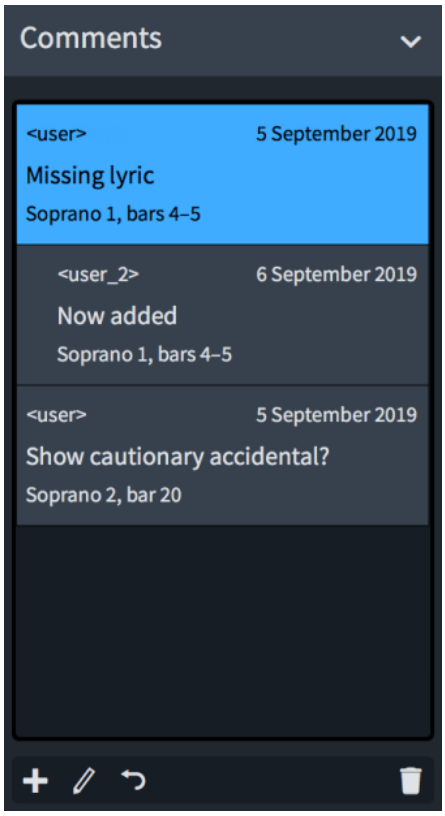


Comments panel

The Comments panel shows all the comments in the current flow as a list. Replies to comments are indented to indicate their relationship to the original comment. The Comments panel is located in the right zone in Write mode.

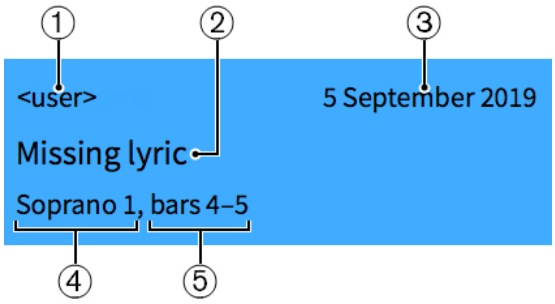
- You can hide/show the Comments panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Comments** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Cmd-9**.



Comments panel

Each comment in the panel shows the following:



1 **Author name**: This uses either the current user account or a custom name, depending on the preference that was set when the comment was added.

2 **Comment content**

3 **Date the comment was added to the project**

4 **Instrument to which the comment applies**

5 **Bars to which the comment applies**

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Create Comment

Adds a comment to the selected rhythmic position and staff.

Edit Comment

Opens the selected comment in the **Comment** dialog and allows you to change its content.

Reply to Comment

Adds a comment that is a reply to the selected comment. Replies are shown indented in the Comments panel and stacked in the music area.

Delete Comment

Deletes the selected comments.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 121
Changing the author name used for comments on page 347

Replying to comments

You can add replies to existing comments, which is useful when co-ordinating with others as this organizes the list of comments in the Comments panel into clear sections.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the comment to which you want to reply. You can do this in the music area and in the Comments panel.
2. Press **Opt-R** to open the **Comment** dialog.
3. Enter your reply into the dialog.

4. Click **OK** to close the dialog and add the reply.

RESULT

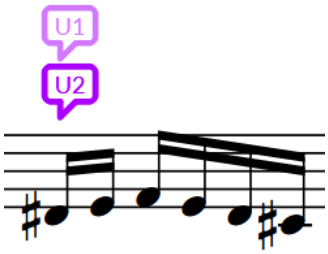
The text you entered into the dialog is saved as a reply to the selected comment. In the music area, it is indicated by a speech bubble symbol that contains your initials and is positioned immediately below the selected comment.

In the Comments panel, the reply is indented below the selected comment.

TIP

You can also reply to comments by clicking **Reply to Comment** in the Comments panel.

EXAMPLE



A reply stacked below the selected comment

Editing existing comments

You can change the contents of existing comments after you have added them, for example, to correct misspellings or add further information.

PROCEDURE

1. Double-click the comment you want to edit to open the **Comment** dialog. You can do this in the music area and in the Comments panel.
2. Change the text in the dialog.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

Changing the author name used for comments

You can change the author name used for comments to either your user account name or a custom name. This affects subsequent comments you add to the project without changing the author name used for existing comments.

For the custom name, you can specify both the full name that is shown in the Comments panel and the initials shown in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-,**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Preferences**.
2. Click **General** in the category list.

3. In the **Comments** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Author name for comments**:
   - **User Name**
   - **Custom Name**
4. Optional: If you chose **Custom Name**, enter the full name you want to use into the **Full name** field.
5. Optional: If you chose **Custom Name**, enter the initials you want to use into the **Initials** field.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Hiding/Showing comments

You can hide/show comments at their positions in the music, for example, if you want to hide them when inputting music but show them when engraving.

Comments are considered annotations in Dorico for iPad, meaning they are not printed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In the secondary toolbar, click **View Options** to open the **View Options** dialog.
2. Activate/Deactivate **Comments**.
3. Click **Close**.

RESULT

Comments are shown in the corresponding view type when **Comments** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
View Options dialog on page 120

Layout and formatting

There are various ways you can control the layout and formatting of pages in your project, including changing the size of pages and adjusting note spacing.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot edit all the objects and settings used to determine page formatting, such as frames and master pages. However, we have included basic information about these for your information.

RELATED LINKS
Master pages on page 366
Page formatting on page 369
Note spacing on page 393
Staff spacing on page 395

Engrave mode

Engrave mode is only available when you are subscribed. Engrave mode allows you to manipulate and modify every item in your project, but without deleting them, moving them rhythmically, or changing the pitch of notes. You can also determine the casting off in each layout of your project using system and frame breaks.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10

Properties panel (Engrave mode)

The Properties panel in Engrave mode provides options that allow you to edit individual notes and notations, such as by changing their appearance or position. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Engrave mode.

You can hide/show the Properties panel in Write mode and Engrave mode in any of the following ways:

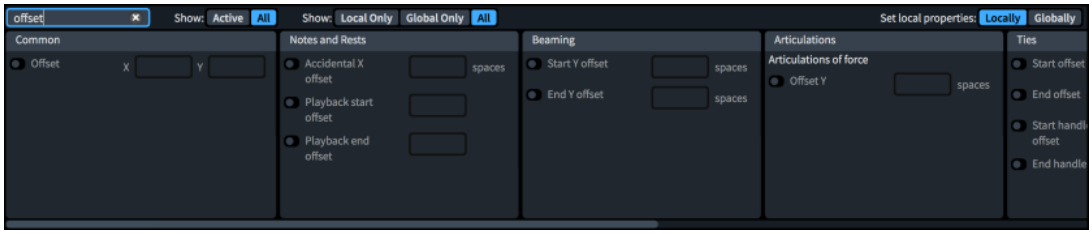
- Press **Cmd-8**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Lower Zone**, then choose **Properties** in the lower zone.

The Properties panel contains a group of properties for each notation item. When you select a note or item in the music area, the Properties panel displays the groups and options that you might require to edit the selected note or item. If there are more available groups than can fit in the panel simultaneously, you can scroll to the right/left along the displayed groups.

All the properties that are available in the Properties panel in Write mode are also available in Engrave mode, but additional properties in Engrave mode allow you to edit items in more detail.

NOTE

- If you select multiple different types of notation items, only the groups that they have in common are displayed. For example, if you select a slur, the **Common** and **Slurs** groups are displayed in the Properties panel. However, if you select a slur and a note, only the **Common** group is displayed.
- If the property scope is set to **Locally**, changing local properties only affects the current layout and frame chain. You can set the property scope to **Globally** if you want subsequent changes to local properties to affect all layouts and frame chains.



Properties panel in Engrave mode, filtered by a search term

The Properties panel toolbar contains the following options:

Search

Allows you to filter properties according to your entry.

Show (active status)

Allows you to filter properties according to their activated status.

- **Active**: Shows only activated properties.
- **All**: Shows all properties.

Show (property scope)

Allows you to filter properties according to their property scope.

- **Local Only**: Shows only local properties.
- **Global Only**: Shows only global properties.
- **All**: Shows all properties.

Set local properties

Allows you to change the scope of subsequent local properties you change.

- **Locally**: Local properties only take effect locally.
- **Globally**: Local properties take effect globally.

RELATED LINKS

Local vs. global properties on page 127
Changing the property scope on page 128
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 34
Moving items graphically on page 351
Selecting handles on items on page 353
Resetting the appearance of items on page 327
Resetting the position of items on page 328

Secondary toolbar (Engrave mode)

The secondary toolbar contains options that allow you to select and delete certain items, such as signposts, and access the context menu. It is located at the top of the project window, below the toolbar.

In Engrave mode, the secondary toolbar contains the following options:

Add to Selection

Allows you to select additional notes/items without deselecting any notes/items already selected. Equivalent to **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking notes/items.

Extend Selection

Allows you to select everything between your first selection and subsequent selections. Equivalent to **Shift**-clicking notes/items.

Delete

Deletes the selected items, such as system break signposts.

NOTE

In Engrave mode, you cannot delete notes and items from the music.

Context Menu

Allows you to access the context menu, which contains different options depending on your current selection.

RELATED LINKS
Project window on page 22
Toolbar on page 23
Signposts on page 332
Selecting notes/items on page 313
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Moving items graphically

You can move items graphically without changing the rhythmic positions or notes to which they are attached, for example, to offset individual items on specific pages without moving other items of the same type elsewhere in the layout. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

You can move individual instances of system objects, such as tempo marks or system text, independently of other instances shown at different staff positions. You can also move each end of items with duration, such as gradual dynamics or octave lines, independently, allowing you to adjust their graphical length and angle.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to the following: text in text frames, accidentals, notes, clefs, barlines, key signatures, or time signatures shown on staves.
- You can only move some items and handles in specific directions. For example, you can move articulations upwards/downwards but not to the right/left. Similarly, you can only move the end handles on octave lines to the right/left. When using the mouse, you can only move whole guitar bends and vibrato bar dives/returns upwards/downwards. You cannot move individual lyrics upwards/downwards, but you can move lyric lines upwards/downwards on a per-system basis.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following that you want to move.
   - Whole items or segments of items that cross system/frame breaks
   - Lines extending from items, such as figured bass hold lines or lyric extender lines
   - Individual handles on items

   TIP

   - You can cycle through handles on a selected item by pressing **Tab**.
2. Move the selected items in any of the following ways:
   - To move items a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Left Arrow** to move items to the left. This moves beams by 1/4 space and all other items by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move items a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1 space per press.
   - To move items a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move items a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag them in any direction.

     NOTE

     You cannot click and drag vibrato bar scoops.

RESULT

The selected items are moved graphically without changing the rhythmic positions or notes to which they are attached. Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply, so it is always clear where they belong. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Moving some items, such as notehead brackets and jazz articulations, causes other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, to move automatically to avoid collisions. This might affect note spacing and casting off.

If you move dynamics linked to other dynamics, all dynamics linked to the selected dynamics in the current layout are also moved.

Moving items with continuation or hold lines, such as playing techniques or figured bass, moves them both together. Moving continuation/hold lines or continuation/hold line handles moves the continuation/hold lines independently of the item. Dorico for iPad automatically lengthens hold lines between figured bass suspensions and resolutions when you move resolution figures.

Lengthening/Shortening lyric hyphens does not change the size or shape of the hyphens themselves. Instead, you increase/decrease the distance between the handles in which hyphens can appear.

By default, player labels erase their backgrounds if positioned in the staff so they do not collide with staff lines.

NOTE

- Moving the start handle of hairpins with the keyboard changes the vertical position of whole hairpins, not their angles. You must change the end offset position as well to change the angle of hairpins. Dragging hairpin handles with the mouse always changes the angle.
- Properties that control the graphic offsets of items are activated automatically when you move items. You can find these properties in the corresponding group of the Properties panel for the item, or in the **Common** group for some items, such as text objects and lyrics.

  Some offset properties have separate value fields for horizontal offsets on the X axis and vertical offsets on the Y axis. Similarly, items with length or duration have separate offset properties for each end.

  You can also use these properties to move items graphically by changing the values in the value fields. Deactivating offset properties resets the selected items to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the vertical order of playing techniques on page 701
Casting off on page 389
Note spacing on page 393
Moving accidentals graphically on page 413
Guitar bends in Engrave mode on page 654
Notehead brackets in Engrave mode on page 606
Positions of lyrics on page 582
Moving lyric lines vertically on page 583
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 585
Octave lines in Engrave mode on page 495
Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode on page 685
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Lines in Engrave mode on page 727
Frames on page 367

Selecting handles on items

In Engrave mode, you can select individual handles on items, for example, if you want to move the graphical end of a gradual dynamic without moving its start.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a handle in any of the following ways:

- Select the whole item and press **Tab** until the handle you want is selected.
- Click the handle you want.

2. Optional: To select handles on other items, activate **Add to Selection** in the secondary toolbar, then click handles on other items.

NOTE

You cannot select subsequent handles on other items by selecting the items and pressing **Tab**.

RELATED LINKS
Gradual dynamics on page 511
Guitar bends in Engrave mode on page 654
Notehead brackets in Engrave mode on page 606
Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode on page 685
Octave lines in Engrave mode on page 495
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Changing the shape/angle of ties on page 850

Text objects vs. text in text frames

Text in Dorico for iPad can exist as a text object, added to individual staves or as system text, and in text frames, which are fixed to the page rather than the music.

As you cannot see or edit frames in Dorico for iPad, both types of text look very similar. You can tell the difference between text objects and text in text frames by clicking them once: if the text appears highlighted with an attachment line to a staff, it is a text/system text object. If the text does not appear highlighted or has no attachment line, it is in a text frame.

You can edit both types of text in the same ways, but you can only use text tokens in text frames. You cannot use tokens in text added to staves/systems.

NOTE

The project title, page numbers, and running headers that are automatically shown in layouts are in text frames. Their contents and formatting come from master pages, which you cannot edit or create in Dorico for iPad. Editing text frames in layouts is considered a master page override. Pages with master page overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid master page overrides. The big title at the top of the first page is the project title, and the running header on subsequent pages uses the flow title for the top flow on that page.

RELATED LINKS
Editing text on page 291
Text tokens on page 355
Hiding/Showing text objects on page 365

Text tokens

Text tokens are codes that you can use as substitutes for information stored in your project, such as titles, composers, and the time and date. This can reduce the risk of mistakes or outdated information appearing in your project. Text tokens are also known as “wildcards” or “text codes”.

For example, if you use a token for the title of your project, you can change the project title in the **Project Info** dialog as often as you want, and the project title in every layout in your project is updated automatically.

Tokens can refer to information in the **Project Info** dialog, including for the whole project or each flow individually. Tokens can also refer to the current time and date or the time and date the project was last saved.

NOTE

- You can only use text tokens in text frames. You cannot use tokens in staff/system text objects.
- Flow tokens refer to the nearest flow below the top edge of their text frame and on the same page. When the top edge of a text frame containing a flow token is in line with or above the top staff line of the first staff in a system, it then refers to that flow.

  You can specify the flow number to which you want flow tokens to refer, such as **{@flow2title@}**. This always shows the specified flow, regardless of the token’s position.

  You can see the flow number of each flow in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode.
- You can access all the available tokens from the context menu when the cursor is inside a text frame. In the context menu, tokens are organized into submenus.

The following tokens are available in Dorico for iPad:

General tokens

Description	Token
Player list	**{@playerlist@}**
Player names	**{@playernames@}**
Layout name	**{@layoutname@}**
Layout number, as set in the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode	**{@layoutnumber@}**
Project file name	**{@projectfilename@}**
Path to the project’s save location, including the project file name	**{@projectfilepath@}**

Staff label tokens

Music symbol	Token
Full staff labels of the players in the current layout	**{@staffLabelsFull@}**
Abbreviated staff labels of the players in the current layout	**{@staffLabelsShort@}**

You can use staff label tokens, for example, as an alternative way to name part layouts, instead of using the default **{@layoutName@}** token shown at the top left of the first page in part layouts.

NOTE

Staff label tokens might not exactly match the appearance of staff labels shown before initial barlines; however, staff label tokens respect your per-layout options for how transpositions appear in staff labels.

Music symbol tokens

Music symbol	Token
Flat accidental: ♭	**{@flat@}**
Sharp accidental: ♯	**{@sharp@}**
Natural accidental: ♮	**{@natural@}**
Treble clef (G clef)	**{@gClef@}**
Bass clef (F clef)	**{@fClef@}**
Alto clef (C clef)	**{@cClef@}**
Fermata above	**{@U+E4C0@}**

TIP

- This list is not comprehensive, as you can enter the code point for any SMuFL symbol within a token. You can find the necessary code points in the SMuFL specification online.
- Music symbol tokens in text frames automatically use the **Music text** character style, which is set to Bravura Text by default.
- You can include music symbol tokens in fields in the **Project Info** dialog. For example, if you enter **Symphony in B{@flat@} major** into the **Title** field, the title displayed in text frames using the corresponding title token is Symphony in B♭ major.

Project/Flow information tokens

Field in the Project Info dialog	Token for Project page	Token for Flow pages
Title	**{@projecttitle@}**	**{@flowtitle@}**
Subtitle	**{@projectsubtitle@}**	**{@flowsubtitle@}**
Dedication	**{@projectdedication@}**	**{@flowdedication@}**
Composer	**{@projectcomposer@}**	**{@flowcomposer@}**
Arranger	**{@projectarranger@}**	**{@flowarranger@}**
Lyricist	**{@projectlyricist@}**	**{@flowlyricist@}**
Artist	**{@projectartist@}**	**{@flowartist@}**
Copyist	**{@projectcopyist@}**	**{@flowcopyist@}**
Publisher	**{@projectpublisher@}**	**{@flowpublisher@}**
Editor	**{@projecteditor@}**	**{@floweditor@}**
Copyright	**{@projectcopyright@}**	**{@flowcopyright@}**
Work number	**{@projectworknumber@}**	**{@flowworknumber@}**
Composer dates	**{@projectcomposerdates@}**	**{@flowcomposerdates@}**
Composition year	**{@projectcompositionyear@}**	**{@flowcompositionyear@}**
Other information	**{@projectotherinfo@}**	**{@flowotherinfo@}**

Flow tokens

Per-flow token function	Token
Flow number of the current flow, according to its position in the project	**{@flownumber@}**
Flow number of the current flow, according to its position in the current layout	**{@flowInLayoutNumber@}**
Flow number of the current flow shown in lower case Roman numerals, such as iii or xvi	**{@flowNumberRomanLower@}**

Per-flow token function	Token
Flow number of the current flow shown in upper case Roman numerals, such as III or XVI	**{@flowNumberRomanUpper@}**
Duration of the current flow in minutes and seconds	**{@flowDuration@}**
Duration of the specified flow “n” in minutes and seconds, such as **{@flow3Duration@}**	**{@flownDuration@}**

Page number tokens

Page number token function	Token
Page number	**{@page@}**
Total number of pages in the layout	**{@pageCount@}**
Number of this page within the current flow, counting from 1 for the first page of the flow and including pages with no displayed page number	**{@flowPage@}**
Total number of pages in the current flow	**{@flowPageCount@}**
The displayed page number on which the specified flow “n” begins, such as **{@flow3FirstPage@}**	**{@flownFirstPage@}**

NOTE

{@flowPage@} and **{@flowPageCount@}** tokens only consider the flow that is active at the beginning of the first system of the music frame closest to the top left corner of the page on which the tokens are used.

Time/Date tokens: project last saved

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Standard date and time string (locale dependent)	Sun Dec 31 11:10:12 2017	**{@projectdate@}**
Four-digit year	2017	**{@projectdateyear@}**
Two-digit year	17	**{@projectdateyearshort@}**

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Full month name (locale dependent)	October	**{@projectdatemonth@}**
Short month name (locale dependent)	Oct	**{@projectdatemonthshort@}**
Month as a decimal number, range 1-12	10	**{@projectdatemonthnum@}**
Full weekday name (locale dependent)	Friday	**{@projectdateday@}**
Abbreviated weekday name (locale dependent)	Fri	**{@projectdatedayshort@}**
Day of month as decimal number, range 1-31	24	**{@projectdatedaynum@}**
ISO 8601 date	2017-12-31	**{@projectdateymd@}**
Month day, year	December 31, 2017	**{@projectdatemdy@}**
Day month year	31 December 2017	**{@projectdatedmy@}**
Time representation (locale dependent)	11:10:12	**{@projectdatetime@}**
Hours:minutes, hour in 24-hour clock range	23:10	**{@projectdatetimeHHMM@}**
Hours:minutes:seconds, hour in 24-hour clock range	13:02:24	**{@projectdatetimeHHMMSS@}**
Hour in 24-hour clock range	23	**{@projectdatetimehour24@}**
Hour in 12-hour clock range	11	**{@projectdatetimehour12@}**
Minute as decimal number, range 00-59	10	**{@projectdatetimeminute@}**
Second as decimal number, range 00-59	44	**{@projectdatetimesecond@}**

Time/Date tokens: current time and date

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Standard date and time string (locale dependent)	Sun Dec 31 11:10:12 2017	**{@date@}**
Four-digit year	2017	**{@dateyear@}**
Two-digit year	17	**{@dateyearshort@}**
Full month name (locale dependent)	October	**{@datemonth@}**
Short month name (locale dependent)	Oct	**{@datemonthshort@}**
Month as a decimal number, range 1-12	10	**{@datemonthnum@}**
Full weekday name (locale dependent)	Friday	**{@dateday@}**
Abbreviated weekday name (locale dependent)	Fri	**{@datedayshort@}**
Day of month as decimal number, range 1-31	24	**{@datedaynum@}**
ISO 8601 date	2017-12-31	**{@dateymd@}**
Month day, year	December 31, 2017	**{@datemdy@}**
Day month year	31 December 2017	**{@datedmy@}**
Time representation (locale dependent)	11:10:12	**{@datetime@}**
Hours:minutes, hour in 24-hour clock range	23:10	**{@datetimeHHMM@}**
Hours:minutes:seconds, hour in 24-hour clock range	13:02:24	**{@datetimeHHMMSS@}**
Hour in 24-hour clock range	23	**{@datetimehour24@}**
Hour in 12-hour clock range	11	**{@datetimehour12@}**
Minute as decimal number, range 00-59	10	**{@datetimeminute@}**

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Second as decimal number, range 00-59	44	**{@datetimesecond@}**

RELATED LINKS
Project Info dialog on page 61
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Flow names and flow titles on page 110
Renumbering layouts on page 103
Reordering flows on page 98
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 801

Aligning text objects with the start of systems

You can align individual text objects whose rhythmic position is at the start of systems with the systemic barline rather than the first note/rest, independently of the system alignment setting for their paragraph style. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

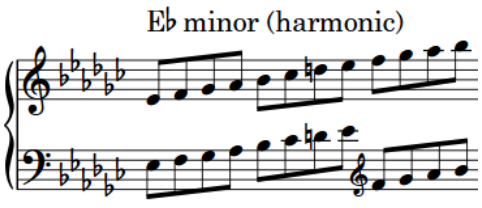
1. Select the text objects you want to align with the start of systems. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Align with system start** in the **Text** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

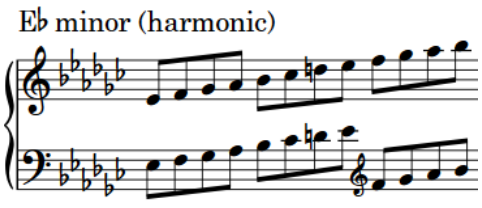
The selected text objects are aligned with the start of systems when the checkbox is activated, and aligned with the first note/rest in systems when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, text objects follow the system alignment setting of their paragraph style.

EXAMPLE



Text aligned with the first note in the system



Text aligned with the start of the system

RELATED LINKS
Inputting text on page 289

Changing the paragraph style of text on page 364
Moving items graphically on page 351
Erasing the background of text objects on page 364
Changing the property scope on page 128

Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance

You can change whether individual text objects automatically move to avoid collisions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. Text objects with collision avoidance disabled do not contribute to automatic staff spacing calculations.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to text in text frames.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text objects whose collision avoidance you want to enable/disable.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Avoid collisions** in the **Text** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected text objects avoid collisions when the checkbox is activated, and do not avoid collisions when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Adding borders to text objects

You can add borders to text and system text objects individually, for example, if you want to make the boundaries of text objects clear.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text objects to which you want to add borders. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border** in the **Text** group.

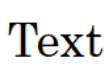
RESULT

Borders are added to the selected text objects.

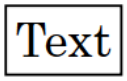
TIP

Deactivating **Border** removes borders from the selected text objects.

EXAMPLE



Text with no border



Text with border shown

RELATED LINKS

Erasing the background of text objects on page 364

Changing the thickness of text object borders

You can change the thickness of borders around individual text objects.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text objects whose border thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in the **Text** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The thickness of borders around the selected text objects is changed.

Changing the padding around text objects

You can change the padding around text objects individually, and for each edge independently. This affects the distance between text and erased backgrounds and borders. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text objects whose padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Text** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between text objects and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between text objects and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between text objects and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between text objects and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields for the edges whose padding you want to change.

RESULT

The padding around the selected text objects is changed. Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Erasing the background of text objects

You can erase the background of individual text and system text objects, for example, to ensure the text remains legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text objects whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Text** group.

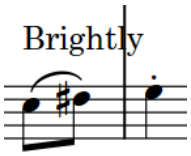
RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected text objects are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

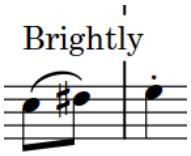
TIP

- You can show borders on text objects in addition to erasing their backgrounds.
- Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected text objects to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Text with non-erased background



Text with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between text objects and each edge of their erased areas.

RELATED LINKS
Adding borders to text objects on page 362
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the paragraph style of text

You can change the paragraph style that is applied to individual staff/system text objects, for example, if you want to use different paragraph styles according to the information included in different text objects.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, double-click the text object whose paragraph style you want to change to open the text editor.
2. Select a paragraph style from the paragraph style menu in the text editor.
3. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd** - **Return** to close the text editor.

RESULT

The paragraph style of the selected text object is changed. The formatting of the selected text object now follows the paragraph style, such as its font size, font style, or horizontal alignment.

Hiding/Showing text objects

You can hide/show individual text objects. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. For example, you can show specific text objects in part layouts but hide them in full score layouts.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text objects you want to hide, or the signposts of text objects you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Text** group.

RESULT

The text objects are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden text object. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show signposts in the **View Options** dialog.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text objects, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 332
Changing the property scope on page 128
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
View Options dialog on page 120

Master pages

Master pages function like templates in Dorico for iPad, allowing the same page formatting to be applied to multiple pages and in different layouts.

NOTE

Page size and margins, page orientation, and staff size for all layouts are specified in **Layout Options**.

All pages in your scores and parts inherit their layout formats from master pages. However, in Dorico for iPad, you cannot edit master pages or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

Dorico for iPad provides default master pages for first (**First**) and subsequent (**Default**) pages. This ensures that there is appropriate page formatting for first pages independently of subsequent pages, as the first page typically includes additional information, such as the title, composer, and copyright.

Master pages are contained in master page sets for full score and part layouts. Master page sets are automatically applied to every layout that you create.

NOTE

Changing individual pages in layouts is considered a master page override in Dorico for iPad. This includes, for example, editing the title or running header in Write mode. Pages with master page overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, that is, the title and running header text that you cannot select, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid master page overrides. The big title at the top of the first page is the project title, and the running header on subsequent pages uses the flow title for the top flow on that page.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Applying master page sets to layouts on page 372

Master page sets

In Dorico for iPad, master pages are provided as parts of master page sets. Master page sets group master page formats together, so there is a master page for all possible situations in your project.

New projects contain the following master page sets by default:

- **Default Full Score**: Used for full score and custom score layouts by default.
- **Default Part**: Used for part layouts by default.

The default master page sets contain master pages for first (**First**) and subsequent (**Default**) pages.

Master page sets also contain flow headings that allow you to show flow titles above the start of each flow automatically, including when they start on the same page as a previous flow. The default master page sets each contain a single flow heading.

The default master page sets are applied automatically to the appropriate layouts in each new project. You can apply different master page sets to each layout independently.

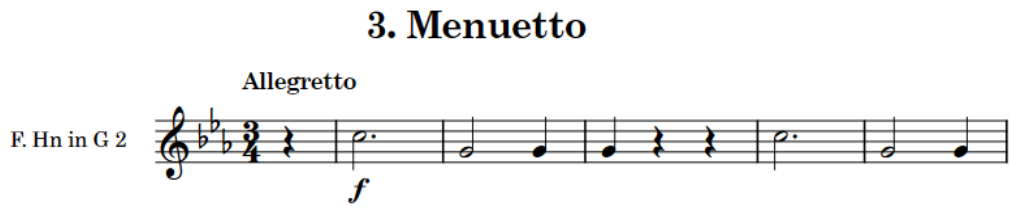
RELATED LINKS
Flow headings on page 367
Applying master page sets to layouts on page 372

Flow headings

Flow headings allow you to show the titles of flows immediately above their first system automatically. They function like templates, in much the same way as master pages, allowing the same flow heading formatting to be applied to multiple flows in different layouts.

Flow headings exist as part of master page sets. By default, Dorico for iPad provides one flow heading in each master page set, which contains tokens to display the flow number and flow title; in a new project, this appears as “1. Flow 1”. This is used automatically for all flow headings. In Dorico for iPad, you cannot edit flow headings or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

Flow headings are automatically inserted inside music frames above the first system of the flow to which they apply, meaning they do not have a fixed vertical position on the page like other frames and follow the music if it moves. They also occupy vertical space within music frames. You can change the margins for the space above and below flow headings.



A flow heading above the third flow in a part layout

NOTE

Changing individual flow headings in layouts is considered a master page override in Dorico for iPad. This includes, for example, deleting a token from a flow heading. Pages with master page overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

RELATED LINKS
Tacets on page 398
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 382
Changing the margins above/below flow headings on page 383
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 384
Frames on page 367
Text tokens on page 355

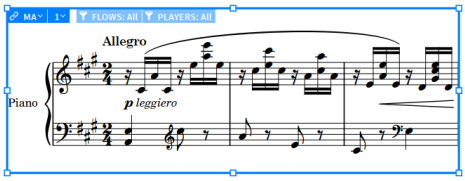
Frames

Dorico uses boxes called frames to position music, additional text, and graphics inside the margins of pages. In Dorico for iPad, you cannot input or edit frames, but frames on master pages control the formatting of pages in your project.

In Dorico for iPad, there are the following types of frames:

Music frames

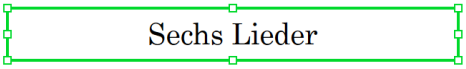
Music frames display the music of selected players and flows or blank staves.



A music frame displaying the start of a piano piece

Text frames

Text frames display text, which you can enter directly or by using text tokens.



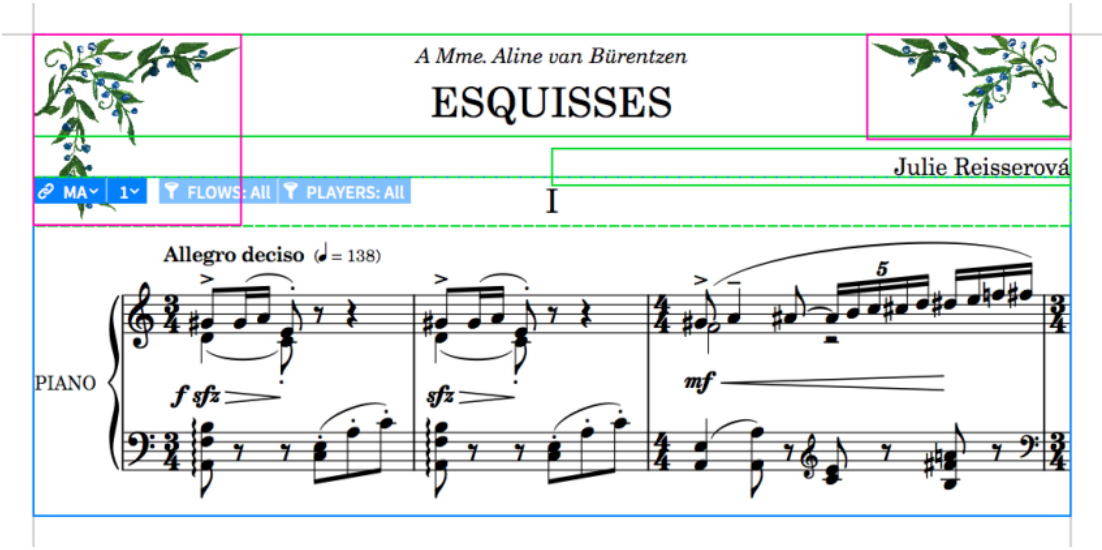
A text frame displaying a project title, "Sechs Lieder"

Graphics frames

Graphics frames display the images that you load into them, which can be in a variety of formats.

A graphics frame with image loaded

EXAMPLE



The first page of a piano piece. It contains a music frame, text frames for the title, dedication, and composer, a flow heading frame inside the top of the music frame, and graphics frames in the top corners.

RELATED LINKS

Flows in Dorico on page 16
Layouts in Dorico on page 20
Frame breaks on page 391
Text tokens on page 355

Master pages on page 366
Flow headings on page 367
Changing page margins on page 372

Music frame chains

A music frame chain is a collection of music frames that show the same selection of music in a set order, often in sequence. Music frame chains can include any number of frames, including only a single music frame.

The default master pages contain a single frame chain that is set to display all flows and all players in the layout. Therefore, Dorico for iPad automatically creates enough pages and frames to display all flows in all the layouts that use those master pages. In Dorico for iPad, you cannot create new frame chains or change the flows and players assigned to frame chains; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

RELATED LINKS
Master pages on page 366
Layouts in Dorico on page 20

Page formatting

The formatting of pages in Dorico for iPad is determined by a number of factors, including the layout's staff size, page margins, the master page applied to them, any casting off values applied to them, system and frame breaks, and frame padding.

The most important factors that determine how pages are formatted in Dorico for iPad are:

Staff size

Staff size refers to the distance between the top and bottom lines of staves. The most appropriate staff size depends on the intended purpose and contents of the layout. In many cases, changing the staff size is the quickest way to produce legible layouts.

Staff spacing

Staff spacing mostly involves the height of staves and the necessary gaps between staves and systems.

Casting off

Casting off, that is, the process of determining a set number of bars per system and systems per page, allows you to fix a regular appearance across entire layouts.

System and frame breaks

System and frame breaks allow you to adjust layouts on a local level, by determining which bars are shown on each system and where music is pushed into the next frame.

Page margins

Page margins determine the dimensions of pages in layouts. Frames cannot exceed the boundaries set by the margins of the layout, which you can change on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**. You can change the size of margins on each edge of each page.

Master pages

All pages in your layouts inherit their layout formats from master pages. Although you cannot create or edit master pages in Dorico for iPad, we recommend being familiar with them as a concept, so you are aware of how pages are formatted. For example,

if you override a master page, such as by editing the title directly in the music area, empty pages that are no longer required might not be deleted automatically.

TIP

The default master pages in Dorico for iPad contain tokens for the project title, lyricist, and composer on the first pages in layouts, and the flow title (score layouts) or layout name (part layouts) at the top of subsequent pages. Part layouts also automatically show the layout name in the top left of the first page. These tokens refer to information in the **Project Info** dialog, so we recommend entering information in the **Project Info** dialog in order to show it in your layouts.

Flow headings

Flow headings show the number and title of each flow immediately above their first system automatically. They have no fixed vertical position and follow the music if it moves. The default flow heading contains tokens to display the flow number and flow title; in a new project, this appears as “1. Flow 1”. In Dorico for iPad, you cannot edit flow headings or create new ones.

You can hide/show flow headings on a per-layout basis. Deleting or editing individual flow headings is considered a master page override, which is a type of page format change.

Music frame margins

Music frames have margins at the top and bottom. Music frame margins provide padding to ensure that musical material displayed within the frame remains on the page. For example, if music frames have no padding, the top line on the top staff in the frame is positioned at the top of the frame. Any notes that require ledger lines above the staff might then be positioned off the top of the page. You can change the music frame margins for each layout.

We recommend familiarizing yourself with these concepts, and how to use them together and in different contexts, in order to produce well-formatted layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 63
Staff size on page 386
Staff spacing on page 395
Casting off on page 389
System breaks on page 390
Frame breaks on page 391
Master pages on page 366
Flow headings on page 367
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 382
Tacets on page 398
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 482
Layouts on page 99
Flows on page 96
Players on page 67
Project Info dialog on page 61

Changing the page size and/or orientation

You can change the page size and/or orientation of each layout independently. For example, you can use a large, landscape page in full score layouts and a small, portrait page for part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the page size and/or orientation.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Page Size** section, select a page size from the **Size** menu.

   For example, you can select fixed page sizes, such as **A3** or **Letter**, or select **Custom** to define your own page size.
5. Optional: If you selected **Custom**, change the **Width** and **Height** of the page by changing the values in the value fields.
6. Choose one of the following options for **Orientation**:
   - **Portrait**
   - **Landscape**
7. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 6 for other layouts whose page size/orientation you want to change.
8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page size and/or orientation is changed for all the selected layouts.

NOTE

Changing the page size of layouts might not change the paper size automatically selected for those layouts in the Print Options panel in Print mode. For example, if your default printer cannot print the page size selected for layouts, the largest paper size the printer can handle is selected. Similarly, if you had already set options for printing layouts before changing the page size in **Layout Options**, Dorico for iPad attempts to preserve your original print options.

Similarly, the page orientation is independent of the paper orientation. We recommend that you check that layouts have the correct paper orientation set for their page orientation in the Print Options panel in Print mode before printing/exporting, as it is possible to print landscape layouts on portrait paper and vice versa.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374

Changing page margins

You can change the page margins of each layout independently, for example, if you want wider margins for layouts in your project that will be spiral bound.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the page margins.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Page Margins** section, choose one of the following options for **Page margins**:
   - **Same**: All pages in the selected layouts have the same margins.
   - **Different**: Left and right pages in the selected layouts can have completely different margins.
   - **Mirrored**: Left and right pages in the selected layouts use the same margin values but they correspond to the inside/outside edges of pages.
5. Optional: Change the margins by changing the values in the value fields.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page margins in the selected layouts are changed.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the default music frame margins on page 385
Changing the margins above/below flow headings on page 383
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 482

Applying master page sets to layouts

You can change the master page set used by each layout in your project, for example, if you want a custom score layout to use the **Default Part** master page set because that set shows the layout name on the first page.

By default, full score and custom score layouts use the **Default Full Score** master page set and part layouts use the **Default Part** master page set.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose master page set you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Master Page** section, select the master page set you want from the **Master page set** menu.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected master page set is applied to the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Changing when the First master page is used on page 381
Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 380
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 382

Changing the default staff size

You can change the default size of staves in each layout independently. For example, you can have a small staff size in full score layouts but a larger staff size in part layouts.

NOTE

If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose staff size you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Space Size** section, select the staff size you want from the **Rastral size** menu.

   NOTE

   If you select **Custom**, you can set a custom value in the **Space size** field, expressed in your preferred unit of measurement.

   You can also set a **Custom** value by changing the value when any **Rastral size** is selected.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 4 for other layouts.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The staff size is changed throughout the selected layouts.

TIP

You can also change the size of individual staves.

RELATED LINKS
Staff size on page 386
Brackets and braces on page 466
System objects on page 811
Changing the size of individual staves on page 387

Changing the default staff/system spacing

You can change the default gaps between staves and systems in each layout independently. For example, you can have smaller gaps between staves in full score layouts to accommodate more staves, and larger gaps between systems in part layouts to give players space to add pencil markings.

TIP

- If the staves in a layout are very close together, just decreasing the staff size might be sufficient to produce good results.
- We recommend that you set the ideal gaps to the minimum value acceptable to you, as Dorico for iPad automatically allocates additional space for other items, such as system objects and dynamics, and avoids collisions between notes and staves above/below.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default staff/system spacing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Vertical Spacing** in the category list.
4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, change the values for the different contexts as required.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The minimum gaps between staves and systems in the corresponding contexts are changed. This affects how much space Dorico for iPad allows for staves/systems in its casting off estimations and whether frames are considered full enough to justify vertically automatically.

RELATED LINKS
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Changing the staff spacing in galley view on page 397
Note spacing on page 393
Changing the default note spacing on page 393
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376
Changing the default player order on page 70

Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems

You can change the minimum fullness threshold above which Dorico for iPad automatically vertically justifies staves and systems, which means they are evenly distributed to fill the height of frames. You can also control whether staves and systems are both vertically justified or only systems are vertically justified.

PROCEDURE

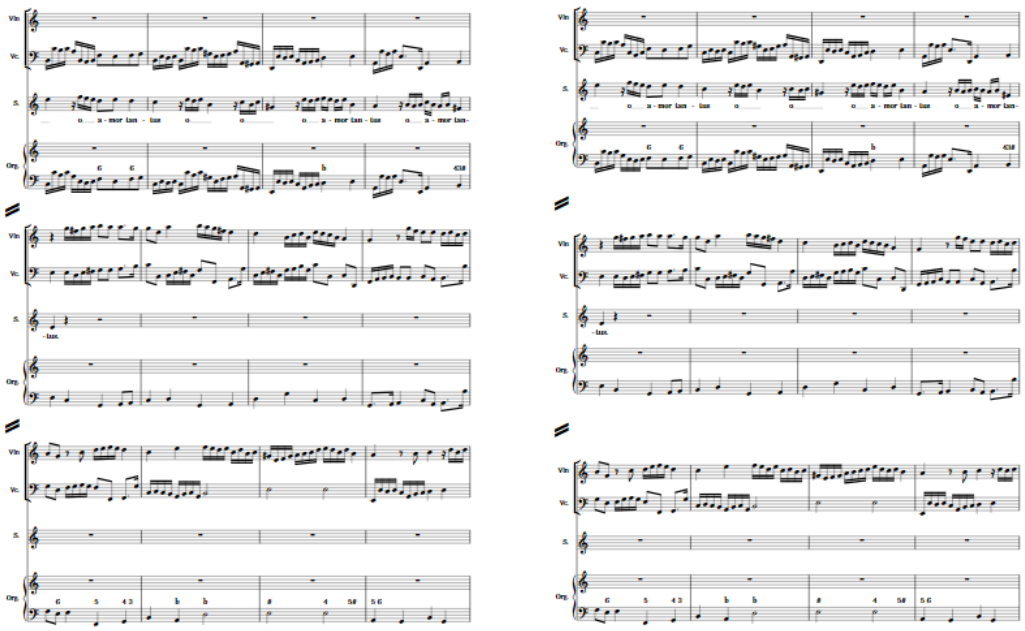
1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the automatic vertical justification of staves/systems.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Vertical Spacing** in the category list.
4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, choose one of the following options for **Gap to use for divisi staves**:
   - **Staff to staff**
   - **Braced staff to braced staff**
5. In the **Vertical Justification** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
   - **Justify distance between staves and systems when frame is at least [n]% full**
   - **Justify distance only between systems when frame is at least [n]% full**
6. Activate/Deactivate **Justify staves when frame with single system is above this threshold**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The automatic vertical justification of staves and systems in the selected layouts is changed. Braced staves are never vertically justified.

EXAMPLE



A page with staves and systems both justified

The same page with only systems justified

RELATED LINKS
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 379

Hiding/Showing empty staves

You can hide/show empty staves differently in each layout independently. For example, you can show all staves, including empty staves, in a full score layout for the conductor but hide empty staves in a full score layout intended for reference only.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show empty staves.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Vertical Spacing** in the category list.
4. In the **Staff Visibility** section, choose one of the following options for **Hide empty staves**:
   - **After first system**
   - **All systems**
   - **Never**

5. Activate/Deactivate **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**.
6. Optional: For **Players excluded from Hide Empty Staves**, activate the checkbox for each instrument you want to be shown regardless of your choice for **Hide empty staves**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Empty staves in the selected layouts are hidden/shown according to your choice. If you activated **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**, any single empty staves in multi-staff instruments, such as piano or harp, can be hidden in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Extra staves on page 808
Divisi on page 814
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 379
Changing the default player order on page 70
Setting custom player orders on page 70

Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks

You can manually change staff visibility from the rhythmic positions of system/frame breaks onwards by hiding, showing, and resetting individual staves, for example, if you have hidden empty staves in the layout but want specific empty staves to appear in some sections.

NOTE

Only available when you are subscribed.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to change staff visibility manually from a rhythmic position that does not yet have a system/frame break, select an item at the position from which you want to change staff visibility.
2. Open the **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog in one of the following ways:
   - If a system/frame break signpost exists at the position where you want to change staff visibility, select it and press **Return** or double-click it.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Staff** > **Manual Staff Visibility**.
3. Change staff visibility as required.

   For example, you can activate and change the setting for individual staves or use the options in the action bar to change the setting for all staves simultaneously.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

Staff visibility is changed from the selected rhythmic position or system/frame break signpost onwards until the next staff visibility change or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

If a system/frame break signpost did not yet exist at the selected rhythmic position, a system break with your staff visibility settings is inserted at the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS
Access to more features in Dorico for iPad on page 10
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Frame breaks on page 391
System breaks on page 390
Staff spacing on page 395

Manual Staff Visibility dialog

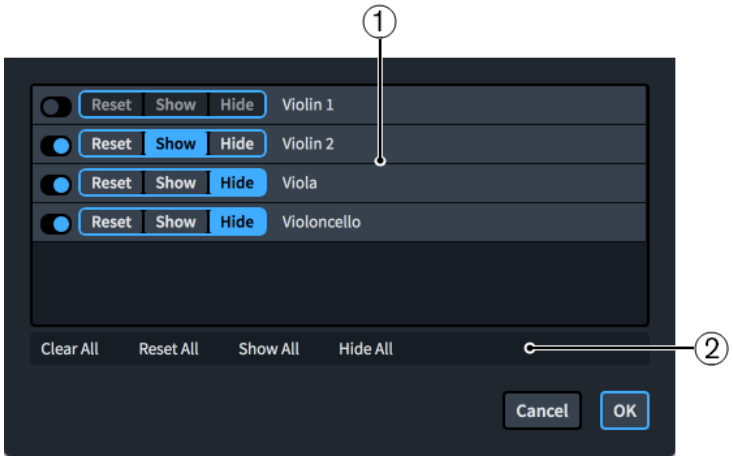
The **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog allows you to hide, show, and reset individual staves manually from system/frame breaks.

You can open the **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Staff** > **Manual Staff Visibility**.
- Select a system/frame break signpost and press **Return**, or double-click a system/frame break signpost.

NOTE

Only available when you are subscribed.



The **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Staff list**

Contains all the staves that exist at the selected rhythmic position, including hidden empty staves. Activating staves includes them in the manual staff visibility change.

For each staff, the following staff visibility options are available:

- **Reset**: Resets the visibility of the staff to the default setting in the layout, as set on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.
- **Show**: Shows the staff from the selected rhythmic position onwards, whether it is empty or not.
- **Hide**: Hides the staff from the selected rhythmic position onwards, whether it is empty or not.

2 **Action bar**

Contains options that allow you to change the staff visibility setting of all staves simultaneously.

- **Clear All**: Deactivates all staves.
- **Reset All**: Activates all staves and sets them to **Reset**.

- **Show All**: Activates all staves and sets them to **Show**.
- **Hide All**: Activates all staves and sets them to **Hide**.

Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows

You can hide/show additional blank staves to fill the page after the final flow in each layout independently, for example, if you want to emulate the convention of showing additional blank staves between the final system and the bottom of the page when formatting part layouts for recording sessions.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show blank staves after the ends of flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Flows** section, activate/deactivate **Fill frame with blank staves**.
5. If you activated **Fill frame with blank staves**, activate/deactivate **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow**.
6. Customize the appearance of blank staves in one of the following ways:
   - If you activated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** and want to show clefs that follow the previous flow on blank staves, choose **Include clefs**.
   - If you activated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** and want to hide clefs on blank staves, choose **Exclude clefs**.
   - If you deactivated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow**, change the number of staff lines in blank staves by changing the value for **Number of staff lines for blank staves**.

RESULT

Blank staves are shown after the final flow in the selected layouts when **Fill frame with blank staves** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. When shown, blank staves appear below the final system in the final flow and fill the width of the final system if it is not fully horizontally justified.

When **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** is activated, blank staves follow the staff grouping of the final flow, such as two bracketed staves in a part layout with two players assigned to it. When it is deactivated, single blank staves without clefs are shown.

NOTE

You cannot input music or change brackets/braces on blank staves.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374
Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems on page 375

Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 385
Staff labels on page 797
Brackets and braces on page 466

Starting layouts on left-hand pages

By default, all layouts start on a right-hand page, as convention dictates that odd numbered pages are always on the right-hand page. However, you can set individual layouts to start on a left-hand page, for example, to facilitate page turns better in that layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts you want to start on a left-hand page.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Page Numbers** section, change the value for **Initial page number** to an even number.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The first page in the selected layouts is shown on a left-hand page when the initial page number is even.

Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page

You can allow/disallow new flows to be shown on the same page as previous flows if there is space, for example, to reduce the number of pages required for parts in works with multiple movements. By default, new flows are allowed on the same page in part layouts and are not allowed in full score layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to allow multiple flows to be shown on each page.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **New flows**:
   - **Always start new page**
   - **Allow on existing page**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Always start new page ensures flows in the selected layouts always begin at the start of the next page after the end of the previous flow.

Allow on existing page allows flows in the selected layouts to continue immediately after each other, including within the same music frame if there is sufficient space. Flow headings are automatically shown above the start of flows if you have chosen to show flow headings in the selected layouts.

NOTE

Flows are not automatically split into separate music frames. You must insert frame breaks manually to divide flows into separate music frames if required.

RELATED LINKS

Text tokens on page 355
Casting off on page 389
Assigning flows to layouts on page 101
Assigning players to flows on page 97
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 384
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 379

Changing when the First master page is used

You can change the circumstances when the **First** master page is used in each layout independently, for example, if you want to use it for the start of every flow in the full score but only want to use it for the first flow in part layouts, even when subsequent flows start at the top of the page.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change when the **First** master page is used.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Use 'First' master page**:
   - **Never**
   - **First flow only**
   - **Any flow starting at top of page**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

- Choosing **Never** means the **First** master page is not used for any page in the selected layouts.
- Choosing **First flow only** means the **First** master page is used for the first page in the layout but no other pages, even if some subsequent flows start at the top of a page.
- Choosing **Any flow starting at top of page** means the **First** master page is used for all pages in the layout that begin with the start of a flow.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Hiding/Showing flow headings

You can hide/show flow headings in each layout independently, for example, if your project only contains a single flow and you only want to show the project title. You can also hide the heading for the first flow but show flow headings for subsequent flows.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show flow headings.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Show flow headings**:
   - **Never**
   - **Not for first flow**
   - **For all flows**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Flow headings are shown above the first system in each flow in the selected layouts when you choose **For all flows**, hidden when you choose **Never**, and hidden above the first system in the first flow but shown above all other flows when you choose **Not for first flow**.

They are automatically positioned above each flow and below the preceding flow according to the margins set for each layout.

NOTE

Hiding flow headings does not hide the flow title shown at the top of the second page onwards by default.

RELATED LINKS
Flow headings on page 367
Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 380
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 384

Changing when the First master page is used on page 381

Changing the margins above/below flow headings

You can change the margins both above and below flow headings, which control the gap between the preceding flow and the flow heading, and the gap between the flow heading and the start of the next flow.

PREREQUISITE

Flow headings are shown in the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below flow headings.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below flow headings.

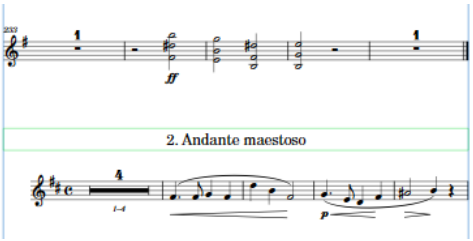
   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Flows** section, change the values for **Flow heading top margin** and/or **Flow heading bottom margin**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

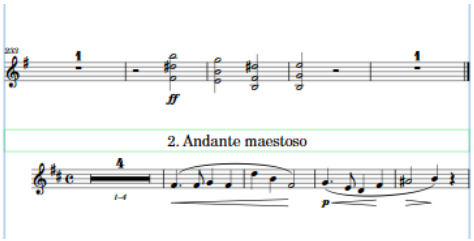
Changing the value for **Flow heading top margin** increases/decreases the gap between the top of flow headings and the end of the preceding flow.

Changing the value for **Flow heading bottom margin** increases/decreases the gap between the bottom of flow headings and the start of the next flow. For example, when the bottom margin is set to **0**, the bottom of the lowest frame in the flow heading aligns with the top staff line of the first system in the flow below the flow heading.

EXAMPLE



Flow heading with default margins above/below



Flow heading with decreased margins above/below

RELATED LINKS

Flow headings on page 367
Changing page margins on page 372

Changing the default music frame margins on page 385
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 482

Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings

You can hide/show flow titles, page numbers, and flow page numbers separately when they appear above flow headings at the top of a new page in each layout independently. Hiding such information in running headers is a custom in publishing.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show information in running headers above flow headings.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Flow title in header**:
   - **Show above flow heading**
   - **Hide above flow heading**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Page number in header**:
   - **Show above flow heading**
   - **Hide above flow heading**
6. Choose one of the following options for **Flow page number in header**:
   - **Show above flow heading**
   - **Hide above flow heading**
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The corresponding information is hidden/shown when they appear above flow headings at the top of the page.

NOTE

In order to hide running header information, the top of the music frame containing the flow heading frame must be lower than the top of text frames containing the corresponding information. If the top of the music frame is the same height as a running header text frame, any corresponding information in the text frame is shown, regardless of your setting.

RELATED LINKS

Frames on page 367
Master pages on page 366
Hiding/Showing page numbers on page 673

Changing the default music frame margins

You can change the default margins in all music frames in each layout independently. For example, you might want more padding at the top of music frames in part layouts containing lots of notes above the staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose music frame margins you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Music Frame Margins** section, change the values for **Top** and/or **Bottom**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The margins within all music frames in the selected layouts are changed.

RELATED LINKS

Changing page margins on page 372
Changing the margins above/below flow headings on page 383
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 482

Changing the horizontal justification of final systems

You can change whether the final systems of flows always fill the width of frames or only do so above a certain fullness threshold in each layout independently. By default in Dorico for iPad, the final systems of flows only justify to the full width of the frame when they are more than half full.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the justification of the final systems in flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Note Spacing** in the category list.
4. Change the justification of final systems in flows in one of the following ways:
   - If you always want the final systems in flows to justify fully, deactivate **Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full**.
   - If you want to change the minimum fullness of final systems before they justify, change the value for **Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full**.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The automatic justification of the final systems in flows in the selected layouts is changed.

TIP

You can also change the width of individual systems independently of your default settings by changing their start/end positions.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the first system indent on page 813
Fixing the number of bars per system on page 389
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 379

Staff size

Staff size refers to the distance between the top and bottom lines of staves, and can be expressed as a point size or in another supported unit of measurement, such as millimeters. For individual staves, you can use a scale size of the default staff size in the layout. The most appropriate staff size depends on the intended purpose of the layout.

For example, full orchestral scores that are quite dense need a much smaller staff size than individual parts, which require large enough notes so that performers can read them easily. Staves can overlap and the music can become illegible if the staff size is too large in dense scores.

In Dorico for iPad, you can set the staff size using the rastral size and the space size, depending on which measurement is more appropriate for the selected layouts.

- Rastral size is the size of the full staff, measured from the bottom line to the top line.
- Space size is the distance between two staff lines.

When changing the staff size of each layout in **Layout Options**, we recommend that you use one of the preset rastral sizes, as these are based on traditional and generally accepted staff sizes that are all widely used in music engraving.

NOTE

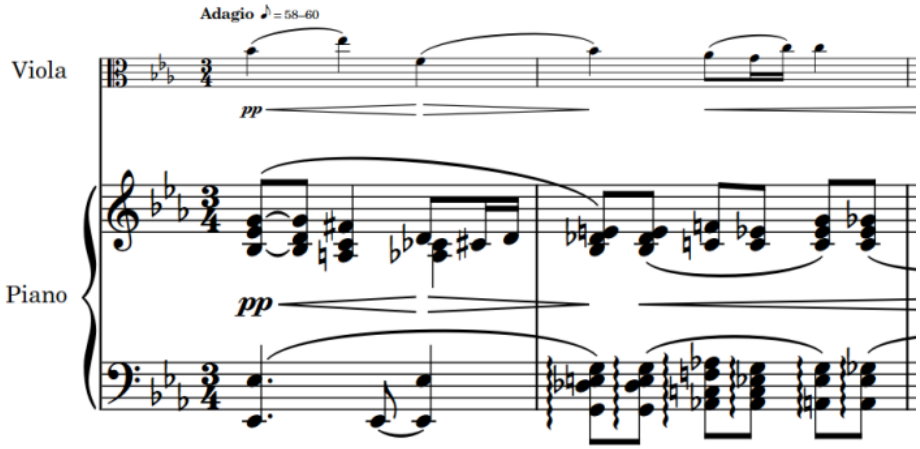
The size of staves can affect the size of system objects.

RELATED LINKS

System objects on page 811
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 34
Changing the default staff size on page 373
Staff spacing on page 395

Changing the size of individual staves

You can change the size of individual staves in each flow independently of other staves and your layout settings. For example, piano accompaniment parts often include the solo line of the instrument the piano is accompanying on a smaller staff.



A piano part with smaller viola staff above

You can change the size of individual staves to a set scale size, expressed as a percentage of the normal staff size in the layout, or set a custom scale.

TIP

If you want to change the staff size to represent an alternative version of a passage, you can instead add an ossia staff, which you can show for specific regions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff whose size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only change the size of a single staff at a time.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Staff Size** > **[Staff size]**.
3. Optional: If you choose **Custom Staff Size**, you must set the staff size using the **Custom Staff Size** dialog that opens.

RESULT

The size of the selected staff is changed in the current flow. This also works in combination with the other ways of changing the staff size, such as changing the size of all staves in the layout or changing the size of staves from specific system/frame breaks.

NOTE

- Changing the staff size of individual staves affects the staff size of all instruments held by that player.
- Changing the staff size of individual staves affects its size for the whole flow.

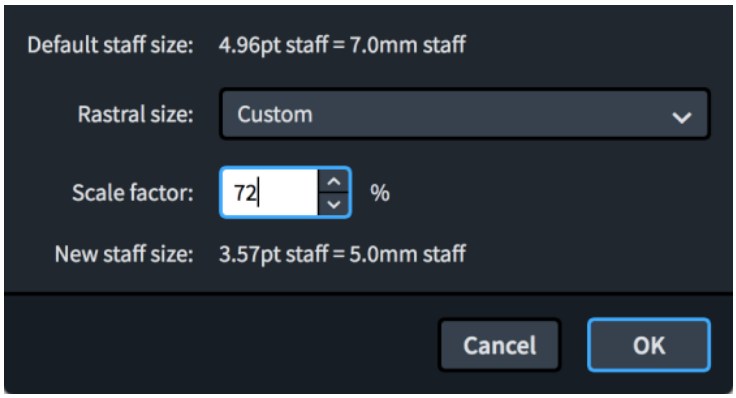
- If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Brackets and braces on page 466
System objects on page 811

Custom Staff Size dialog

The **Custom Staff Size** dialog allows you to change the size of individual staves by a custom scale factor.

- You can open the **Custom Staff Size** dialog by selecting an item on a staff, then clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Staff Size** > **Custom Staff Size**.



The **Custom Staff Size** dialog contains the following options:

Default staff size

Displays the default size of staves in the current layout. This size is set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

The default staff size is expressed as both a point size and in your preferred unit of measurement.

Rastral size

Allows you to select the rastral size on which you want to base your custom staff size.

Scale factor

Sets the custom staff size, expressed as a percentage of the selected rastral size.

New staff size

Displays the new custom staff size for the selected staff as a result of the changes you have made in the dialog.

The new staff size is expressed as both a point size and in your preferred unit of measurement.

RELATED LINKS
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 34
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Casting off

"Casting off" is the term used to encompass fixing the layout of pages of music, such as setting the number of systems per page. In Dorico for iPad, you can fix both the number of bars per system and the number of systems per music frame in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 379

Fixing the number of bars per system

You can define a fixed number of bars you want included in each system in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to fix the number of bars per system.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Casting Off** section, activate **Fixed number of bars per system**.
5. Change the number of bars you want in each system by changing the value in the value field.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The number of bars automatically contained in each system in the selected layouts is changed. If any of the layouts contain two-bar or four-bar repeat regions, Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts casting off to ensure phrases are not split across systems.

RELATED LINKS
Bar repeats on page 748
Inserting system breaks on page 391
Inserting frame breaks on page 392
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 385

Fixing the number of systems per frame

You can define a fixed number of systems you want included in each music frame in each layout independently. Because the default master pages have a single music frame per page, fixing the number of systems per frame usually fixes the number of systems per page.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.

- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to fix the number of systems per frame.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Casting Off** section, activate **Fixed number of systems per frame**.
5. Change the number of systems you want in each frame by changing the value in the value field.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Scale number of systems by frame height**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The number of systems automatically contained in each music frame in the selected layouts is changed.

If you activated **Scale number of systems by frame height**, the number of systems contained in each frame is adjusted according to the size of the music frame. For example, pages with smaller frames, such as the first page, contain fewer systems than your casting off setting.

System breaks

System breaks occur when musical material reaches the right page margin and must continue on a new system, usually below the previous system on the same page or on a new page. Dorico for iPad automatically arranges music across systems so that notes are correctly spaced and legible, but you can also control system breaks manually.

System breaks that you have inserted manually are indicated by signposts, which you can hide/show at any time. They are also layout-specific, meaning each layout can have system breaks at different rhythmic positions.

TIP

You can also control the content of systems by fixing the number of bars per system in each layout.

RELATED LINKS

Frame breaks on page 391
Signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332
Fixing the number of bars per system on page 389
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks on page 377
Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks on page 800

Inserting system breaks

You can insert system breaks at any rhythmic position, for example, so that musical phrases fit in systems for readability.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to insert system breaks in the middle of multi-bar rests, you have either hidden multi-bar rests in the layout or split multi-bar rests at the required positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a note or item at the rhythmic position you want to appear at the start of the next system.
2. Insert a system break in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Formatting panel, click **Create System Break** in the **Format Systems** section.

RESULT

A system break is inserted at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. All notations after the system break are moved to the next system.

NOTE

If you insert a system break in the middle of a phrase in a two-bar or four-bar repeat region, Dorico for iPad does not automatically move the system break to before/after the phrase, causing it to be split across the system break.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 770

Deleting system breaks

You can delete system breaks after you have inserted them.

PREREQUISITE

System break signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the system break signposts of the system breaks you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected system breaks in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Delete**.

Frame breaks

Frame breaks occur when musical material reaches the right page margin at the bottom of a frame and must continue on a new system in the next frame in the music frame chain, which is usually on the next page. Dorico for iPad automatically arranges music in frames so that systems are correctly spaced and legible, but you can also control frame breaks manually, for example, to insert page turns at specific positions in part layouts.

Frame breaks that you have inserted manually are indicated by signposts, which you can hide/show at any time. They are also layout-specific, meaning each layout can have frame breaks at different rhythmic positions.

TIP

You can also control the content of music frames by fixing the number of systems per music frame in each layout.

RELATED LINKS
Frames on page 367
Music frame chains on page 369
Signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks on page 377
Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks on page 800

Inserting frame breaks

You can insert frame breaks at any rhythmic position, for example, to create page turns at appropriate places in the current layout.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to insert frame breaks in the middle of multi-bar rests, you have either hidden multi-bar rests in the layout or split multi-bar rests at the required positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a note or item at the rhythmic position you want to appear at the start of the next frame.
2. Insert a frame break in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-F**.
   - In the Formatting panel, click **Create Frame Break** in the **Format Music Frames** section.

RESULT

A frame break is inserted at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. All notations after the frame break are moved to the next music frame.

NOTE

If you insert a frame break in the middle of a phrase in a two-bar or four-bar repeat region, Dorico for iPad does not automatically move the frame break to before/after the phrase, causing it to be split across the frame break.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 770

Deleting frame breaks

You can delete frame breaks after you have inserted them.

PREREQUISITE

Frame break signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the frame break signposts of the frame breaks you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected frame breaks in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Delete**.

Note spacing

The positions of notes and rests relative to each other, and the automatic gaps between them, are known as note spacing.

- You can change the default note spacing values for each layout independently on the **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

The options available include changing the default space for quarter notes (crotchets) and the scale space for grace notes and cues. You can also change the minimum percentage value for how full final systems must be before they are justified.

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 63
Staff spacing on page 395
Changing the default staff size on page 373

Changing the default note spacing

You can change the default note spacing in each layout independently. For example, you can have tighter note spacing in full score layouts compared to part layouts. The options available include changing the default space for quarter notes and the scale space for grace notes and cues.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change note spacing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Note Spacing** in the category list.
4. Change the values of the options you want to change.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default note spacing is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 385

Note Spacing page in Layout Options

The **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options** allows you to change the default values for note spacing in each layout independently. You can also change how full the final system in flows must be before it is automatically justified.

- You can access the **Note Spacing** page by opening the **Layout Options** dialog and clicking **Note Spacing** in the category list.

The **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options** contains the following options:

Default space for crotchet/quarter note

Sets the default note spacing for quarter notes (crotchets). The spacing of other durations is scaled proportionally. Increasing the value increases note spacing, decreasing the value decreases note spacing. This is reflected in the preview as you change the value.

Minimum space for short notes

Sets the minimum note spacing for notes with short durations. This can be independent of the default note spacing value.

Custom spacing ratio

Sets the spacing of notes in relation to other notes according to their rhythmic values. For example, setting **Custom spacing ratio** to **2** means half notes (minims) take up twice as much space as quarter notes, and eighth notes (quavers) take up half as much space as quarter notes.

Scale space for grace notes by

Sets the note spacing for grace notes as a percentage of the note spacing normally used for notes of their duration. The value cannot be greater than 100%. Increasing the value increases the note spacing for grace notes, decreasing the value decreases the note spacing for grace notes.

Scale space for cue notes by

Sets the note spacing for cues as a percentage of the note spacing normally used for notes of their duration. The value cannot be greater than 100%. Increasing the value increases the note spacing for cues, decreasing the value decreases the note spacing for cues.

Make space for lyrics

Controls whether or not lyrics are included in note spacing calculations. When deactivated, lyrics are excluded from note spacing calculations, producing a result where notes are spaced as if lyrics were not there.

We recommend using this option with caution and only if you intend to space lyrics manually, such as in tightly-spaced hymnals.

Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full

Allows you to change how full the final system in each flow must be before it is justified to the full width of the frame. By default, final systems that are 50% full or less are not justified.

Use optical spacing for beams between staves

When activated, stems in cross-staff beams are evenly spaced, which can mean the noteheads are unevenly spaced. When deactivated, noteheads in cross-staff beams are evenly spaced, which can mean stems appear unevenly spaced.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Changing to optical cross-staff beam spacing on page 458
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456

Staff spacing

The vertical positioning of staves and systems within frames is known as staff spacing. Staff spacing calculations consider the height of staves and the necessary gaps between staves and systems.

- You can change the default vertical and staff spacing settings for each layout independently on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

The options available allow you to set your ideal spacing, which Dorico for iPad then produces as closely as possible. We recommend familiarizing yourself with the available vertical spacing options.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Staff size on page 386
Staves on page 807
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374
Changing the staff spacing in galley view on page 397
Changing the default staff size on page 373
Note spacing on page 393

Per-layout vertical spacing options

Dorico for iPad provides multiple options that you can use to control the default vertical spacing and justification of staves and systems in each layout.

- You can access per-layout vertical spacing options by choosing **Layout Options** and clicking **Vertical Spacing** in the category list.

The **Vertical Spacing** page contains the following sections and options:

Ideal Gaps

Contains multiple scenarios that allow you to set the gap you want Dorico for iPad to allow between staves and systems in the corresponding context, including the default scaling of these gaps in galley view, as Dorico for iPad does not automatically avoid collisions between staves and items in galley view. The options are accompanied by diagrams to help you visualize the contexts to which each option applies.

We recommend setting the ideal gaps to the minimum value acceptable to you because Dorico for iPad never reduces the gap between staves to less than your set values. Setting smaller values gives Dorico for iPad greater flexibility when determining staff spacing, particularly in very full frames, such as reducing the space between staves with no dynamics to allow more space between staves with dynamics. Similarly, we recommend setting vertical spacing options after

you have finished inputting notes and items, as this allows you to consider the entire project when setting these options.

Depending on the context, the options are affected by automatic vertical justification in different ways:

- **Staff to staff**, **Staff group to staff**, **Staff to staff group**, **Staff group to staff group**, **Inter-system gap**, and **Timecode staff to staff**

  These gaps do not apply in frames that are automatically justified.

- **Braced staff to braced staff** and **Ossia staff to staff**

  These gaps always apply, including in frames that are automatically justified, because braced and ossia staves are never justified. This includes extra staves.

NOTE

- Divisi staves are vertically justified when they use the **Staff to staff** gap. When they use the **Braced staff to braced staff** gap, the staves in each divisi section use only the gap set for braced staves and are not vertically justified.
- If the staves in a layout are very close together, just decreasing the staff size might be sufficient to produce good results.
- When calculating the number of systems that can fit in each frame in a layout, Dorico for iPad considers the height of staves, the minimum gaps between staves, the maximum distances between very high/low notes and staves, and other items that require vertical space, such as pedal lines and tempo marks. However, this calculation happens before horizontal spacing is finalized, which can result in either more or fewer systems being allocated to frames than ideally fit. In such circumstances, you can use fixed casting off settings and system/frame breaks to change which systems appear in frames.

Minimum Gaps

Contains options for the minimum gaps you want Dorico for iPad to allow for items in addition to the staff spacing gaps.

- **Automatically resolve collisions between adjacent staves and systems**: When activated, Dorico for iPad automatically allows extra space between staves and systems to avoid collisions. When deactivated, Dorico for iPad only uses your set gaps for vertical spacing, which produces evenly-spaced staves and systems but with the possibility of collisions between items.
- **Minimum inter-staff gap with content**: Allows you to set the extra space you want to allow between staves when items are present.
- **Minimum inter-system gap with content**: Allows you to set the extra space you want to allow between systems when items are present.

NOTE

Minimum gaps do not affect casting off. For example, increasing the **Minimum inter-system gap with content** value changes the space above/below systems on a page but does not push systems to later pages. Instead, you can change the ideal gaps.

Vertical Justification

Contains options that allow you to control the frame fullness thresholds above which you want staves and/or systems to justify vertically automatically.

- **Justify distance between staves and systems when frame is at least [n]% full**: When frames are filled above this threshold, the staves and systems they contain are all automatically vertically justified, meaning they are evenly distributed to fill the height of the frame. Frames filled below this threshold are not automatically justified, instead staves follow your ideal gap settings. This can leave gaps between the bottom staff/system and the bottom of the frame.
- **Justify distance only between systems when frame is at least [n]% full**: When frames are filled above this threshold, only the distance between systems in the frame is justified. Staves follow your per-layout ideal gap settings. This helps keep a clear distance between systems on very full pages.
- **Justify staves when frame with single system is above this threshold**: When activated, all the staves in a single system taller than the set threshold are vertically justified, which distributes them evenly to fill the height of the frame.

Staff Visibility

Contains options allowing you to control when and which empty staves are hidden in the layout.

- **Hide empty staves**: Allows you to control when empty staves are hidden. For example, it is a common practice to show all staves in the first system even if some are empty, but this is not always required.
- **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**: Allows you to control whether individual empty staves belonging to multi-staff instruments can be hidden independently or all multi-staff instrument staves must always be shown.
- **Players excluded from Hide Empty Staves**: Allows you to identify specific players whose staves you always want to show, even if their staff is empty on systems where you have hidden empty staves.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376
Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks on page 377
Page formatting on page 369
Casting off on page 389
Staff size on page 386
Brackets and braces on page 466
Staves on page 807
Ossia staves on page 809
Tablature on page 815
Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems on page 375
Changing the vertical position of markers on page 733
Changing the vertical position of timecodes on page 735

Changing the staff spacing in galley view

You can change the vertical space between staves in galley view in each layout independently, expressed as a percentage of the set ideal gaps. Increasing the gaps between staves in layouts with very high/low notes can be useful because Dorico for iPad does not perform automatic collision avoidance in galley view.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff spacing in galley view.

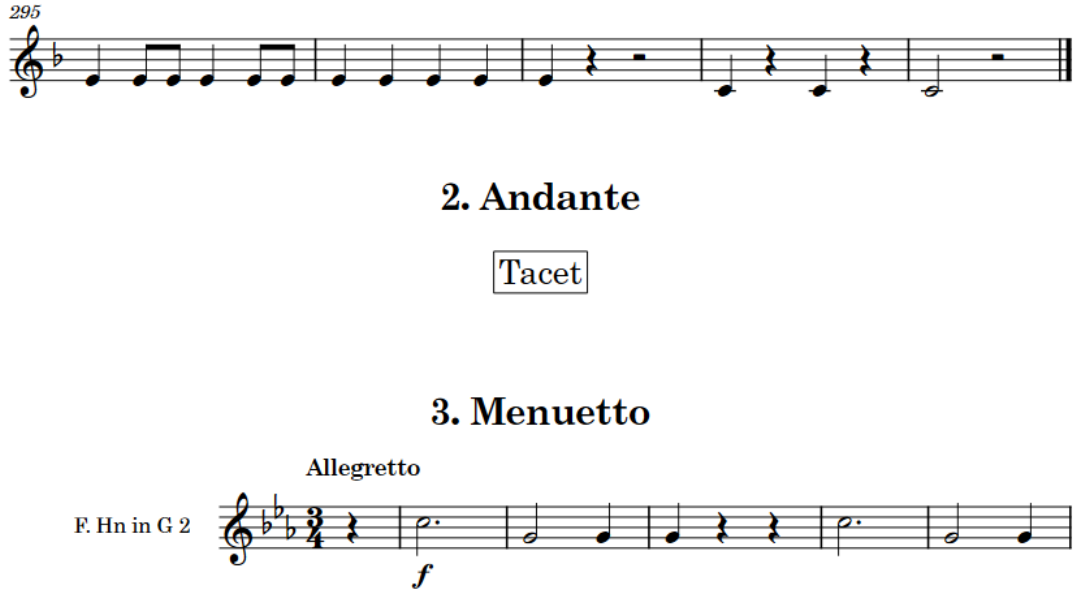
   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Vertical Spacing** in the category list.
4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, change the value for **In galley view, expand ideal staff gaps to**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Tacets

Tacet is the indication used to show that a player does not play anything in an entire flow, which might be a movement in a symphony or cue in a film score. In Dorico for iPad, you can generate tacets automatically.

Dorico for iPad shows tacets for flows in part layouts when the following conditions are met:

- You have removed the player from the flows in which they do not play.
- The flows are assigned to the part layout.
- The flows are assigned to the master page frame chain in the part layout.
- You have chosen to show tacets in the part layout.



An extract of a part layout where the player is tacet in the second flow

NOTE

We do not recommend that you use **Copy Staff Spacing** and **Lock Frame** on pages where tacets are the first or last system in frames. Because tacets do not contain any bars, Dorico for iPad cannot insert system or frame breaks at the ends of tacets in order to lock the frame contents.

However, you can insert system and frame breaks at the start of tacets.

You can change the text shown in tacets and the margin above/below them in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS
Assigning players to flows on page 97
Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 380
Staff spacing on page 395
Inserting system breaks on page 391
Inserting frame breaks on page 392
Flow headings on page 367

Hiding/Showing tacets

You can hide/show tacets in each layout independently, for example, if you want to show empty bars or multi-bar rests in some layouts to allow those players to add in notes on those staves later.

PREREQUISITE

- You have removed the player from the flows in which they do not play.
- The flows are assigned to the part layout.
- The flows are assigned to the master page frame chain in the part layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show tacets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Tacets** section, activate/deactivate **Show tacet for flows where no players are assigned**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Tacets are shown in the selected layouts when **Show tacet for flows where no players are assigned** is activated and the prerequisite criteria are also met.

When it is deactivated, any flows to which the player is not assigned do not appear in the layout. When the player is assigned to those flows, all bars in the flow are shown in the part, split into empty bars and multi-bar rests as appropriate for the flow.

RELATED LINKS
Tacets on page 398
Multi-bar rests on page 769
Assigning players to flows on page 97
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 770

Editing tacet text

You can change the text shown in tacets in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose tacet text you want to edit.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Tacets** section, enter the text you want in the **Tacet text** field.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The text shown in all tacets in the selected layouts is changed.

Changing the margins above/below tacets

You can change the margins both above/below tacets in each layout independently, for example, if you want smaller gaps between flow headings and tacets in some layouts to facilitate page turns better.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below tacets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Tacets** section, change the values for **Margin above tacet** and/or **Margin below tacet**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Changing the value for **Margin above tacet** increases/decreases the minimum gap between tacets and whatever precedes them.

Changing the value for **Margin below tacet** increases/decreases the minimum gap between tacets and whatever follows them.

RELATED LINKS

Flow headings on page 367

Condensing

Condensing is the process of showing the music for multiple players on fewer staves than normal, usually by allowing multiple instruments of the same type to share a staff, such as Flutes 1-2 or Horns 1-4.

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot enable automatic condensing as it is only available in Dorico Pro. However, if you import or open a project that contains layouts with condensing enabled, those staves remain condensed.

NOTE

- You cannot select anything on condensed staves.
- Condensing is never enabled in galley view, so you can switch to galley view to see all staves separately. This does not disable condensing in the current layout.
- Having condensing enabled in any layout in a project can cause Dorico for iPad to operate more slowly, due to the large number of calculations involved.

RELATED LINKS

Staff labels on condensed staves on page 805
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Divisi on page 814

Copying part formatting to other layouts

You can copy all the formatting from one part layout to other part layouts, for example, to save time if multiple part layouts in your project require similar formatting. You can include layout options, such as page size and margins, and other page formatting, such as system and frame breaks.

NOTE

- Part formatting propagation is only available for part layouts. You cannot propagate part formatting from/to full score or custom score layouts.
- We do not recommend using layouts with multiple music frame chains as either source or destination layouts as you can get unexpected results.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode, select the part layout whose part formatting you want to copy.
2. In the action bar, click **Layout Settings** ··· and choose **Propagate Part Formatting** to open the **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog.
3. In the **Copy formatting from** list, select the part layout whose part formatting you want to copy.

   By default, the layout whose card you used to open the dialog is selected.
4. In the **Propagate formatting to** list, select the part layouts to which you want to copy part formatting.

   You can use the selection options in the action bar or click and drag across multiple layouts.
5. Activate/Deactivate **Include layout options**.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Include system formatting**.

7. Click **OK** to copy part formatting to the selected layouts and close the dialog.

RESULT

Part formatting from the selected source layout is copied to the selected destination layouts.

- If you activated **Include layout options**, layout options are copied from the source layout to the destination layouts.
- If you activated **Include system formatting**, Dorico for iPad copies the distribution of bars in systems, systems on pages, and note spacing changes from the source layout to the destination layouts.

TIP

If the formatting of the source layout relies primarily on its **Casting Off** settings in **Layout Options**, it is likely that only activating **Include layout options** is sufficient to produce very similar formatting in the destination layouts without adding system/frame breaks on every system.

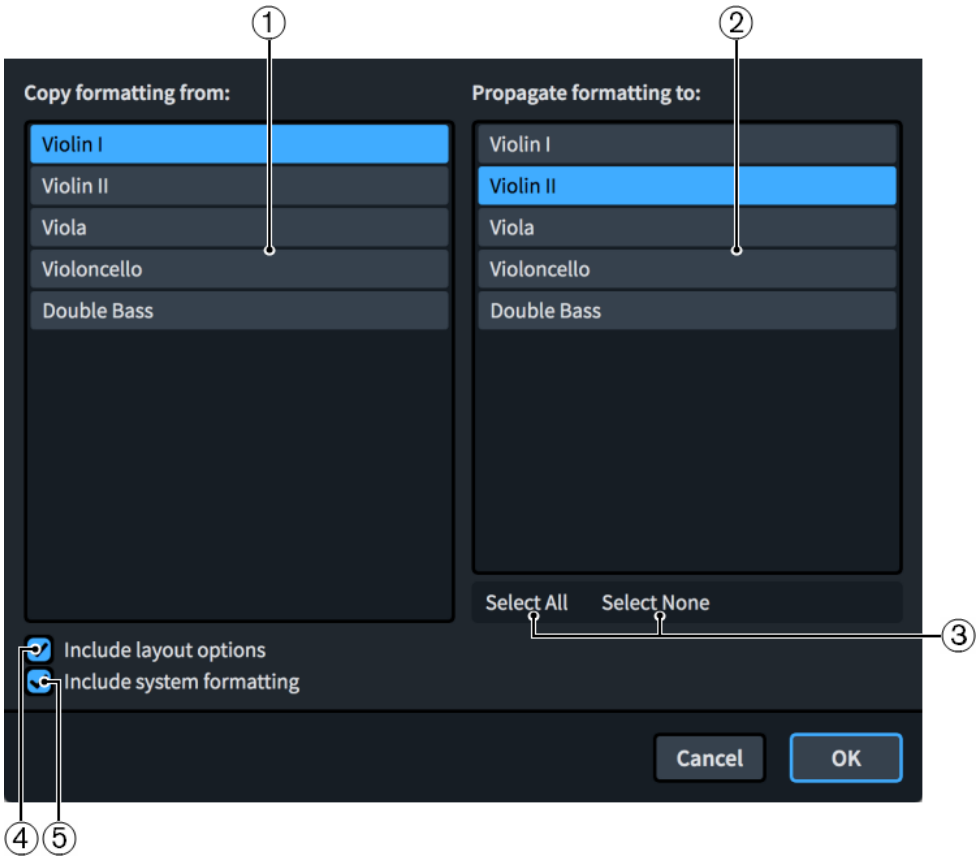
RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 63
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58

Propagate Part Formatting dialog

The **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog allows you to copy the page formatting and layout options from a source layout to destination layouts.

- You can open the **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog in Setup mode by selecting a part layout in the **Layouts** panel, then clicking **Layout Settings** ··· in the action bar and choosing **Propagate Part Formatting**.



The **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 **Copy formatting from list**

Contains a list of all the part layouts in the project. You can only select a single part layout as the source layout.

2 **Propagate formatting to list**

Contains a list of all the part layouts in the project. You can select multiple part layouts as destination layouts.

3 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the part layouts in the **Propagate formatting to** list.

4 **Include layout options**

Allows you to copy layout options relating to part formatting from the source layout to the destination layouts. These options include page size, page margins, the default master page set, space size, vertical spacing, note spacing, casting off, multi-bar rest settings, and staff labels.

5 **Include system formatting**

Allows you to copy the distribution of bars in systems, systems on pages, and note spacing changes from the source layout to the destination layouts. Dorico for iPad achieves this by copying system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes, inputting additional system and frame breaks as required, and deleting any existing system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes in the destination layouts.

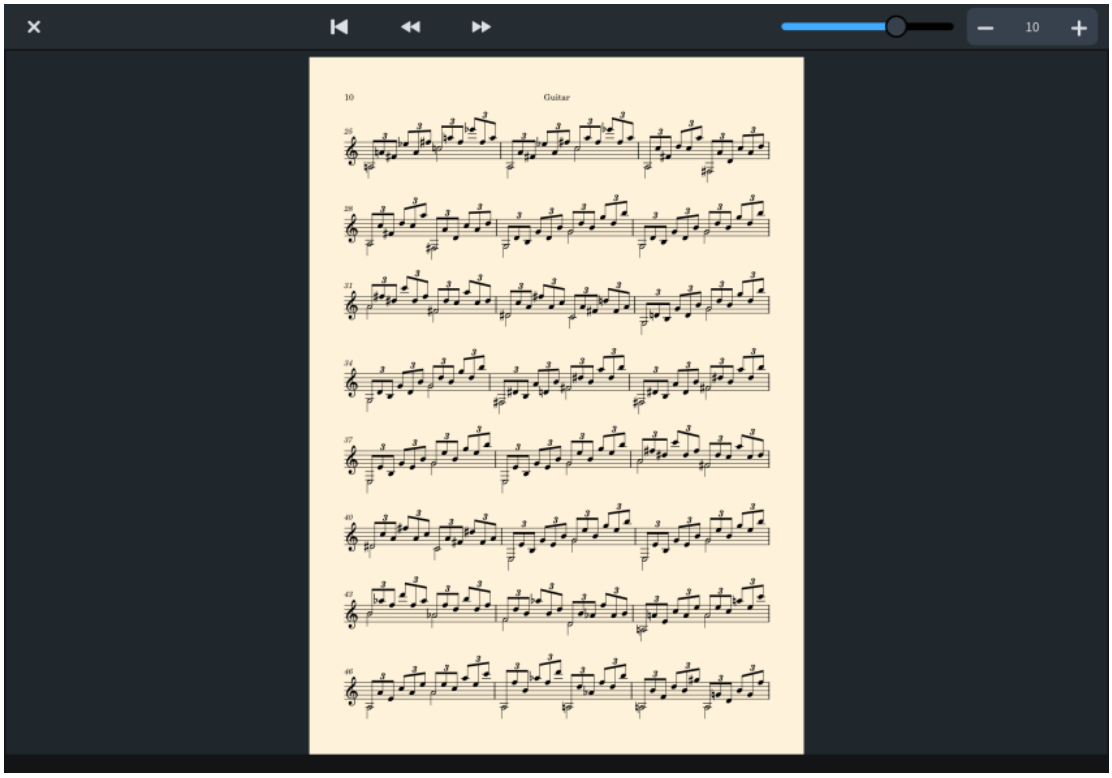
RELATED LINKS

Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 58

Read view

Read view displays the current layout in a full page view with view options hidden, allowing you to play along with it, for example, on a piano. It supports turning pages in multiple ways.

- You can open Read view by clicking **Application Menu** in the toolbar and choosing **Read**, or tapping the screen with four fingers.



The Read view toolbar contains the following options:

Close

Closes Read view.

Back to Start

Navigates to the first page in the layout.

Previous Page

Navigates to the previous page in the layout.

Next Page

Navigates to the next page in the layout.

Page Slider

Allows you to scroll through pages.

Page Selector

Allows you to navigate to the previous/next page in the layout or enter a page number directly.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 23

Opening/Closing Read view

You can open/close Read view for the layout currently open in the music area.

Read view always opens on the first page in the current layout. When you close Read view, the music area shows the last page shown in Read view.

PREREQUISITE

The layout you want to show in Read view is open in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. Open Read view in any of the following ways:
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** in the toolbar and choose **Read**.
   - Tap the screen with four fingers.
2. To close Read view, click **Close** in the Read view toolbar.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 23
Switching between layouts on page 30

Turning pages in Read view

You can turn pages in Read view in multiple ways, for example, when playing along on a piano with your iPad on the music stand.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use a pedal to turn pages, you have connected the pedal.

PROCEDURE

- Turn pages in any of the following ways:
  - To turn to the next page, click on the right of the screen.
  - To turn to the previous page, click on the left of the screen.
  - Press a connected pedal.
  - In the Read view toolbar, use any of the available navigation tools.

RELATED LINKS
Page formatting on page 369
Casting off on page 389
System breaks on page 390
Frame breaks on page 391

Notation reference

Introduction

This notation reference contains information about the accepted conventions for presenting different notations and how to change their appearance and placement in Dorico for iPad, both for individual items and by changing default settings.

It also contains instructions for inputting more complex notations, such as cross-staff glissando lines, which are described in the corresponding chapter.

Tasks in the notation reference outline the default per-layout changes you can make in **Layout Options**, such as changing the frequency of bar numbers, and the individual changes you can make to items, which often involve using properties in the Properties panel.

More detailed default options, such as how notes should be beamed in different meters or spacing gaps between different items, are available in Dorico Pro.

You can find basic input methods for notations in the Write mode chapter.

RELATED LINKS
Write mode on page 112
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Accidentals

Accidentals are shown beside notes to indicate their pitch, both when notated on a staff and written out in text. In music based in Western tonality, they usually show that the pitch of a note has been altered so that it does not conform to the current prevailing key signature.

In Dorico for iPad, each note has its own fixed pitch that is independent of the prevailing key signature, and accidentals are automatically hidden and shown as appropriate. For example, if you input F♮s and then add a D major key signature before them, they do not turn into F♯s; they remain F♮s and show natural accidentals. However, if you input the D major key signature first, any Fs you then input without stating an accidental are input as F♯s.

There are different conventions for accidental duration rules, such as not repeating the same accidental on subsequent notes of the same pitch in the same bar. In music that has no key signatures, some or all notes might require accidentals, depending on the notation convention in use.

You can use accidental duration rules to determine when accidentals are shown.

RELATED LINKS
Accidental duration rules on page 415
Inputting notes on page 145
Inputting accidentals on page 168

Deleting accidentals

You can delete accidentals according to their type and you can delete all accidentals from a selection of notes with different accidentals at the same time. This changes the pitch of the selected notes.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to cautionary accidentals, such as those shown on natural notes that follow the same notes with an accidental but in a different octave. In Dorico for iPad, you can only hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals individually.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose accidentals you want to delete.
2. Delete accidentals in any of the following ways:
   - To delete naturals, press **0**.
   - To delete flats, press **-**.
   - To delete sharps, press **=**.
   - Click the button of the accidental in the Notes panel.

RESULT

The corresponding accidentals are deleted from the selected notes. This changes their pitch. For example, deleting the sharp from a G♯ turns it into G♮.

NOTE

- Deleting accidentals causes accidentals to appear on any subsequent notes of the same pitch in the same bar. The pitches of selected notes are indicated by depressed keys in the Keyboard panel.
- To delete accidentals from a selection of notes with different accidentals, we recommend that you revert them all to natural by pressing **0** or clicking **Natural** in the Notes panel. This is because re-inputting an accidental over a selection of notes with different accidentals adds that accidental to every note in the selection. For example, two G♯s followed by two G♭s become four G♯s if you re-input a sharp. If you click **Sharp** or press **=** twice, all accidentals are deleted.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting accidentals on page 168
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals on page 417
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Accidental duration rules on page 415
Keyboard panel on page 128

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals

You can hide/show individual accidentals, or show them in round or square brackets, including cautionary accidentals shown by default. For example, you can show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in tie chains that cross system/frame breaks by showing accidentals in round brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose accidentals you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only select individual noteheads within tie chains in Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hide**
   - **Show**
   - **Round brackets**
   - **Square brackets**

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected notes are shown, hidden, or shown in round or square brackets. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Hiding accidentals does not affect the pitch of notes in playback.
- If you are hiding/showing many accidentals, we recommend that you consider changing the accidental duration rule.
- You can assign key commands for different accidental hiding, showing, and parenthesizing commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also hide/show or parenthesize accidentals on artificial harmonics shown using diamond noteheads, independently of the normal noteheads that indicate the stopped pitch.

RELATED LINKS

Accidental duration rules on page 415
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals on page 417
Preferences dialog on page 34
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals on page 613
Deleting accidentals on page 409
Ties on page 839
Changing the property scope on page 128

Stacking of accidentals

If multiple accidentals are required for a chord in a single voice, or for notes in multiple voices at the same rhythmic position, they are stacked to the left of the chord in columns.

For chords with multiple accidentals, accidentals are generally stacked as follows:

1. The highest accidental is inserted in the first column immediately to the left of the notes.
2. The lowest accidental is added to the same column, provided that it does not collide with the first accidental.
3. The remaining highest and lowest accidentals are alternated in successive columns located further left from the chord.

In Dorico for iPad, additional rules help to produce a stack of accidentals that uses as few columns as possible. The following list contains some of the rules that are applied:

- Columns closer to the notes contain more accidentals than columns further from the notes.
- Accidentals on notes that are an octave apart are stacked in the same column. This also applies to accidentals that are a sixth or more apart, depending on the combination of accidentals.
- Accidentals in the same column never collide. The minimum interval between accidentals that is required to prevent collisions depends on the types of accidentals.
- Accidentals that are a second apart are arranged in adjacent columns, with the higher accidental in the right-hand column.

These rules minimize the amount of extra space that is required between successive notes or chords and ensure that accidentals appear as close as possible to the noteheads to which they apply. At the same time, they produce a contour that resembles a C-curve on the left-hand side of the chord.

Accidental stacking rules for dense chords

Dorico for iPad uses special stacking calculations in dense chords with multiple accidentals to ensure legibility. Chords are considered dense when they have six or more accidentals within the span of an octave.

For dense chords, accidentals are stacked as follows:

1. The highest accidental is inserted in the first column to the left of the notes.
2. The next accidental on a note that is located at least a seventh below the highest note is stacked into the same column. This continues with the remaining notes until no more accidentals fit into the first column.
3. Steps 1 and 2 are repeated for the following columns until all accidentals are stacked.
4. The columns are grouped, interspersed, and re-stacked. This results in a stack with alternating accidentals, reminiscent of the way accidentals are arranged in a key signature.

By default for dense chords, Dorico for iPad uses a lattice arrangement of accidentals rather than the usual zig-zag arrangement. In very dense chords, the lattice arrangement can be wider and require more columns.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the column of accidentals on page 412
Moving accidentals graphically on page 413

Kerning of accidental columns

Dorico for iPad applies kerning to accidental columns to ensure that the columns to the left of a chord occupy as little horizontal space as possible.

In typography, kerning adjusts the space between individual characters to increase legibility. In Dorico for iPad, as well as in music engraving in general, kerning allows accidentals to interlock.

EXAMPLE

If a low note is followed by a high note with an accidental, the accidental can be tucked above the low note to prevent the note spacing from being distorted.

Similarly, in the case of multiple columns of accidentals on a chord, the overall width of the stack of accidentals is reduced if, for example, a flat in the second column is kerned underneath a sharp in the first column belonging to a note a third higher. This also reduces the need to distort note spacing to accommodate accidentals.

Changing the column of accidentals

You can change the column of individual accidentals, for example, so they appear closer to the stem than other accidentals in the chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes or accidentals whose accidental column you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental column** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The column of the selected accidentals is changed. Accidentals with lower **Accidental column** values are placed closer to noteheads, while accidentals with higher values are placed further from noteheads. If necessary, Dorico for iPad automatically changes the column of other accidentals at the same rhythmic position.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Stacking of accidentals on page 411
Tucking index properties on page 495
Changing the property scope on page 128

Moving accidentals graphically

You can move individual accidentals graphically to the right or left, for example, to reduce the horizontal spacing required for accidentals in a single dense chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot move accidentals rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which accidentals apply, you must delete them from their original notes and input new accidentals on the new notes or change the pitch of existing notes.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the accidentals you want to move. You can also select their noteheads.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental X offset** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Move the accidentals in one of the following ways:
   - To move them to the right, increase the value in the value field.
   - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the value field.

RESULT

The selected accidentals are moved graphically. If necessary, Dorico for iPad automatically increases note spacing to accommodate the accidentals and avoid collisions.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting accidentals on page 168
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Changing the property scope on page 128

Altered unisons

Altered unisons occur when two or more notes of the same name in the same octave have different accidentals in the same chord, such as D♯ and D♭.

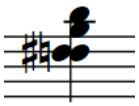
In Dorico for iPad, this is notated with a split stem by default. Split stems show the main body of a chord with a stem branch coming off the main stem that connects noteheads in altered unisons to the chord. This allows all notes to appear with their corresponding accidental directly beside them. A split stem is also known as a “cherry stalk” or a “tree”.

You can change individual altered unisons appear with a single stem, meaning noteheads appear directly beside each other, and the two accidentals are shown beside each other to the left of the chord.

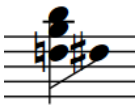
NOTE

If a chord contains notes a second interval apart and one of those notes has an altered unison, it is always shown with a split stem, regardless of your setting. This is to ensure clarity in clusters.

EXAMPLE



A single stem altered unison



A split stem altered unison

RELATED LINKS
Inputting chords on page 174
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Changing how altered unisons appear

You can change how individual altered unisons appear, including within chords containing other altered unisons. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the altered unison notes whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Split stem** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected altered unison notes are shown with split stems when the checkbox is activated, and with single stems when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

Split stem applies to individual notes. You can have altered unisons appear differently within the same chord by setting their properties independently.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Microtonal accidentals

Microtonal accidentals indicate pitches beyond the standard accepted chromatic scale in Western tonality, such as a quarter sharp or quarter flat. Microtonal accidentals are only shown in Dorico for iPad if you open a project that already contains them. They are available for input only where the corresponding key signature and tonality system apply.

Accidental duration rules

Accidental duration rules determine how long accidentals apply, such as within a bar, at a different octave, or just for a single note. Dorico for iPad allows you to use different accidental duration rules.

- You can find the available accidental duration rules on the **Accidentals** page in **Notation Options**.

Common practice

In common practice, an accidental affects all notes of the same pitch in the same octave within the same bar, unless it is cancelled by another accidental. If it is not cancelled, it is automatically cancelled in the following bar.

It is customary to show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in certain circumstances. For example, in the key of G major, an F♯ in a bar following an F♮ shows a cautionary sharp sign, even though the sharp is included in the key signature. Cautionary accidentals are also known as “courtesy accidentals”.

When using the common practice accidental duration rule, you can choose to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals in different circumstances.

In Dorico for iPad, common practice is the default accidental duration rule.

Second Viennese School

The Second Viennese School accidental duration rule states that each accidental only applies to a single note. All notes show an accidental regardless of key signature, including naturals.

This accidental duration rule was used by Schoenberg and other composers of the Second Viennese School.

You can customize the options within the Second Viennese School accidental duration rule when changing the accidental duration rule, including choosing whether immediate repetitions of the same note within the same bar require a restatement of the accidental.

Modernist

The Modernist accidental duration rule states that only notes that have been altered from the key signature show accidentals. Naturals are not shown. However, accidentals that are shown only apply to the notes on which they are written, as with the Second Viennese School.

Charles Ives and Robert Crumb used this variation.

You can customize the options within the Modernist accidental duration rule when changing the accidental duration rule, including choosing whether or not the same accidental on the same pitch is restated later in the bar if the subsequent pitches occur immediately and if subsequent pitches occur after other, different notes. Similarly, there are options for accidentals on notes in different octaves in the same bar and following bar. There is also an option controlling the restatement of accidentals within beam groups.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals on page 417
Changing the cancellation of double accidentals on page 417
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Changing the accidental duration rule

You can change the accidental duration rule in each flow independently, for example, if the Modernist accidental duration rule is appropriate for certain flows in your project but common practice is appropriate for others. In Dorico for iPad, common practice is the default accidental duration rule.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to change the accidental duration rule.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Accidentals** in the category list.
4. In the **Basic** section, choose one of the following options for **Accidental duration rule**:
   - **Common Practice**
   - **Second Viennese School**
   - **Modernist**
5. Optional: Customize the options for your chosen accidental duration rule.

   TIP

   Options in the **Basic** section can apply to all accidental duration rules.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the cancellation of double accidentals on page 417
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 410

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals

You can hide/show cautionary accidentals, or show them in parentheses, in different circumstances by default in flows that use the common practice accidental duration rule.

PREREQUISITE

The flows in which you want to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals use the common practice accidental duration rule.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Accidentals** in the category list.
4. In the **Cautionary accidentals** section, change each option as required.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Cautionary accidentals are hidden, shown, or parenthesized in the corresponding circumstances in the selected flows.

TIP

For flows using the Modernist accidental duration rule, options for cautionary accidentals are available in the **Modernist Options** section of the **Accidentals** page.

RELATED LINKS

Accidental duration rules on page 415
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 410

Changing the cancellation of double accidentals

You can change the convention of double accidental cancellation in each flow independently, for example, if some flows in your project require archaic cancellation. You can do this in combination with any accidental duration rule.

By default, Dorico for iPad uses modern cancellation.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to change the double accidental cancellation convention.

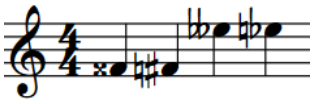
By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.

3. Click **Accidentals** in the category list.
4. In the **Basic** section, choose one of the following options for **Single accidentals cancelling double accidentals**:
   - To show naturals immediately before single accidentals that come after double accidentals, choose **Use archaic cancellation**.
   - To replace double accidentals with single accidentals without showing naturals, choose **Use modern cancellation**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

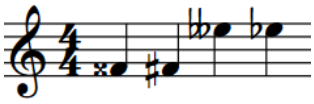
RESULT

The double accidental cancellation convention is changed in the selected flows.

EXAMPLE



Archaic cancellation



Modern cancellation

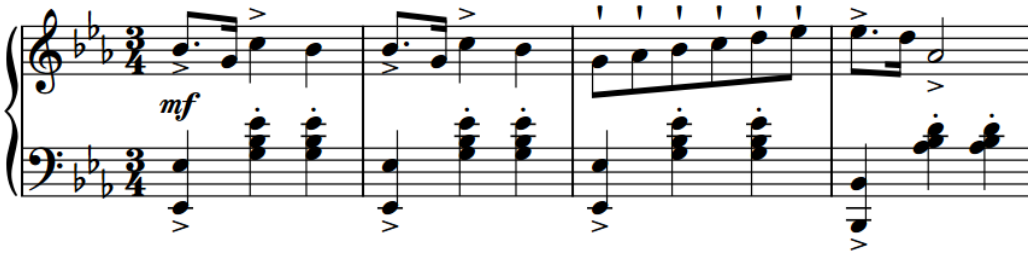
RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 136
Accidental duration rules on page 415
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 410

Articulations

Articulations are markings that are drawn above or below notes and chords. Articulations tell a performer how to attack a note or how long to play a note relative to its notated duration.

In Dorico for iPad, articulations are defined as something that alters the way a note is played, in a way that is consistent across all instruments. Because instructions like bowing directions, harmonics, or tonguing apply to different instrument groups, in Dorico for iPad such directions are defined as playing techniques.



A musical phrase with accent, staccato, and staccatissimo articulations

Articulations are categorized into the following types:

Articulations of force

Indicate a stronger attack at the start of notes, and include articulations such as accent and marcato. Marcato is also sometimes known as a “strong accent”. Dorico for iPad shows these articulations at the start of a note or tie chain by default.

Articulations of duration

Indicate a shorter duration than notated, and include articulations such as staccatissimo, staccato, tenuto, and staccato-tenuto. Staccato-tenuto is also sometimes known as a “louré”. If a note includes ties, Dorico for iPad shows articulations of duration above the last note in the chain by default.

Articulations of stress

Indicate notes that should be emphasized or not emphasized where that contradicts the prevailing meter, using stressed and unstressed marks. Dorico for iPad shows these articulations at the start of a note or tie chain by default.

Dorico for iPad positions articulations automatically on the notehead or stem side of notes and chords, according to the musical context. A note or chord can display one of each type of articulation.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting articulations on page 194
Articulations in playback on page 423

Changing articulations

You can change the articulations on notes after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the note whose articulation you want to change.
2. Change the articulation in any of the following ways:
   - Press the key command of the articulation you want. For example, press] for staccato.
   - Click the new articulation you want in the Notes panel.

RESULT

The new articulation is added. This replaces any existing articulation of the same type.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting articulations on page 194
Key commands for articulations on page 195

Deleting articulations

Individual articulation markings cannot be selected and deleted separately from their notehead in Write mode, so articulations must be deleted by selecting the note or notes to which they are attached, and deselecting the articulation.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose articulations you want to delete.
2. Deselect the articulations in any of the following ways:
   - Press the key commands of the articulations you want to delete.
   - Click the articulations you want to delete in the Notes panel.

Positions of articulations

There are established conventions for the position and placement of articulations relative to notes, the staff, and staff lines, which ensure articulations are always clearly visible. For the smallest articulations, such as staccato marks, correct placement relative to staff lines in particular is vital.

Articulations are placed on the notehead side by default, with the following exceptions:

- In single-voice contexts, marcato is always placed above the staff, regardless of the stem direction of the note or chord on which it is used. In multiple-voice contexts, marcato can also be placed below the staff.
- If multiple voices are active, articulations are placed at the end of the stem side of a note or chord. This clarifies which articulations belong to the up-stemmed notes and which to the down-stemmed notes.
- If a note is placed on the middle staff line or on the space immediately on either side, articulations that are less than a space in height are centered in the next unoccupied space. This normally only applies to staccato and tenuto. If a note in the middle of the staff has a staccato-tenuto articulation, the component parts of the articulation are split up and placed in separate spaces.

- If an articulation cannot fit within a staff space, or if the note is placed high or low on the staff, the articulation is placed outside the staff.
- If a note or chord is tied and the tie is placed above or below the notehead, articulations that are placed on the notehead side of a note or chord are offset by an additional 1/4 space in order to avoid the end of the tie.

Articulations on the notehead side are always centered horizontally on the notehead. This also applies to articulations on the stem side, except if the only articulation is a staccato or staccatissimo. In this case, the articulation is centered on the stem.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the placement of articulations relative to notes on page 422
Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs on page 423

Order of articulations

If there are multiple articulations on the same notes, their vertical position and proximity to noteheads/stems depends on their type.

Articulations are positioned in the following order:

1. Articulations of duration are positioned closest to notehead/stems.
2. Articulations of force are positioned outside articulations of duration.
3. Articulations of stress are positioned furthest from noteheads/stems.

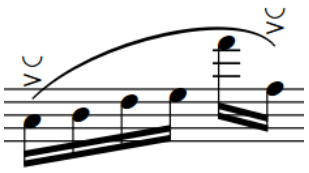
Order of articulations in relation to slurs

Articulations of duration are positioned as follows:

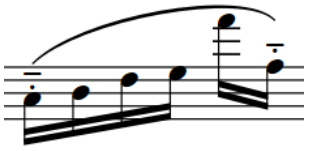
- Inside slurs that start/end on a note or chord with an articulation.
- Inside the curvature of a slur.
- Inside tuplet brackets.

Articulations of force are positioned as follows:

- Outside slurs that start/end on a note or chord with an articulation, except if they can be positioned within the staff.
- Inside the curvature of a slur if they fit between the slur and the note or stem, to which they belong, without colliding.
- Outside tuplet brackets.



Force and stress articulations outside the ends of the slur



Duration articulations inside the ends of the slur

Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains

You can change where in tie chains articulations appear individually. By default, articulations of force and stress are shown on the first note/chord in tie chains, while articulations of duration are shown on the last note/chord.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tied notes/chords whose articulation position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the **Articulations** group of the Properties panel, activate **Pos. in tie chain** under the corresponding heading for the articulation whose position you want to change.

   For example, activate **Pos. in tie chain** under the **Articulations of force** heading to change the position of accents.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **First note**
   - **Last note**

RESULT

The position of articulations in the selected tie chains is changed.

Changing the placement of articulations relative to notes

You can change whether individual articulations are placed on the notehead side or stem side of notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose articulation placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the **Articulations** group of the Properties panel, activate **Placement** under the corresponding heading for the articulations whose placement you want to change.

   For example, activate **Placement** under the **Articulations of force** heading to change the placement of accents.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Notehead side**
   - **Stem side**

RESULT

The articulation is placed on the selected side of the notes or chords. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain. If this creates a collision with other markings, such as playing techniques, Dorico for iPad automatically makes adjustments to make sure all markings are clear and legible.

Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs

You can change whether individual articulations of duration are placed inside or outside slur endpoints. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to articulations of duration. They do not apply to articulations of force or stress.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose articulation placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Inside slur endpoint** in the **Articulations** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Articulations of duration are placed inside slur endpoints when the checkbox is activated, and outside slur endpoints when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Slur endpoints relative to articulations on page 774

Articulations in playback

Articulations affect how notes sound in playback. Depending on whether your sound library has specific samples for different articulations, Dorico for iPad changes playback in different ways to reflect articulations.

- If your sound library includes samples for articulations, Dorico for iPad loads the required samples using playback techniques. Additionally, Dorico for iPad makes notes with staccatos sound shorter and notes with accents sound louder.
- If your sound library does not include samples for articulations, Dorico for iPad adjusts notes according to the articulation without loading different samples. For example, making notes with staccatos sound shorter and notes with accents sound louder.

Because articulations apply to whole notes, samples are triggered at the start of notes, including tie chains.

Bars

Bars indicate a usually regular segment of time according to the number of beats, which is usually determined by the prevailing time signature. Bars are separated from other bars to the left and the right by vertical barlines.

Each bar has a number, allowing players to keep track of their place in the music and aiding rehearsal. This is especially important in music for multiple players.

Dorico for iPad automatically numbers bars and shows barlines between bars as required for the current time signature.

RELATED LINKS
Barlines on page 428
Bar numbers on page 435
Time signatures on page 855
Pick-up bars on page 859
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204

Bar length

Bars usually last the same duration and start and end at the same positions for all players. However, some music involves bars of different lengths coinciding, and there are situations where some players may have no bars indicated at all.

You can change the duration of a bar by changing its time signature or, in music in open meter, by inputting barlines where required. You can hide time signatures you do not want to show in the music, for example, if you are writing music with an irregular meter and you require barlines only to group material together, but not to imply any sense of meter.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing time signatures on page 866

Deleting bars/beats

You can delete whole bars and specific beats of music from your project completely by using the bars and barlines popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - The first bar you want to delete, or the first note or rest in that bar.
   - An item at the rhythmic position from which you want to delete beats.
2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.

3. Enter **–** (minus), followed by the number of bars or beats you want to delete into the popover.

   For example, enter **–6** to delete six bars, meaning the bar you selected and the subsequent five bars, or **-2q** to delete two quarter note beats, starting from the selected rhythmic position.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The number of bars or beats specified is deleted. Just as when Insert mode is active, music to the right of the selection moves up to fill in the gap.

NOTE

- Any signposts in the selection are also deleted.
- Deleting some, but not all, beats from bars according to the prevailing time signature deletes the contents of those beats only. If you want to shorten a bar's duration, such as at the end of flows that start with a pick-up bar, you must instead either input a time signature with the required number of beats then hide the time signature, or input a barline and delete any excess bars if necessary.

RELATED LINKS

Bars and barlines popover on page 219
Pick-up bars on page 859
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Insert mode on page 161
Signposts on page 332
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Hiding/Showing time signatures on page 866

Deleting bars with the system track

You can delete whole bars from your project completely using the system track.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the system track in Write mode, select the region that you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete** in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.

RESULT

The selected region is deleted. Just as when Insert mode is active, music to the right of the selection moves up to fill in the gap.

NOTE

Any signposts in the selection are also deleted.

RELATED LINKS
System track on page 316
Hiding/Showing the system track on page 317
Selecting bars with the system track on page 317
Insert mode on page 161
Signposts on page 332

Deleting empty bars at the end of flows

You can trim flows by deleting any empty bars left at the end.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item in the flow you want to trim.
2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
3. Enter **trim** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

Empty bars at the end of the selected flow are deleted.

RELATED LINKS
Bars and barlines popover on page 219
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219

Deleting the contents of bars

You can delete just the contents of bars without deleting barlines or the bars themselves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the bars whose contents you want to delete.

   TIP

   Notes, rests, and other objects are highlighted orange when selected.

2. Delete the contents of the selected bars in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Delete**.

RESULT

The contents of the selected bars are deleted.

RELATED LINKS
Large selections on page 315
Filters on page 318

Splits in bars

You can split bars rhythmically by changing the number of beats in each bar. You can split bars visually across system or frame breaks, which might be required in music with an irregular meter or in passages of polymeter.

Splitting bars by inputting new time signatures

You can split bars into two or more bars by changing the time signature at any rhythmic position. New time signatures apply until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

NOTE

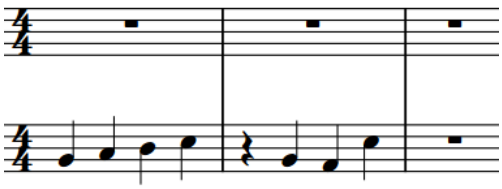
If you change the time signature in the middle of an existing bar, we recommend inputting another time signature at the start of the preceding bar reflecting its new rhythmic duration to avoid confusion.

Splitting bars by inputting new barlines

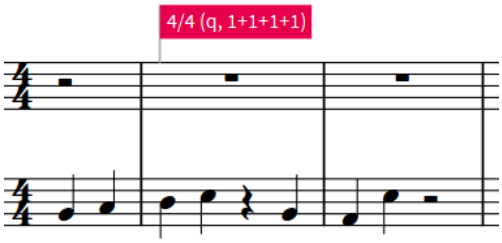
You can also split bars by inputting new barlines that are not normal (single) barlines anywhere within a bar without affecting the time signature. However, inputting a normal (single) barline anywhere within an existing bar resets the prevailing time signature from that point onwards.

For example, selecting the third quarter note (crotchet) in a 4/4 bar and inserting a new barline causes a new 4/4 bar to start from the added barline. This leaves the equivalent of a 2/4 bar without a time signature to the left of the barline, but the bars to the right of the added barline are in 4/4 and continue to be in 4/4 until the next time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

Signposts are shown at the position of each barline that you add manually within bars.



Two 4/4 bars with quarter notes

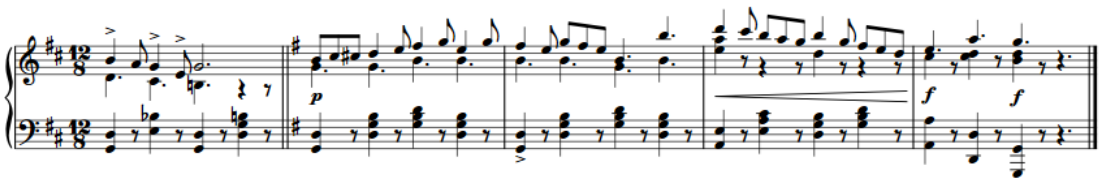


Adding a normal barline halfway through the first 4/4 bar restarts the time signature from that point.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Inserting system breaks on page 391
Inserting frame breaks on page 392
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 160
Deleting notes/items on page 333

Barlines

Barlines are vertical lines that cross staves in order to show how music is divided into bars, according to the time signature. The most commonly used barline is the single barline between adjacent bars, but there are different types, such as double or repeat barlines.



The final system in a piece in 12/8 containing, a key change with double barline, three normal barlines, and a final barline at the end

Dorico for iPad automatically shows barlines as required for the current time signature. For example, Dorico for iPad automatically shows dashed barlines between the different meters in aggregate time signatures. If you change the time signature, Dorico for iPad moves the barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly.

By default, Dorico for iPad uses single barlines in flows and final barlines at the end of flows. You can change the default barline used in and at the end of each flow independently.

Barlines automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace.

RELATED LINKS
Types of barlines on page 429
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Barlines across staff groups on page 432
Changing the default barline type in flows on page 430
Changing the default barline at the end of flows on page 431
Bars on page 424
Bar numbers on page 435
Time signatures on page 855
Types of time signatures on page 857
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Deleting notes/items on page 333

Per-flow notation options for barlines

You can find options for the per-flow the appearance of barlines on the **Barlines** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can change the type of barline used in and shown at the end of each flow by default, whether single barlines between staves only appear between staves or extend across staves, and whether barlines join all staves at the end of each system and at the end of the final system in a flow.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Types of barlines

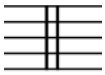
There are multiple types of barlines in Dorico for iPad, which can all be input, moved, and deleted in the same ways.

Normal (Single)

A standard single barline that spans the entire height of the staff. For single-line staves, the barline extends one space above and below the staff line by default.

Double

A double barline consists of two lines, both the width of a single barline, positioned half a space apart by default. It is often used to denote significant changes in the music, or to mark the placement of rehearsal marks, key signature changes, and tempo changes.



Final

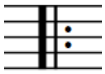
A final barline consists of two lines: one of normal width, the other thick. It marks where the music ends.

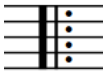
Start repeat

A start repeat line consists of a thick barline, followed by a normal barline, followed by one of the following arrangements of dots:

- Two dots, one each in the middle two spaces of a five-line staff
- Four dots, one each in all four spaces of a five-line staff

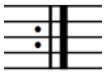
It shows the start of a repeated section. It is used alongside end repeat lines, which show the end of a repeated section.

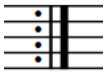




End repeat

An end repeat line is the mirror of a start repeat line, so it consists of either two or four dots, followed by a normal barline, followed by a thick barline. It shows the end of a repeated section. It is used alongside start repeat lines, which show the start of a repeated section.





End/Start repeat

This line combines the start repeat and end repeat barlines, with either two single barlines with a single shared thick barline in the middle, or two thick barlines and no single barlines. On either side, there are either two or four repeat dots. It is used when a repeated section is immediately followed by another, separate repeated section.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Barlines across staff groups on page 432

Changing the default barline type in flows

By default, Dorico for iPad uses single barlines to separate bars in flows. You can change which type of barline automatically separates bars in each flow independently. For example, short or tick barlines are frequently used for most barlines in chant notation.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows whose default barline type you want to change.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Barlines** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Default barline type**:
   - **Normal**
   - **Double**
   - **Dashed**
   - **Final**
   - **Tick**
   - **Short (Center)**
   - **Short (Top)**
   - **Thick**
   - **Start Repeat**
   - **End Repeat**
   - **End and Start Repeat**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default barline type in the selected flows is changed. This does not override any explicit barlines you have input, such as repeat barlines in repeat endings, or the final barlines in the selected flows.

RELATED LINKS

Types of barlines on page 429
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Repeat endings on page 738

Changing the default barline at the end of flows

By default, Dorico for iPad uses final barlines at the end of flows. You can choose which type of barline is placed automatically at the end of each flow independently, for example, you might show double barlines at the end of flows to indicate there should be no gap before the following flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows whose default end barline you want to change.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Barlines** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Automatic barline at end of flow**:
   - **Final barline**
   - **Double barline**
   - **Normal barline**
   - **Dashed barline**
   - **Thick barline**
   - **No barline**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default final barline at the end of the selected flows is changed.

NOTE

You can override individual final barlines by inputting a barline of a different type, but you cannot delete individual final barlines.

Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems

By default, systemic barlines are shown at the start of systems containing two or more staves and hidden on single-staff systems. You can hide/show systemic barlines on single-staff systems after the first system.

Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems is a convention used in hand-copied lead sheets, usually in combination with no clefs being shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show systemic barlines after the first system.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Barlines** in the category list.
4. In the **Systemic Barline** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Barline at start of systems following first system**:
   - **Show for one or more staves**
   - **Show for two or more staves**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS

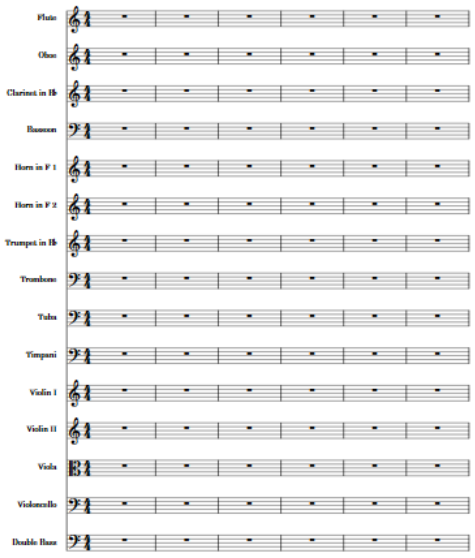
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 482

Barlines across staff groups

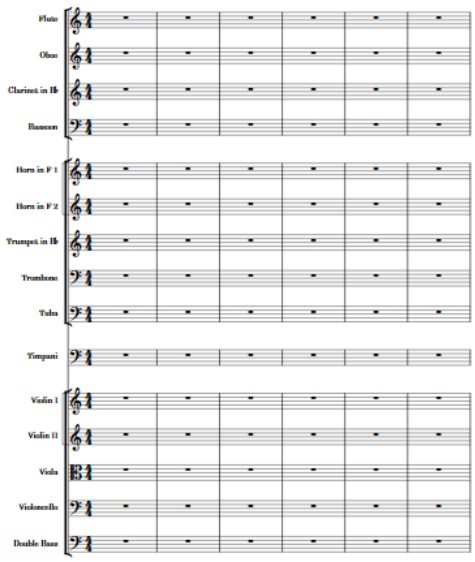
In order to make it easier to find a particular instrument within a score, barlines can extend across instrumental and staff groups.

Barlines across default staff groups

When a barline only appears on individual staves, it is much harder to locate individual lines at a glance. However, when barlines continue across instrumental groups in the score, instrument families are shown as blocks, which makes finding an instrument much easier.



Barlines on individual staves



Barlines across instrumental groups

Barlines automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace. Which staves are included in a bracket depends on the instrumentation and context, but usually staves for instruments from the same family, such as woodwind or strings, are bracketed together.

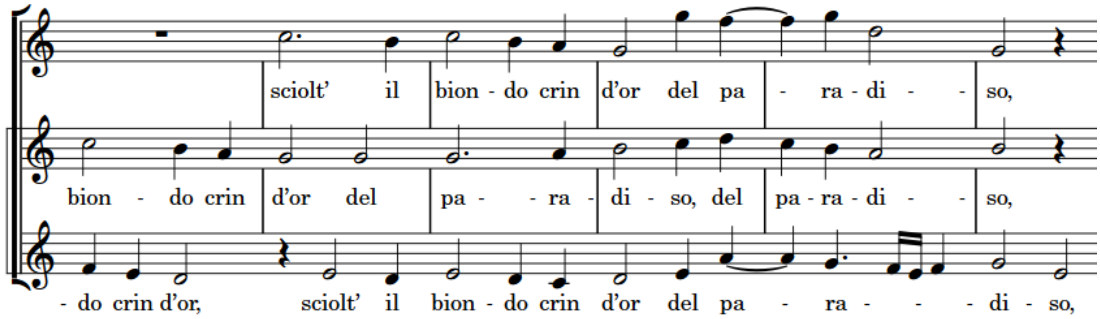
Dorico for iPad automatically brackets staves according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

Barlines across grand staff instruments

Dorico for iPad automatically joins barlines across grand staff instrument staves as they are braced. Because staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously, grand staff instruments are excluded from brackets and therefore are not joined with barlines to any other staves.

Barline joins between staves

You can change whether single barlines only appear between staves or extend across the staves as well in each flow independently on the **Barlines** page in **Notation Options**. Barline joins only between staves are known as “Mensurstriche”. They are commonly used when typesetting early music to aid readability for modern performers while minimizing the visual impact on the originally unmetered notation.



Barlines drawn between staves

Custom barline groups

You can create custom barline joins and bracket groups by manually arranging your players into groups. If one or more players included in your group were previously in another group, any remaining instruments in their previous group remain grouped.

You can put a single player in its own player group so they appear separately, for example, to separate the soloist from the remainder of the ensemble in a concerto.

RELATED LINKS
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
Adding player groups on page 94
Adding players to groups on page 94
Deleting player groups on page 95
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Showing barlines across all staves at time signature changes

You can join all staves with a barline at time signature changes in individual layouts, regardless of your bracketing style.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signature changes where you want to join all staves with a barline. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline joins all staves** in the **Time Signatures** group.

RESULT

All staves in the layout currently open in the music area are joined by a barline at the selected time signature changes.

Bar numbers

Bar numbers provide a crucial reference point for music that has multiple players, and make the chronological sequence of the music clear. They indicate where players are in the piece, which allows them to co-ordinate themselves easily in rehearsals and concerts.

Bar numbers can also be useful when preparing parts and scores, as you can use bar numbers and rehearsal marks to help you quickly compare a part to the score and check the music is correct.

In Dorico for iPad, bar numbers appear automatically, following the most common practice of showing a bar number at the start of each system in all layouts by default. You can hide and show bar numbers in each layout independently, including showing them at a specified regular interval or in every bar, which is frequently used in film music scores.

TIP

The majority of options relating to bar numbers are on the **Bar Numbers** page in **Layout Options**. This is because it is very common to display bar numbers differently in different layouts, such as in every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Positions of bar numbers on page 439
Bar number changes on page 442
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Bars on page 424
Pick-up bars on page 859
Barlines on page 428

Hiding/Showing bar numbers

You can hide/show bar numbers in each layout independently, including showing them at different frequencies. For example, you can show bar numbers every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Frequency** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Show bar numbers**:
   - **Every system**

- **Every n bars**
- **Every bar**
- **None**

5. Optional: If you chose **Every n bars**, set a custom frequency for bar numbers by changing the value for **Interval**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Bar numbers are hidden in the selected layouts when you choose **None**, and shown at the corresponding frequency when you choose any other option.

Changing the **Interval** value changes how frequently bar numbers are shown. For example, setting an interval value of **10** means that bar numbers are shown every tenth bar.

TIP

You can also hide individual bar numbers in layouts where bar numbers are shown by selecting them and activating **Hide bar number** in the **Time Signatures** group of the Properties panel.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 437
Showing bar numbers above specific staves on page 439
Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 438
Positions of bar numbers on page 439

Hiding/Showing bar number enclosures

You can optionally show bar numbers in either a rectangular or circular enclosure in each layout independently, for example, if you want bar numbers to appear with rectangle enclosures in the full score layout so the conductor can easily see them but with no enclosures in part layouts, where pages tend to be less busy.

Bar numbers in enclosures automatically erase their backgrounds.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the bar number enclosure type.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Appearance** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Enclosure type**:
   - **None**
   - **Rectangle**
   - **Circle**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Bar numbers in the selected layouts are shown within your selected enclosure type. The size of the enclosure is relative to the font size of the bar numbers, but the size and shape of the enclosure are also determined by your padding values.

EXAMPLE

Bar number with no enclosure

Bar number with a rectangle enclosure

Bar number with a circle enclosure

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 63

Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests

You can hide/show bar number ranges on multi-bar rests, for example, so it is clear in part layouts which bars the player does not play. Multi-bar rests can include bar repeat regions, if you have chosen to consolidate bar repeat regions as well as empty bars into multi-bar rests.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar number ranges on multi-bar rests.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Showing and Hiding** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show ranges of bar numbers under multi-bar rests and consolidated bar repeats**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Bar number ranges are shown beneath multi-bar rests and consolidated bar repeats in the selected layouts when the option is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing bar numbers on page 435
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 770

Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers

You can hide/show guide bar numbers on every bar and above every system in page view and galley view independently, for example, to make it easier to check the bar number in scores with many staves. Guide bar numbers are not printed.

PROCEDURE

1. In the secondary toolbar, click **View Options** to open the **View Options** dialog.
2. Choose one of the following options for **View type**:
   - To hide/show guide bar numbers in page view, choose **Page View**.
   - To hide/show guide bar numbers in galley view, choose **Galley View**.
3. Activate/Deactivate **Bar numbers**.
4. Click **Close**.

RESULT

Guide bar numbers are shown for every bar and above every staff in the corresponding view type when **Bar numbers** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS
Switching to galley/page view on page 32
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
View Options dialog on page 120

Changing the bar number paragraph style used in layouts

You can choose which paragraph style is used for bar numbers in each layout independently. By default, full score layouts and part layouts use different paragraph styles for bar numbers.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the paragraph style used for bar numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Appearance** subsection, select a paragraph style from the **Paragraph style** menu.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected paragraph style is used for all bar numbers in the selected layouts.

Positions of bar numbers

Bar numbers are typically shown at the start of each system, above the staff, and aligned with the initial barline.

You can change the default positions and frequency of bar numbers in each layout independently on the **Bar Numbers** page in **Layout Options**, and you can move individual bar numbers in Engrave mode. For example, you might want to show bar numbers every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

Changing the horizontal position of bar numbers

You can change the horizontal position of bar numbers in each layout independently. For example, you can have bar numbers centered in the middle of bars in full score layouts but centered on barlines in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the horizontal position of bar numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Horizontal Position** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Horizontal position**:
   - **Centered on barline**
   - **Centered on bar**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The horizontal position of bar numbers is changed in the selected layouts.

- **Centered on barline** shows bar numbers above barlines, at the top left of the bar.
- **Centered on bar** shows bar numbers above the staff, in the middle of the bar.

RELATED LINKS

Showing bar numbers above specific staves on page 439
Moving items graphically on page 351

Showing bar numbers above specific staves

You can change the staves above which bar numbers appear, which allows you to show bar numbers at multiple vertical positions in each system. For example, in large orchestral scores, you might show bar numbers both at the top of the system and above the string section.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
- In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical positions of bar numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Placement** subsection, activate the checkbox for each player in the **Show above specific players** list above whose top staff you want to show bar numbers.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical positions of bar numbers are changed in the selected layouts. For players holding multiple instruments, bar numbers appear above their top instrument staff.

NOTE

You can change the distances between bar numbers and the staff/other objects and your vertical spacing settings for the gaps between staves in order to accommodate bar numbers shown between staves.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 374
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 395
Moving instruments on page 82

Changing the distance between bar numbers and the staff/other objects

You can change the minimum distance between bar numbers and the staff, and set a separate value for the distance between bar numbers and other objects, in each layout independently. For example, you can position bar numbers further from the staff/other objects in full score layouts than in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the minimum distance of bar numbers from the staff.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. Optional: In the **Placement** subsection, change the value for **Minimum distance from staff**.

   The default value is 2 spaces.

5. Optional: In the **Placement** subsection, change the value for **Minimum distance from other objects**.

   The default value is 3/4 of a space.

6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

If you increase the values, bar numbers are positioned further away from the staff and/or other objects, either above or below the staff depending on your setting for **Placement relative to staff**. If you decrease the values, bar numbers are positioned closer to the staff and/or other objects.

NOTE

These options affect the minimum distance between bar numbers and the staff and other objects, so bar numbers might be positioned further away than this to avoid collisions.

Changing the system-relative placement of bar numbers

You can show bar numbers either above or below each system in each layout independently. For example, bar numbers can appear below the system in full score layouts but above the system in individual part layouts.

NOTE

This does not affect the placement of bar numbers shown above specific staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the bar number placement.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Placement** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Placement relative to system**:
   - **Show above top staff of system**
   - **Show below bottom staff of system**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The placement of bar numbers relative to the system is changed in the selected layouts.

Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions

You can choose to hide bar numbers at the same rhythmic position as time signatures shown at system object positions, as the resulting collision can be difficult to resolve in a visually clear way when bar numbers are centered on barlines.

PROCEDURE

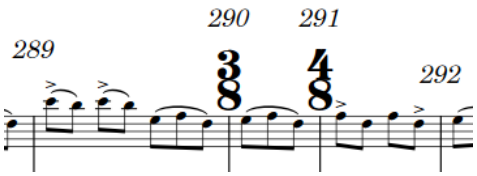
1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Bar Numbers** in the category list.
4. In the **Showing and Hiding** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show bar numbers at time signatures at system object positions**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

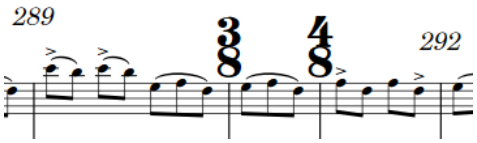
RESULT

Bar numbers are shown at time signatures shown at system object positions when the option is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Bar numbers shown at time signatures at system object positions



Bar numbers hidden at time signatures at system object positions

RELATED LINKS

Time signatures on page 855
Large time signatures on page 860

Bar number changes

Bar numbers follow a continuous sequence, with each bar having a unique bar number that continues from the previous bar number. However, you can make manual changes to the bar number sequence, including changing to a subordinate sequence.

In Dorico for iPad, you can make the following types of changes to bar number sequences using the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog:

Primary

Adds a change to the main bar number sequence, which the bars in your project follow in a continuous sequence in each flow separately by default.

Subordinate

Adds a secondary bar number sequence that uses letters rather than numbers to indicate the sequence. This can be useful in situations where a new version of a piece has been created with more bars inserted, but the original bar numbers are required.

Don’t Include

Excludes the selected bar from the current bar number sequence. If bar numbers are shown every bar, no bar number is shown in bars in which you have chosen **Don’t Include**.

Continue Primary

Returns the bar number sequence to the **Primary** sequence without counting intervening bars, for example, after a section of bars following the **Subordinate** bar number sequence.

RELATED LINKS

Subordinate bar numbers on page 444

Adding bar number changes

You can manually add bar number changes to bar number sequences, for example, if you want bar numbers in the second flow in your project to appear to continue the sequence from the first flow, rather than start again from bar one.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
   - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want to change the bar number sequence.
   - An existing bar number or barline from which you want to change the bar number sequence.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Bar Numbers** > **Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog.
3. Choose one of the following options for **Type**:
   - **Primary**
   - **Subordinate**
   - **Don’t Include**
   - **Continue Primary**
4. Optional: If you chose **Primary** or **Subordinate**, change the bar number where you want the bar number sequence change to start by changing the value in the corresponding value field.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The bar number sequence changes, starting from the beginning of the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

This affects the corresponding bar number sequence from the changed bar number until the next bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Deleting bar number changes

You can delete any bar number changes you have added.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the bar number changes you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected bar number changes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Delete**.

RESULT

The bar number changes are deleted. Subsequent bars follow the previous bar number sequence until the next bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

Subordinate bar numbers

Subordinate bar numbers are useful for numbering repeat endings, and for situations when the music is being altered, but the original bar numbers cannot be changed.

For example, you can use subordinate bar numbers to show where music has been added if a previous, shorter version has already been rehearsed. In this situation, players have likely started to associate certain parts of the piece with particular bar numbers, so if four bars need to be added after bar **10**, they would be numbered **10a** to **10d**. The bar number of the following bar then continues from **11** exactly as it did before the new bars were added.

They might also be useful if you want different bar numbers for a repeat ending.

Subordinate bar numbers are shown with lowercase letters.

Lowercase subordinate bar number

Adding subordinate bar numbers

You can create a subordinate bar number sequence that is independent of your primary bar number sequence. This can be useful if you want to insert new bars without changing the bar numbers of existing subsequent bars.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
   - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want subordinate bar numbers to start.

- An existing bar number or barline from which you want subordinate bar numbers to start.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Bar Numbers** > **Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog.
3. Choose **Subordinate** for **Type** to activate the **Subordinate** value field.
4. Change the first letter in the subordinate bar number sequence by changing the value in the **Subordinate** value field.

   The corresponding alphabetical letter is shown to the right of the value field. For example, entering **1** into the value field is shown as **a**, **2** appears as **b**, and so on.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The subordinate bar number sequence starts from the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline. It has the same bar number as the bar immediately before, but with subordinate alphabetical letters.

For example, if you start a subordinate bar number sequence from what was originally bar 5, the sequence starts from 4a and continues until the next specified bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Returning to the primary bar number sequence

You can specify the point where you want to return to the primary bar number sequence after a section of subordinate bar numbers.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
   - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want to return to the primary bar number sequence.
   - An existing bar number or barline from which you want to return to the primary bar number sequence.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Bar Numbers** > **Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog.
3. Choose **Continue Primary** for **Type**.

   Text indicating the new bar number appears below the value fields for **Primary** and **Subordinate**. For example, **Primary sequence will continue from bar 5**.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The primary bar number sequence resumes from the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

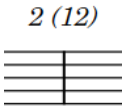
TIP

You do not have to add subordinate bar number changes in chronological order. You can enter a return to the primary bar number sequence first, before adding the subordinate bar number sequence.

Bar numbers and repeats

By default in Dorico for iPad, repeats are not included in the bar number count. For example, if the first ending ends in bar 10, the second ending starts in bar 11, even though the first section is repeated and therefore more than ten bars have been played.

Including repeats in the bar number count, so that bar numbers reflect the total number of bars played rather than the number of bars written on the page, can make music with multiple playthroughs clearer, as you can refer to a specific bar number for each playthrough instead of, for example, “bar eight the third time round”.



Bar number for subsequent repeat shown in parentheses beside the initial bar number

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot automatically include repeats in the bar number count. However, you can add bar number changes manually if you want bar numbers to reflect the total number of bars played.

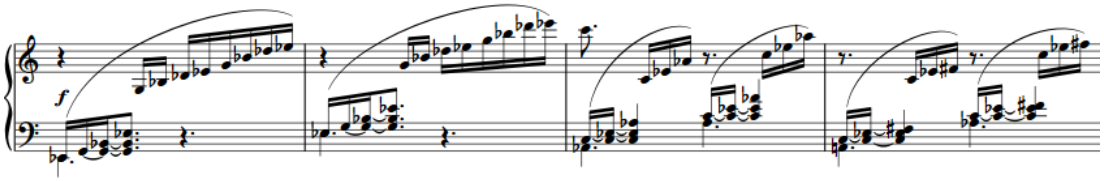
RELATED LINKS
Adding bar number changes on page 443

Beaming

A beam is a line that connects notes with tails to show rhythmic grouping, which varies according to the metrical structure of the current time signature.

This way of grouping notes helps performers calculate quickly exactly how to play their given rhythm and helps them follow both their part and, if applicable, the conductor.

If appropriate for the current meter and position in the bar, beams are automatically formed in Dorico for iPad when you input two or more adjacent notes or chords that are an eighth note (quaver) or shorter in duration.



Multiple beam groups in a 6/8 time signature

You can find options that control how notes are grouped into beam groups by default in each flow on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on page 145
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Beam groups

Notes are commonly beamed as regular groups to help reflect the meter. You can control how notes are beamed in multiple ways in Dorico for iPad.

- You can set beam grouping defaults in each flow in your project independently in **Notation Options**.
- You can set beam groups by controlling subdivisions of time signatures.
- You can beam notes together and split beams manually.

RELATED LINKS
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Beaming notes together manually on page 450
Secondary beams on page 460
Tuplets within beams on page 462
Rests within beams on page 462

Per-flow notation options for beam grouping

You can find options to control the default beam grouping rules in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

Dorico for iPad has sophisticated underlying rules for producing beam groupings that follow the accepted conventions of music theory, including crossing the half-bar in time signatures like 4/4, beaming all eighth notes together in 3/4, beam groups that include tuplets, and many other situations.

There are alternative conventions for some of these rules, which you can change for each flow in your project independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**. The available options also include how to handle secondary beam groups, stemlets, and beams over rests.

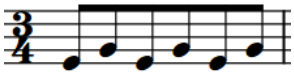
Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Secondary beams on page 460
Beam slants on page 453
Tuplets within beams on page 462
Rests within beams on page 462

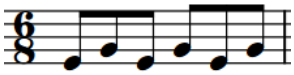
Beam grouping according to meters

According to accepted conventions, notes are beamed differently in different time signatures to make the meter clear and easily readable. In Dorico for iPad, default beam groupings are determined by time signatures.

Dorico for iPad has default beaming settings for common time signatures, based on general conventions and your chosen settings. For example, although the time signatures of 3/4 and 6/8 contain the same number of beats, they imply different meters and so are beamed differently. In 3/4, phrases of eighth notes are beamed together within each bar and phrases of other durations are beamed in quarter notes (crotchets) by default, but in 6/8, phrases are beamed in dotted quarter notes.

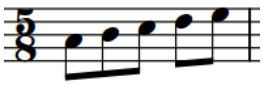


Default eighth note beam grouping in 3/4

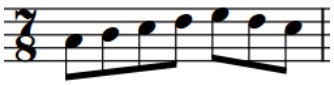


Default eighth note beam grouping in 6/8

Dorico for iPad groups and beams notes in irregular time signatures, such as 5/8 or 7/8, according to the most common practices for those time signatures.



Default beam grouping in 5/8



Default beam grouping in 7/8

For situations where you want to control the beat grouping in more detail, you can input a custom time signature with an explicit rhythmic subdivision. Dorico for iPad then automatically beams phrases according to this subdivision. For example, entering **[7]/8** into the time signatures popover means all seven eighth notes (quavers) are beamed together, whereas entering **[2+2+3]/8** subdivides the seven eighth notes into two, then two, then three.

NOTE

The duration of beam groups in Dorico for iPad depends on the beat grouping in the current time signature and your per-flow beam grouping settings in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 464
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 208
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Splitting beam groups

You can split beams into two beam groups at specific rhythmic positions. You can also split secondary beams within beamed groups.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads to the right of where you want to split beams. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Split the beam or secondary beam in one of the following ways:
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Beaming** > **Split Beam**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Beaming** > **Split Secondary Beam**.

RESULT

Beams/Secondary beams are split to the left of each selected note, but the notes either side of the split remain grouped if there are at least two beamed notes on each side that can be in a beam group.

TIP

- To unbeam the entire selection and give all notes in the group individual tails, you can make all notes unbeamed.
- You can change how beams and secondary beams are split by default in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**
- You can assign key commands for **Split Beam** and **Split Secondary Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Unbeaming notes on page 451
Beam groups on page 447
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Resetting beam grouping

You can remove all changes made to the beam grouping of notes and chords. This can also be useful if, for example, MusicXML files you have imported have incorrect beaming.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose beaming you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Beaming** > **Reset Beaming**.

RESULT

Beam grouping is reset to your default settings in **Notation Options** for the current flow and time signature.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Beaming notes together manually

You can beam notes together manually, including notes across barlines as well as system/frame breaks, for example, if you want to beam a phrase differently to how it is usually beamed in the current time signature.

Beams by default stay within bars and systems, so to have beams cross barlines, system breaks, and frame breaks, you must force the phrase to beam together.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to beam together. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Beaming** > **Beam Together**.

RESULT

The selected notes are beamed together, even if they cross barlines or system/frame breaks.

If there are notes either side of the new beam group that were previously beamed to part or all of your selection, they either beam together as separate beams, or appear unbeamed. This depends on how many notes are left either side in the bar, and on the beam grouping settings for the flow.

NOTE

- Even if part of the beamed group previously had a centered beam, the new beam is not centered.
- You can assign a key command for **Beam Together** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines on page 877
Centered beams on page 455
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448

Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 464

Unbeaming notes

You can separate all notes in a beamed group so that each note shows its own tail, for example, when fast rhythms have syllabic text settings.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to make unbeamed. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Beaming** > **Make Unbeamed**.

RESULT

The selected notes are unbeamed and show their own tails.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Make Unbeamed** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Changing the direction of partial beams

Dorico for iPad automatically inputs a partial beam if one is required. You can change on which side of stems individual partial beams appear.

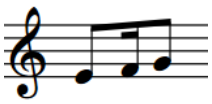
PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose partial beam direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial beam direction** in the **Beaming** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**
   - **Right**

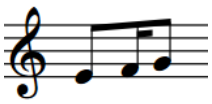
RESULT

The partial beam appears on the corresponding side of the stem.

EXAMPLE



Partial beam direction **Left**



Partial beam direction **Right**

Beam placement relative to the staff

The default staff-relative placement of beams is determined by the staff positions of the notes within the beamed group and their resulting stem directions.

This means that the note furthest from the middle line of the staff determines the placement of the beam, although there are exceptions to this rule and other considerations that can influence the staff-relative placement of beams.

Changing the staff-relative placement of beams involves changing the direction of the stems in the beam. Therefore, Dorico for iPad categorizes changing the staff-relative placement of beams as a stem change.

RELATED LINKS
Beam slants on page 453
Centered beams on page 455

Changing the staff-relative placement of beams

You can change the side of the staff on which beams appear by forcing the stem direction to change. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beamed phrases whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - **Stem** > **Force Stem Up**
   - **Stem** > **Force Stem Down**

   TIP

   You can also change the staff-relative placement of selected beams by pressing **F**.

RESULT

The beam appears on the side of the staff that corresponds to its forced stem direction. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Changing the property scope on page 128

Removing beam placement changes

You can undo changes to the staff-relative placement of beams in order to remove the stem direction change. This reverts selected beams to their default placement.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beamed phrases whose staff-relative placement change you want to remove. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Stem** > **Remove Forced Stem**.

RESULT

The selected beams revert to their default staff-relative placement.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

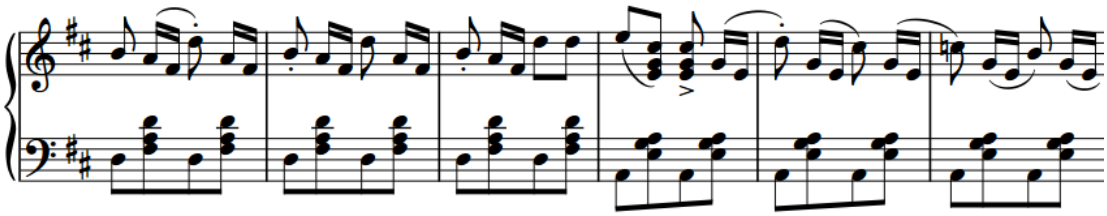
Beam slants

The slant of a beam controls how steeply the beam deviates from horizontal, according to the pitches of the notes within the beamed group.

- When the last note of the phrase is higher than the first, the beam slants upwards.
- When the last note of the phrase is lower than the first, the beam slants downwards.
- If the group makes a concave shape, where inner notes are closer to the beam than the outer ones at either end of the beam, then the beaming is horizontal by default.

  Beams are also horizontal if all the pitches are the same, or for certain patterns of repeated pitches.

When a beam is drawn inside the staff, each end of the beam, meaning the end of the stem of the note at either end of the beam, must be snapped to a staff line position. A beam line may sit on a staff line, be centered on a staff line, or hang from a staff line. Ted Ross describes these three positions as “sit”, “straddle”, and “hang” respectively in “Teach Yourself the Art and Practice of Music Engraving”.



A phrase containing multiple different beam slants and directions

The amount by which a beam slants is typically determined by the interval between the first and last note in the beamed group, provided the pattern of notes in the beam does not dictate a horizontal beam instead. Smaller intervals require a shallower slant and larger intervals require a steeper one.

However, the desired amount of slant is not the only factor that must be considered. The innermost beam line should not come too close to the innermost notehead, and the beam itself, if possible, should be positioned relative to the staff lines such that it does not form a wedge. A wedge is a tiny triangle formed by the horizontal staff line, the vertical stem, and the angled line of the slanted beam, which can be visually confusing.

Determination of the amount of slant for a beam is therefore a balancing act that must weigh up several factors: the desired amount of slant, valid snapping positions for each end of the beam, ensuring a minimum distance between the note closest to the beam and the innermost beam line, and avoiding wedges where possible.

In Dorico for iPad, you can change the beam slants of individual beams.

RELATED LINKS
Rests within beams on page 462

Changing beam slants

You can change the slants, or angles, of individual beams. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the square handles on the beam corners of the beams whose slants you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move beam handles upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Up Arrow** to move them upwards by 1/4 space per press.
   - To move beam handles a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move beam handles a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move beam handles a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.
3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 to move the other end of the selected beams.

RESULT

The slants of the selected beams are changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

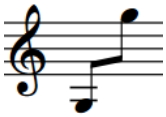
You can also use **Beam direction** in the **Beaming** group of the Properties panel to change the slant of beams. The property is available when you select noteheads within the beam group, and its options all ensure that beam ends are positioned correctly relative to staff lines.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

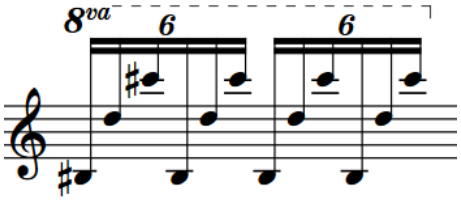
Centered beams

Centered beams are positioned between high and low notes within the same beamed group, typically drawn in the middle of the staff or between the staves of grand staff instruments.

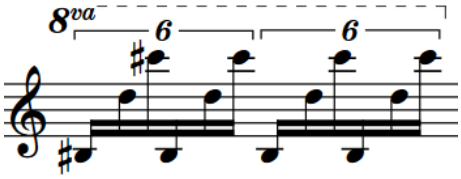
Centered beams are also known as “kneed” or “elbowed” beams due to their often angular shape.



When a beamed phrase spans a large pitch range, normal beams are often positioned very close to some notes in the phrase but very far from other notes in the phrase, making some stems very long. Having a centered beam in a phrase that spans a large pitch range can reduce the maximum distance between noteheads and the beam, but can also place the beam within the staff, which can obscure staff lines.



A phrase with high and low notes with default beaming



The same phrase with high and low notes, but with a centered beam

RELATED LINKS
Changing the staff-relative placement of beams on page 452
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456

Creating centered beams

You can make beams appear in the middle of staves, with high notes above the beam and lower notes below the beam. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

As this action requires changing the direction of some stems in order to appear correctly, it is located in the **Stem** submenu rather than the **Beaming** submenu.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beams you want to center. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Stem** > **Force Centered Beam**.

RESULT

Beams are centered between the notes in the selected beam groups. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If you select notes in multiple beams, each beam is centered separately. If you want to create a single centered beam, you can beam the notes in those beam groups together. You can do this both before and after centering the beams.

NOTE

- Dorico for iPad automatically angles the beam based on the shape of the phrase, but you can change the angles or slants of beams manually.
- You can assign a key command for **Force Centered Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Beaming notes together manually on page 450
Changing beam slants on page 454
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Removing centered beams

You can remove centered beams and revert beams to their default placements either above or below the phrase.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each centered beam that you want to revert to the default placement. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Stem** > **Remove Centered Beam**.

RESULT

The centered beams are removed.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Remove Centered Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Creating cross-staff beams

Cross-staff beams work in a similar way to normal beams, but allow a phrase that covers a wide pitch range to be shown on two staves. You can create cross-staff beams by inputting all notes in the phrase on one staff and crossing some notes to appear on another staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a phrase on one staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to cross to another staff. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only cross notes to other staves held by the same player.

2. Cross the notes to other staves in any of the following ways:
   - To cross notes to the staff above, press **N**.
   - To cross notes to the staff below, press **M**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Cross Staff** > **Cross to Staff Above**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Cross Staff** > **Cross to Staff Below**.

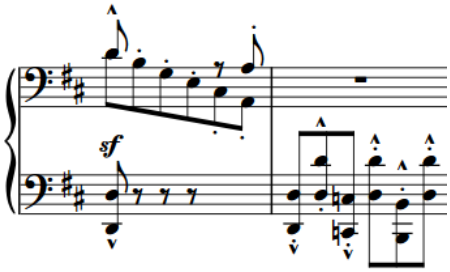
RESULT

The selected notes are shown on a different staff, with a cross-staff beam shown if the notes are part of a beam group. This does not change the staff to which the notes belong.

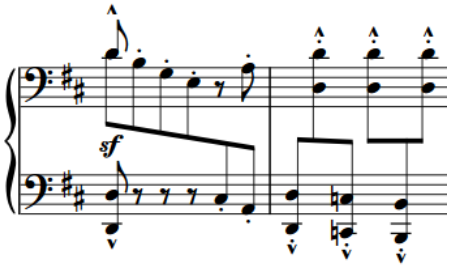
NOTE

- When crossing notes to a staff that already contains notes, the stem direction of the existing notes on the staff can change. This is due to how multiple voices at the same rhythmic position are handled. Therefore, you may have to change the stem direction of notes manually.
- You can reset notes to appear on their default staff by selecting them, then clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Cross Staff** > **Reset to Original Staff**.
- If you want notes to belong to a different staff, you can move them to another staff.

EXAMPLE



Notes shown on their original staves



Cross-staff beams created by crossing some notes to the other staff

RELATED LINKS

Moving notes/items to other staves on page 340
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices on page 908
Note positions in multiple-voice contexts on page 904
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Changing to optical cross-staff beam spacing

You can make the stems in cross-staff beams, rather than the noteheads, evenly spaced in each layout independently. This can make it easier to perceive the evenness of rhythmic spacing in cross-staff beams than when noteheads are evenly spaced.

PROCEDURE

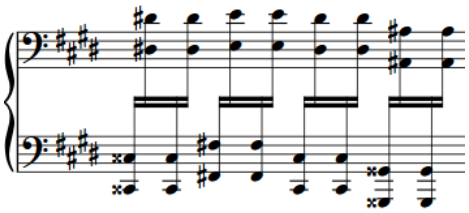
1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts that you want to change to optical cross-staff beam spacing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Note Spacing** in the category list.
4. Activate **Use optical spacing for beams between staves**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

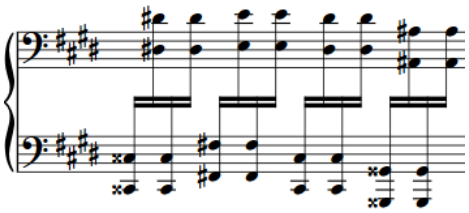
RESULT

Optical cross-staff beam spacing is enabled in the selected layouts.

EXAMPLE



Default spacing: The distance between noteheads is even.



Optical spacing for cross-staff beaming: The distance between stems is even.

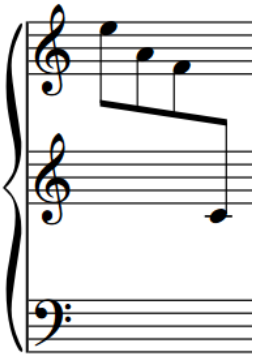
RELATED LINKS

Note spacing on page 393

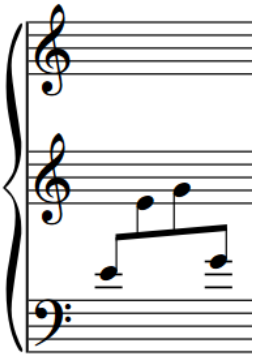
Cross-staff beam placement in multiple staves

When instruments have three or more staves, cross-staff beams can be placed in multiple ways. For example, the beam can be placed between the top and the middle staves, and also between the middle and bottom staves.

If a beam only crosses two staves, the cross-staff beam goes between those two staves.

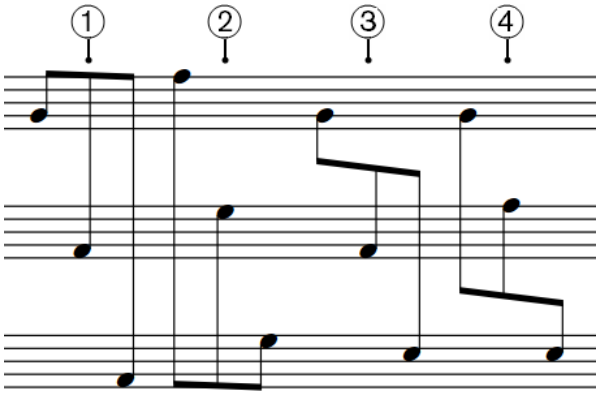


A cross-staff beam across the upper two staves on an instrument with three staves



A cross-staff beam across the lower two staves on an instrument with three staves

If a beam group contains notes on all three staves, the placement of the beam depends on the stem directions of the notes in each staff.



1 If all notes in the beam group are stem-up, the beam is placed above the top staff.

2 If all notes in the beam group are stem-down, the beam is placed below the bottom staff.

3 If notes are stem-down on the top staff and stem-up on the bottom two staves, the beam is placed between the top and middle staves.

4 If notes are stem-down on the top two staves and stem-up on the bottom staff, the beam is placed between the bottom and middle staves.

NOTE

If you have not specified stem directions, Dorico for iPad might place the beam above/below the staff into which the notes were originally input, even if the stem directions mean it should be placed between other staves.

If you want the beam to be placed between specific staves, you can change the stem directions of notes in the beam group.

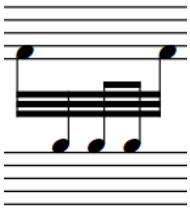
RELATED LINKS

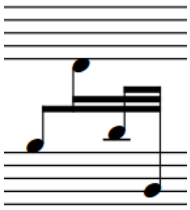
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821

Beam corners

Beam corners can occur when a change of stem direction within a beam is combined with a break in the secondary beam group. This can be at the end of a subdivision or at a change in rhythmic speed.

Beam corners do not follow accepted rules regarding the order and rhythmic meaning of secondary beams, and can be confusing for the reader.





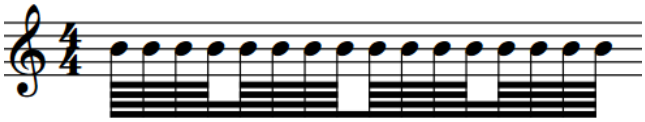
Dorico for iPad avoids beam corners by analyzing the pitches and stems within a phrase, and implementing stem directions that avoid a beam corner.

Secondary beams

Secondary beams are the lines that are added between the primary beam and the notehead as the rhythmic division gets smaller.

The primary beam is the outermost beam line that joins all of the notes in the beamed group. Depending on the durations of the notes in the beamed group, the primary beam may in fact be two or more lines; that is, for notes of a 16th or shorter in duration.

Secondary beams are additional beam lines that join only some of the notes in the group, creating subdivisions of the beam in order to make the metrical groupings of the beam clearer.



A phrase of 64th notes, with secondary beams subdivided to show 16th and eighth note groups

You can set per-flow options for splitting secondary beams and their appearance on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Rests within beams on page 462
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Changing the number of beam lines in secondary beams

You can change the number of beam lines shown in secondary beams individually, independently of your default setting for the current flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes to the right of where you want to change the number of secondary beaming lines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Optional: If any of the notes you selected do not immediately follow existing splits in the secondary beam, split the secondary beams in any of the following ways:

- In the Properties panel, activate **Split secondary beam** in the **Beaming** group.

  NOTE

  The **Beaming** group is only shown in the Properties panel if your selection only contains notes.

- In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Beaming** > **Split Secondary Beam**.

3. In the Properties panel, select the note value that corresponds to the number of beam lines you want shown from the **Split secondary beam** menu.

RESULT

The number of beam lines shown immediately to the left of each selected note is changed.

NOTE

- The number of beam lines shown at a split in the secondary beam cannot be the same or greater than the number of beam lines in the secondary beam. For example, if you split a secondary beam containing 64th notes, the maximum number of beam lines shown at the split in that beam is three, the equivalent of 32nd notes.
- You can change the default number of secondary beam lines shown in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Resetting changes to the number of secondary beam lines

You can reset any changes you have made to the number of beam lines shown in secondary beams and return them to their default appearance.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes to the right of where you want to reset the number of secondary beam lines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Reset your changes to the number of secondary beam lines in any of the following ways:
   - In the Properties panel, deactivate **Split secondary beam** in the **Beaming** group.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Beaming** > **Reset Beaming**.

RELATED LINKS

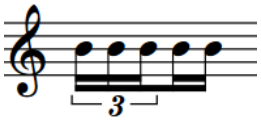
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Tuplets within beams

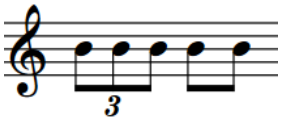
Tuplets that contain notes that produce beams, such as eighth notes, are beamed together. However, special beam grouping rules apply to tuplets within beams that also contain non-tuplet notes.

The default setting for a tuplet in a beamed group with secondary beams is to split the secondary beam and to show the tuplet with a bracket. The primary beam is not split. If necessary, you can hide/show tuplet brackets individually.

The default setting for a tuplet in a beamed group with only a primary beam is to separate the tuplet entirely. However, you can change this setting on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.



16th note triplet beamed together with non-tuplet 16th notes



Eighth note (quaver) triplet beamed separately from non-tuplet eighth notes

RELATED LINKS
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448
Tuplets on page 874
Tuplet brackets on page 878
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 881
Hiding/Showing tuplet brackets on page 879

Rests within beams

There are different conventions for how beams interact with rests, including whether beams should extend over rests or split at rests.

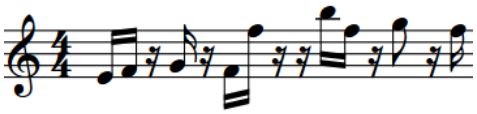
You can change how primary and secondary beams interact with rests in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448
Beam slants on page 453
Notation Options dialog on page 136

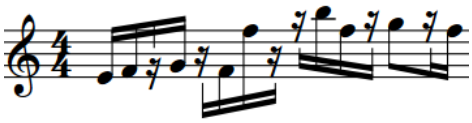
Stemlets

Stemlets are short stems that extend from beams to rests within beam groups. They can help make music easier to read, as they help to maintain a regular pattern of stems within beams.

In the examples, beaming all notes and rests together to show the boundaries of quarter note (crotchet) beats makes the syncopation of the notes easier to read. The stemlets on the rests help make clear where within the quarter note beats each note occurs.



A syncopated phrase without stemlets



The same phrase with stemlets

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot add stemlets or change where they are shown. However, stemlets are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

RELATED LINKS
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448

Fanned beams

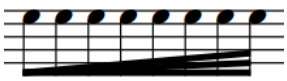
Fanned beams show either an *accelerando* or *rallentando* by having multiple beam lines either converging on, or diverging from, a single beam line at the other end. Fanned beams are also known as “feathered beams”.

A single fanned beam can have multiple changes of direction within it.

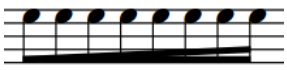
The grouping can use either two or three beams, with three beams indicating a greater change of speed than two beams. The slowest part of the phrase is where the beams converge, and the fastest is where the beams are the most spread out.

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot create fanned beams or change their direction. However, fanned beams are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

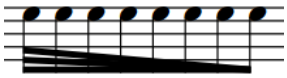
EXAMPLE



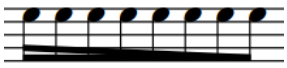
Fanned beam accelerando with three lines



Fanned beam accelerando with two lines



Fanned beam rallentando with three lines

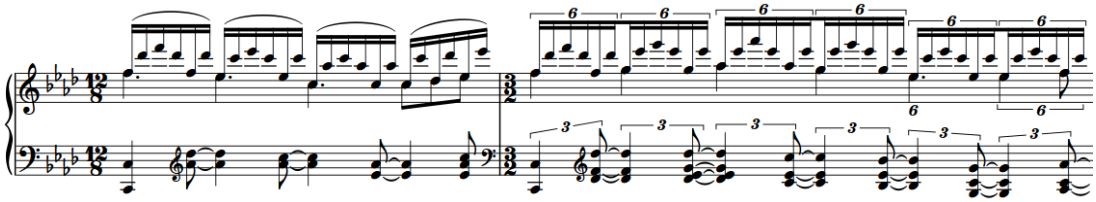


Fanned beam rallentando with two lines

Note and rest grouping

There are generally accepted conventions for how notes and rests of different durations are notated and grouped in different contexts and meters. In Dorico for iPad, notes are automatically notated to fit within bars and are grouped according to your per-flow settings.

Depending on the prevailing time signature, there can be many different ways to beam notes together. For example, you might want to beam all notes in the bar together in time signatures that cannot be divided in half and are often not divided at all, such as 3/4.



A passage containing different meters. Notes are grouped and beamed differently in the different meters, and notes that cross beats and barlines are automatically shown as tied notes.

Tied notes are affected by your note and rest grouping settings, as there are different conventions for how notes within tie chains should be divided to indicate significant beat boundaries within bars, and in which contexts they can cross beat boundaries.

Similar options apply to dotted notes, which are often notated as a single dotted note if they start at the beginning of bars, but as a tie chain that shows significant beat boundaries in the bar if they start part-way through bars.

TIP

You can change the default note grouping and beam grouping settings for your project on the **Note Grouping** and **Beam Grouping** pages in **Notation Options**.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS

Beaming on page 447
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 448
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 153

Creating custom beat groupings for meters

If your music requires a different beat grouping for a particular meter than the default setting for that time signature, you can specify your preferred beat grouping within the time signature. You can choose whether or not the time signature shows this custom beat grouping.

NOTE

The duration of beam groups in Dorico for iPad depends on the beat grouping in the current time signature and your per-flow beam grouping settings in **Notation Options**. For example, entering **[1+1+1+1]/4** into the time signatures popover inputs a time signature with four quarter

note (crotchet) groups. Because this creates a time signature with a half-bar, beam grouping options for time signatures with a half-bar apply.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature with custom beat grouping.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico for iPad to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
3. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-M**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
4. Enter the division you want in square brackets into the popover.

   For example, to divide a 7/8 time signature into 2+3+2, enter **[2+3+2]/8** into the popover. To divide a 5/4 time signature into 2+3 rather than 3+2, enter **[2+3]/4** into the popover.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The time signature specified is input and beam and beat grouping in subsequent bars follows the division you specified.

TIP

You can change the appearance of numerators in individual time signatures so that they show a single number or beat groups.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 136
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Time signatures popover on page 205
Time signature styles on page 862
Changing the numerator style of time signatures on page 863
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 153

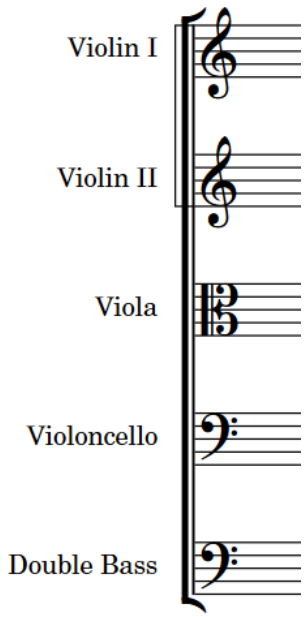
Brackets and braces

Brackets and braces are thick straight and curved lines in the left-hand margin that show instrument groupings.

Brackets

A bracket is a thick black line, the width of a beam, that groups staves together, most commonly according to instrument family. It often has winged ends that point inwards towards the score.

It is always positioned directly to the left of a systemic barline. If secondary brackets are used in addition to a bracket, they are positioned further away from the start of the system to allow space for the bracket.



An example of a bracket, connecting instruments in the string family. A sub-bracket connects the two violin lines.

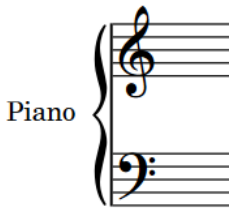
In Dorico for iPad, barlines join the same staves that are joined by brackets and braces, meaning that bracketed groups of staves and braced pairs of staves appear with barlines extending across the group.

Braces

A brace is a wavy or curly line that joins multiple staves belonging to the same instrument, usually a grand staff instrument such as the piano or harp. If necessary, a brace can extend to three or more staves, although two is most common.

The brace is also sometimes used instead of a sub-bracket to show groupings of identical instruments within a family whose staves are joined by a bracket.

It is positioned outside the systemic barline, and if used in place of a sub-bracket, outside of the bracket as well.



A brace connecting two piano staves

NOTE

- Staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously. Therefore, braced staves are excluded from bracketed groups. They also cannot show sub-brackets or sub-sub-brackets.
- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together.
- Blank staves can only show brackets/braces when they are shown after final flows. You cannot show brackets/braces on blank staves in music frames.

RELATED LINKS
Barlines across staff groups on page 432
Player groups on page 93
Adding player groups on page 94
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 468
Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type on page 467
System objects on page 811

Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type

You can change which staves are included in brackets by changing the ensemble type for each layout independently, for example, if a part layout containing all percussion players requires different bracketing than used for percussion staves in the full score layout.

The default setting is **Orchestral**. We recommend that you change this setting for projects containing small ensembles.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the ensemble type for bracket grouping.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Brackets and Braces** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Ensemble type**:
   - **No brackets**
   - **Orchestral**
   - **Small ensemble**

- **Wind band**
- **Big band**
- **British brass band**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default bracket grouping is changed in the selected layouts.

TIP

- There are further options for bracketing on the **Brackets and Braces** page, such as hiding/showing brackets when there is only a single instrument in the bracket group and hiding/showing braces when only a single staff is shown.
- You can also input custom bracket/brace grouping for specific staves, independently of the bracket grouping setting in the layout. However, you cannot change brackets/braces on blank staves.

RELATED LINKS

Barlines across staff groups on page 432
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 379

Brackets according to ensemble type

In Dorico for iPad, default staff grouping is determined by the ensemble type chosen for each layout. This affects which staves are bracketed together and joined by barlines.

The following ensemble types are available on the **Brackets and Braces** page in **Layout Options**:

No brackets

All staves appear separately, with no brackets. Grand staff instruments are still shown with braces.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from **Solo** and small **Jazz** project templates.

Orchestral

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument family. For example, adjacent string instruments are bracketed together separately from adjacent woodwind instruments. However, vocal staves are not joined by barlines.

This is the default setting for all layouts in new projects and projects started from **Orchestral**, **Choral and Vocal**, and **Concert band** project templates, and for custom score and part layouts in projects started from all other project templates.

Small ensemble

All staves in the project are bracketed together, regardless of their instrument family, excluding braced staves.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from **Chamber** and **Pit band** project templates.

Wind band

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument type. For example, Flute 1 and Flute 2 are bracketed together, but separately from the other woodwind instruments.

Big band

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument family, except for brass instruments, which are all bracketed according to their instrument type.

Rhythm section instruments are bracketed together.

Percussion and timpani are bracketed together.

British brass band

Brass instruments are bracketed according to their instrument type, except for horns and trumpets, which are bracketed together.

Any other instruments in the score are bracketed according to their instrument family.

Percussion and timpani are bracketed separately.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from the **Big band** project template.

NOTE

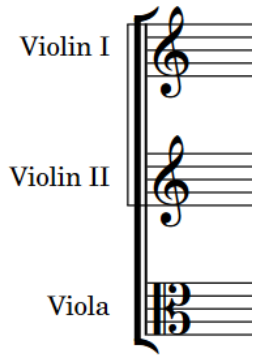
- Staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously. Therefore, braced staves, such as the piano and other grand staff instruments, are excluded from brackets. They also split brackets if they are placed within a bracketed group.
- By default, there must be at least two adjacent instruments to show a bracket. You can choose to show brackets on single instruments in each layout independently on the **Brackets and Braces** page in **Layout Options**.
- Vocal staves are never joined by barlines, even when bracketed together.
- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Project template categories on page 44
System objects on page 811

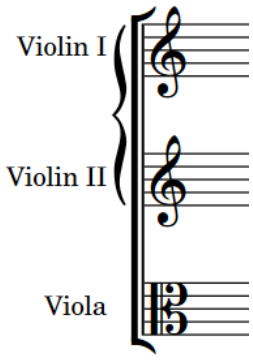
Secondary brackets

Secondary brackets are a second level of staff grouping. They are positioned to the left of brackets and allow you to mark groups of staves within a bracketed group. In Dorico for iPad, secondary brackets can appear as a brace or as a sub-bracket.

By default, secondary brackets appear as sub-brackets: thin lines with square corners that extend beyond the bracket. You can change the appearance of secondary brackets and hide/show them for adjacent identical instruments in bracketed groups in each layout independently.



Secondary bracket as a sub-bracket



Secondary bracket as a brace

NOTE

You cannot show sub-sub-brackets in addition to braces, you can only show sub-sub-brackets in addition to sub-brackets.

Hiding/Showing secondary brackets

You can hide/show secondary brackets for adjacent identical instruments in bracketed groups in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show secondary brackets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Brackets and Braces** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Instruments of the same kind within a bracketed group**:
   - **Use secondary brackets**
   - **No secondary brackets**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Secondary brackets are shown in the selected layouts when you choose **Use secondary brackets**, and hidden when you choose **No secondary brackets**.

Showing secondary brackets as sub-brackets/braces

Secondary brackets extend beyond brackets, allowing you to mark groups of staves within a bracketed group. You can show secondary brackets as either braces positioned outside the bracket or as sub-brackets in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the appearance of secondary brackets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Brackets and Braces** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Secondary bracket appearance**:
   - **Brace**
   - **Sub-bracket**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The appearance of all secondary brackets in the selected layouts is changed.

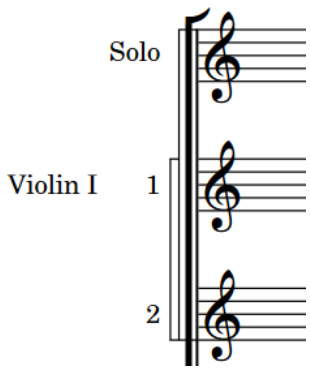
NOTE

Because you cannot show sub-sub-brackets in addition to braces, sub-sub-brackets are not shown in layouts where sub-brackets appear as braces.

Sub-sub-brackets

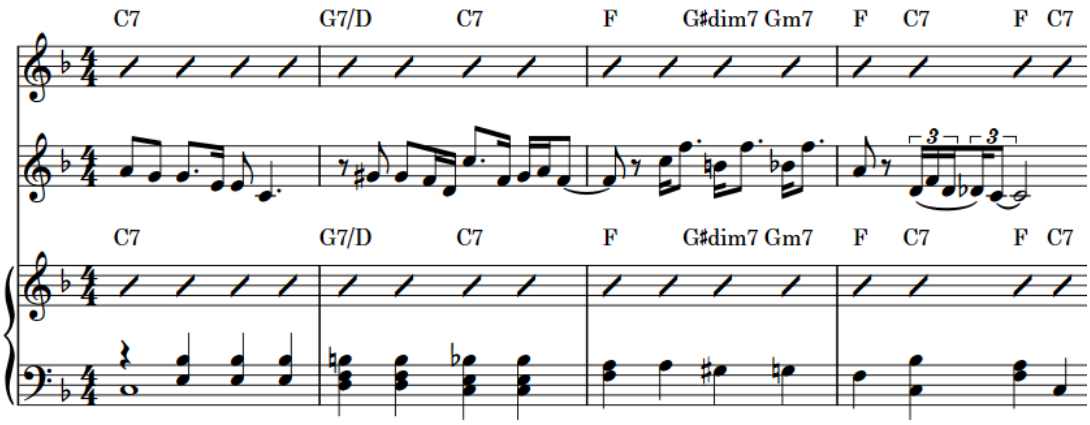
Sub-sub-brackets are a tertiary level of staff grouping with the same design as sub-brackets. They are positioned outside of both brackets and sub-brackets, allowing you to mark groups of staves within bracketed and sub-bracketed groups. Sub-sub-brackets can only appear as brackets in Dorico for iPad.

Sub-sub-brackets cannot extend beyond their sub-bracket and cannot be shown on staves with a brace as either the primary or secondary group.



Chord symbols

Chord symbols describe the vertical harmony of the music at a specific moment. They are frequently used in jazz and pop music, where players often improvise around chord progressions.



Chord symbols shown above slashes on the Clarinet and Piano staves to help the players improvise around the notated Cornet melody.

In Dorico for iPad, chord symbols exist globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions by default. This means that you only have to input chord symbols once, but they can appear above multiple or no staves as required. However, in some circumstances it is necessary to show different chord symbols for different players at the same rhythmic position. In such cases, you can input local chord symbols.

You can hide/show chord symbols project-wide above specific instrument staves, including if multiple instruments belong to the same player, and in different layouts. You can also show chord symbols only within chord symbol/slash regions and hide/show individual chord symbols.

If you have input chord symbols but no players in the current layout are set to show them, they are indicated by signposts.

Depending on the style of music, there are different conventions regarding how to present chord names.

Dorico for iPad provides a single default chord symbol appearance preset that applies to all chord symbols.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for chord symbols on page 232
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474
Chord diagrams on page 480
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332

Chord components

Chord symbols consist of a root and a quality, with intervals, alterations, and an altered bass note included if required.

Root

The root note of the chord, expressed either as a note name or as a specific degree of a scale.

Quality

Defines the type of chord, such as major, minor, diminished, augmented, half-diminished, or with added note, such as six or nine.

Interval

Chord symbols can include one or more added intervals, such as a major seventh or ninth. Intervals in chord symbols are also known as “extensions”.

Alterations

Define notes in chords that are different to what is normally expected of that chord. For example, a sharpened fifth, flattened ninth, suspensions, or omissions.

Altered bass note

A chord symbol has an altered bass note if the lowest pitch of a chord is not its root note, such as Cm7♭5/E♭.

Positions of chord symbols

In layouts where chord symbols are shown, they are positioned either above all instrument staves set to show chord symbols or only above the top staff in each system.

By default, chord symbols are centered horizontally on the middle of the front notehead in the first voice column at their rhythmic position.

NOTE

The front notehead is the notehead on the correct side of the stem at that rhythmic position.

Alignment of chord symbols relative to notes and chords

You can change whether chord symbol text is left-aligned above the notehead, center-aligned above the notehead, or right-aligned above the notehead, although right-aligned typically produces unclear results.

You can change the horizontal alignment of individual chord symbols by activating **Alignment** in the **Chord Symbols** group of the Properties panel and selecting an option from the menu.

Alignment of chord symbols across the system

Chord symbols are aligned at the same vertical position across the width of the system by default.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474
Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts on page 475
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Chord symbol regions on page 476

Hiding/Showing chord symbols

You can hide/show chord symbols above particular staves or only within chord symbol/slash regions project-wide on a per-player basis. By default, chord symbols appear above rhythm section instrument staves, such as keyboards, guitars, and bass guitars.

Any player on whose staff you input chord symbols is automatically set to show chord symbols for all instruments in the current layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to hide/show chord symbols.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - To show chord symbols above all instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show for All Instruments**.
   - To show chord symbols only above rhythm section instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show for Rhythm Section Instruments**.
   - To show chord symbols only in chord symbol/slash regions on instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Chord Symbol and Slash Regions**.
   - To hide chord symbols above all instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Hide for All Instruments**.

RESULT

Chord symbols are hidden/shown above the corresponding instrument staves held by the selected player, depending on the layouts in which chord symbols are shown for that player in your project.

TIP

- You can choose to show chord symbols only once at the top of each system in each layout independently.
- You can also hide/show individual chord symbols in layouts where chord symbols are shown by selecting them and activating **Hidden** in the **Chord Symbols** group of the Properties panel. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden chord symbol. However, signposts are not printed by default.

  You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text objects, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Inputting chord symbols on page 237
Chord symbol regions on page 476
Signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 481
Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves on page 475
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts

You can hide/show chord symbols in different types of layouts. By default, chord symbols appear in all applicable layouts for rhythm section instruments.

NOTE

If chord symbols are hidden for all instruments in the current layout, signposts are shown above the top staff.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - To show chord symbols for the selected player in all layouts, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Full Score and Parts**.
   - To show chord symbols for the selected player only in full score/custom score layouts and not in part layouts, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Full Score Only**.
   - To show chord symbols for the selected player only in part layouts and not in full score/custom score layouts, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Parts Only**

Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves

You can choose to show chord symbols above all instrument staves set to show chord symbols or only above the top staff in each system in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** ☰ and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of chord symbols.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** in the category list.
4. In the **Chord Symbols** section, choose one of the following options for **Show chord symbols**:
   - **Above specific players' staves**
   - **Above top staff of system**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical position of chord symbols is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting chord symbols on page 237
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474

Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts on page 475
Chord symbol regions on page 476

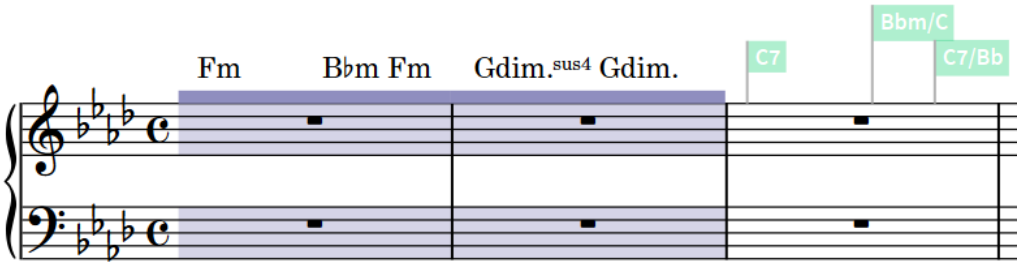
Chord symbol regions

Chord symbol regions specify passages where you want to show chord symbols. They are particularly useful for players and layouts that do not need chord symbols for most of the project but have improvisation sections that require chord symbols to be shown.

Chord symbol regions allow you to show chord symbols only where players require them, instead of showing chord symbols throughout the project and manually hiding the ones you do not want to show.

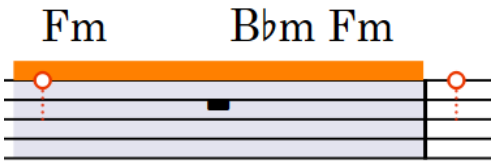
When you input chord symbol regions in Dorico for iPad, the corresponding players are automatically set to show chord symbols in chord symbol/slash regions. This is because it is common to use both slashes and chord symbols to aid players in improvisation sections. Any chord symbols outside chord symbol/slash regions are automatically hidden and are indicated by signposts.

By default, chord symbol regions are highlighted with a solid colored line above the top staff line and a colored background. As you zoom out, the colored backgrounds become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide and show them.



Chord symbol region followed by chord symbol signposts after the end of the chord symbol region

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



Handles on a selected chord symbol region

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474
Slash regions on page 754
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332

Hiding/Showing the root and quality of chord symbols

You can hide the root and quality of chord symbols if they follow another chord symbol with the same root and quality, but have a different altered bass note.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose root and quality you want to hide. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hide root and quality** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The root and quality of the selected chord symbols are hidden when the checkbox is activated, and shown when the checkbox is deactivated.

Transposing chord symbols

You can transpose chord symbols after you have input them, independently of any notes.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad automatically shows the appropriate chord symbols for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbols you want to transpose.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Transpose** to open the **Transpose** dialog.
3. Adjust the parameters required for your transposition, such as interval and quality.

   TIP

   - We recommend using the **Calculate interval** section to determine your required settings, for example, if you want to transpose from G♭ major to G major.
   - Different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, if you want to set your transposition parameters manually, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected chord symbols are transposed.

RELATED LINKS

Transpose dialog on page 187
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 101
Respelling chord symbols on page 478

Respelling chord symbols

You can change the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols for transposing instruments, for example, to choose a simpler enharmonic equivalent spelling. This changes the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols in all transposing layouts and for all instruments with the same transposition.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open a layout with the transposition for which you want to respell chord symbols.

   For example, to respell a chord symbol for all instruments in B♭, open the part layout for an instrument in B♭.

2. Select the chord symbol you want to respell.
3. Press **Return** to open the chord symbols popover for the selected chord symbol.

   The existing entry for the chord symbol is shown inside the popover.

4. Change the root name of the chord, but leave other details as they were, such as quality, interval, or alterations.

   For example, change just the root of D♭maj13 from **Db** to **C#**.

RESULT

The spelling of the chord symbol is changed in transposing layouts for all instruments with the same transposition. For example, changing the spelling of a chord symbol for a Clarinet in B♭ also changes the spelling of that chord symbol in the part layout for a Trumpet in B♭.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbols popover on page 232
Transposing chord symbols on page 477
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 101

Showing chord symbols as modes

You can show individual chord symbols as their modal equivalent if one exists for that chord symbol.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols you want to show as a mode. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show as mode** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Select the mode you want from the menu.

RESULT

The selected chord symbols are respelled according to the selected mode. This does not affect the notes included in the chord symbols.

Resetting the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols

You can remove enharmonic spelling overrides for chord symbols you have respelled and return them to their default spelling. You can remove overrides for instruments with a single transposition only, such as instruments in B♭, or for all instrument transpositions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbol whose spelling you want to reset.
   - If you want to reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for a single instrument transposition only, select the chord symbol on a staff belonging to an instrument with that transposition. For example, select it on the staff of any instrument in B♭ to reset the chord symbol for all instruments in B♭.
   - If you want to reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for all instrument transpositions, select the chord symbol on any staff that belongs to a transposing instrument.
2. Press **Return** to open the chord symbols popover for the selected chord symbol.

   The existing entry for the chord symbol is shown inside the popover.
3. Reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol in any of the following ways:
   - To reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for instruments only with the selected transposition, enter **Opt-S** into the chord symbols popover.
   - To reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for all instrument transpositions, enter **Shift-Opt-S** into the popover.

RESULT

The enharmonic spelling of the selected chord symbol in transposing layouts is reset, either just for instruments with the specified transposition or for all transposing instruments.

Chord symbols imported from MusicXML

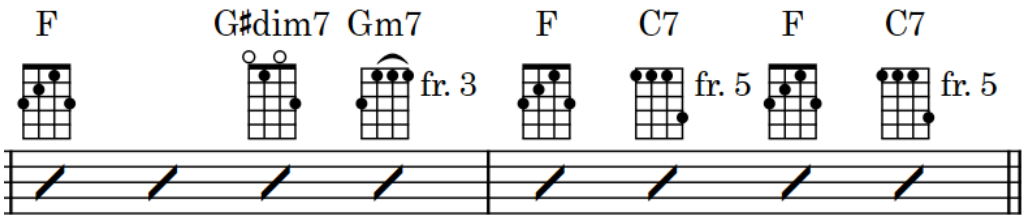
Chord symbols are imported from MusicXML files. However, chords that specify Neapolitan, Italian, French, German, Pedal, Tristan, and Other values for the kind of element are ignored during import, as there is no information to specify what notes these chord symbols are meant to describe.

Chord diagrams

Chord diagrams represent the pattern of strings and frets on fretted instruments and use dots to indicate the stopped finger positions required to produce the corresponding chord. This demonstrates the specific shape of chords in a compact way and is useful if a particular voicing is required.

In Dorico for iPad, chord diagrams are part of chord symbols, meaning you can show them below chord symbols wherever they are shown. You can show chord diagram shapes for any fretted instrument, including different tunings and string arrangements, such as guitar DADGAD tuning. This can be different to the instrument above which they appear, for example, if you want to show chord diagram shapes for standard guitar tuning above the bass staff.

You can also show chord diagrams for all chord symbols used in a flow in a grid at the start of the flow, as is common in lead sheets for pop and rock music. You can show used chord diagrams grids independently of showing them alongside chord symbols in the music.



A sequence of chord symbols with chord diagrams for banjo

The positions of stopped frets relative to each other are known as “shapes” in Dorico for iPad. Any playable shape can be re-used for other chords whose pitches match the shape, including any new chord diagram shapes you have created. This includes shapes being available for other instruments, other tunings, and other positions along the fretboard, so long as any open strings included in the shape can be played with a barré at other fret positions.

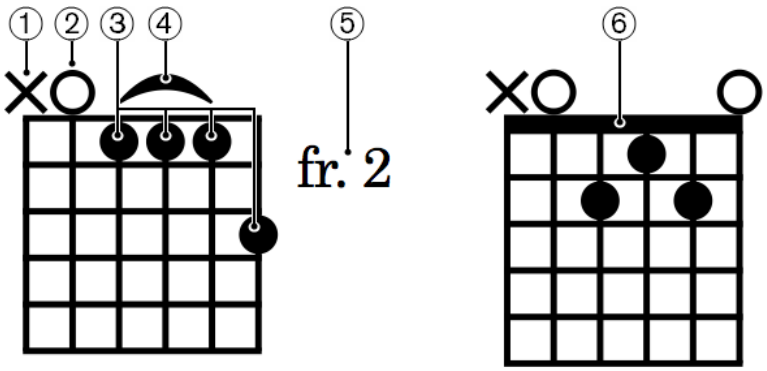
A single chord can appear with different chord diagram shapes for different instruments and tunings, as their open string pitches and the number of strings they have varies.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbols on page 472
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 481
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 482
Creating new chord diagram shapes on page 485

Chord diagram components

Chord diagrams use a combination of symbols, dots, and lines to convey the information about strings, fret positions, and finger positions that performers require to play the corresponding chord.



1 **Omitted string**

Indicates a string that must not sound.

2 **Open string**

Indicates a string that must sound but must be left open, that is, not stopped.

3 **Dots**

Indicate the fret positions where strings should be stopped, usually with left-hand fingers.

4 **Barré**

Indicates that multiple strings must be stopped with the same finger, usually pressed flat against the fretboard.

5 **Starting fret number**

Indicates the number of the highest fret in the chord diagram when this is not the first fret.

6 **Nut**

Represents the top of the fretboard, or “nut”, and appears in chord diagrams whose highest fret is the first fret.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the chord diagram shape on page 484

Hiding/Showing chord diagrams

You can hide/show chord diagrams for any type of fretted instrument alongside chord symbols. You can also change the fretted instrument or tuning for which chord diagrams are shown. However, you cannot show chord diagrams when chord symbols are hidden.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the chord symbols for which you want to show chord diagrams.
- Chord symbols are shown above the staves where you want to show chord diagrams.
- If you want to show chord diagrams using a custom fretted instrument tuning, you have imported the tuning or changed the tuning of a fretted instrument in the project accordingly.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to hide/show chord diagrams.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - To show chord diagrams, choose **Chord Diagrams** > **[Fretted instrument and tuning]**. For example, to show chord diagrams for a guitar in DADGAD tuning, choose **Chord Diagrams** > **DADGAD guitar tuning**.
   - To hide chord diagrams, choose **Chord Diagrams** > **No Chord Diagrams**.

RESULT

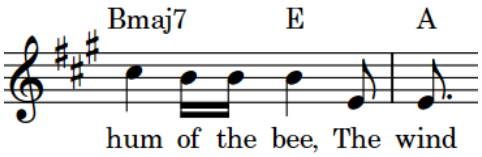
Chord diagrams are shown alongside all chord symbols for the selected player, as appropriate for the selected fretted instrument and tuning. Dorico for iPad shows the simplest shape available for each chord, that is, shapes with the most open strings, easy barré positions, or finger positions closest to the nut.

If no chord diagram is available for a chord symbol, an empty chord diagram is shown.

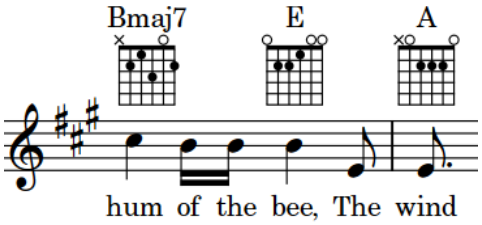
TIP

You can edit empty chord diagrams to save a new chord diagram shape.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbols shown but chord diagrams hidden



Chord diagrams shown (standard guitar tuning)

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 51
Inputting chord symbols on page 237
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 90
Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings on page 92
Importing fretted instrument tunings on page 92

Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids

You can hide/show grids that contain all chord diagrams used in each flow in each layout independently. By default, used chord diagrams grids display standard guitar tuning chord diagrams but you can change this to show chord diagrams for any fretted instrument or tuning.

Used chord diagrams grids are commonly used in lead sheets for pop and rock music. They are typically shown instead of chord diagrams alongside chord symbols in the music to save vertical space and so they can appear at a larger scale size, making the details of each chord diagram easier to read.

PREREQUISITE

- If you want to show chord diagrams using a custom fretted instrument tuning, you have imported the tuning or changed the tuning of a fretted instrument in the project accordingly.
- We recommend that you have input chord symbols and changed the shape of any chord symbols you want to appear with a specific voicing.

NOTE

It is customary not to show chord diagrams alongside chord symbols when showing a used chord diagrams grid, and you cannot change the chord diagram shape when chord diagrams are hidden.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show used chord diagrams grids at the start of flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** in the category list.
4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, activate/deactivate **Show chord diagrams used at start of flow**.
5. Optional: Change the settings for used chord diagrams grids as required.

   For example, you can change the fretted instrument tuning for chord diagrams in the grid, their scale size, and the distance between chord diagrams and/or rows of chord diagrams.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Chord diagrams for all chord symbols used in the flow are shown in a grid above the start of each flow in the selected layouts, and are positioned according to the settings for the selected layouts. If flow headings are shown, the used chord diagrams grid appears below them. The order of chord diagrams in the grid is determined by the order in which they first appear in the flow. Each different voicing appears as a separate chord diagram but each voicing appears only once in the grid.

If you input more chord symbols or change the voicing of existing chord diagrams, the used chord diagrams grids update automatically to include them.

NOTE

- Even if no chord symbols exist in a flow, vertical space for the used chord diagrams grid is added at the start of the flow.
- You cannot select or edit individual chord diagrams in used chord diagrams grids.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the margins of pages, music frames, and/or flow headings if required to accommodate used chord diagrams grids.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 90
Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings on page 92
Creating new chord diagram shapes on page 485
Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems on page 432
Changing page margins on page 372

Changing the chord diagram shape

You can change the chord diagram shape shown at individual rhythmic positions, for example, if you require a shape with a different voicing. Many chords have multiple playable shapes.

You can also apply your changes to all other instances of the same chord for instruments with compatible tunings.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord diagram whose shape you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only change the shape of a single chord diagram at a time.

2. Change the shape in any of the following ways:
   - To cycle through all the available shapes for the selected chord, press **Opt-Q** or click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Chord Diagrams** > **Cycle Chord Diagram**.
   - To open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog and see all the available shapes for the selected chord at once, press **Shift-Opt-Q** or **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Chord Diagrams** > **Show All Variants of Chord Diagram**.
3. Optional: In the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog, select the shape you want to use.

   TIP

   If the shape you require is not available, you can click **Edit**, which allows you to create a new shape.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
5. Optional: To apply the new shape to other instances of the same chord for instruments with compatible tunings, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Chord Diagrams** > **Copy Shape to Matching Chord Symbols**.

RESULT

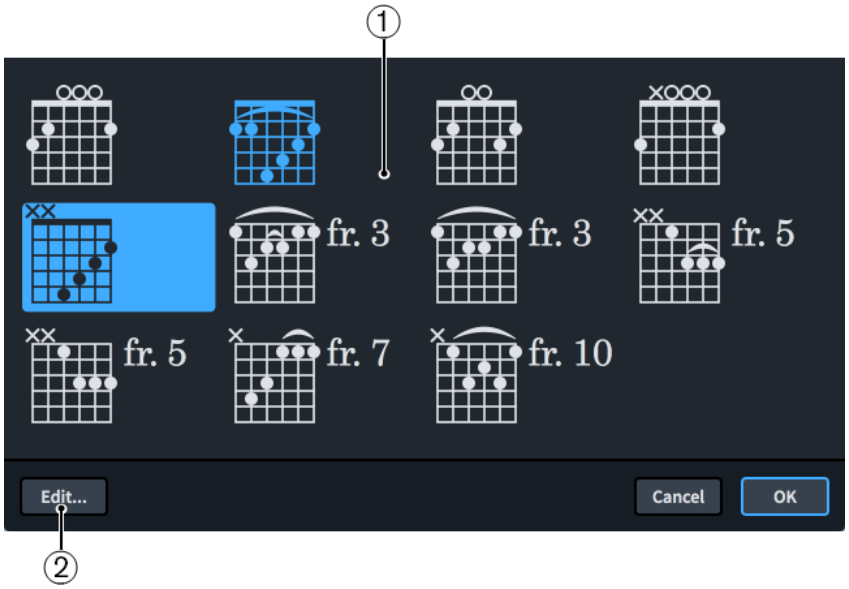
The shape shown for the selected chord diagram is changed. This also updates all other chord diagrams using the same fretted instrument tuning at the same rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Choose Chord Diagram dialog

The **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog allows you to view all available chord diagram shapes for the selected chord and select the one you want to use.

- You can open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog in Write mode by selecting a chord diagram and pressing **Shift-Opt-Q**.



The **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Available chord diagrams**

Displays all the valid chord diagram shapes for the selected chord and allows you to select a different shape to show at the selected rhythmic position. Shapes you have created yourself appear in a different color.

2 **Edit**

Opens the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog, which allows you to edit the shape of chord diagrams, including changing the number of frets shown, stopped fret positions, and the starting fret number.

Creating new chord diagram shapes

You can create new chord diagram shapes by editing an existing one, for example, if you want an alternative voicing for a chord or to show a barré. Your changes to existing chord diagram shapes are saved as a new shape, they do not overwrite the existing one.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot start new chord diagram shapes from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord diagram whose shape you want to edit.
2. Press **Shift-Opt-Q** to open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog.
3. Click **Edit** to open the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog.
4. Edit the shape and settings of the chord diagram as required.

For example, you can change open strings to omitted strings or change the stopped fret position on strings to change the corresponding string pitch.

5. Optional: If you want the shape to be available for chords with different start fret positions, activate **Chord may be moved along the neck**.
6. Click **Save**, then **Close**.

RESULT

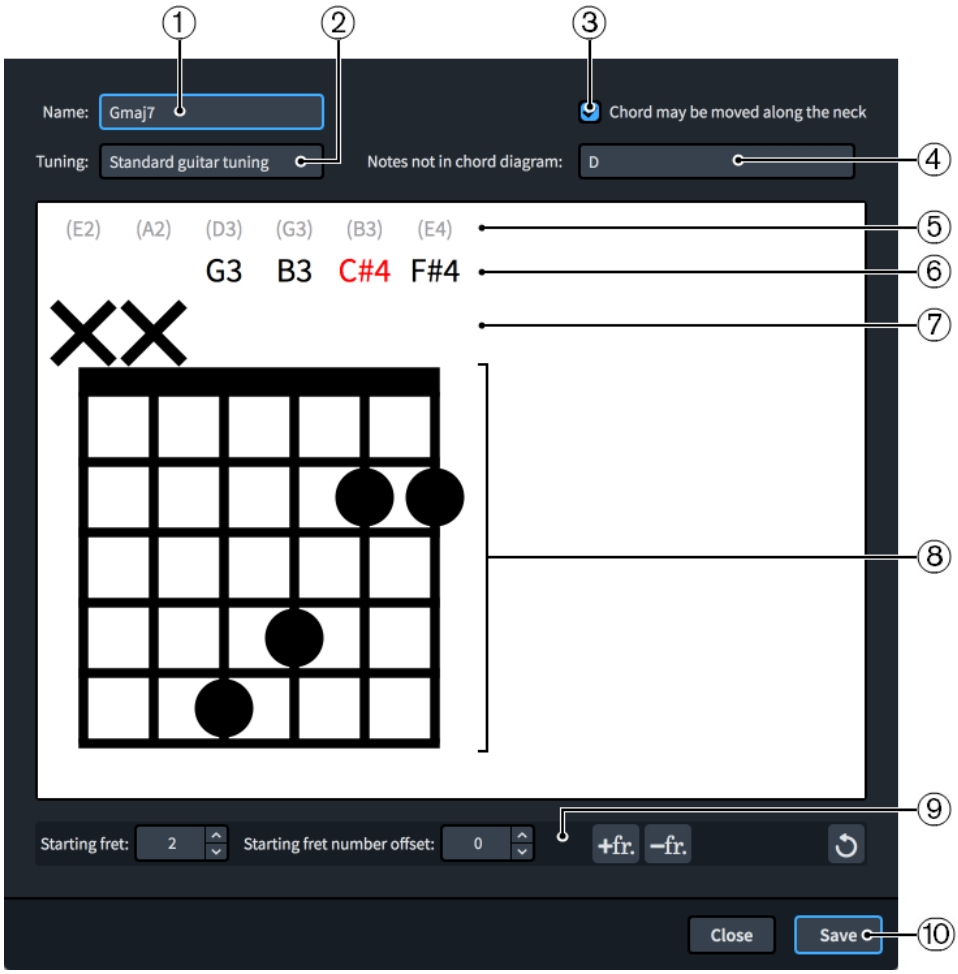
The new shape is saved and is used for the selected chord diagram. The new shape also becomes available for any other chord for which it is valid.

Edit Chord Diagram dialog

The **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog allows you to edit the shape of individual chord diagrams, including changing the number of frets shown, stopped fret positions, and the starting fret number.

You can open the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog in any of the following ways:

- In Write mode by opening the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog, selecting the chord diagram whose shape you want to edit, and clicking **Edit**.
- In Engrave mode by double-clicking a chord diagram, or selecting it and pressing **Return**.



The **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog contains the following options and sections:

1 Name

Displays the name of the chord whose chord diagram you are editing in the dialog. You cannot change this name.

2 **Tuning**

Displays the fretted instrument and tuning for the current chord diagram.

3 **Chord may be moved along the neck**

Allows you to specify whether or not the shape of the chord diagram can be reused at other fret positions, for example, by playing open strings with a barré at higher fret positions.

4 **Notes not in chord diagram**

Displays any pitches that are part of the chord but not currently included in the chord diagram.

5 **Open string pitch**

Displays the open pitch of the corresponding string for reference.

6 **Current string pitch**

Displays the current pitch of the corresponding string if it is open or stopped. If the pitch of a string is not part of the chord, the string pitch appears red.

7 **String status**

Displays the current usage status of the corresponding string and allows you to switch the status of individual strings between open and omitted by clicking in this row.

- **O**: Open string
- **X**: Omitted string
- **No symbol**: Stopped string

8 **Chord diagram shape editor**

Displays the current arrangement of stopped frets using dots, and allows you to change the chord diagram shape and move the stopped fret positions by clicking at the required positions. Each string can only have a single stopped fret position.

If two or more strings are stopped at the same fret, you can hide/show a barré by clicking any of the dots at that fret position.

9 **Action bar**

Contains options that allow you to edit and change the number of frets.

- **Starting fret**: Changes the fret number of the highest fret in the chord diagram.
- **Starting fret number offset**: Changes the offset of the starting fret number, for example, if you want the starting fret label to appear beside the second fret down the chord diagram in order to include a barré.
- **Add fret** : Adds a fret to the bottom of the chord diagram.
- **Remove fret** : Removes a fret from the bottom of the chord diagram.
- **Reset Chord Diagram** : Removes your changes to the chord diagram and resets it to its default shape.

10 **Save**

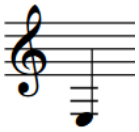
Saves the chord diagram shape and updates the selected chord diagram in the music area. The shape also becomes available as an alternative shape for other compatible chords.

Clefs

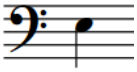
Clefs are the symbol at the start of every system that give the notes on the staff context; that is, the clef tells you which note of the scale applies to each line or space of the staff. To minimize the number of ledger lines required for notes, different clefs are typically used according to the register of instruments.

The common clefs are:

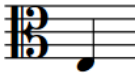
- Treble clef, or G clef, whose spiral shape centers around G, normally the G above middle C.
- The bass clef, or F clef, in which two dots are shown either side of the line corresponding to F, normally the F below middle C.
- The C clef, in which the center of the bracket to the right of the clef's thick vertical line is positioned on the line that corresponds to C, normally middle C. When positioned on the middle line of the staff, the C clef is known as the alto clef. When positioned on the second staff line from the top, the C clef is known as the tenor clef.



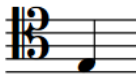
The E below middle C shown in a treble clef



The E below middle C shown in a bass clef



The E below middle C shown in a C (alto) clef



The E below middle C shown in a C (tenor) clef

In Dorico for iPad, notes are automatically positioned on staves according to the prevailing clef.

Initial clefs at the start of flows and systems appear full size, while mid-system clef changes are automatically scaled down.

Many instruments in Dorico for iPad have different types that show alternative clefs by default. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

NOTE

- You can only select clefs that you have input. You cannot select initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system.
- If you do not want to show any clef in any layout, you must input an invisible clef. You can also hide/show clefs according to the layout transposition.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 239
Clefs panel on page 241
Clefs with octave indicators on page 491
Instrument picker on page 53
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 490

General placement conventions for clefs

Clefs are placed at the start of every system, with a small gap between the start of the staff and the left edge of the clef. Their vertical placement must be precise, as this signifies which pitches are intended by the subsequent notes on the staff.

Clef changes that occur during a piece are usually smaller than the clefs shown at the start of each system. If clef changes occur at the start of a new system or page, a cautionary clef is shown at the end of the previous system to ensure the performer notices the change of clef.

Wherever possible, clef changes should not be positioned in the middle of tie chains. Changing the clef changes the position of the tied note on the staff, which could easily cause a performer to misread the tie as a slur and play two different notes. You can input clef changes in the middle of tie chains in Dorico for iPad, but we recommend that you position clef changes either before or after tie chains.

RELATED LINKS
Ties on page 839
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Showing clefs after grace notes on page 489

Showing clefs after grace notes

According to convention, clefs are positioned before grace notes so this is the default in Dorico for iPad. However, in some circumstances you might want to position clefs between grace notes and normal notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs you want to show after grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Clef** > **After Grace Notes**.

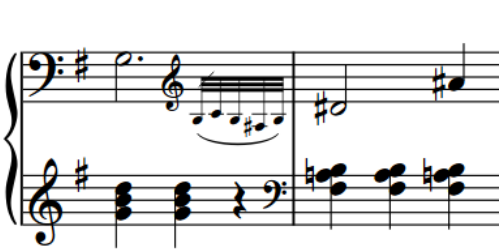
RESULT

The selected clefs are positioned between normal notes and grace notes.

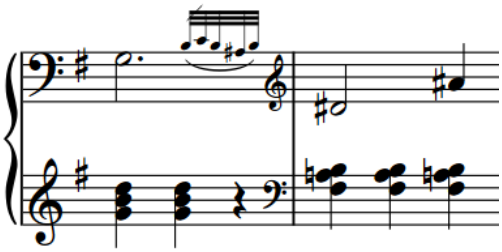
NOTE

You can reset the position of clefs relative to grace notes by selecting the clefs whose position you want to reset, then clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Clef** > **Reset Clef Position**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

EXAMPLE



Treble clef before grace notes



Treble clef after grace notes to align with bass clef

RELATED LINKS
General placement conventions for clefs on page 489
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions

You can show individual clefs only in layouts that are either concert or transposed pitch. For example, due to their transpositions, some instruments require clef changes in concert pitch scores to avoid excess ledger lines, but do not require those clef changes in their transposed pitch parts.

By default, all clefs appear in all layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs or signposts of clefs you want to hide/show according to the layout transposition. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show for transposition** in the **Clefs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Concert Pitch**
   - **Transposing Pitch**

RESULT

The selected clefs only appear in layouts with the corresponding transposition. In layouts where clefs are hidden, they are indicated by signposts.

Hidden clefs have no effect on note and staff spacing.

RELATED LINKS
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 101
Signposts on page 332
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 239

Changing the octave of clefs

You can change the octave transposition of individual clefs, for example, to accommodate different horn and bass clarinet transposition conventions. You can change the octaves of clefs in concert pitch and transposed pitch layouts independently.

PREREQUISITE

- If you want to change the octave of initial clefs, you have input clefs at the start of each flow or overridden the default clefs in the required layouts.
- You have opened a layout with the required transposition in the music area. For example, if you want to change the octave of clefs in concert pitch, you have opened a concert pitch layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs whose octave you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Octave shift** in the **Clefs** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The octave of the selected clefs is changed in all layouts with the same transposition. For example, **1** shifts clefs up one octave, and **-1** shifts clefs down one octave.

The pitches of notes on the staves of the selected clefs are adjusted automatically. For example, if you shift a clef up one octave, notes after the clef appear an octave lower than they do without the octave shift.

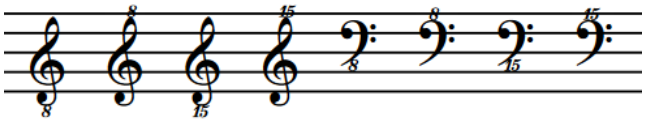
RELATED LINKS

Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators on page 492

Clefs with octave indicators

Clefs with octave indicators indicate that notes are played in a different register to the one notated. An octave indicator above the clef indicates that notes are played higher than notated, while an octave indicator below the clef indicates that notes are played lower than notated.

Of these clefs, only the treble clef 8 below is still commonly used for tenor vocal parts.



Traditionally, clef octave indicators were used as a reminder of transposing instruments; however, in more recent music, some composers use clef octave indicators as an alternative to octave lines for extended passages. Therefore, Dorico for iPad ignores clef octave indicators by default. However, transposing instruments are always transposed correctly automatically. For example, notes belonging to piccolo instruments are automatically notated an octave lower than their pitch in playback, regardless of whether they have a clef with an octave indicator. You can change whether Dorico for iPad respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

RELATED LINKS
Transposing instruments on page 78
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
Octave lines on page 493
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 239
Changing the octave of clefs on page 491

Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators

Traditionally, clef octave indicators were used as a reminder of transposing instruments; however, in more recent music, some composers use clef octave indicators as an alternative to octave lines for extended passages. You can change whether Dorico for iPad respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to respect/ignore clef octave indicators.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Clefs** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Clefs with octave indicators**:
   - **Ignore octave indicator**
   - **Respect octave indicator**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

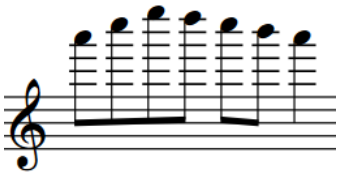
The handling of clefs with octave indicators is changed in the selected flows. When clef octave indicators are respected, the pitches of notes on staves with clefs with octave indicators are adjusted automatically. For example, notes with treble G clefs, octave above, appear an octave lower than they do when clef octave indicators are ignored.

RELATED LINKS
Transposing instruments on page 78
Changing the octave of clefs on page 491

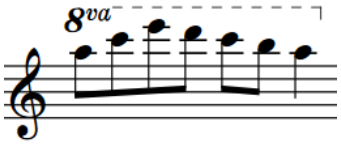
Octave lines

Octave lines indicate where notes are played higher/lower than they appear in the score or part. They are dashed or dotted horizontal lines with an italic numeral at the start. The numeral indicates the number of pitches by which the phrase is changed, such as 8 for one octave and 15 for two octaves.

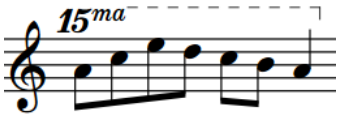
Octave lines that indicate notes are played higher than notated are placed above the staff, while octave lines that indicate notes are played lower than notated are placed below the staff.



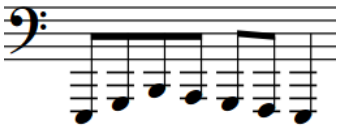
A treble clef phrase notated at pitch



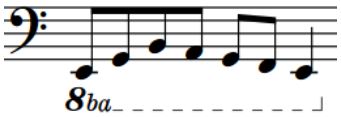
The treble clef phrase with an octave above line



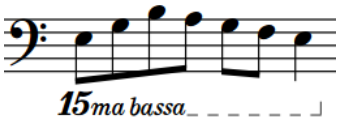
The treble clef phrase with a two octaves above line



A bass clef phrase notated at pitch



The bass clef phrase with an octave below line



The bass clef phrase with a two octaves below line

In Dorico for iPad, pitches are adjusted automatically when an octave line is present. You do not have to change the register of the notes within octave lines.

Octave lines should be horizontal, meaning they can take up significant vertical space, as octave lines are usually placed outside all other notations. However, they can be placed within slurs and tuplet brackets if the slur or tuplet bracket is longer than the octave line.

Octave lines can continue across system and page breaks. It is customary to show the numeral again at the start of each system as a reminder. Cautionary octave line numerals are usually parenthesized and the suffix is optional.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 239
Clefs with octave indicators on page 491
Lines on page 710

Positions of octave lines

By default, octave lines that indicate notes are played higher than written are placed above the staff, while octave lines that indicate notes are played lower than written are placed below the staff.

You can move octave lines to new rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move octave lines graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS
Octave lines in Engrave mode on page 495
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
Tucking index properties on page 495

Changing the alignment of octave line numerals relative to notes

You can change whether the left edge, center, or right edge of individual octave line numerals is aligned with the first note to which each octave line applies. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the octave lines whose numeral alignment relative to notes you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **L alignment** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Left**
   - **Center**
   - **Right**

RESULT

The alignment of the numerals of the selected octave lines is changed. For example, if you select **Right**, the right edge of the selected octave line numerals is aligned with the first noteheads to which the octave lines apply. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the position of octave line numerals relative to accidentals

You can change whether the numerals at the start of individual octave lines are positioned on noteheads or accidentals. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the octave lines whose numeral alignment relative to accidentals you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **L position** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Notehead**
   - **Accidental**

RESULT

The alignment of the numerals of the selected octave lines is changed. For example, if you choose **Accidental**, the octave line numerals are aligned with the accidental on the first noteheads to which the octave lines apply. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Octave lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each octave line has three square handles. You can use these handles to move the start/end of octave lines graphically, and to lengthen/shorten octave line hooks.

An octave line in Engrave mode

- The start handle moves the start of octave lines graphically. You can move this handle to the right/left. When using the keyboard, you can also move this handle upwards/downwards to move the whole octave line.
- The top end handle moves the end of octave lines graphically. You can move this handle to the right/left.
- The bottom end handle changes the length of the hook. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.

If octave lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322

Tucking index properties

The tucking index of notations determines their position relative to other notations in the vertical stacking order when multiple notations exist at the same rhythmic positions.

In most published music, the order in which items appear relative to each other is consistent. Dorico for iPad uses established conventions to determine the position and placement of notations automatically. For example, where slurs and tuplet brackets exist at the same positions, Dorico for iPad calculates their placement based on their relative lengths. If the slur is

longer than the tuplet bracket, the slur is placed outside the tuplet bracket; if the tuplet bracket is longer than the slur, the slur is placed inside the tuplet bracket.

However, rules for the order and placement of articulations, slurs, tuplets, and octave lines frequently vary, based on their lengths and musical context. Therefore, you can override the automatic order and manually change the order in which they appear in specific contexts.

To allow you this flexibility, slurs, octave lines, and tuplets all have **Tucking index** properties in their respective Properties panel groups.

NOTE

- Articulations are considered alongside these notations when calculating the stacking order, but do not have a tucking index property.
- Playing techniques have a separate tucking index that allows you to change the vertical order of playing techniques relative to each other.

A **Tucking index** value of **0** positions items closest to notes. The higher the number, the further away the item is positioned from notes in the stacking order.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the vertical order of playing techniques on page 701

Changing the vertical stacking order of octave lines

You can change the placement of individual octave lines relative to other objects in the vertical stack by changing their tucking index value. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

According to general convention, octave lines are placed outside all other objects, but there are some instances where they can go inside other objects, for example, inside a slur if that slur is longer than the octave line.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the octave lines whose placement in the vertical stack you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tucking index** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

   0 positions items closest to notes. The higher the number, the further the item is positioned from notes in the stacking order.

RESULT

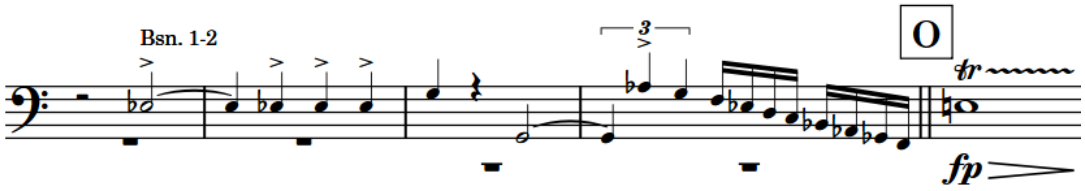
The placement of the selected octave lines in the vertical stacking order is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Cues

Cues are passages of music shown in instrumental parts that are played by a different player, usually to help orientate players before entries or solos following a significant passage of rests.

Cues can also be used to assist with co-ordination or tuning between players, or to indicate material that the player might be asked to double.



A cue in a timpani part showing music from the bassoons

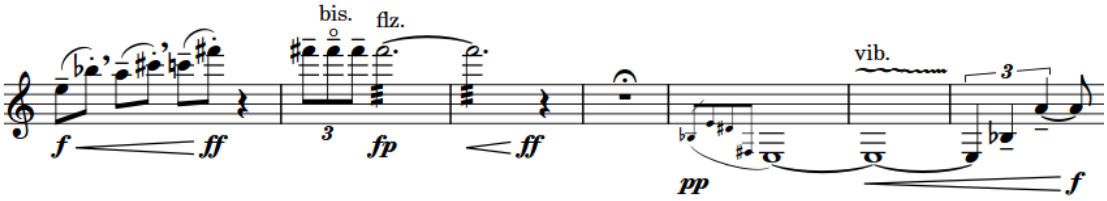
NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot input or edit cues. However, cues are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

Dynamics

Dynamics indicate the loudness of the music, and can be combined with other instructions to give the performer a detailed understanding of how to perform the music, while also leaving room for interpretation.

Dynamics can indicate an immediate change in volume or a gradual change over a specified duration. By default, they are placed below the staff for instruments and above the staff for voices.



A phrase with multiple different dynamics

You can add modifiers to dynamics that can give stylistic direction context alongside the volume level, such as ***f*** *espressivo*, which indicates that a passage is played loudly but also with expressive feeling.

While almost all expression text is written in italics, dynamics such as ***ff*** and ***pp*** use a bold italic font.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for dynamics on page 226
Positions of dynamics on page 499
Gradual dynamics on page 511
Dynamic modifiers on page 508
Groups of dynamics on page 518
Linked dynamics on page 519

Types of dynamics

Dorico for iPad categorizes dynamics into different groups according to their function.

Immediate dynamics

Immediate dynamics apply to the note to which they are attached until the next dynamic marking, and indicate an immediate change from any previous dynamic. Immediate dynamics include dynamic symbols, such as ***pp*** or ***f***, and dynamic modifiers, such as *subito* or *molto*.

Gradual dynamics and hairpins

Gradual dynamics indicate a change in volume that happens incrementally over the specified duration. They usually appear either as hairpins or as text instructions, such as *cresc.* or *dim.*.

Gradual dynamics can also have dynamic modifiers that qualify the change in volume, such as *poco*, *molto*, *poco a poco*, and *niente*.

In Dorico for iPad, a hairpin can be shown as *messa di voce*, which shows a pair of hairpins. In some cases, this is easier than having separate lines for each half of the pair.

Force/Intensity of attack

These dynamics, such as *fz* and *sffz*, indicate that a note has a stronger attack than is usually expected for the dynamic, similar to an accent articulation.

Combined dynamics

Combined dynamics, such as *fp* or *p–mf*, specify a sudden change of dynamic.

You can create custom combined dynamics in Dorico for iPad, and control the intensity of each dynamic in the pair, in the **Combined Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel. For example, you can make dynamics such as *pppf*, *fff–mp*, and *ffff pppp*.

RELATED LINKS
Gradual dynamics on page 511
Niente hairpins on page 507
Dynamic modifiers on page 508
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 505
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 509
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 506
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 506

Positions of dynamics

Dynamics are placed below the staff for instruments, where they can be read alongside the notes, and above the staff for voices. This way, they do not clash with lyrics placed below the staff, and are still close enough to the notes to be read simultaneously.

Immediate dynamics, such as *pp* or *f*, are centered on the notehead to which they apply. The beginnings of gradual dynamics are centered on the notehead from which they begin, or immediately after an immediate dynamic at the same position. The ends of gradual dynamics are centered on the notehead at which they end, or immediately before an immediate dynamic at the same position.

The staff-relative placement of dynamics varies, depending on their function and the type of player. For example, dynamics are placed below instrumental staves and above vocal staves by default. This ensures dynamics are kept as close to the staff as possible for legibility but are not placed between noteheads and lyrics on vocal staves. For grand staff instruments, such as piano or harp, dynamics are usually placed between the two staves, but can be placed both above and below when each staff requires separate dynamics.

In general, dynamics are not placed within the staff, as hairpins in particular become very hard to read. They are also not usually placed within tuplet brackets. Dynamics are placed outside of notations such as slurs, which must be kept close to noteheads, but inside pedal lines, which can be placed further from noteheads and still be clearly understood.

You can move dynamics to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move dynamics graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 512

Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Changing the horizontal beat-relative position of dynamics

You can position individual dynamics before or after the beat. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

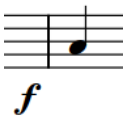
PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose position relative to the beat you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Beat-relative position** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Before**
   - **After**

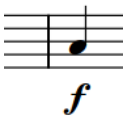
RESULT

The beat-relative position of the selected dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



A dynamic positioned before the beat



A dynamic positioned after the beat

RELATED LINKS

Erasing the background of dynamics on page 503
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the alignment of dynamics relative to noteheads

Immediate dynamics, such as ***ff*** and ***mp***, are usually horizontally aligned with the optical center of noteheads. However, you can change the horizontal alignment of immediate dynamics individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose alignment relative to noteheads you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text alignment** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Align optical center with notehead**
   - **Left-align with notehead**
   - **Align optical center with left of notehead**

RESULT

The alignment of the selected immediate dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Aligning dynamics

You can graphically align individually selected dynamics in a row without grouping/ungrouping them, for example, if system breaks in part layouts are different to the full score layout and so require parts of different groups of dynamics to be aligned. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics you want to align.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Dynamics** > **Align Dynamics**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are aligned in a row with the dynamic within the selection that was furthest from the staff. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Groups of dynamics on page 518

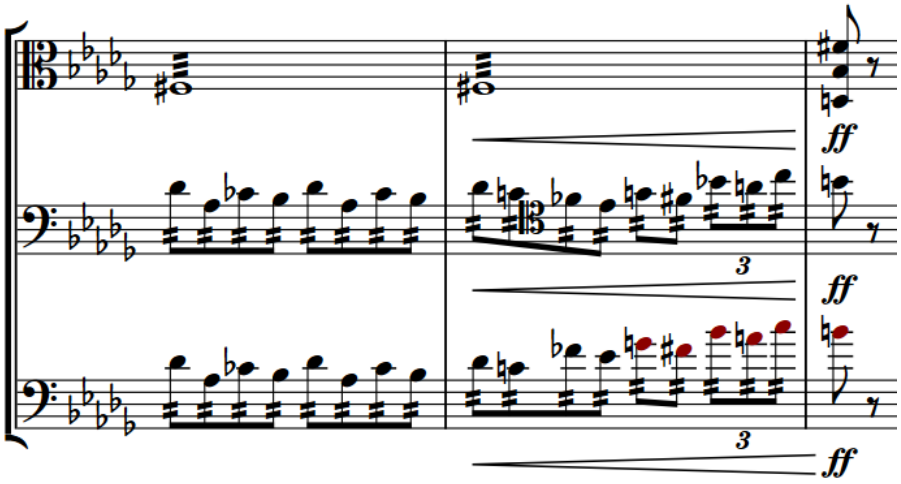
General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines

In Dorico for iPad, the ends of hairpins align with the left edge of the note to their right. This can include hairpins extending across barlines.

Hairpins that end on the first note of a bar extend across the preceding barline in the following cases:

- If there is no immediate dynamic on the first note in the next bar.
- If there is a time signature or key signature change at the barline that increases the gap between the end of the current bar and the first note in the new bar.

Dorico for iPad avoids hairpins overlapping barlines by a small amount, as this is less visually clear. However, this means that the same dynamic phrase on different staves can appear differently if one of the staves does not have a barline join extending below it.



The hairpin ends are not aligned because the barline does not extend beyond the bottom staff

You can allow/disallow hairpins across barlines if the hairpin ends on the first note in the next bar. Disallowing hairpins across barlines ensures hairpins appear the same length on all staves.

Allowing/Disallowing hairpins across barlines

You can allow/disallow hairpins across barlines when they end on the first note in the next bar, for example, so all hairpins appear the same length across multiple staves that do not all have barline joins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins you want to allow/disallow across barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline interaction** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Stop before**
   - **Continue**

RESULT

The selected hairpins are allowed across barlines when you choose **Continue**, and disallowed when you choose **Stop before**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Showing dynamics in parentheses

You can show individual dynamics in parentheses, for example, to show editorial dynamics that were not in the original manuscript. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics you want to appear parenthesized. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesized** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

Each of the selected dynamics is shown in parentheses individually. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Parenthesized** removes parentheses from the selected dynamics.

Erasing the background of dynamics

You can erase the background of individual dynamics, for example, to ensure dynamics remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

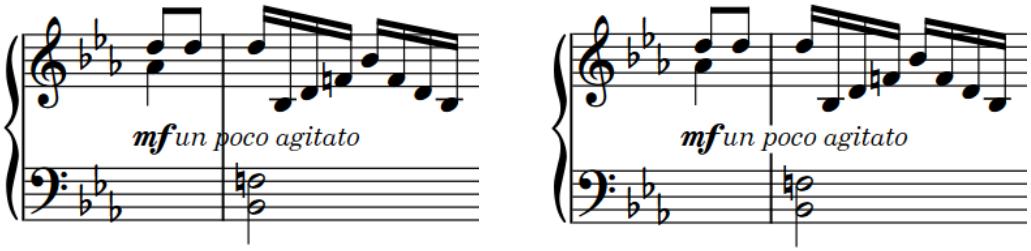
The backgrounds of the selected dynamics are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected dynamics to the default non-erased background.

NOTE

This does not affect hairpins, including stems crossed by hairpins.

EXAMPLE



Dynamic with non-erased background

Dynamic with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between dynamics and each edge of their erased areas.

RELATED LINKS

Positions of dynamics on page 499
Changing the property scope on page 128
Dynamic modifiers on page 508

Changing the erasure padding of dynamics

You can change the erasure padding of individual dynamics, including changing the padding between dynamics and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

Erasure padding considers the prefix/suffix separately from immediate dynamics and also takes into account ascenders/descenders in the text. This can cause the erasure padding to appear larger below the dynamic than above, such as for “espressivo” due to the “p”. In such cases, you can change the padding on the affected edge to make the padding appear symmetrical.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Dynamics** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between dynamics and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between dynamics and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between dynamics and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between dynamics and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. This also affects the area considered for collision avoidance. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing dynamic levels

You can change the levels of dynamics without reopening the dynamics popover and for multiple different dynamics simultaneously, for example, if you want to increase the dynamic level of all dynamics in a phrase.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics whose dynamic level you want to change.
2. Change the dynamic level in one of the following ways:
   - To increase the dynamic level, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Dynamics** > **Increase Dynamic Intensity**.
   - To decrease the dynamic level, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Dynamics** > **Decrease Dynamic Intensity**.

RESULT

The dynamic level of the selected dynamics is increased/decreased. For example, increasing the dynamic level of a *mf* dynamic changes it to *f*.

TIP

You can assign key commands for these options on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for dynamics on page 226
Changing existing items on page 324
Dynamic modifiers on page 508
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics

You can hide/show individual immediate dynamics such as *f* and *pp*, for example, if you only want to show the dynamic modifier, such as “sim.”, without its accompanying immediate dynamic. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the immediate dynamics you want to hide, or the signposts of immediate dynamics you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide intensity marking** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

The selected immediate dynamics are hidden when **Hide intensity marking** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If no other dynamic exists at their rhythmic position, they are indicated by signposts. However, signposts are not printed by default.

RELATED LINKS
Dynamic modifiers on page 508
Changing the property scope on page 128
Signposts on page 332

Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators

You can hide/show different separators in combined dynamics individually, independently of your project-wide setting. For example, if you want to separate some *fp* dynamics with slashes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

By default, only combined dynamics with at least one *mezzo* dynamic in the pair, such as *mf-p*, show a separator.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the combined dynamics whose separator you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Separator shown** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
4. Optional: If you showed separators, activate **Separator** and select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hyphen**
   - **Colon**
   - **Space**
   - **Slash**

RESULT

Separators are shown when the **Separator shown** checkbox is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. The separator shown follows your selection for **Separator**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Types of dynamics on page 498

Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics

You can change the appearance of individual *rfz* and *sfz* dynamics. For example, if you want some *sfz* dynamics to appear as *sf*. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to force/intensity of attack dynamics with other intensities, such as *sffz*.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *rfz* and/or *sfz* dynamics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **rfz/sfz style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - *sf rf*
   - *sfzrfz*

RESULT

The appearance of the selected *rfz* and/or *sfz* dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Types of dynamics on page 498
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 509

Niente hairpins

Niente markings at the start/end of gradual dynamics indicate that the dynamic either increases from, or decreases to, silence.

This effect works very well on strings and singers with vowels, but it cannot always be played literally. For example, singers with words beginning with consonants cannot begin from silence, nor can reed and brass instruments, as they have to achieve a certain air pressure before a note sounds.

Niente markings can be shown in two ways: as a circle at the end of a hairpin, and as text directly before or after a hairpin. You can input both types of *niente* markings in Dorico for iPad using the dynamics popover and by clicking **niente** in the **Gradual Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel.

TIP

You can turn existing hairpins into *niente* hairpins by selecting them and clicking **niente** in the **Gradual Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel, or by activating **Niente** in the **Dynamics** group of the Properties panel.

EXAMPLE

A *niente* shown as **Circle on hairpin**

A *niente* shown as **Text**

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for dynamics on page 226
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322

Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 513

Changing the appearance of niente hairpins

You can show *niente* hairpins in two ways in Dorico for iPad, and you can change how they appear individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins whose *niente* style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Niente style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Circle on hairpin**
   - **Text** *n*

RESULT

The *niente* style of the selected hairpins is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE

A *niente* shown as **Circle on hairpin**

A *niente* shown as **Text**

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Dynamic modifiers

Modifiers add further detail to dynamics than simply their volume level, and can help guide how a player performs a note or phrase. Modifiers include *poco a poco*, *molto* and *subito*. They are also known as “expressive text”.

In Dorico for iPad, modifiers must accompany a dynamic level, such as ***p*** or ***f***.

You can input dynamic modifiers by entering them into the dynamics popover alongside an immediate dynamic or by clicking available options in the Dynamics panel. You can also add dynamic modifiers to existing dynamics.

TIP

You can hide immediate dynamics if you only want to show the modifier.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for dynamics on page 226

Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 505
Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics on page 515
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 509
Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins on page 510
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 506
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 513

Adding modifiers to existing dynamics

You can add modifiers both before and after dynamics after they have been input, for example, if you want to add “sim.” instead of repeating dynamics across multiple phrases.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics to which you want to add modifiers. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Dynamics** group:
   - To add modifiers before dynamics, activate **Prefix**.
   - To add modifiers after dynamics, activate **Suffix**.
3. Enter the text you want to add into the corresponding value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text you entered is added to the selected dynamics as a modifier. Text entered into the **Prefix** field appears before dynamics, while text entered into the **Suffix** field appears after dynamics. Modifiers appear below hairpins placed below the staff and above hairpins placed above the staff, and are aligned with the start of the hairpin.

Deactivating the properties removes the corresponding modifiers from the selected dynamics.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you added modifiers to hairpins, you can show them centered inside the hairpins.

RELATED LINKS

Niente hairpins on page 507
Input methods for dynamics on page 226
Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins on page 510
Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics on page 515

Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers

You can change the appearance and/or position of individual *subito* modifiers. For example, if you want to show *subito* modifiers as *sub.* on the left of dynamics or ***fp*** *sub.* dynamics as ***sfp***. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose *subito* modifier appearance and/or position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Subito style** in the **Dynamics** group and choose one of the following options:
   - ***subito***
   - ***sub.***
3. Optional: If you selected dynamics that include at least one ***f***, activate **Subito forte style** and choose one of the following options:
   - ***sub. f***
   - ***sf***
4. Activate **Subito position** and choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**
   - **Right**

RESULT

The appearance and/or position of the selected *subito* modifiers is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 506
Changing the property scope on page 128

Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins

You can show modifiers you have added to hairpins, such as *poco a poco* or *molto*, centered both horizontally and vertically inside hairpins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, modifiers appear at the start of and either above or below hairpins.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

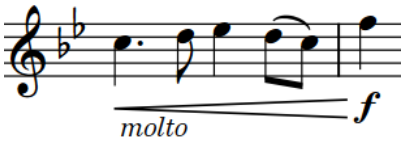
PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins whose modifiers you want to show centered inside hairpins. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Modifier position** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above or Below**
   - **Inside**

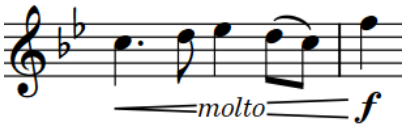
RESULT

Modifiers on the selected hairpins appear centered inside the hairpins. They automatically erase their background so the text does not collide with the hairpin lines. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Modifier (molto) below a hairpin



Modifier (molto) centered inside hairpin

RELATED LINKS
Adding modifiers to existing dynamics on page 509
Changing the erasure padding of dynamics on page 504
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 513
Changing the property scope on page 128

Gradual dynamics

Gradual dynamics indicate a change in volume that happens incrementally over the specified duration. They usually appear either as hairpins or as text instructions, such as *cresc.* or *dim.*.

The change in volume indicated by individual hairpins is shown in the distance between the two diverging lines at their apertures.

Hairpins typically have a closed end and an open end. If the hairpin crosses a system or frame break, the closed end appears with a small gap so that the hairpin is not misread as two separate hairpins.

A pair of hairpins without an immediate dynamic in the middle is known as a *messa di voce*.

In Dorico for iPad, gradual dynamics appear as hairpins by default. You can change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics. For example, if you want to show a particularly long crescendo using *cresc.* text rather than a hairpin.

You can show gradual dynamic text in the following ways:

- *cresc.* or *dim.*: Abbreviated text with no continuation line
- *cresc...* or *dim...*: Abbreviated text with a dotted continuation line
- *cre-scen-do* or *di-mi-nuen-do*: The full word spread out across the duration of the gradual dynamic

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 226
Types of dynamics on page 498
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 512
Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics on page 512
Moving items graphically on page 351
General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines on page 501
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 513

Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each hairpin has multiple handles that you can move to adjust their graphical position, length, angle, and aperture.

- The middle handles at the start/end of hairpins change their start/end offset positions. Moving one handle middle handle changes the angle of the hairpin.
- The pair of outer handles at the start/end of hairpins adjusts the corresponding aperture. These handles are linked and mirror each other: moving one handle also moves the other handle by the same amount, but in the opposite direction. This ensures that hairpins remain symmetrical.

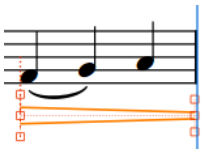
A hairpin with the start middle handle selected in Engrave mode

TIP

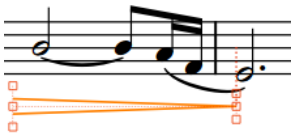
You can also change the aperture of individual hairpins by activating **Hairpin open aperture** and/or **Hairpin closed aperture** in the **Dynamics** group of the Properties panel.

Increasing the value makes the corresponding aperture wider. Decreasing the value makes the corresponding aperture narrower.

EXAMPLE



A diminuendo that goes across a system break: aperture at the start is open, aperture at the end is closed. It appears slightly open to indicate the diminuendo continues after the system break.



The diminuendo continues onto a new system: aperture at the start is open, aperture at the end is closed.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351

Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics

You can change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics, for example, to change a crescendo hairpin to a *messa di voce* pair of hairpins with two directions or to show a particularly long crescendo using “cresc.” text rather than a hairpin. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

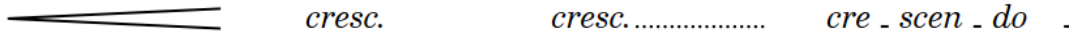
1. Select the gradual dynamics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gradual style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hairpin**
   - **cresc./dim.**
   - **cresc...**
   - **cre - scen - do**
4. Optional: Customize the appearance of the selected gradual dynamics in one of the following ways, depending on their **Gradual style**:
   - If you selected **Hairpin**, activate **Hairpin line style** and choose one of the available options.
   - If you selected **cresc./dim.**, **cresc...**, or **cre - scen - do**, activate **Diminuendo style** and select one of the available options from the menu.
   - If you selected **cresc...**, activate **Continuation line style** and choose one of the available options.
5. Optional: For hairpin gradual dynamics, choose one of the following options for **Type**:
   - **Cresc. or dim.**
   - **Messa di voce**

RESULT

The appearance of the selected gradual dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Hairpin **cresc./dim.** **cresc....** **cre - scen - do**

Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous

You can show two or more consecutive hairpins of the same direction that are separated by immediate dynamics as a single hairpin that continues through any immediate dynamics, for example, to indicate that you want a single smooth change in dynamic rather than multiple separate ones. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

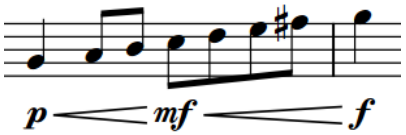
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select at least one of the hairpins in each group that you want to show as continuous.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hairpin shown as continuation** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Activate the corresponding checkbox.

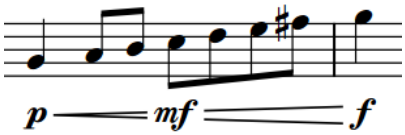
RESULT

Consecutive hairpins of the same direction in the selected groups appear as a single continuous hairpin. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Hairpin not shown as continuation



Hairpin shown as continuation

RELATED LINKS

Grouping dynamics together on page 518
Changing the property scope on page 128

Hiding/Showing flared ends on hairpins

Flared ends are usually shown at the end of crescendo hairpins and indicate a sudden burst in volume at the end of the crescendo. You can hide/show flared ends on any hairpin.

NOTE

You can only show flared ends on hairpins with solid lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins on which you want to hide/show flared ends. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Flared end** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

A flared end is shown on the selected dynamics when **Flared end** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE

Crescendo hairpin with flared end hidden

Crescendo hairpin with flared end shown

Changing the size of flared ends on hairpins

You can change the height and width of flared ends on individual hairpins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the flared hairpins whose flare size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Flare size** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Change the flare size of the selected hairpins in any of the following ways:
   - To change the width of the flared ends, change the value for **W**.
   - To change the height of the flared ends, change the value for **H**.

RESULT

The size of the flared ends on the selected hairpins is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- Increasing the **W** value makes the selected flared ends wider by starting their angle earlier in the hairpin, decreasing the value makes the selected flared ends narrower.
- Increasing the **H** value makes the selected flared ends taller, decreasing the value makes them shorter.
- Changing the values independently of each other changes the angle of the flared ends. For example, increasing the **W** value without changing the **H** value makes the angle shallower.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the property scope on page 128

Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics

You can add *poco a poco* text to individual gradual dynamics after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

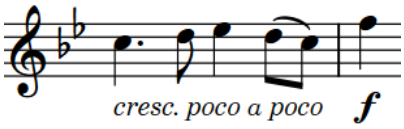
1. Select the gradual dynamics to which you want to add *poco a poco*. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Poco a poco (little by little)** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

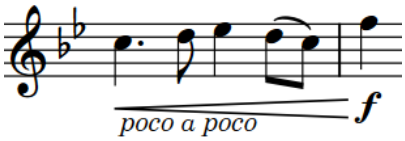
Poco a poco is shown immediately after gradual dynamic text, below hairpins placed below the staff, and above hairpins placed above the staff.

Deactivating **Poco a poco (little by little)** removes *poco a poco* text from the selected gradual dynamics.

EXAMPLE



Text gradual dynamic with poco a poco



Hairpin gradual dynamic with poco a poco

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can show *poco a poco* text centered inside hairpins.

RELATED LINKS

Dynamic modifiers on page 508
Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins on page 510

Gradual dynamic spacing

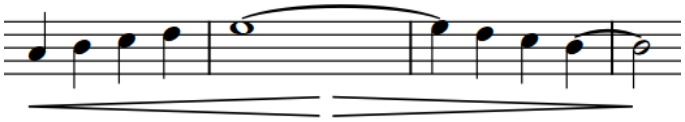
Dorico for iPad ensures that hairpins can always be clearly distinguished by giving hairpins a minimum default length. However, this can affect note spacing.

The default minimum hairpin length is three spaces. When hairpins are shorter than this, they can sometimes be confused with the accent articulation mark. Therefore, if you add a hairpin to a note which would make the hairpin less than three spaces long, the spacing of the note is changed to ensure the hairpin meets the minimum length.

Gradual dynamics that start/end partway through notes

If the start/end of a gradual dynamic is not attached to a note, there are restrictions on how you can move the start/end position.

For example, if you enter two hairpins separated by a space into the dynamics popover, pair of hairpins that looks like a *messa di voce* is created but containing two separate hairpins, rather than the combined option. Neither of the open ends of the hairpins is attached to a specific notehead, and you cannot move the center of the pair of hairpins rhythmically. You can lengthen/shorten the two hairpins as a group but you cannot lengthen/shorten each hairpin individually.



However, if you enter two hairpins without a space between them into the dynamics popover, you can move the center of the pair of hairpins and each hairpin rhythmically, but only to noteheads. You can lengthen/shorten each hairpin separately according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

You can move individual hairpins in Engrave mode to any graphical position. If you input hairpins separated by a space into the popover, you can move each hairpin independently, for example, if you want to adjust the graphical peak of the pair of hairpins. You cannot move the graphical peak of *messa di voce* hairpins. However, moving dynamics graphically does not affect dynamics in playback.

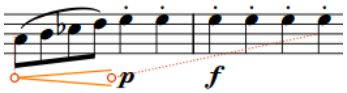
RELATED LINKS
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Moving items graphically on page 351
Note spacing on page 393

Gradual dynamics truncated by immediate dynamics

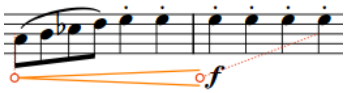
A hairpin is automatically truncated if an immediate dynamic is positioned within its range, either before or after the hairpin is input.

The hairpin remains tied to its originally designated rhythmic positions, even if graphically it appears shorter. This means that if the immediate dynamic that truncated it is ever deleted, the hairpin extends up to its end or the next immediate dynamic within its range.

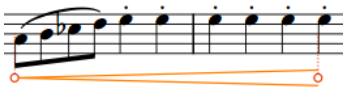
The examples demonstrate a crescendo hairpin that is truncated by two dynamics, but the hairpin extends to its total length as they are deleted. The dotted attachment line shows the link between the hairpin and the rhythmic position to which its end is attached.



A long hairpin truncated by a ***p***



After deleting the ***p***, the hairpin is now truncated by the ***f***



Deleting both immediate dynamics allows the hairpin to extend to its full length

RELATED LINKS
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 513
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322

Sustaining and non-sustaining instruments

The volume settings for sustaining instruments and non-sustaining instruments vary in terms of their control of gradual dynamics.

Sustaining instruments

Sustaining instruments include string, wind, and brass instruments, because they can hold a note while being in control of its volume throughout.

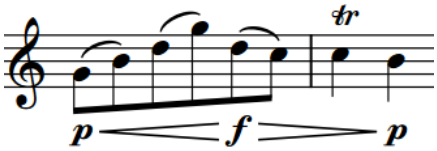
Dorico for iPad applies gradual dynamics to these instruments in playback.

Non-sustaining instruments

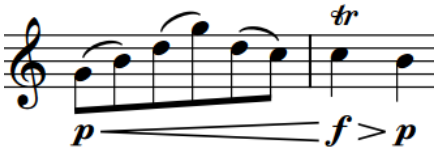
Non-sustaining instruments, such as piano, harp, marimba, and most percussion instruments, have no further control of the dynamic of notes after they have been struck. For this reason, non-sustaining software instruments often use note velocity for dynamics, because this is set at the start of the note.

Groups of dynamics

Groups of dynamics are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group. When you move immediate dynamics within a group, the length of the hairpins on either side automatically adjust to compensate.



A group of dynamics

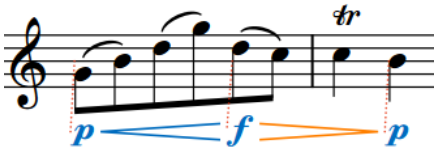


The same group of dynamics adjusts to compensate when the middle dynamic moves rhythmically.

A single dynamic, either immediate or gradual, is considered a group on its own.

Two or more dynamics are automatically grouped together if they immediately follow each other horizontally on the staff, were input together or in sequence, and have gradual dynamics between the immediate dynamics.

All of the dynamics in a group are highlighted when any of the dynamics in the group are selected.



NOTE

- Groups of dynamics apply project-wide, meaning you cannot have dynamics grouped one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts. However, you can graphically align selected dynamics independently of their groups.
- As well as horizontal groups of dynamics, you can also link groups of dynamics vertically if you want the same dynamics to appear on multiple staves. This can be useful when multiple instruments play the same dynamics simultaneously and you want to make the same change in all staves, for example, moving the peak of a crescendo to a later beat, or changing a ***f*** to a ***fff***.

RELATED LINKS
Linked dynamics on page 519
Aligning dynamics on page 501

Grouping dynamics together

You can manually group dynamics together that were not automatically grouped when they were input. Grouped dynamics are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to group together.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Dynamics** > **Group Dynamics**.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are grouped together. If the first dynamic in the group is linked to other staves, all dynamics in the group are added to those staves. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Linked dynamics on page 519

Ungrouping dynamics and removing dynamics from groups

You can ungroup dynamics so that all dynamics in the group become ungrouped. You can also remove only selected dynamics from groups while leaving other dynamics in the group.

This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

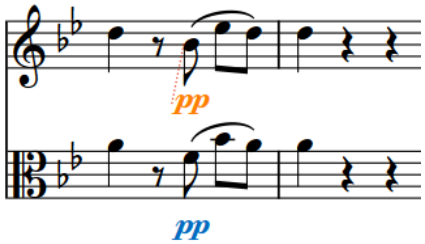
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to ungroup or remove from groups.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To ungroup all dynamics in the selected groups, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Dynamics** > **Ungroup Dynamics**.
   - To remove only the selected dynamics from their groups, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Dynamics** > **Remove from Group**.

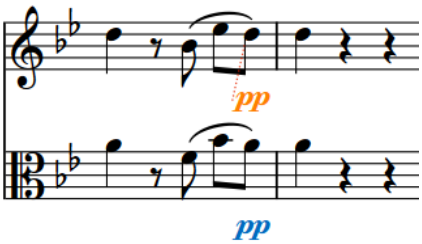
Linked dynamics

Identical dynamics at the same rhythmic position on multiple staves can be linked together. This happens automatically when you copy and paste dynamics between staves.

If you select one dynamic in a linked group, all other dynamics in the linked group appear highlighted. If one linked dynamic is moved to a new rhythmic position, all linked dynamics move.



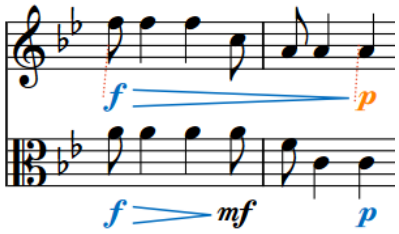
Two linked dynamics with only the top dynamic selected



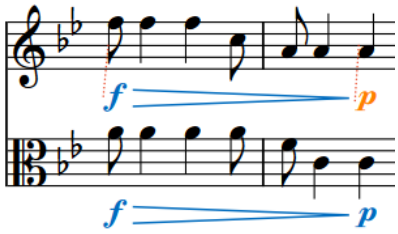
Moving just the top dynamic of the linked group automatically moves the other to match its new position.

Similarly, if you change one linked dynamic, for example, from *p* to *mf*, all dynamics linked to the changed dynamic are also changed. If you group other dynamics to one of the linked dynamics, such as a hairpin, the hairpin is added at the same position in all linked staves.

If one staff has another immediate dynamic before the end of a hairpin, the hairpin is truncated automatically. If you delete such a dynamic, the hairpin extends automatically up to the next immediate dynamic or to its full length, whichever comes first.



Two staves with linked dynamics, but the lower staff has another immediate dynamic that truncates the hairpin.



Deleting the **mf** at the end of the first bar in the second staff causes the hairpin to extend to match the range of the top staff.

NOTE

- If you delete only some dynamics from a group that is linked to other staves, those dynamics are also deleted from the linked staves. If you delete a whole dynamic group from one staff, this does not affect linked dynamics on other staves.
- As well as vertically linked dynamics, you can also group dynamics horizontally. This automatically aligns the dynamics in a row and allows them to be moved and edited as a group.
- Linking or unlinking dynamics applies project-wide, meaning you cannot have dynamics linked one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Groups of dynamics on page 518
Linked slurs on page 785
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 337

Linking dynamics together

When you copy and paste identical dynamics to the same rhythmic position on other staves, those dynamics are linked together automatically. You can also manually link dynamics and groups of dynamics together that are not automatically linked to allow simultaneous editing.

NOTE

Groups of dynamics must be the same in order to link them together. For example, you can link two ***p*** dynamics together if neither is part of a group, but you cannot link them together if one is grouped with a hairpin.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to link together.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Dynamics** > **Link**.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are linked together. If you later change one of the linked dynamics, all linked dynamics are changed to match. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS
Groups of dynamics on page 518
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 335
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Unlinking dynamics

You can unlink dynamics, including dynamics that were linked automatically.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a dynamic in each linked group that you want to unlink.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Dynamics** > **Unlink**.

RESULT

All dynamics in the linked groups are unlinked. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

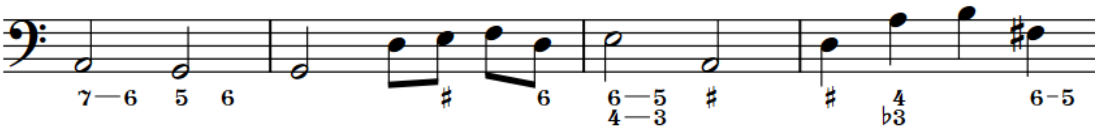
RELATED LINKS
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 337

Figured bass

Figured bass is a shorthand that uses figures to specify the harmony above the notated bass notes. It is particularly common in Baroque and early Classical music and in the parts of accompanying instruments, such as harpsichords and viols.

Figured bass informs performers about the intended harmony but allows room for interpretation, such as improvised arpeggiated phrases using notes from the chord.

Figures use a combination of Arabic numbers, accidentals, and horizontal hold lines to specify both the intervals above the bass note that make up the chord and its duration. For example, they show where suspensions resolve or when the bass note changes but the chord remains the same.



A basso continuo part with figured bass below the staff

In Dorico for iPad, figured bass exists globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions by default because most music that includes figured bass is tonal, meaning players perform notes from the same chord. Therefore, you only have to input figures once, but they can appear above multiple or no staves as required and the figures automatically update according to the notes on each staff. However, in some circumstances it is necessary to specify different chords for different players at the same rhythmic position. In such cases, you can input local figured bass.

Dorico for iPad calculates and saves the pitches implied by the figures you enter in relation to the lowest note at that rhythmic position. This semantic understanding of the harmony implied by figures allows Dorico for iPad to update the displayed figures on different staves and if you transpose or change the pitch of notes.

When you transpose music that includes figured bass, Dorico for iPad also transposes the figures accordingly.

Figured bass in Dorico for iPad uses a bold roman font by default.

You can hide or show figured bass in each layout independently and only above the staves of specific players. You can also change whether figured bass appears above or below staves by default in each layout independently. Figures appear as signposts if Dorico for iPad either does not normally show them, such as third intervals, or cannot identify the bass note for them, such as on a rest.

NOTE

Figured bass does not yet include notations commonly used for harmonic analysis, such as Roman numerals. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting figured bass on page 295
Figured bass hold lines on page 525
Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts on page 523
Showing figured bass on rests on page 524

Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass on page 527
Appearance of figured bass on page 528

Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts

You can hide/show figured bass in each layout independently and only above the staves of specific players. For example, you can show figured bass in the full score and bass part layouts but hide figured bass in the other part layouts.

Any player on whose staff you input figured bass is automatically set to show figured bass in the current layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show figured bass.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Figured Bass** section, activate/deactivate each player above/below which you want to show figured bass.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Figured bass is shown above/below all instruments belonging to the corresponding players in the selected layouts when their checkboxes are activated, and hidden when their checkboxes are deactivated. Figured bass is hidden completely when no checkboxes are activated.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the staff-relative placement of figured bass.
- You can hide figured bass figures individually in layouts where figured bass is shown.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass on page 527
Showing figured bass on rests on page 524
Figured bass hold lines on page 525

Hiding/Showing figured bass figures individually

You can hide/show individual figured bass figures in layouts in which figured bass is shown. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. However, you cannot show individual figures in layouts where figured bass is hidden.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to hide, or the signposts of figures you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hidden** in the **Figured Bass** group.

RESULT

The selected figured bass figures are hidden when **Hidden** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden figure. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show signposts in the **View Options** dialog.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text objects, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 332
View Options dialog on page 120
Changing the property scope on page 128
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Showing figured bass on rests

By default, figured bass is hidden on rests because figures typically indicate harmony in relation to a bass note. You can show figured bass on individual rests, for example, if the harmony changes while the bass is resting. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input figured bass at the positions of the rests.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rests on which you want to show figured bass. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show figured bass** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

RESULT

Figured bass is shown on the selected rests. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Show figured bass** hides figured bass on selected rests again.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting figured bass on page 295
Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts on page 523
Changing the property scope on page 128

Figured bass hold lines

Figured bass hold lines indicate that chords remain the same over changing notes in the bass. Dorico for iPad can show hold lines for figures that have duration.

By default, Dorico for iPad does not show hold lines between suspensions and resolutions or after resolutions. You can hide/show hold lines for individual figures.

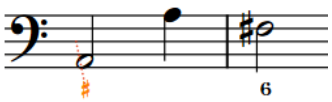


Figure (selected) with no duration

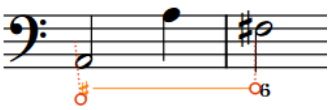


Figure (selected) with duration and hold line

TIP

- In addition to lengthening/shortening figured bass figures after they have been input, you can use the **Duration** property in the **Figured Bass** group of the Properties panel to change the duration of figures in quarter notes. The left value field allows you to change the duration, and the right value field allows you to specify that the hold line ends at the position of a grace note.

  For suspensions, you can use the **Resolution pos.** property to change the position of the resolution figure relative to the suspension figure.
- You can move figures graphically in Engrave mode, including changing the graphical length of hold lines.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting figured bass on page 295
Figured bass popover on page 296
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Moving items graphically on page 351

Hiding/Showing figured bass suspension hold lines

You can hide/show hold lines between the figures at the start and end of figured bass suspensions individually.

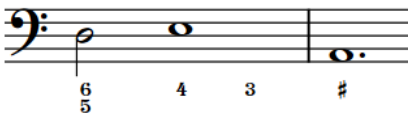
PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass suspensions whose hold lines you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line between susp. and resolution** in the **Figured Bass** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

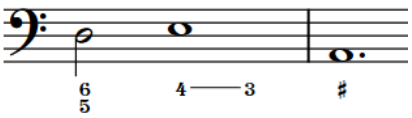
RESULT

Hold lines are shown between figures in the selected figured bass suspensions when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Suspension hold line hidden



Suspension hold line shown

RELATED LINKS
Showing figured bass on rests on page 524
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322

Positions of figured bass

Figured bass is automatically organized into rows according to the number of rows required in each system independently. By default, rows are aligned at the top when below the staff and at the bottom when above the staff to minimize the gap between figured bass and the staff.

The vertical position of figured bass is determined by the staves above which they are set to appear and your per-layout setting for their staff-relative placement.

You can move individual figured bass figures to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions. This includes Dorico for iPad's kerning, which applies across whole systems to ensure all figures and alterations are legible.

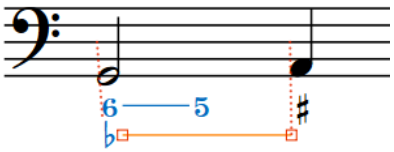
You can move figures and hold lines graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts on page 523
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Figured bass in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each figured bass hold line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of figured bass hold lines.

You can also move whole figured bass hold lines graphically.



Handles on a hold line in Engrave mode

Moving figures with hold lines moves them both together. Moving hold lines or hold line handles moves the hold lines independently of the figure. Dorico for iPad automatically lengthens hold lines between suspensions and resolutions when you move resolution figures.

NOTE

- A single figure includes all numbers at that position. For example, you cannot select and move the **6** in a **6,4** figure independently of the **4**.
- If you want to move handles at the start/end of figured bass hold lines because you want to change their length, we recommend that you lengthen/shorten them rhythmically first before refining their graphical length.
- Multiple different properties in the **Figured Bass** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding figure, hold line, or hold line handle.
  - **Main figure offset** moves figures. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Resolution offset** moves the resolution figure in suspensions. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Line [n] offset** moves the start and end handles of hold lines in the corresponding figured bass row horizontally. **L** moves start (left) handles, **R** moves end (right) handles.
  - **Line [n] Y offset** moves whole hold lines in the corresponding figured bass row vertically.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass on page 527
Moving items graphically on page 351
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Hiding/Showing figured bass suspension hold lines on page 525
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass

You can change the default staff-relative placement of all figured bass figures in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff-relative placement of figured bass.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Figured Bass** section, choose one of the following options for **Default placement**:
   - **Above staff**
   - **Below staff**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

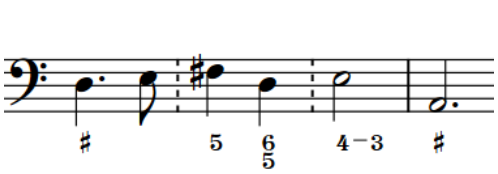
RESULT

The default staff-relative placement of all figured bass figures in the selected layouts is changed.

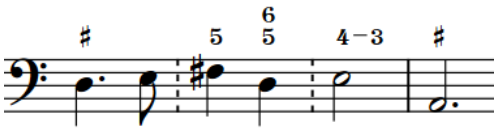
TIP

You can also change the staff-relative placement of individual figured bass figures by selecting them and pressing **F**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Figured bass below the staff



Figured bass above the staff

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Appearance of figured bass

The appearance of individual figures is determined either by the default settings in Dorico for iPad or your popover entry, depending on whether you instructed Dorico for iPad to follow your entry literally when you input each figure.

When inputting figured bass, by default Dorico for iPad interprets your entries and applies its default settings for the appearance of figured bass to them. You can specify that you want Dorico for iPad to follow your entries exactly for individual figures, for example, if you are reproducing a piece of music and know in advance exactly how you want figures to appear.

You can reset individual figures that you input with the figured bass input setting **Follow input literally** so they follow the default settings, and you can fix the current appearance of individual figures.

Figured bass in Dorico for iPad uses a bold roman font by default.

Figures appear as signposts if Dorico for iPad either does not normally show them, such as third intervals, or cannot identify the bass note for them, such as on a rest.

RELATED LINKS
Figured bass hold lines on page 525
Inputting figured bass on page 295
Showing figured bass on rests on page 524
Simplifying figured bass compound intervals on page 529
Fixing the current appearance of figured bass on page 529
Resetting figured bass on page 530

Simplifying figured bass compound intervals

You can simplify compound intervals in individual figured bass figures, that is, figures 9 and above. Some editions prefer to simplify compound intervals so figures reflect the first octave and appear out of order in the stack.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the compound figured bass figures you want to simplify. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show compound intervals as simple** in the **Figured Bass** group.

RESULT

The selected compound figures are simplified. Deactivating the property returns the selected figures to their default octave.

EXAMPLE

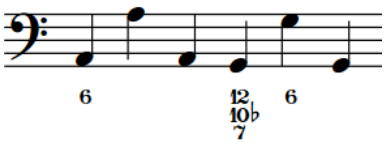


Figure with compound intervals

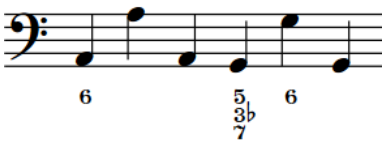


Figure with simplified compound intervals

Fixing the current appearance of figured bass

You can fix the current appearance of individual figured bass figures, for example, if you input them with the input setting **Follow Engraving Options** but want to keep their current appearance, regardless of future changes you make to figured bass engraving options.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures whose current appearance you want to fix. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Figured Bass** > **Force Current Appearance**.

RESULT

The current appearance of the selected figures is fixed, meaning they are not affected by any future changes to figured bass engraving options.

NOTE

- You cannot access the **Engraving Options** dialog in Dorico for iPad, as it is only available in Dorico Pro. However, fixing figures maintains their appearance if you share the project with other users who later change figured bass engraving options.
- You can assign a key command for **Force Current Appearance** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Resetting figured bass

You can reset individual figured bass figures, for example, if they were input with the figured bass input setting **Follow input literally**. Reset figures follow the default settings in Dorico for iPad.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Figured Bass** > **Reset Figured Bass**.

RESULT

The selected figured bass figures are reset to follow the default settings. This can affect their appearance and suspension duration.

TIP

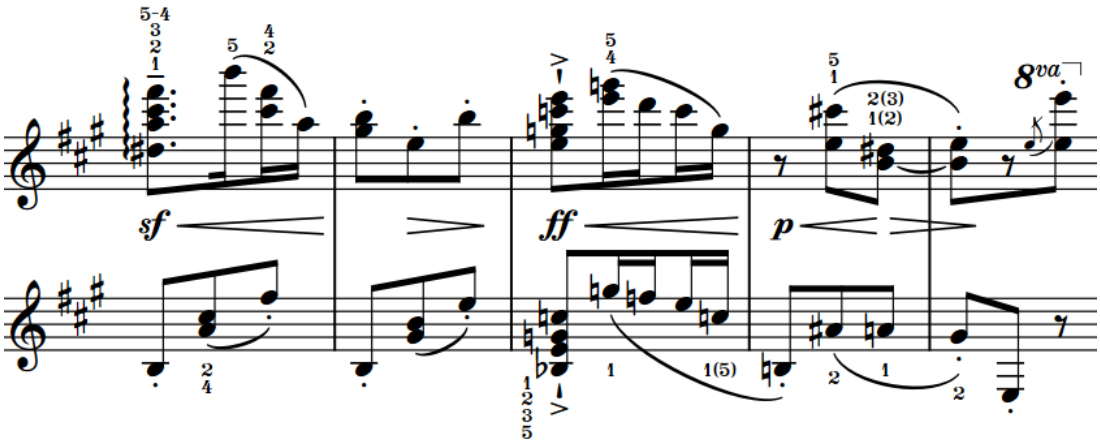
You can assign a key command for **Reset Figured Bass** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Figured bass popover on page 296
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Fingering

Fingerings can be added to music to recommend which fingers players should use for notes. This can be useful for music aimed at players learning the instrument and for difficult musical passages where certain fingering patterns make the notes much easier to play.

Fingerings are often used in keyboard music, as players can use all ten fingers to play notes, and in guitar music, where fingerings are often used alongside fret positions. However, fingerings can also be useful for other instruments, for example, to indicate that string players should change the finger used to stop the string while holding the note, or to instruct wind players to use uncommon fingerings for particular notes in order to create a special sonic effect.



Piano music containing multiple fingerings, including a substitution fingering and alternative fingerings

Dorico for iPad also provides fingerings for brass and fretted instruments. For example, you can specify which valves players should depress for instruments such as trumpet and horn, and you can specify the horn branch you want players to use for double horns. For fretted instruments, you can input fingerings for both hands.

Fingerings in Dorico for iPad use a bold roman font by default, following accepted conventions for the appearance of fingerings.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 197
Fingerings popover on page 198
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539
Fingerings for valved brass instruments on page 546
Fingering slides on page 543
Hiding/Showing fingering on page 537
String indicators on page 549

General placement conventions for fingering

Fingerings are placed as close as possible to the notes to which they apply, so the performer can read them easily and clearly.

In music for grand staff instruments, such as the piano and harp, it is accepted to place fingerings for the right hand above the top staff, and fingerings for the left hand below the bottom staff. However, in dense contrapuntal music for these instruments, fingerings can be placed between the staves to follow the direction of the voices to which they apply.

Different conventions apply to fingerings for fretted instruments, as they require fingerings for both the right and left hands.

Right-hand fingering placement

By default, all right-hand fingerings are placed outside the staff and on the notehead side of notes, which can be above or below the staff depending on the stem direction. When shown beside notes inside the staff, Dorico for iPad automatically joins adjacent notes with the same right-hand fingering with a bracket.

Left-hand fingering placement

Left-hand fingerings are usually positioned inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply. However, they also must not collide with other items, such as accidentals and rhythm dots. Dorico for iPad automatically calculates the most appropriate positions for left-hand fingerings and erases their backgrounds by default, which improves their readability when placed on staff lines.

RELATED LINKS
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539
Changing the position of left-hand fingerings on page 542
Hiding/Showing brackets for right-hand fingerings on page 541

Changing fingerings to substitution fingerings

Substitution fingerings indicate where players should change the finger used for the note. You can change existing fingerings to substitution fingerings.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings you want to change to substitution fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Substitution** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Enter the fingering you want for the substitution into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are now shown as substitution fingerings. The deferred position of the substitution is the same as the original fingering by default, but you can change the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings.

Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings

Substitution fingerings are shown as immediate by default, meaning that the substitution takes place on the same note, but you can change the rhythmic position at which individual substitutions take place.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the substitution fingering whose deferred rhythmic position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Change the rhythmic position of the substitution fingering in any of the following ways:
   - In Write mode, click and drag the circular handle to the right/left.
   - In Write mode and Engrave mode, activate **Substitution offset** in the **Fingering and Positions** group of the Properties panel.

     Change the rhythmic position of substitutions as fractions of a quarter note (crotchet) by entering a value into the left value field, or by clicking the arrows beside the value field. Increasing the value moves substitutions to later positions, decreasing the value moves them to earlier positions.

     NOTE

     The right value field is for the grace note position at which substitutions occur, if applicable.

RESULT

The rhythmic position of the substitution fingering is changed.

Dorico for iPad automatically arranges deferred substitutions so they are ordered appropriately alongside any fingerings that coincide with the substitution.

NOTE

You can only change the position of single substitution fingerings when dragging their handles with the mouse. However, you can change the positions of multiple substitution fingerings with **Substitution offset** in the **Fingering and Positions** group of the Properties panel.

Deferred substitutions are always shown with horizontal lines.

RELATED LINKS

Fingerings popover on page 198

Changing existing fingerings

You can change fingerings after you have input them, for example, if you decide a different fingering would be better.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, enter the new fingering you want into the **Finger or position** value field in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are changed.

TIP

You can also change existing fingerings in Write mode by opening the fingerings popover. Any existing fingerings on the selected note are shown in the popover.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 197
Fingerings popover on page 198

Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings

Dorico for iPad automatically follows conventions for fingering placement, but you can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

According to convention, keyboard instrument fingering is positioned above the right-hand staff, and below the left-hand staff. String and brass instrument fingering is always positioned above the staff.

NOTE

These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff-relative position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The selected fingerings appear above/below the staff. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can also change the staff-relative placement of fingerings by selecting them in Engrave mode and pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS

Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539
Changing the property scope on page 128

Showing fingerings inside the staff

You can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments beside noteheads inside the staff.

NOTE

- These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments. Left-hand fingerings for fretted instruments are shown inside the staff by default.
- These steps do not apply to substitution fingerings.

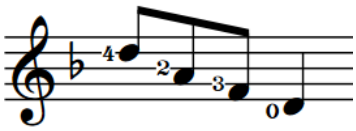
PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose fingerings you want to show inside the staff.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Position left of notehead** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

RESULT

Fingerings belonging to the selected notes are shown inside the staff, directly beside the noteheads. By default, if they belong to a note on a staff line, they erase part of the staff line to ensure legibility.

EXAMPLE



Changing the position of individual fingerings relative to slurs, octave lines, and tuplet brackets

By default, fingerings are positioned inside the arcs of slurs, but outside the start/end of slurs. You can change the position of individual fingerings relative to slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings whose position relative to slurs you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slur-relative position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Inside**
   - **Outside**

RESULT

The position of the selected fingerings relative to slurs, octave lines, and tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

If fingerings also coincide with the first note or last note of slurs, fingerings are positioned outside all of these notations.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the size of fingerings

You can change the size of fingerings individually without changing the size of the noteheads to which they apply. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings whose size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Scale** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The scale size of the selected fingerings is changed. For example, changing the value to **50** scales the selected fingerings to half their normal size. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Showing enclosures/underlines on fingerings

You can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments with either a circle enclosure or an underline.

NOTE

These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments. For fretted instruments, you can instead show string indicators inside the staff, which are shown in a circle enclosure.

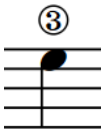
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings on which you want to show an enclosure/underline.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Decoration** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Circle**
   - **Underline**

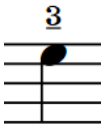
RESULT

The selected fingerings are shown with the chosen decoration.

EXAMPLE



Fingering with circle



Fingering with underline

RELATED LINKS

String indicators on page 549

Hiding/Showing fingering

You can hide/show fingering in each layout independently. For example, you can show fingering in part layouts but hide fingering in full score layouts as conductors rarely require fingering information.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show fingering.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Fingering** section, activate/deactivate **Show fingering**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

All fingerings are shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the appearance of cautionary fingerings on page 539

Deleting fingerings

You can remove fingerings from notes after you have input them. However, because fingerings are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico for iPad, you cannot select and delete them as you would for other items.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes from which you want to remove fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Fingering** > **Reset Fingering**.

RESULT

All fingerings are removed from the selected notes.

TIP

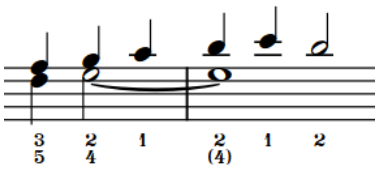
You can assign a key command for **Reset Fingering** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Large selections on page 315
Assigning key commands on page 38
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Cautionary fingerings

Cautionary fingerings remind players that fingerings specified at previous rhythmic positions continue to apply to notes that are still sounding. Dorico for iPad automatically shows cautionary fingerings when you add other fingerings at rhythmic positions where notes with existing fingerings are still sounding.

By default, cautionary fingerings are shown enclosed in parentheses. You can change the appearance of cautionary fingerings individually, for example, if you want to show cautionary fingerings manually on tied notes that cross system or frame breaks.



Cautionary fingering shown in parentheses (default)

RELATED LINKS
Inputting fingerings on page 197
Fingerings popover on page 198

Changing the appearance of cautionary fingerings

You can change the appearance of cautionary fingerings individually, for example, if you want particular fingerings to appear without parentheses or to hide specific cautionary fingerings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to cautionary fingerings.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose cautionary fingering appearance you want to change.

   NOTE

   You must select the specific noteheads to which the cautionary fingerings apply, not the fingerings themselves.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Cautionary** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Default**
   - **With parentheses**
   - **Without parentheses**
   - **Suppress**

RESULT

The appearance of cautionary fingerings on the selected notes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

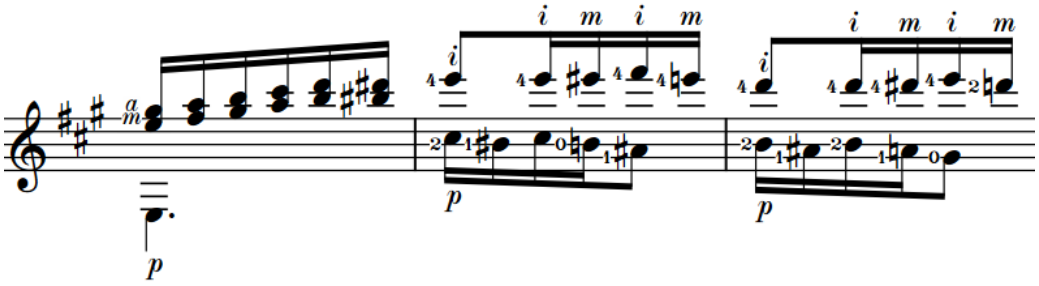
RELATED LINKS

Cautionary fingerings on page 538
Inputting fingerings on page 197
Fingerings popover on page 198
Changing the property scope on page 128

Fingerings for fretted instruments

Fretted instruments, such as the classical guitar, require additional fingering instructions for both hands due to the complex nature of the music.

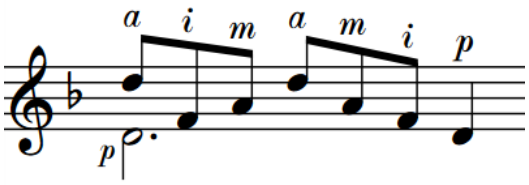
Fingerings for fretted instruments use the same fonts as normal fingerings.



A passage for guitar with right-hand and left-hand fingerings

Right-hand fingering

Right-hand fingerings tell the performer which finger to use to pluck the string, which is usually the right hand. By default, all right-hand fingerings are placed outside the staff, on the notehead side of notes, and follow the stem directions of voices in multiple-voice contexts. When the same finger plays multiple notes in a chord, you can show a single fingering with a bracket for the notes plucked by that finger.



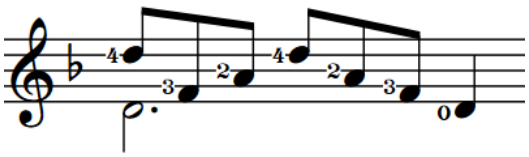
Dorico for iPad shows “p” for right-hand thumb fingerings and “e” for right-hand fingerings for the pinky finger.

NOTE

In Dorico for iPad, we use “pinky” to refer to the smallest finger, but it can also be called “little” or “fifth digit”.

Left-hand fingering

Left-hand fingerings tell the performer which finger to use to stop the string, which is usually the left hand. In Dorico for iPad, left-hand fingerings are placed inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply.



When shown inside the staff next to notes, left-hand fingering appears smaller than fingering shown outside the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 197
Fingerings popover on page 198
Adding fingerings to arpeggio signs on page 542
Fingering slides on page 543
String indicators on page 549
Tapping on page 661
Hammer-ons and pull-offs on page 662

Hiding/Showing brackets for right-hand fingerings

When multiple notes in the same chord are plucked by the same right-hand finger, you can show the same fingering multiple times, once for each note, or show a single fingering for all notes with a bracket spanning the notes plucked by that finger. When showing a separate fingering for each note, you can also choose to place each fingering either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to right-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the fingerings for which you want to hide/show brackets or whose vertical position you want to change.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

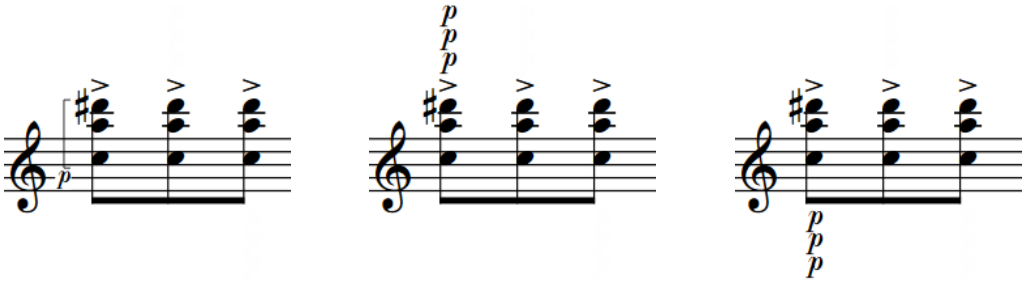
PROCEDURE

1. Select all the notes for which you want to hide/show brackets for right-hand fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Vertical position** in the **Plucked Fingering** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - To hide brackets and show a separate fingering for each selected note, select **Above staff** or **Below staff**.
   - To show brackets and a single fingering for all notes in each bracket, select **Next to note**.

RESULT

Brackets on the selected right-hand fingerings are hidden/shown. If you selected **Above staff** or **Below staff**, their staff-relative placement is changed accordingly. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Right-hand fingerings shown next to notes with a bracket

Right-hand fingerings shown above the staff

Right-hand fingerings shown below the staff

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 197
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the position of left-hand fingerings

You can change the position of individual left-hand fingerings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, they are positioned inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply.

NOTE

These steps only apply to left-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

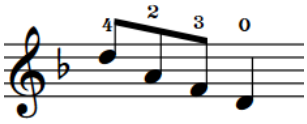
- You have input the fingerings whose position you want to change.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

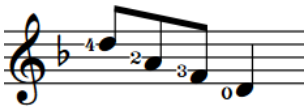
1. Select the left-hand fingerings whose position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Stopping finger position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Outside staff**
   - **Left of note**
   - **Right of note**

EXAMPLE

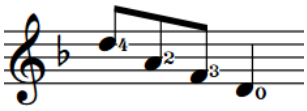
The position of the selected left-hand fingerings is changed. When shown outside the staff, they are placed above the staff by default. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.



Outside staff



Left of note



Right of note

RELATED LINKS

General placement conventions for fingering on page 532
Inputting fingerings on page 197
Changing the property scope on page 128

Adding fingerings to arpeggio signs

You can add fingerings to arpeggio signs to indicate which right-hand finger should be used to strum a chord. By default, fingerings are placed at the bottom of arpeggio signs.

NOTE

These steps only apply to arpeggio signs belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

You have input the arpeggio signs to which you want to add fingerings.

PROCEDURE

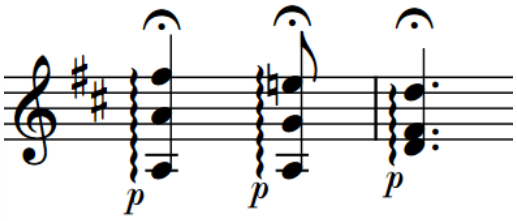
1. Select the arpeggio signs belonging to fretted instruments to which you to add fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Finger** in the **Plucked Fingering** group.
3. Enter the fingering you want into the value field.

   For example, for the thumb, enter **p**.

RESULT

The specified fingering is added to the selected arpeggio signs. It is positioned at the bottom of the arpeggio signs by default.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggio signs played with the thumb

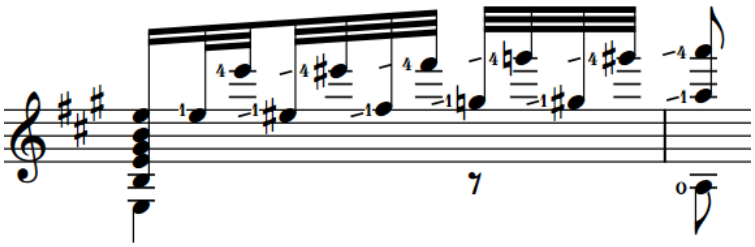
RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248

Fingering slides

Fingering slides indicate that the performer should slide their finger up/down the neck of the instrument. They are notated as an angled line between fingerings.

The note at the start of a fingering slide is known as a source note. The note at the end of a fingering slide is known as the destination note.



A passage with fingering slides

When the source and destination notes are sufficiently close horizontally, fingering slides are shown between the fingerings, joining them directly in their existing positions without moving them. When the source and destination notes are far apart horizontally, fingering slides appear with a fixed length to the left of the destination note. You can change the length of individual fingering slides.

Fingering slides automatically avoid obstructions, such as noteheads, accidentals, and other fingerings.

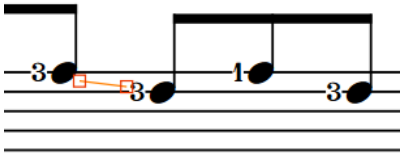
NOTE

- Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the length/angle of fingering slides when you move the fingerings at the start/end.
- In Dorico for iPad, you can only show fingering slides on staves belonging to fretted instruments. You can show string fingering shift indicators on staves belonging to other string instruments.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing fingering slides on page 545
Changing the length of fingering slides on page 545
Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators on page 547

Fingering slides in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each join fingering slide two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of join fingering slides.



Handles on a slide joining two notes in Engrave mode

NOTE

- If you want to change the length of fingering slides, we recommend that you do so by first changing their **Slide type** property or by moving the fingerings. Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the length/angle of fingering slides when you move the fingerings at the start/end.
- You cannot move fingering slides rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which fingering slides apply, you must hide them between their original notes and show new fingering slides between the new notes.
- Fingering slides shown only before the destination note have a fixed length, and so do not have handles at the start/end.
- You cannot move whole fingering slides that join notes. You can only move their handles.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 351

Hiding/Showing fingering slides

You can hide/show slides between notes played by the same left-hand finger on the same string on fretted instruments.

NOTE

These steps only apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the same left-hand fingering for the notes at the start and end of the slides.
- You have specified the same string for the notes at the start and end of the slides.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the destination notes before which you want to hide/show fingering slides. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Slide in** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

RESULT

Fingering slides are shown before the selected notes when **Slide in** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. If the gap between the source and destination notes is small enough, fingering slides appear as an angled line joining the fingerings. If the gap is large, fingering slides appear as a fixed length angled line to the left of the destination notes.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 197
Changing existing fingerings on page 533
Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Moving items graphically on page 351

Changing the length of fingering slides

You can change the length of individual fingering slides and show them either joining the source and destination fingerings or with a fixed length before the destination note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

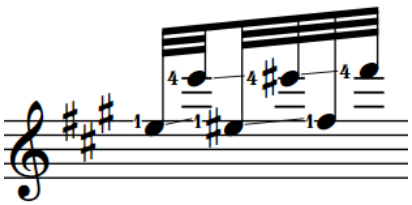
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingering slides whose length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slide type** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - To show fingering slides between the fingerings at the start/end, choose **Join**.
   - To show fixed length fingering slides before the destination fingerings, choose **Destination only**.

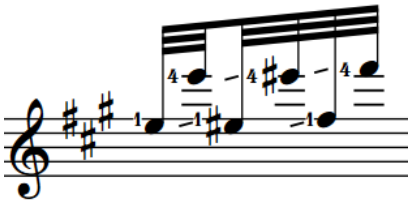
RESULT

The length of the selected fingering slides is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Join



Destination only

RELATED LINKS

Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539
Changing the property scope on page 128

Fingerings for valved brass instruments

For instruments like trumpet and horn, fingering is used to show which valves must be depressed to produce a specific note.

You can enter fingerings for valved brass instruments into the fingerings popover as numbers without any separation. For example, enter **12** for a C♯ on a trumpet to indicate that the first two valves must be depressed.

By default, Dorico for iPad automatically stacks fingerings added to notes on brass instrument staves vertically. They are shown with no separator by default.

RELATED LINKS

Fingerings popover on page 198
Inputting fingerings on page 197

Showing horn branch indicators

You can indicate the branch on which notes are played for double horns and triple horns by adding branch indicators as prefixes to horn fingerings. Some publications simply indicate “T” for thumb, while others more explicitly indicate which branch is to be used by specifying its pitch.

NOTE

You can only add branch indicators to notes belonging to horns in F.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the horn fingerings to which you want to add branch indicators. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Horn branch** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Select one of the following horn branches from the menu:
   - **F**

- **B flat**
- **F alto**
- **E flat alto**
- **Thumb trigger**

RESULT

Branch indicators are added to the selected fingerings.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 197

Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators

You can hide/show shift indicators after individual fingerings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

Shift indicators are angled lines that indicate the direction of movement when string players must shift their finger position on the fingerboard to play a higher/lower note with the same finger as the previous note.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments, which can show fingering slides instead.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

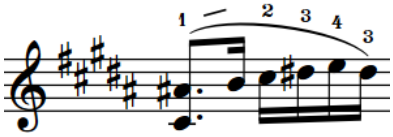
PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes or fingerings on string instrument staves from which you want to indicate a fingering shift. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Indicate shift to next note** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

RESULT

Shift indicators are shown when the property is activated, even if neither of the notes at each end have explicit fingerings, and hidden when the property is deactivated. They are positioned between the selected notes and the notes that immediately follow them. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



RELATED LINKS

Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Fingering slides on page 543
String indicators on page 549
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the direction of string fingering shift indicators

You can change the direction of individual string fingering shift indicators if they do not point in the direction required.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the shift indicators whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Shift direction** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The selected shift indicators are angled up/down.

NOTE

You can also affect the direction of string shift indicators by specifying the strings on which notes are played.

RELATED LINKS

Assigning notes to strings on page 599

Fingerings imported from MusicXML files

Dorico for iPad imports fingerings that are specified using the fingering element in MusicXML files.

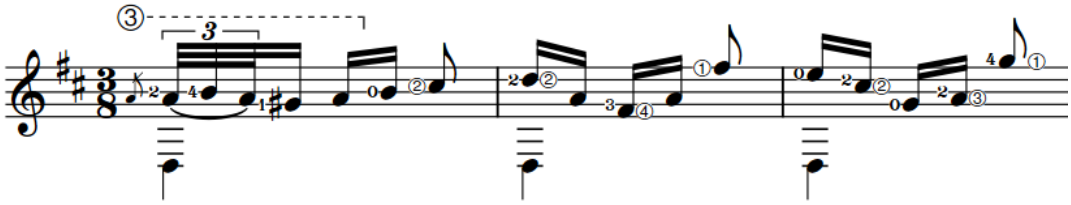
MusicXML files exported from Finale typically represent fingerings in the correct way. However, because Sibelius does not use the fingering element, Dorico for iPad cannot import fingerings from MusicXML files exported by Sibelius.

String indicators

String indicators are commonly used in guitar music to tell performers the string on which they should play a note, particularly for pitches that are possible on multiple strings.

String indicators show the string number inside a circle enclosure, optionally with a dashed line to indicate they apply to a range of notes. Open pitches commonly appear as a zero without an enclosure.

In Dorico for iPad, string indicators for stopped pitches appear in a plain font while string indicators for open strings use the fingering font.



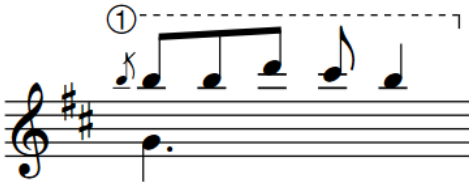
A phrase with string indicators and left-hand fingerings

There are two types of string indicators in Dorico for iPad, which you input in different ways.

String indicators outside the staff

String indicators outside the staff always appear inside circle enclosures. They automatically show dashed duration lines when they have duration to indicate that multiple notes are played on that string.

In Dorico for iPad, string indicators outside the staff are considered playing techniques. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. You can also change the duration line style of string indicators outside the staff in the same ways as for playing technique continuation lines.



String indicator outside the staff with duration line

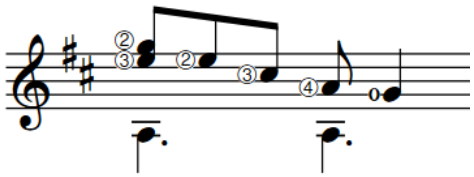
String indicators inside the staff

String indicators inside the staff appear inside circle enclosures, except when they show open strings, which appear as a bold number zero without an enclosure. They automatically erase their backgrounds so they do not collide with staff lines. They appear to the left of noteheads by default but automatically appear to the right if left-hand fingerings are present.

The string number shown in string indicators inside the staff is calculated automatically, but you can also specify the string manually.

String indicators inside the staff for stopped pitches are scaled-down versions of string indicators outside the staff.

In Dorico for iPad, string indicators inside the staff are considered properties of the corresponding notes. You can only select them independently of their corresponding notes in Engrave mode.



String indicators inside the staff, with the last one for an open string

RELATED LINKS
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273
Playing techniques on page 697
Playing technique duration on page 703
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines on page 706
Deleting string indicators on page 550

Deleting string indicators

You can remove string indicators inside the staff from notes after you have input them. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. However, because string indicators inside the staff are properties of notes rather than separate items, you cannot select and delete them as you would for other items.

NOTE

These steps only apply to string indicators inside the staff. You can delete string indicators outside the staff in the same ways as for other items.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes from which you want to remove string indicators inside the staff. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, deactivate **Show** in the **String Indicators** group.

RESULT

String indicators inside the staff are removed from the selected notes. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Large selections on page 315
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Inputting string indicators inside the staff on page 285
Changing the property scope on page 128

Positions of string indicators

String indicators outside the staff are placed above it by default. In multiple-voice contexts, string indicators for the up-stem voices are placed above the staff and string indicators for the down-stem voices are placed below the staff.

String indicators inside the staff automatically erase their backgrounds so they do not collide with staff lines. They appear to the left of noteheads by default but automatically appear to the right if left-hand fingerings are present. You can change the notehead-relative position of string indicators individually.

You can move string indicators outside the staff to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions. You can also change the staff-relative placement of string indicators outside the staff individually, in the same ways as for playing techniques.

You can move string indicators graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Playing technique duration on page 703
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326

Changing the notehead-relative position of string indicators

By default, string indicators inside the staff appear to the left of noteheads when there are no left-hand fingerings and to the right of noteheads when there are left-hand fingerings. You can change the side of noteheads on which string indicators inside the staff appear individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

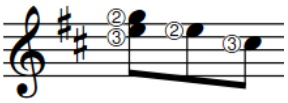
PROCEDURE

1. Select the string indicators inside the staff whose notehead-relative position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Notehead-relative pos.** in the **String Indicators** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**
   - **Right**

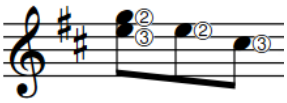
RESULT

The notehead-relative position of the selected string indicators is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



String indicators to the left of noteheads



String indicators to the right of noteheads

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Front matter

Front matter in Dorico for iPad is a broad term that covers all information included before the first bar of music in scores.

Front matter includes musical information often added on pages before the first pages of scores, such as:

- Performance instructions
- Contents
- Instrumentation list

Front matter also includes information above the music on the first page of scores and parts, such as:

- Dedications
- Titles
- Subtitles
- Composers

RELATED LINKS
Master pages on page 366
Frames on page 367
Page formatting on page 369

Project information used in default master pages

An efficient way of ensuring all text information in the different layouts in your project is consistent is to use tokens that link to information for the current project entered in the **Project Info** dialog.

Tokens are codes that refer to text elsewhere, meaning they are updated automatically if the source text is changed.

The default master pages in Dorico for iPad include tokens, so that any information you add about the project in the **Project Info** dialog is automatically shown. For example, the **Default Full Score** master page set includes tokens for the following information:

- Project title
- Project lyricist
- Project composer

NOTE

If you only enter information for individual flows in the **Project Info** dialog, that information does not automatically appear on the first page.

RELATED LINKS
Project Info dialog on page 61
Flow names and flow titles on page 110

Text tokens on page 355
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 382

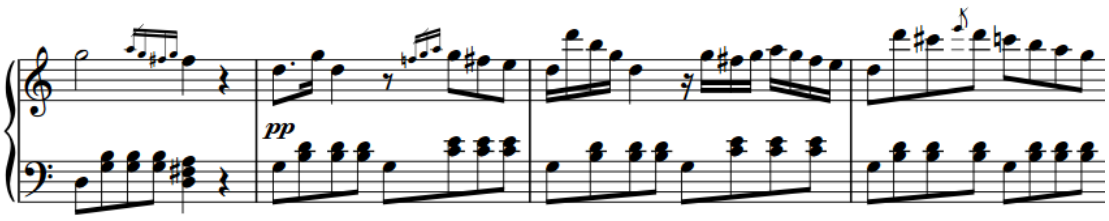
Grace notes

Grace notes are notes without a fixed duration, which are intended to be played quickly. They are scaled-down versions of normal notes, and are commonly shown with a slash through their stem.

Grace notes with slashed stems are known as acciaccaturas and are often played very fast. Grace notes without slashed stems are known as appoggiaturas and are often played slower than acciaccaturas. In Baroque music, appoggiaturas are often understood to last for a specific duration, based on the prevailing meter and the rhythmic value of the notehead to which they are attached. Therefore in Dorico for iPad, slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

Grace notes do not take up space rhythmically, as they are intended to be fitted into the space before the notehead to which they are attached, which is the notehead immediately to their right.

There can be multiple grace notes before a notehead. If there are two or more grace notes attached to the same notehead, and they have a rhythmic value that shows a flag on the stem, such as eighth notes (quavers) and 16th notes (semiquavers), they are automatically beamed together.



Multiple grace notes before notes

In Dorico for iPad, grace notes are scaled to 3/5 the size of a normal notehead by default and are affected by your note spacing settings. There is a separate option specifically for grace note spacing.

You can add notations, such as slurs and articulations, to grace notes in the same ways as to normal notes, and you can transpose grace notes after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting grace notes on page 173
Grace note slashes on page 558
Grace notes in playback on page 560
Slur placement relative to grace notes on page 773
Note spacing on page 393
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Inputting articulations on page 194
Inputting slurs on page 195

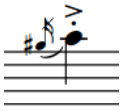
General placement conventions for grace notes

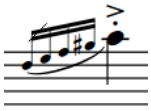
Grace notes function like normal notes in many ways, but there are some specific conventions about their stem direction, position relative to noteheads, and the placement of stem slashes.

Grace notes appear stem up by default, except when there are multiple voices with grace notes in a single staff, in which case grace notes in the lower voices appear stem down. This affects the placement of slurs relative to grace notes.

Grace notes are always positioned before a notehead, even if they are intended to be played on the beat rather than before the beat. They are normally placed after a barline, so they can be positioned directly before the notehead to which they are attached. However, groups of three or more grace notes can be placed before the barline so that the note of the first beat in the bar is not pushed too far from the barline.

Grace note stem slashes appear at the beginning of a grace note beam if multiple grace notes can be joined by a single beam at the same rhythmic position. If there is a single grace note, the slash appears across the stem, and its flag if applicable, and extends either side of the stem.





Adding accidentals causes their spacing to readjust so that the accidentals are clearly legible, similar to normal notes.

Articulations can be added to grace notes wherever they are most clearly legible, which is most likely outside the staff. Dorico for iPad automatically places articulations on the stem-side of grace notes, and outside the staff if the stem or beam is within the staff.

Slurs relative to grace notes

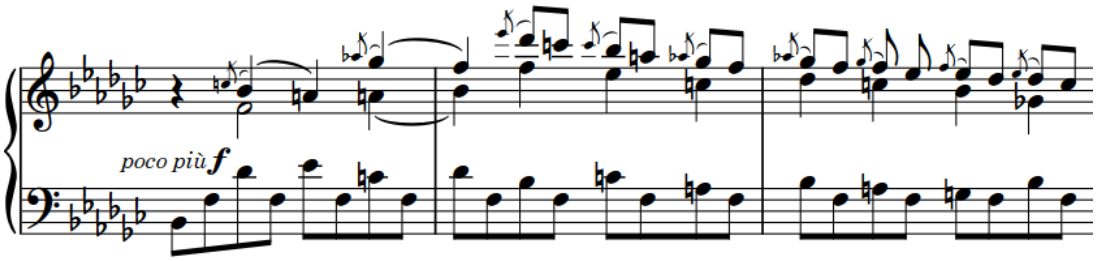
By default, slurs starting on grace notes and ending on tie chains end on the first note of the tie chain. You can change the position of individual slurs relative to tie chains, including those starting from grace notes.

RELATED LINKS
Showing grace notes before/after barlines on page 557
Slur placement relative to grace notes on page 773
Slur position relative to tie chains on page 772
Changing the position of slurs relative to tie chains on page 772
Note spacing on page 393

Grace note placement in multiple-voice contexts

According to accepted notation convention, grace notes appear stem up by default when there is only one voice on a staff, even if the notehead to which they are attached is stem down.

However, when there are multiple voices on the staff, all notes in the upper voices appear stem up and all notes in the lower voices appear stem down, including all grace notes. This adjustment happens automatically in Dorico for iPad, but you can also override the stem direction of grace notes in multiple voices and change their directions individually if necessary.



RELATED LINKS
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821
Slur placement relative to grace notes on page 773

Showing grace notes before/after barlines

By default, grace notes are positioned after barlines and directly before the notehead to which they apply, including for the first note in a bar. You can position individual grace notes before barlines, for example, so the first normal note in the bar is not pushed too far from the barline, or to indicate that grace notes are played before the beat.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the grace notes whose position relative to barlines you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Grace note before barline** in the **Grace Notes** group.

RESULT

Grace notes at the selected rhythmic positions are positioned before barlines when the property is activated, and after barlines when the property is deactivated.

NOTE

This affects all grace notes at the selected rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS
Barlines on page 428
Inputting grace notes on page 173

Grace note size

Grace notes are smaller versions of normal notes, and are scaled down by a ratio that is set by default to 3/5 of a normal note.

You can change the size of grace notes individually in the same way as for normal notes.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the size of notes/items on page 325

Grace note slashes

Slashes shown diagonally across grace note stems are often used to distinguish different types of grace notes. Grace notes with slashed stems are known as acciaccaturas and are often played very fast. Grace notes without slashed stems are known as appoggiaturas and are often played slower than acciaccaturas.

In Dorico for iPad, grace notes appear with slashed stems by default. You can change whether grace notes are slashed or unslashed during note input as well as by changing the type of existing grace notes.

Changing the type of grace notes

You can change the type of individual grace notes after they have been input. Grace notes have slashed stems by default, but you can change them to have unslashed stems.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the grace notes whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Grace note type** in the **Grace Notes** group:
   - **Slashed stem**
   - **Unslashed stem**

RESULT

The selected grace notes are shown with slashed/unslashed stems.

TIP

You can also change the grace note type during note input.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting grace notes on page 173

Moving slashes on grace note stems

You can change the vertical position of individual grace note slashes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the grace notes whose slash positions you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Grace Notes** group:
   - **Slash inset from stem tip**
   - **Slash offset to right**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Slash inset from stem tip** moves grace note slashes further from the tips of stems and closer to the noteheads. Decreasing the value moves them closer to the tips of stems and further from the noteheads.

Increasing **Slash offset to right** moves grace note slashes to the right, decreasing the value moves them to the left.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the length of grace note slashes

You can change the length of slashes on grace note stems individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the grace notes whose slash length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Grace Notes** group:
   - **Slash length**
   - **Slash protrusion from beam** (beamed grace notes only)

   NOTE

   Grace note slashes seem to disappear when you activate **Slash length** because activating the property resets the value to **0**.
3. Change the length and/or protrusion of the selected slashes by changing the values in the corresponding value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Slash length** lengthens grace note slashes on both single grace notes and grace note beams, decreasing the value shortens grace note slashes.

Increasing **Slash protrusion from beam** increases how far slashes extend beyond grace note beams, decreasing the value decreases how far slashes extend beyond grace note beams.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Grace note stems

Grace notes are scaled-down notes, so the length of grace note stems is determined by the default settings for the stem length of all notes.

Following accepted conventions, grace notes in Dorico for iPad are stem up by default in any clef, regardless of the stem direction of the note to which they apply. The stem directions of grace notes are changed automatically when there are multiple voices on a staff, but you can change

the stem direction of individual grace notes manually. You can also lengthen/shorten grace note stems in the same ways as for normal stems.

RELATED LINKS
Stems on page 819
Grace note slashes on page 558
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821
Lengthening/Shortening stems on page 823
Hiding stems on page 824

Grace note beams

Dorico for iPad automatically beams multiple adjacent grace notes together if they are an eighth note (quaver) or shorter in duration.

Like all beams, grace note beams ideally follow the accepted standards for beam placement relative to staff lines, in order to avoid wedges. However, because grace notes are smaller than normal notes, this can lead to extreme slants in grace note beams.

You can adjust the slants of individual grace note beams in the same ways as for normal beams.

RELATED LINKS
Beaming on page 447
Beam groups on page 447

Grace notes in playback

Slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

Slashed grace notes of any note duration, and unslashed grace notes a 16th note or shorter, play back before the beat with a single default sounding duration.

Unslashed grace notes an eighth note or longer play back on the beat. Their sounding duration is half the note duration of the note to which they are attached. For example, if an unslashed eighth note grace note is attached to a quarter note, both notes play back as if they were eighth notes.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting grace notes on page 173
Grace note slashes on page 558

Holds and pauses

Different notations are used to show where the established rhythmic flow of the music is interrupted, either with a moment of repose or a short silence, before continuing. The most subtle effect is produced by a tenuto mark, with more significant effects denoted with holds and pauses.

The duration of the break in the music intended by the hold or pause does not need to be specified. This leaves significant room for interpretation, even though the different styles of holds and pauses normally indicate larger or smaller breaks.

NOTE

Holds and pauses do not currently have an effect in playback, but this is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for holds and pauses on page 244

Types of holds and pauses

There are three types of holds and pauses in Dorico for iPad, and they can all be input, moved, and deleted in the same ways.

Fermatas

Fermatas indicate that a note is held for longer than its notated length, which applies to the whole ensemble.

They are also known as “pauses” and informally sometimes called “birds’ eyes”.

Breath marks

Breath marks show suitable places for players to breathe, or suggest how the music is phrased to create a similar effect.

Caesuras

Caesuras indicate that a note is sustained for its full value and is followed by a break in sound before continuing.

Types of fermatas

There are different types of fermatas available in Dorico for iPad. Each fermata indicates a suggested pause duration whilst leaving room for interpretation.

Fermata	Description
Very short fermata	Indicates that a note is held only a fraction longer than the rhythm indicates.
Short fermata	Indicates that a note is held a little bit longer than the rhythm indicates.

Fermata	Description
Short fermata (Henze)	Indicates that a note is held a little bit longer than the rhythm indicates, as used by Hans Werner Henze.
Fermata	Indicates that a note is held for longer than the rhythm indicates.
Long fermata	Indicates that a note is held quite a lot longer than the rhythm indicates.
Long fermata (Henze)	Indicates that a note is held quite a lot longer than the rhythm indicates, as used by Hans Werner Henze.
Very long fermata	Indicates that a note is held for much longer than the rhythm indicates.
Curlew (Britten)	Indicates that a note or rest is held until the next synchronization point in asynchronous music, as used by Benjamin Britten.

Fermatas can be divided into two styles. Because their meanings overlap, it can be confusing for players if both styles are used in a single project.

Style	Very short fermata	Short fermata	Fermata	Long fermata	Very long fermata
Standard					
Henze	N/A				N/A

RELATED LINKS
Holds and pauses popover on page 244
Changing existing items on page 324

Types of breath marks

There are different types of breath marks available in Dorico for iPad. Breath marks indicate a suitable place for a player to take a breath, or create a musical effect like a breath.

Comma-like	Tick-like	Upbow-like	Salzedo
			

Types of caesuras

There are different types of caesuras available in Dorico for iPad. All caesuras indicate a break in sound, but different types are often needed for different styles of musical scores.

Caesura	Thick caesura	Short caesura	Curved caesura
			
Two diagonal slashes	Two thick diagonal slashes	Two straight, vertical slashes	Two curved diagonal slashes

If you intend to communicate a specific length of hold or gap with each type of caesura, we recommend that you consider adding a legend, as different players may interpret these symbols differently.

RELATED LINKS
Changing existing items on page 324

Positions of holds and pauses

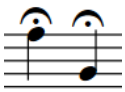
Holds and pauses are placed above the staff by default in single-voice contexts, and are shown on all staves at the closest rhythmic position available, for example, if a single staff has a fermata on the last beat in the bar, it is shown above the bar rests on the other empty staves. For staves with multiple voices, fermatas are also shown inverted below the staff.

You can move holds and pauses to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move holds and pauses graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Fermatas

Fermatas are positioned horizontally so that they are centered on noteheads, regardless of the stem direction of notes.



Fermatas affect the overall tempo of the piece, so all players must be able to see where they occur. Therefore, fermatas are shown on all staves at the same rhythmic position, or the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata, including over a bar rest if a staff has no notes in that bar.

Breath marks

Breath marks are placed above the top line of the staff by default, at the end of the note to which they apply; that is, they appear just before the following note.

Breath marks apply only to the staff to which they were added, as they do not affect the overall tempo, but instead only indicate to a single player or group of players a suitable place to break their line in order to breathe.

Caesuras

Caesuras are positioned at the top of the staff, with the top staff line passing through the middle of the caesura and the bottom of the caesura resting on the second staff line. They are commonly placed at the end of a bar, before the barline.

Caesuras are automatically added to all staves at the same rhythmic position, immediately to the left of the notehead or barline to which they were input. They are not linked to noteheads, and adjust note spacing to create a clear gap.

RELATED LINKS
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Multiple holds and pauses at the same rhythmic position

Because fermatas apply to all staves, only one type of fermata can exist at the same rhythmic position. For example, you cannot have a short fermata on one staff and a long fermata at the same rhythmic position on another staff.

A Britten curlew can be used at the same rhythmic position as another kind of fermata, but it cannot exist simultaneously with any breath mark. This is the only exception in Dorico for iPad.

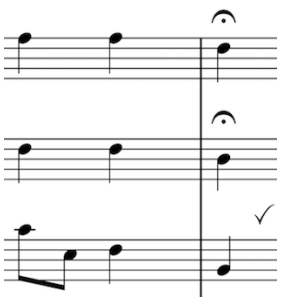
Caesuras can co-exist with any type of breath mark, but you cannot have a caesura and a fermata at the same rhythmic position.

Changes to fermatas on single staves

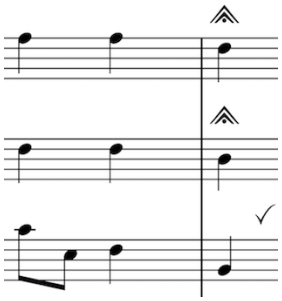
Changing the type of fermata or caesura on one staff automatically changes the type on all staves at that rhythmic position, as a pause at one particular rhythmic position can only be of one duration.

However, if you override a particular fermata on one staff, for example, by changing it to a Britten curlew or a breath mark, changing the existing fermata on another staff does not change the marking on the overridden staff. Deleting the marking on the overridden staff reverts that marking to match the fermata on the other staves.

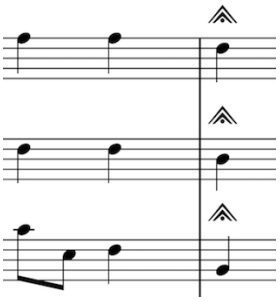
For example, changing a fermata to a breath mark changes the marking for only that staff. That note is not affected when the type of fermata on the other staves at that rhythmic position is changed.



The bottom staff is overridden to show a breath mark instead of a fermata.



The fermata is changed to a very short fermata, but the bottom staff is exempt as it was overridden to show a breath mark.



Deleting the breath mark from the bottom staff returns it to showing the fermata currently chosen for that rhythmic position.

Changing the number of fermatas per staff

You can change the maximum number of fermatas that appear on each staff at individual positions when there are multiple voices on a staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fermatas whose maximum number per staff you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Max. fermatas per staff** in the **Holds and Pauses** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **One per voice**
   - **One per each side of staff**
   - **One per staff**

RESULT

The number of fermatas shown at the selected positions is changed.

Positioning fermatas on barlines

You can position individual fermatas over a barline instead of over a note to indicate a gap before the start of the following bar.

NOTE

Fermatas cannot be positioned on barlines if **Max. fermatas per staff** is also activated.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fermatas you want to position over barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Attach to barline** in the **Holds and Pauses** group.

RESULT

The selected fermatas are positioned above the barline at the end of the bars they were in originally, appearing only above staves that are not joined by the barline. Depending on the instrumentation, this may mean they only appear at the top of the system.

Deactivating **Attach to barline** returns the selected fermatas to their default positions.

Key signatures

Key signatures are the markings that show the current key of music by indicating which notes in the scale for that key are sharpened or flattened. They are shown at the start of each system on every applicable staff.

Traditionally, accidentals are organized following the pattern of the circle of fifths, which is different for sharp keys and flat keys.

Using key signatures saves space, as by indicating which notes are generally going to be sharp or flat in the music in one group at the start of each system, these notes do not need an accidental beside them every time they occur.

Once you have input a key signature, all notes you subsequently input follow the key signature, for example, if you input an **F** after inputting a G major key signature, an F♯ is input automatically.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

Instruments that do not usually have key signatures, such as timpani or horn, have a **No key sig** version in Dorico for iPad which never show key signatures. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

Flows without any key signatures are treated as if there were an open/atonal key signature rather than A minor or C major.

In Dorico for iPad, key signatures exist within the overarching tonality system for your project. The only tonality system that comes as standard in Dorico for iPad is 12-EDO.

NOTE

- You cannot hide key signatures as they provide crucial information about the pitch of notes. If you do not want to see a key signature, you can input an open key signature or delete all key signatures from the flow or project.
- You do not have to input multiple simultaneous key signatures if you have transposing instruments in your score. Dorico for iPad handles instrument transpositions automatically.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for key signatures on page 200
Types of key signatures on page 567
Tonality systems on page 571
Instrument picker on page 53
Note input on page 140
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Transposing instruments on page 78
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102

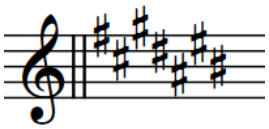
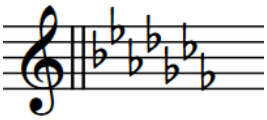
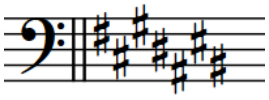
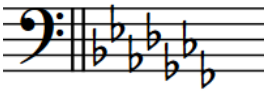
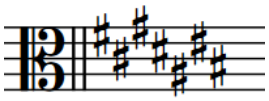
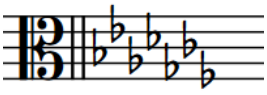
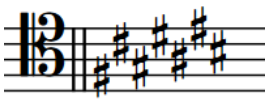
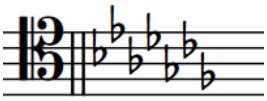
Key signature arrangements

Dorico for iPad automatically follows conventions for the placement and appearance of key signatures, such as showing accidentals in the accepted circle of fifths order and positioning key signatures between clefs and time signatures.

The order in which accidentals are shown in key signatures is different for sharp keys and flat keys.

- For sharps: F♯, C♯, G♯, D♯, A♯, E♯, B♯
- For flats: B♭, E♭, A♭, D♭, G♭, C♭, F♭

Accidentals are arranged automatically in these orders in Dorico for iPad for all standard Western key signatures. There is an accepted pattern for the placement of accidentals in a key signature, so that they fit inside the staff according to the current clef. The pattern of accidentals is the same in all clefs, apart from the tenor clef, which requires sharp key signatures to follow a different, ascending pattern to ensure the accidentals fit on the staff.

Clef	Arrangement of sharps	Arrangement of flats
Treble		
Bass		
Alto		
Tenor		

RELATED LINKS
Positions of key signatures on page 568

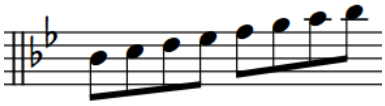
Types of key signatures

There are multiple types of key signatures in Dorico for iPad, which can all be input, moved, and deleted in the same ways.

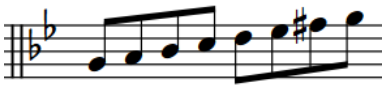
Major and minor key signatures

The key signature for a major key appears the same as the key signature for its relative minor, and vice versa. For example, B♭ major has two flats in its key signature. This is the same number of flats as for G minor, which is the relative minor key to B♭ major. The difference is that music in G minor usually has sharpened Fs, as the seventh degree of the scale is raised in minor keys.

Therefore, if you input an F♯/G♭ after a G minor key signature, Dorico for iPad prefers to spell it as F♯ in most cases, in order to follow the convention of harmonic minor keys.



A B flat major scale following a B flat major key signature



A G minor scale following a G minor key signature

Open key signature

Although open, or atonal, key signatures appear the same as C major or A minor key signatures because none shows any accidentals, open key signatures behave differently.

In an open key signature, the spelling of accidentals is based on the current direction of the music. If the music is rising, sharps are preferred, whereas if the music is falling, flats are preferred. There is no hierarchy of pitches in an open key signature, so the same pitch might be spelled differently each time it appears depending on its context, even within a few bars.

In a C major or A minor key signature, accidentals are spelled based on the context of the major or minor tonality implied. For example, in C major, sharps in general are preferred, whether the music is going up or going down. Similarly, in A minor, G♯ in particular is preferred, whether the music is going up or going down, as G♯ is the leading note in A minor.

No key signature

Some instruments are accustomed to seeing no key signatures in their parts, no matter the overall key of the piece. These instruments include timpani, percussion, horn, trumpet, and sometimes the harp. If you have added the **No key sig** version of these instruments, then no key signature is shown in their parts, even if they are a transposing instrument, such as horn or trumpet.

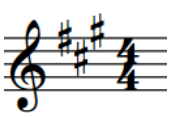
Any pitch can be input into these instruments, and they show accidentals if needed.

RELATED LINKS
Adding instruments to players on page 79

Positions of key signatures

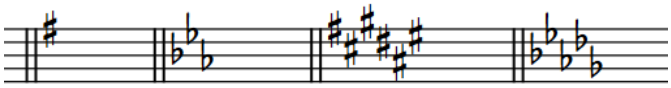
Key signatures are positioned between clefs and time signatures by default, and are shown on every staff that requires a key signature. They are not shown on staves for unpitched instruments.

Key signatures are shown at the start of a piece and at the start of subsequent movements, even if the music carries straight on and in the same key. Unlike time signatures, key signatures appear at the start of every system, even if the key signature has not changed. They apply until the end of the flow or until the next key signature change, whichever comes first.



The correct position for key signatures is between clefs and time signatures.

If a key signature change occurs during a piece or movement, it should be placed immediately after a barline. It is customary to have a double barline where a key signature change takes place, which is the default setting in Dorico for iPad.



Examples of key signatures positioned after double barlines

You can move key signatures to new rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned correctly.

RELATED LINKS
Key signature arrangements on page 567
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337

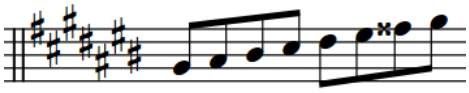
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures

Enharmonic equivalent key signatures are keys with different names that include the same pitches, such as C♯ major and D♭ major. Dorico for iPad follows the convention for transposing to keys with the same type of accidental as the previous key, except where the enharmonic equivalent key signature has fewer accidentals.

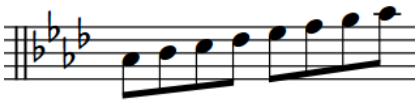
When transposing selections of notes, Dorico for iPad prefers keys with the same type of accidental as the previous key signature. When choosing key signatures for transposing instruments, Dorico for iPad prefers key signatures with the same type of accidental as the current concert pitch key.

However, there are some instances where you might prefer to transpose to a key with a different type of accidental as it has fewer accidentals than the enharmonic equivalent key. For example, C♯ major has seven sharps, whereas the enharmonic equivalent key of D♭ major only has five flats. This means the player has to remember the accidentals for fewer notes.

Transposing to an enharmonic equivalent key with fewer accidentals can have the added benefit of improving readability by avoiding double sharps or double flats. For example, transposing music from F♯ to G♯ requires the leading note to be spelled as an F𝄪, but transposing to A♭ instead means the leading note is G♮.



G♯ major requires a double sharp leading note



A♭ major, the enharmonic equivalent to G♯, does not require a double sharp leading note

By default, Dorico for iPad selects an enharmonic equivalent key signature if it has fewer accidentals. You can change this setting in each flow independently.

How key signatures affect transposing instruments

If there is a key signature in the full score, it is transposed for a transposing instrument by the same degree as the transposing interval for the instrument. For example, in a project in E major, a B♭ clarinet part has a key of F♯ major, as a B♭ clarinet sounds a whole step (tone) below its notated pitch.

Instruments that do not show a key signature

Some instruments are accustomed to seeing no key signatures in their parts, no matter the overall key of the piece. These instruments include timpani, percussion, horn, trumpet, and sometimes the harp. If you have input the **No key sig** version of these instruments, then no key signature is shown in their parts, even if they are a transposing instrument, such as horn or trumpet.

You can still transpose music in the staves of these instruments, but they show accidentals as necessary, instead of showing a key signature.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Transpose dialog on page 187
Transposing selections on page 186
Respelling notes on page 183
Adding instruments to players on page 79
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 102
Transposing instruments on page 78

Allowing/Disallowing enharmonic equivalent key signatures

By default, Dorico for iPad selects enharmonic equivalent key signatures if they have fewer accidentals when transposing selections that include a key signature and in transposing layouts. You can change this setting in each flow independently, for example, if you want all layouts to have flats in their key signatures, regardless of the number of accidentals.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to allow/disallow enharmonic equivalent key signatures.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Accidentals** in the category list.
4. In the **Transposition** section, activate/deactivate **Prefer enharmonic equivalent key signatures with fewer accidentals**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Enharmonic equivalent key signatures with fewer accidentals are allowed when the option is activated, and disallowed when the option is deactivated. This affects resulting key signatures when transposing selections that include a key signature and in transposing layouts.

Cautionary key signatures

When a key signature change occurs at a system break, either in the score or in a part, the new key signature is shown at the end of the first system as well as at the start of the new system.

This is sometimes considered a “cautionary key signature”, as players become used to seeing the key signature at the start of the system and therefore may miss a change of key signature if it is not conspicuously shown at the end of systems.

In Dorico for iPad, as key signature changes occur immediately after barlines, the key signature at the end of a system is the key signature itself, rather than a cautionary key signature.

If the music is separate enough that you do not want to see a key signature at the end of a system and you cannot change where the system break occurs, you can separate the music by creating a new flow at the point of the system break.

RELATED LINKS
Flows on page 96
Inserting system breaks on page 391

Tonality systems

The term “tonality system” is used in Dorico for iPad to encompass three crucial elements that together make up the concept of tonality.

The three elements that make up tonality systems are:

- A number of equal divisions of the octave, or EDO. For example, standard Western scales with half-step (semitone) steps have 12-EDO.
- A set of accidentals. This allows you to notate how much a note is raised or lowered.
- A key signature. In Dorico for iPad, you can use any traditional Western key signature.

Dorico for iPad provides the following tonality systems in each project by default:

- **Equal temperament (12-EDO)**: Contains twelve half-step (semitone) steps
- **Equal temperament (24-EDO)**: Contains 24 quarter tone steps

You can find existing tonality systems in your project in the **Tonality System** section of the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.

RELATED LINKS
Custom tonality systems on page 572
Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on page 201

Equal Division of the Octave (EDO)

EDO stands for Equal Division of the Octave: the number of equal pieces, or intervals, into which an octave is divided.

Traditional Western harmony is based on equal temperament, another method used to describe tonality systems, or 12-EDO, as the traditional scale from C-C is made up of twelve steps spread across the seven notes in the scale.

For example, between the notes A and B there are two steps, but between B and C there is one step. This is because in 12-EDO, each step represents a half-step (semitone), and there are two half-steps between A and B according to standard equal temperament, but only one half-step between B and C.

Other tonality systems can have different equal divisions of the octave, for example, in 24-EDO each octave division is a quarter tone. However, the only tonality system in Dorico for iPad is 12-EDO.

RELATED LINKS
Custom tonality systems on page 572

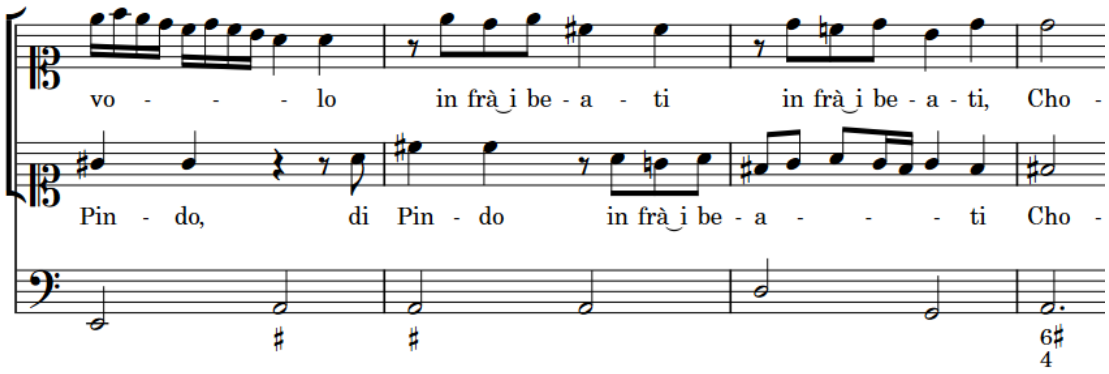
Custom tonality systems

Custom tonality systems allow you to specify a unique number of divisions of the octave for your project. This can be useful for music not based on traditional Western harmony. Custom tonality systems are only available in Dorico for iPad if you open a project that already contains them, and you cannot change where they apply.

Lyrics

In Dorico for iPad, the term lyrics is used for all text that is sung by singers.

To differentiate sung text from any other forms of text that often appear in musical scores, other forms of text are referred to as performance instructions, tempos, dynamics, and so on.



Lyrics for a soprano duet with basso continuo accompaniment

In Dorico for iPad, lyrics were designed so that it is simple to make changes to existing lyrics without having to re-input new lyrics each time. For example, you can change the syllable type of lyrics so that they are either followed or not followed by a hyphen.

Lyrics are organized into lines to ensure consistent horizontal alignment and to make showing verse numbers simple and accurate. There are different types of lyric lines for lyrics with different purposes, and the appearance of lyrics changes depending on their line type. For example, lyrics in a chorus line are shown in an italic font.

When inputting lyrics, you can use key commands to switch between lyric lines, to change on which side of the staff lyrics are input, and to switch the lyric style between normal lyrics, chorus lyrics, and translation lyrics. You can also change the type of lyrics after they have been input.

You can input multiple lines of lyrics, chorus lyrics, and translations, both above or below staves. You can filter existing lyrics according to their type and lyric line.

RELATED LINKS
Types of lyrics on page 575
Lyric line numbers on page 586
Filters for lyrics on page 574
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 585
Inputting lyrics on page 292
Changing the syllable type of existing lyrics on page 577

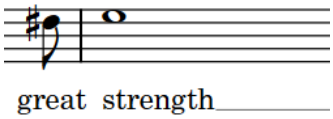
General placement conventions for lyrics

Lyrics are generally placed below the staff to which they apply, and are positioned so that they align horizontally with their corresponding notehead.

A plain font is generally used for normal lyrics, and an italic font is generally used for chorus lyrics and translation lyrics in order to differentiate them.

The horizontal spacing of lyrics must be wide enough so that words or syllables do not overlap with the words or syllables on either side. For this reason, note spacing must sometimes be adjusted to accommodate lyrics.

To reduce how severely the note spacing is changed to accommodate lyrics, which can distort the appearance of rhythms, Dorico for iPad allows the alignment of some lyrics to be adjusted relative to their corresponding notes. For example, if a long, single-syllable word on a long note follows another long, single-syllable word on a short note, the second word is moved a little to the right to give both words enough space.



A short note followed by a long note, where the horizontal position of the lyrics is automatically adjusted for legibility.

RELATED LINKS
Positions of lyrics on page 582

Filters for lyrics

In Dorico for iPad, lyrics filters allow you to select all lyrics of a specified type across your project or across a specific selection.

The following lyrics filters are available:

All Lyrics

Selects all types of lyrics in the current selection, with any lyric line number and placement above/below the staff.

Line 1

Selects only Line 1 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 1 in the current selection, including Line 1 below the staff and Line 1 above the staff.

Line 2

Selects only Line 2 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 2 in the current selection, including Line 2 below the staff and Line 2 above the staff.

Line 3

Selects only Line 3 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 3 in the current selection, including Line 3 below the staff and Line 3 above the staff.

Line 4

Selects only Line 4 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 4 in the current selection, including Line 4 below the staff and Line 4 above the staff.

Line 5

Selects only Line 5 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 5 in the current selection, including Line 5 below the staff and Line 5 above the staff.

Above Staff

Selects all lyrics above the staff in the current selection. You can use this filter in addition to the other filters. For example, you can filter first by line number, and then filter again by staff-relative placement.

Below Staff

Selects all lyrics below the staff in the current selection. You can use this filter in addition to the other filters. For example, you can filter first by line number, and then filter again by staff-relative placement.

Chorus

Selects all chorus lyrics in the current selection.

Translations

Selects all translation lyrics in the current selection.

RELATED LINKS

Filters on page 318
Large selections on page 315
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Selecting lyrics using filters

You can use lyric filters to select all lyrics of a specified type across your project or across a specific selection.

PREREQUISITE

Your filter setting is set to **Select**.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, make a selection that includes all the lyrics you want to select.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Filter** > **Lyrics** > **[Lyrics type]**.

RESULT

All lyrics of the selected type in your selection are selected. For example, if you choose **Filter** > **Lyrics** > **Chorus**, all chorus lyrics in your selection are selected.

RELATED LINKS

Changing filters to select/deselect on page 319
Large selections on page 315
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Types of lyrics

Lyrics are divided into different lyric types in Dorico for iPad.

Lyric lines

Lyric lines contain normal lyrics and can be shown with verse numbers. They can be both below and above the staff.

Chorus lines

Chorus lines contain lyrics in an italic font and are placed between lyric lines. For example, if there are two lyric lines, the chorus line appears between Line 1 and Line 2.

Chorus lines do not have verse numbers.

Lyric line translations

Lyric line translations show the text in lyric lines or chorus lines in different languages. They are placed directly below the lyric line or chorus line of which they are a translation. They are shown in an italic font.

Each lyric line can have its own lyric line translation, including chorus lines.

Lyric line translations do not have verse numbers, as they are part of the line of which they are a translation.

You can input all types of lyrics using the lyrics popover. The icon shown on the left-hand side of the popover indicates the type of lyric currently being input.

RELATED LINKS
Lyric line numbers on page 586
Changing the line number and type of lyric lines on page 587
Lyrics popover on page 293

Changing the type of individual lyrics

You can change the type of individual lyrics after they have been input. For example, you can change lyrics into chorus lyrics or translation lyrics.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual lyrics whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Lyrics** group:
   - **Chorus**
   - **Is translation**

RESULT

- Activating **Chorus** changes the selected individual lyrics to chorus lyrics.
- Activating **Is translation** changes the selected lyrics to translation lyrics of the same lyric line number. For example, selecting lyrics in Line 2 and activating **Is translation** turns them into translation lyrics for Line 2.
- Activating both properties changes the selected lyrics to translation lyrics of the chorus.
- Deactivating both properties changes the selected lyrics to normal lyrics. Their line number is indicated by the number in **Line number** in the **Lyrics** group of the Properties panel.

NOTE

If other chorus lines exist at the same position on the side of the staff where you want to change your current selection to chorus lines, the two lines collide. To avoid this, change the type of the whole lyric line, which automatically avoids collisions.

RELATED LINKS
Showing lyrics in italics on page 581

Types of syllables in lyrics

There are different types of syllables in lyrics, depending on their position in words. The key you press to advance the popover indicates the syllable type for each lyric.

Dorico for iPad defines lyrics as different syllables depending on how you advance the popover when inputting lyrics.

Whole word

Lyrics are considered a whole word if the lyric comes after a gap and is followed by a gap or a period.

No hyphens are shown either side of whole word lyrics. Extender lines can be shown after lyrics.

Start

Lyrics are considered the start syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a gap, but is followed by a hyphen.

Hyphens are shown after start lyrics, which can be continuation hyphens depending on the distance before the next lyric in the same lyric line.

Middle

Lyrics are considered the middle syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a hyphen, and is followed by a hyphen.

Hyphens are shown after middle lyrics, which can be continuation hyphens depending on the distance before the next lyric in the same lyric line.

End

Lyrics are considered the end syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a hyphen but is followed by a gap or a period.

Extender lines can be shown after end lyrics.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting lyrics on page 292
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 585

Changing the syllable type of existing lyrics

You can change the syllable type of lyrics after they have been input.

For example, if you advanced the lyrics popover to the next note by pressing **Space** but you later want it to be followed by a hyphen, you can change its syllable type.

NOTE

Changing the syllable type changes whether a hyphen is shown after the selected lyrics, not before them. Therefore, if you want to show a hyphen before lyrics, you must change the syllable type of the lyrics immediately preceding them.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose syllable type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Syllable type** menu in the **Lyrics** group:
   - **Whole word**

- **Start**
- **Middle**
- **End**

RESULT

Lyrics with a syllable type of **Whole word** or **End** are followed by a space.

Lyrics with a syllable type of **Start** or **Middle** are followed by a hyphen.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting lyrics on page 292

Copying/Pasting lyrics

You can copy and paste lyrics from both existing lyric lines in Dorico for iPad and from external text editors, for example, if you want to copy a lyric line to a player who has different rhythms to the source but uses the same lyrics.

When copying text from outside Dorico for iPad, you must format the text so it is suitably separated into syllables, for example, by adding hyphens in multi-syllabic words. This ensures Dorico for iPad can correctly identify the characters required for each word/syllable and therefore format the resulting lyrics appropriately. There are automatic hyphenation tools that you can use, but results from these are not always reliable. Dorico for iPad checks text you have copied to your clipboard to make sure it contains only single spaces and single hyphens for correct syllable input.

NOTE

You cannot currently copy/paste lyrics containing Chinese, Japanese, or Korean characters. This is planned for future versions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics/text you want to copy. You can do this within Dorico for iPad or externally.

   NOTE

   - If you are copying existing lyrics/text in Dorico for iPad, you must be in Write mode.
   - If you want to select many existing lyrics in Dorico for iPad, you can use filters for lyric lines or you can select a single lyric and press **Cmd-Shift-A** multiple times to select the rest of the lyrics in the lyric line.

2. Press **Cmd-C** to copy the selected lyrics/text.
3. In Write mode, select the first note in the voice to which you want to copy lyrics.
4. Open the lyrics popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-L**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Lyrics**.
5. Optional: Change the lyric type into which you will paste lyrics in one of the following ways:
   - To change the lyric line number, press **Down Arrow**.
   - To change to a lyric line above the staff, press **Shift**-**Up Arrow**.
   - To change to a chorus line, press **Up Arrow**.

- To change to a translation lyric line, press **Alt/Opt** - **Down Arrow**.

6. Press **Cmd-V** to paste the first word/syllable of the copied lyrics/text.

   The lyrics popover automatically advances to the next note in the selected voice according to the source text. For example, for syllables followed by hyphens in the source, the popover advances as if you had pressed **-** (hyphen), which automatically shows hyphens after those syllables.

7. Optional: For words/syllables that you want to apply to two or more notes, you must advance the popover manually in one of the following ways:
   - After complete words or the final syllable in multi-syllabic words, press **Space**.
   - After syllables that are not the final syllable in multi-syllabic words, press **-** (hyphen).
   - After syllables that you do not want to be followed by an extension line or hyphen, press **Right Arrow**.
8. Continue pressing **Cmd-V** for each word/syllable you want to paste.

RESULT

The selected lyrics/text is pasted into the selected lyric line belonging to the voice in which you selected a note.

NOTE

Words/syllables are removed from your clipboard as you paste them. If you want to paste the same lyrics/text into another lyric line or staff, you must copy the source again.

RELATED LINKS

Edit Lyrics dialog on page 580
Large selections on page 315
Selecting lyrics using filters on page 575
Selecting more items of the same type on page 314
Lyrics popover on page 293
Inputting lyrics on page 292

Lyric text editing

Proofreading lyrics can be challenging, because lyrics are spaced more widely than regular text and individual words are often split up over large horizontal distances. In Dorico for iPad, you can change the text of individual words/syllables within the lyrics popover and also by viewing entire lyric lines in a single dialog.

Editing existing lyrics

You can change the text of lyrics after they have been input, for example, to correct misspellings.

NOTE

- This resets any properties you had set on the affected lyrics.
- You can only change one lyric at a time when following these steps. To edit multiple lyrics at once, you can use the **Edit Lyrics** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the lyric you want to change.

2. Press **Return** or **Shift-L** to open the lyrics popover.
3. Change the existing text in the lyrics popover.
4. Optional: If you want to change other existing lyrics, advance the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To advance the popover to the next note if you entered a complete word, or the final syllable in a multi-syllabic word, press **Space**.

     Existing lyrics are automatically selected in the popover when you press **Space**.
   - To advance the popover to the next note if you entered one syllable of a multi-syllabic word, press **-**.
   - To move the cursor one character to the right, press **Right Arrow**.
   - To move the cursor one character to the left, press **Left Arrow**.

     The cursor automatically moves to the next/previous lyric/note if you keep pressing the arrow keys.
5. Press **Return** or **Esc** to close the popover when you have finished changing lyrics.

   The popover closes automatically when you reach the last note on the staff.

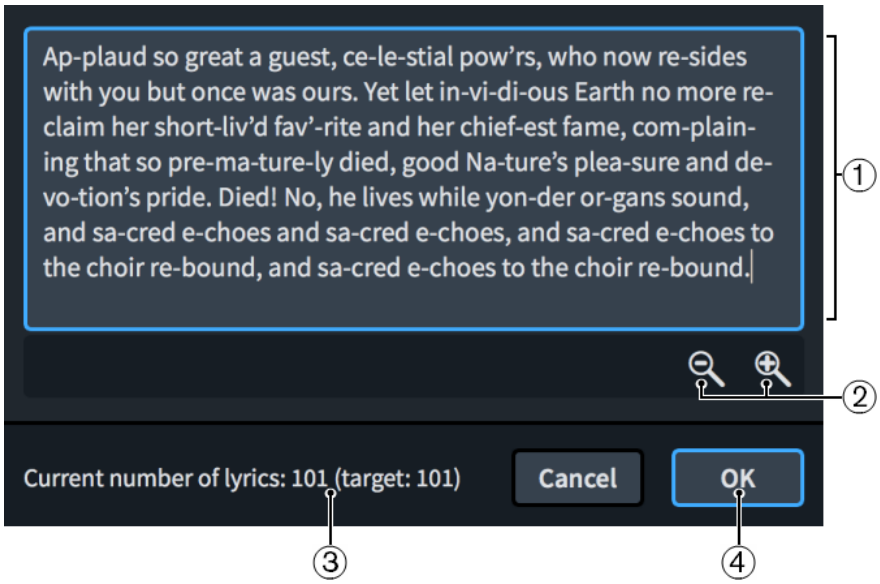
RELATED LINKS
Lyric line numbers on page 586
Inputting lyrics on page 292

Edit Lyrics dialog

The **Edit Lyrics** dialog allows you to view and edit entire lyric lines in one place and with the text displayed with consistent spacing. This is more convenient than changing each word/syllable individually alongside the music, where lyrics can be split up over large horizontal distances.

- You can open the **Edit Lyrics** dialog by selecting at least one lyric, then clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Lyrics** > **Edit Line of Lyrics**.

The dialog shows all lyrics in the same lyric line as the selected lyric and allows you to edit the lyrics, such as fixing misspellings, adding commas, or changing where in a word the hyphen is placed. If you selected multiple lyrics to open the dialog, Dorico for iPad populates the dialog with the lyric line of the earliest lyric on the highest staff you selected.



The **Edit Lyrics** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Text editor**

Allows you to edit all the lyrics in the selected lyric line in the current flow, with hyphens and spaces as appropriate. For example, you can add a comma after the final syllable in a line for a poem setting or replace a hyphen with a space.

NOTE

You cannot add, delete, or change the duration/rhythmic position of lyrics, such as the number of notes to which each lyric applies.

2 **Zoom controls**

Allow you to increase/decrease the size of text in the dialog.

3 **Current number of lyrics**

Displays the number of lyrics currently shown in the text editor and the target number of lyrics in the lyric line. The target number is the number of lyrics that already exists in the selected lyric line in the flow.

The current number of lyrics updates automatically as you work in the dialog. Dorico for iPad requires the current number and target number of lyrics to match before you can confirm the dialog.

4 **OK button**

Allows you to confirm your changes and close the dialog. You can only confirm the dialog when the current number and target number of lyrics match.

NOTE

Any properties you had previously set on any lyrics in the line, such as making them italic, are reset when you confirm the dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Showing lyrics in italics

You can show individual lyrics in an italic font without changing their font style, lyric type, or staff-relative placement. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics you want to show in an italic font. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Italic** in the **Lyrics** group.

RESULT

The selected lyrics are shown in an italic font. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

If you want to show lyrics in an italic font because they are intended to be either chorus lyrics or translation lyrics, you can change their lyric type instead.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the line number and type of lyric lines on page 587
Changing the type of individual lyrics on page 576
Changing the property scope on page 128

Positions of lyrics

Dorico for iPad automatically positions lyrics and makes adjustments to accommodate variations in the length of lyrics, including adjusting the horizontal alignment of lyrics in melismatic music. However, you can also move lyrics manually.

You can move lyrics to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move individual lyrics graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

NOTE

The horizontal position of lyrics is automatically adjusted in Dorico for iPad to minimize changes to the note spacing. Syllables are moved by small amounts either left or right to accommodate longer syllables without distorting the appearance of note rhythms.

Moving lyrics graphically in Engrave mode overrides the automatic spacing for the selected lyrics. If you move a lyric whose position was automatically readjusted, the note spacing at that rhythmic position might change.

You can prevent Dorico for iPad from considering lyrics in note spacing calculations using the **Make space for lyrics** option on the **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options**; however, we recommend using this option with caution.

Positions of syllables

The number of notes sung on syllables or words determines how the lyrics are positioned:

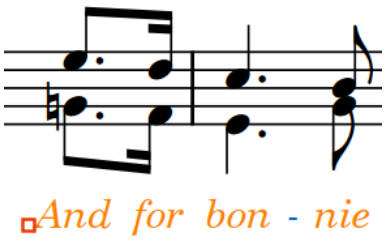
- Single syllables, which are whole words or parts of longer words that are sung on only one note, are centered on their corresponding note.
- Melismata, which are syllables or words that are sung on more than one note, are left-aligned with the left side of the first note to which they apply.

Placement of lyric lines

Lyrics are placed relative to other lyric lines according to their line number. For example, lyrics in Line 1 are placed at the top, including when there are multiple lyric lines above the staff.

If a line of lyrics is missing across the width of a whole system, no additional gap is left between the remaining lines of lyrics.

You can also move individual lyric lines vertically. In Engrave mode, when you select any lyric in a lyric line, a square handle appears on the bottom left of the first lyric in the line on that system. This allows you to adjust the vertical position of lyric lines independently of other lyric lines.



Square handle selected at the start of a lyric line in Engrave mode

EXAMPLE

You have three lines of lyrics, but one system does not have a second line of lyrics. On this system, the third line of lyrics is moved upwards, closer to the first line of lyrics.

If a subsequent system does not have a first line, but does have the second and third lines, then the second and third lines of lyrics are moved upwards. The second line of lyrics takes the place of the first line.

RELATED LINKS

Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
Moving lyric lines vertically on page 583
Changing the line number and type of lyric lines on page 587
Changing the staff-relative placement of lyric lines on page 588
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Note Spacing page in Layout Options on page 394

Moving lyric lines vertically

You can move lyric lines graphically upwards/downwards on a per-system basis, independently of other layouts and your project-wide settings. For example, if the shapes of phrases on certain systems make lyric lines appear unevenly centered between staves.

NOTE

- You cannot move individual lyrics upwards/downwards; instead, you can change their lyric line number or staff-relative placement.
- We recommend that you add extra pages and finish laying out your pages before moving individual lyric lines vertically, as lyric line offsets are automatically deleted if the frame in which they occur changes. For example, if you move lyric lines individually and then add a blank page at the start of the layout, all of the individual lyric line offsets in the layout are deleted.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following in each system where you want to move lyric lines vertically:
   - Any lyric in each lyric line you want to move vertically.
   - The handles on the bottom left of the first lyric on each lyric line you want to move vertically.

NOTE

When using the mouse, you must only select handles at the start of each lyric line.

2. Move the selected lyric lines upwards/downwards in any of the following ways:
   - To move them upwards, press **Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move them downwards, press **Opt-Down Arrow**.

     TIP

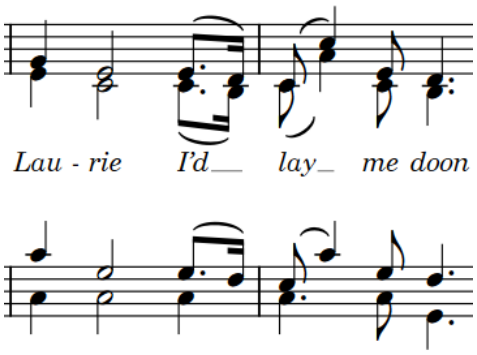
     To move items by larger increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** as well as the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - Click and drag the handles upwards/downwards.

RESULT

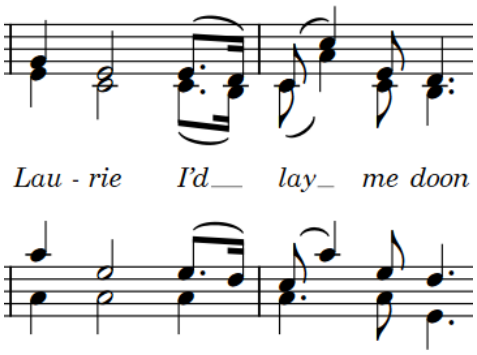
The selected lyric lines are moved upwards/downwards on the selected systems. This does not affect the vertical offset of any other lyric lines on those systems or the same lyric lines in other layouts.

EXAMPLE

Because of the shape of the music in this example, the default vertical alignment of the chorus in the middle of the three lyric lines for the verses in the previous bar causes the chorus to appear much closer to notes on the top staff than the bottom staff. Moving the chorus line downwards makes it appear more evenly distributed between the staves.



Default chorus placement



Chorus line moved downwards

RELATED LINKS

Changing the line number of individual lyrics on page 588
Changing the type of individual lyrics on page 576

Changing the alignment of lyrics relative to notes

You can change the horizontal alignment of individual lyrics relative to notes, for example, if you want to force lyrics at the same position on multiple staves with different default alignments to

have the same alignment. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

There is no default setting for the alignment of lyrics relative to notes, as Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the horizontal position of lyrics to minimize note spacing changes. By default, lyrics on single noteheads are center-aligned and lyrics spanning multiple noteheads are left-aligned.

NOTE

Changing the alignment of lyrics manually overrides Dorico for iPad's automatic spacing for the selected lyrics, meaning that note spacing at the affected rhythmic positions might change.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose alignment you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Lyric text alignment** in the **Lyrics** group.
3. Select one of the following alignment options from the menu:
   - **Left**
   - **Center**
   - **Right**

RESULT

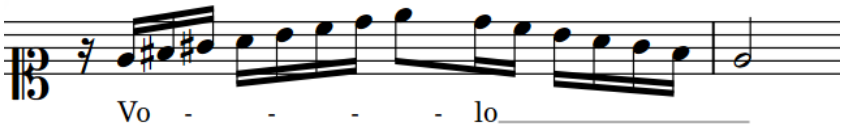
The alignment of the selected lyrics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Positions of lyrics on page 582
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the property scope on page 128

Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines

Lyric hyphens indicate that individual lyrics are syllables within multi-syllabic words, for example, "Hal-le-lu-jah". Lyric extender lines indicate that individual lyrics, either whole words or the last syllables in multi-syllabic words, extend across multiple notes.



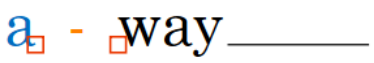
A phrase containing hyphens and an extender line

Dorico for iPad automatically shows lyric hyphens when you advance the lyrics popover by pressing **-** between syllables, and lyric extender lines when you advance the lyrics popover by pressing **Space** multiple times after an entry, provided there is sufficient horizontal space

between the end of the lyric and the end position of the extender line. Lyric extender lines end at the right edge of the last notehead to which they apply.

In Engrave mode, lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines have two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move whole lyric hyphens and lyric extenders lines, and you can also move their handles independently of each other. This allows you to lengthen/shorten lyric hyphens and extender lines. For lyric hyphens, this increases/decreases the space in which lyric hyphens are shown and can result in more/fewer hyphens appearing.

Lyric extender line with handles shown



Lyric hyphen with handles shown

The start handles of lyric extender lines are attached to the lyrics from which they extend, and the start handles and end handles of lyric hyphens are attached to the lyrics on each side. If you move either of those lyrics, the corresponding lyric extender line or hyphen handles also move.

NOTE

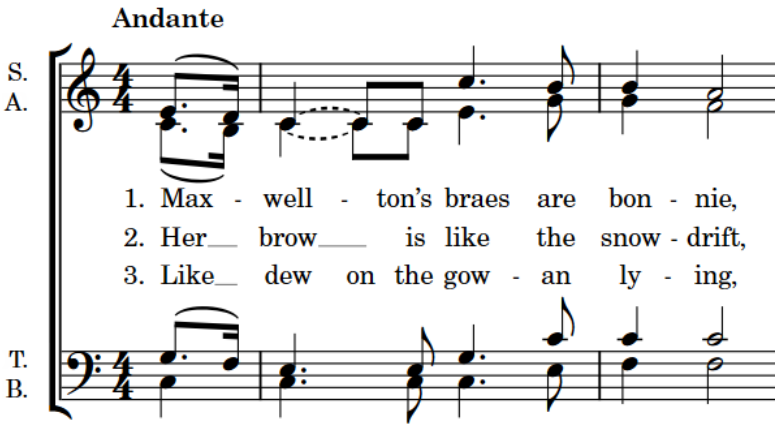
You cannot move lyric extender lines or hyphens upwards/downwards, as their vertical position is determined by their lyric line number and the vertical position of their lyric line.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 351

Lyric line numbers

Lyric line numbers are used to organize lyrics when a single musical passage can have different lyrics sung to it, such as music that contains multiple verses. In Dorico for iPad, you can specify the line number of lyrics as you input them and by changing the line number of existing lyrics.

For example, if you input lyrics in Line 3 but later want to change those lyrics to Line 4 because you want to input different lyrics as Line 3, you can change your current Line 3 into Line 4, and then input a new line of lyrics as Line 3. The spacing is automatically adjusted to show lyric lines in the correct order.



The start of a choral piece with three lyric lines for its three verses

In Dorico for iPad, you can have multiple lines of lyrics both above and below the same staff. Turning lyric lines into chorus lyric lines or lyric line translations changes both their placement and appearance as chorus lyrics generally use an italic font.

RELATED LINKS
Verse numbers on page 589
Filters for lyrics on page 574
Showing lyrics in italics on page 581

Changing the line number and type of lyric lines

You can change the lyric line number of whole lyric lines after they have been input. You can also change whole lyric lines to chorus lines and lyric line translations.

For example, you can change the existing Line 1 into a lyric translation of Line 4, or change Line 2 into a chorus line.

TIP

To identify which line you are working on, select a syllable in the line of lyrics and check the number in the **Line number** value field in the **Lyrics** group of the Properties panel.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a lyric in the line whose lyric line type you want to change. The lyric line can be above or below the staff.

   TIP

   You can also make a selection and use the lyric filters to select different lyric lines according to their line numbers.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose one of the following line numbers/types:
   - **Lyrics** > **Line** > **[Line number]**.
   - **Lyrics** > **Line** > **Chorus**.
   - **Lyrics** > **Translations** > **[Line number Translation]**.
   - **Lyrics** > **Translations** > **Chorus Translation**.

RESULT
The line number or type of the whole lyric line of the selected lyric is changed.

NOTE

The position of the selected lyric line relative to other lyric lines at the same position might be changed. For example, if there were two lyric lines and you changed Line 1 to Line 3, it now appears below Line 2.

If a lyric line with the same number already exists at the same position on the same side of the staff, the two lines switch. For example, if there is already a Line 1 at the rhythmic position where you want to change Line 2 to Line 1, then the existing Line 1 becomes Line 2 to accommodate your most recent preference. The same applies to chorus lines and lyric line translations.

RELATED LINKS
Lyric line numbers on page 586
Types of lyrics on page 575
Filters for lyrics on page 574
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Changing the line number of individual lyrics

You can change the lyric line number of individually selected lyrics after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual lyrics whose line number you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Lyric number** in the **Lyrics** group.

RESULT

The line number of the selected lyrics is changed to match the value in the value field.

NOTE

The position of the selected lyrics relative to other lyric lines might be changed. For example, if there were two lyric lines and you changed lyrics in Line 1 to Line 3, they now appear below Line 2.

Changing the staff-relative placement of lyric lines

You can change the staff-relative placement of whole lyric lines after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a lyric in each line whose staff-relative placement you want to change.

   TIP

   You can also make a selection and use the lyric filters to select different lyric lines according to their line numbers and staff-relative placement.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose one of the following staff-relative placements:
   - **Lyrics** > **Placement** > **Above**.
   - **Lyrics** > **Placement** > **Below**.

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the whole lyric lines in which you selected lyrics is changed.

NOTE

If other lyric lines with the same lyric line number exist at the same position on the side of the staff to which you want to change your current selection, the two lines switch sides. For example, if there is already a Line 2 above the staff at the position where you want to change the placement of Line 2 below the staff, then the existing Line 2 above the staff is placed below the staff to accommodate your most recent preference.

RELATED LINKS
Lyric line numbers on page 586
Filters for lyrics on page 574
Changing the line number and type of lyric lines on page 587
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Changing the staff-relative placement of individual lyrics

You can change the staff-relative placement of individual lyrics within lyric lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Line placement** in the **Lyrics** group:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected individual lyrics is changed.

NOTE

If other lyric lines with the same lyric line number already exist at the same position on the same side of the staff, the two lines collide. To avoid this, you can change the lyric line number of one of the lyric lines, for example.

Verse numbers

Verse numbers indicate the order in which lyrics are sung when multiple lines of lyrics share the same musical passage. They are commonly used in hymns and song sheets.

Depending on the type of music you are writing, verse numbers might not be appropriate. Therefore, hiding/showing verse numbers in Dorico for iPad is optional. By default, verse numbers are not shown. You can hide/show verse numbers on individually selected lyrics.

NOTE

Lyric line translations are part of the lyric line of which they are a translation so do not have their own verse number.

Hiding/Showing verse numbers

You can hide/show verse numbers on individual lyrics, for example, if you want to show the verse number at the start of every system.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics before which you want to hide/show verse numbers. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show verse number** in the **Lyrics** group.

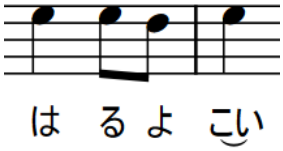
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Verse numbers are shown before the selected lyrics when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

East Asian elision slurs

East Asian elision slurs are used to show that two or more characters in East Asian languages are part of the same lyric.



A phrase containing an East Asian elision slur

You can hide/show East Asian elision slurs on individual lyrics.

RELATED LINKS

Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 585

Hiding/Showing East Asian elision slurs

You can hide/show East Asian elision slurs for individual lyrics. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics on which you want to show East Asian elision slurs. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show East Asian elision slur** in the **Lyrics** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

East Asian elision slurs are shown on the selected lyrics when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Notes

Notes are shapes that are positioned on staves to indicate musical pitches. Notes are most commonly shown with oval-shaped, round noteheads that are either filled or void depending on their duration, but there are many different designs of noteheads that you can use.

Depending on their duration, notes can have stems that help indicate their duration.

In Dorico for iPad, a sequence of adjacent notes joined with ties is considered a single note of the total duration of the tie chain, rather than separate notes. Note grouping is automatically adjusted according to the prevailing beat grouping, which is normally set by the time signature.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on page 145
Note spacing on page 393
Stems on page 819
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 596
Note tools popover on page 181
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 181
Bracketed noteheads on page 601
Ties on page 839
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448

Notehead sets

A notehead set is a collection of related noteheads that together allow you to represent all the different noteheads required for the different durations used in music notation.

A typical notehead set contains at least four noteheads:

- A black notehead for quarter notes (crotchets) and shorter
- A white notehead for half notes (minims)
- A wider white notehead for whole notes (semibreves)
- A wider white notehead with one or two vertical strokes on either side, or a square white notehead, for double whole notes (breves)

Pitch-dependent notehead sets contain noteheads that vary according to the pitch of notes rather than their duration.

- In *pitched* notehead sets, there are different noteheads for different pitches.

  For example, the Pitch Names notehead set shows the letter name and any applicable accidental of each note within its notehead.
- In *scale degree* notehead sets, there is a different notehead for each scale degree, relative to the current key signature.

  For example, the Aikin 7-shape notehead set uses a different notehead shape for each pitch.

NOTE

- A single notehead can appear in multiple notehead sets. If you edit a notehead within one notehead set, your changes affect the appearance of that notehead in all notehead sets that contain it.
- Notehead sets can only contain noteheads of the same type. For example, you cannot use a normal notehead in a pitched notehead set.
- You cannot change the type of an existing notehead set or an existing notehead.

RELATED LINKS
Pitch-dependent notehead set designs on page 595

Notehead set designs

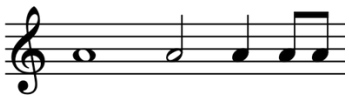
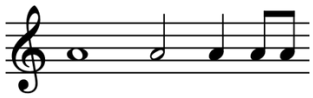
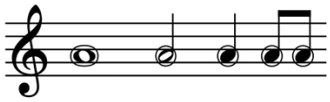
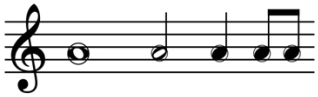
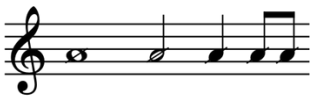
There are a number of different notehead set designs that you can use for individual noteheads in Dorico for iPad.

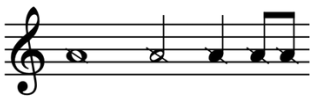
- You can find the available notehead designs by selecting at least one note, then clicking **Application Menu** in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Notehead** > **[Notehead type or design]** > **[Notehead design]**.

NOTE

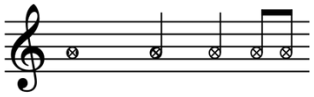
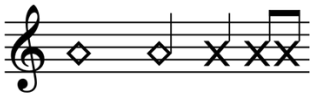
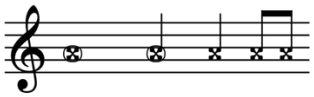
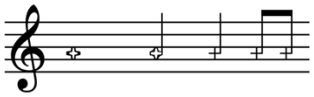
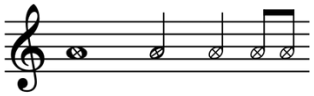
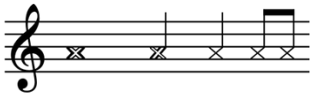
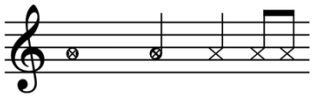
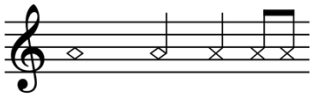
Dorico for iPad does not offer stemless noteheads. Instead, you can hide the stems of notes with any notehead design.

General noteheads

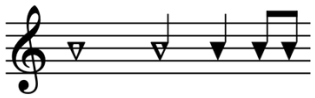
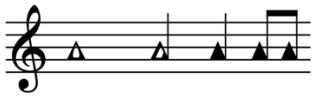
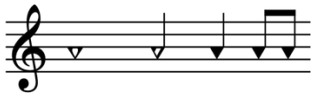
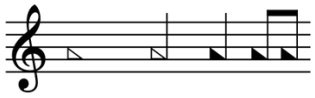
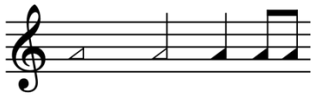
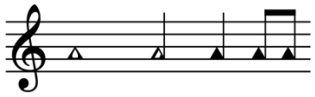
Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Larger Noteheads
	Default Noteheads
	Large Circled Noteheads
	Circled Noteheads
	Slashed Noteheads (Bottom Left to Top Right)

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Slashed Noteheads (Top Left to Bottom Right)

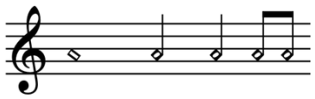
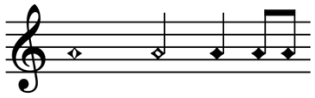
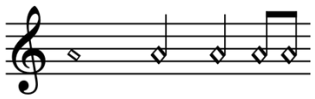
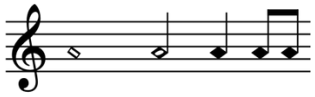
Cross noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Circle X Noteheads
	Large X and Diamond Noteheads
	Ornate X Noteheads
	Plus Noteheads
	With X Noteheads
	X Noteheads
	X and Circle X Noteheads
	X and Diamond Noteheads

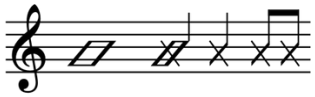
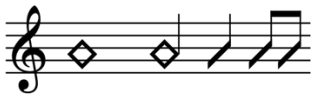
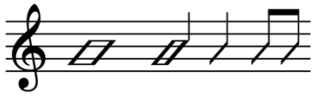
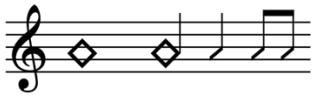
Triangular noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Large Arrow Down Noteheads
	Large Arrow Up Noteheads
	Triangle Down Noteheads
	Triangle Left Noteheads
	Triangle Right Noteheads
	Triangle Up Noteheads

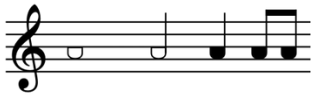
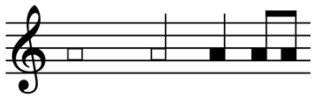
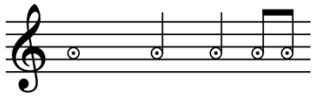
Diamond noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Diamond Noteheads
	Old-Style Diamond Noteheads
	White Diamond Noteheads
	Wide Diamond Noteheads

Slash noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Muted Slash Noteheads
	Oversized Slash Noteheads
	Slash Noteheads
	Small Slash Noteheads

Round and square noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Moon Noteheads
	Rectangular Noteheads
	Round White with Dot Noteheads

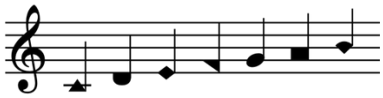
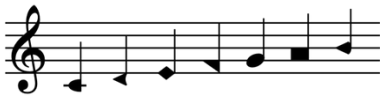
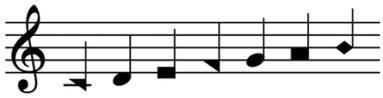
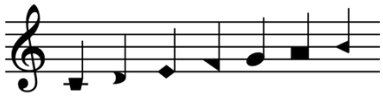
RELATED LINKS
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 596
Hiding stems on page 824

Pitch-dependent notehead set designs

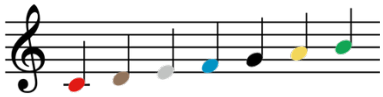
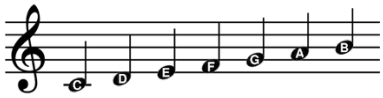
Pitch-dependent notehead sets use different notehead designs or different notehead colors depending on the pitch of notes. There are a number of different pitch-dependent notehead sets available in Dorico for iPad.

- You can find the available notehead designs by selecting at least one note, then clicking **Application Menu** in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Notehead** > **[Notehead type or design]** > **[Notehead design]**.

Scale degree noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Aikin 7-shape Noteheads
	Funk 7-shape Noteheads
	Walker 4-shape Noteheads
	Walker 7-shape Noteheads

Pitched noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Figurenotes© Noteheads
	Pitch Name Noteheads

RELATED LINKS
Notehead sets on page 591
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 596

Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads

You can change the notehead design of individual noteheads, including trill auxiliary notes. For example, cross noteheads might be used to indicate where players should produce pitchless sounds, such as air sounds on wind instruments.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to notes in slash voices.
- If you want to change the notehead design to represent different playing techniques for notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments, you can instead change their playing technique.
- If you want to change the notehead design to represent harmonics or rhythm slashes, you can instead turn notes into harmonics or change them to a slash voice. You can also input slash regions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads whose design you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Notehead** > **[Notehead type]** > **[Notehead design]**.

   For example, to change the notehead design of the selected notes to X noteheads, choose **Notehead** > **Crosses** > **X Noteheads**.

RESULT

The notehead design of the selected notes is changed.

TIP

You can assign a key command for each factory default notehead design on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Rhythm slashes on page 754
Slash voices on page 908
Slash regions on page 754
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341
Harmonics on page 610
Turning notes into harmonics on page 611
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 890
Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes on page 893
Hiding stems on page 824
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Changing the width of ledger lines

You can change the width of ledger lines on individual notes, for example, to allow notes with short durations to be spaced more tightly and still be legible. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose ledger line width you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Ledger line** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the values for **L** and **R**.

RESULT

Increasing **Ledger line L** makes the left side of ledger lines longer, decreasing the value makes the left side of ledger lines shorter.

Increasing **Ledger line R** makes the right side of ledger lines longer, decreasing the value makes the right side of ledger lines shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Hiding/Showing ledger lines

You can hide/show ledger lines on individual notes, for example, if you want to indicate approximate pitches using the relative vertical positions of notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose ledger lines you want to hide/show.

   NOTE

   If you want to hide ledger lines, you must also select all other noteheads in the same voice and voice column index.

2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide ledger lines** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Ledger lines are hidden/shown for the selected notes. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If you deactivated **Hide ledger lines** for only some notes in a chord, ledger lines are also shown on all notes between the selected notes and the staff in the same voice and voice column index.

RELATED LINKS
Voice column index on page 905

Changing the consolidation of rhythm dots

You can change how rhythm dots in multiple voices are consolidated at individual rhythmic positions. For example, if you want to show fewer rhythm dots for a very dense chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

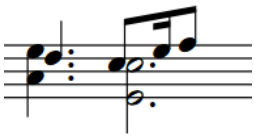
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose rhythm dot consolidation you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rhythm dot consolidation** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

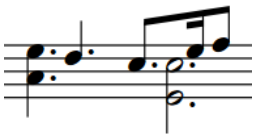
RESULT

Rhythm dots for notes of any duration are consolidated when the checkbox is activated, and no rhythm dots are consolidated when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Notes of any duration have rhythm dots consolidated



No rhythm dot consolidation

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Moving rhythm dots

You can move rhythm dots horizontally. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. However, you cannot move an individual rhythm dot independently of other rhythm dots at the same rhythmic position.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a notehead at each rhythmic position where you want to move rhythm dots.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rhythm dot X** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the **Rhythm dot X** value moves all rhythm dots at the selected rhythmic positions to the right, decreasing the value moves them to the left. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Assigning notes to strings

You can change the string on which individual notes belonging to string instruments are played, for example, to allow you to specify the correct harmonic. Many notes can be played on multiple strings, depending on where along its length the string is stopped.

Assigning notes to strings can be useful for glissando lines or fingering shifts, as the string and finger position required to play the note affects the direction of these changes. However, the string number is not shown in the music. You can instead input string indicators and/or fingerings, which can help string players understand the string on which they should play.

NOTE

You can only change the assigned string of notes belonging to string instruments, such as violin, cello, or guitar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose assigned string you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   If selecting multiple notes at once, select notes only in staves of the same instrument type. For example, select multiple Cs in Violin 1 and Violin 2 staves.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **String** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select the string you want from the menu.

   The string number for the instrument is shown, followed by the fundamental pitch and the octave number of that string in parentheses. For example, the lowest cello string is expressed as **4 (C2)**.

   NOTE

   The options available in the menu depend on the selected pitches and the instrument type.

RESULT

The string to which the selected notes are assigned is changed.

NOTE

If you subsequently change the pitches of notes, **String** is automatically deactivated for all notes that can no longer be played on their assigned string.

RELATED LINKS

Glissando lines on page 639
Changing the direction of string fingering shift indicators on page 548
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539
String indicators on page 549
Inputting string indicators inside the staff on page 285
Turning notes into harmonics on page 611
Changing the harmonic partial on page 612

Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range

You can show colors for notes that are considered out of range, such as notes too high/low for the instrument to play or the voice type to sing, or pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedal settings. When colors for notes out of range are hidden, all notes appear black by default.

Colors for notes out of range are considered annotations and are not printed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In the secondary toolbar, click **View Options** to open the **View Options** dialog.

2. Choose one of the following options for **Note and rest colors**:
   - To show colors for notes out of range, choose **Notes Out of Range**.
   - To hide colors for notes out of range but show voice colors, choose **Voice Colors**.
   - To hide all notes and rest colors, choose **None**.
3. Click **Close**.

RESULT

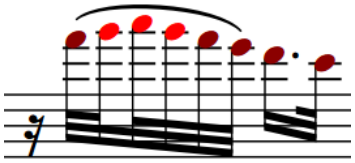
Colors for notes out of range are hidden/shown in the corresponding view type.

Notes that are considered challenging are shown in a darker red, while notes that are impossible or virtually impossible are shown in a bright red.

NOTE

Notes out of the fret range of the corresponding string on tablature are always shown as question marks, even if you do not show colors for notes out of range.

EXAMPLE



Colors for notes out of range shown. Three notes in the middle of the phrase are bright red, while the rest are the darker red.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If showing colors for notes out of range reveals some notes do not fit with the current harp pedal settings, you can input a new pedal diagram for that passage or calculate a suitable harp pedal diagram.

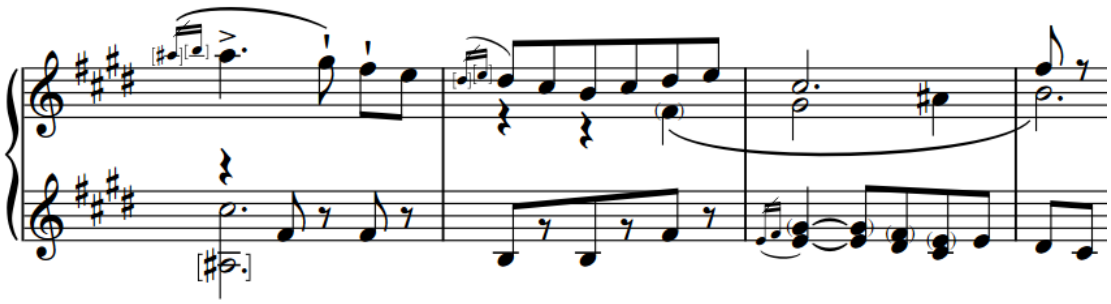
RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
View Options dialog on page 120
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 283

Bracketed noteheads

Bracketed noteheads are often used to indicate that notes are optional, editorial, not played in all playthroughs in music with repeats, or pressed down but not fully struck on the piano. In Dorico for iPad, you can show brackets on any notehead.

Notehead brackets extend slightly above and below noteheads so it is clear which notes are included in each bracket.



A phrase containing round and square notehead brackets

You can also show brackets on noteheads on notation staves and tablature independently of each other.

By default, bracketed notes have reduced velocity, causing them to sound quieter in playback than normal notes.

The following types of notehead brackets are available in Dorico for iPad:

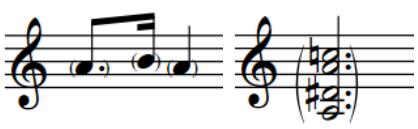
Round notehead brackets

Round notehead brackets have a similar appearance to slurs, but vertical.

By default, round brackets on single noteheads use the font glyph on notation staves and the drawn curve on tablature. In Engrave mode, round notehead brackets that use the drawn curve have handles that allow you to change their shape. Round notehead brackets that use the font glyph do not have handles in Engrave mode.

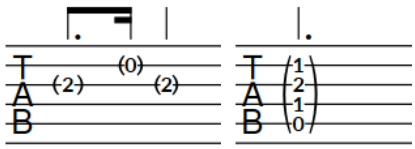
NOTE

On tablature, round brackets are automatically shown around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains. If you show brackets around all noteheads in tie chains on tablature, these automatic notehead brackets are included.



Round brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff

Round bracket on a chord on a notation staff

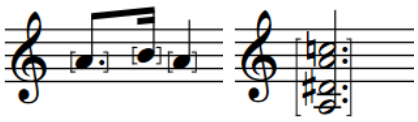


Round brackets on single noteheads on tablature

Round bracket on a chord on tablature

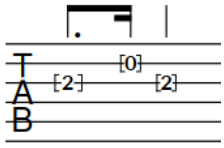
Square notehead brackets

Square notehead brackets comprise a straight vertical line with horizontal hooks at the top and bottom. Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the length of square brackets to ensure they do not end on staff lines and their hooks remain visible.

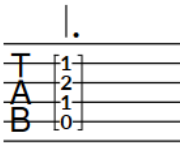


Square brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff

Square bracket on a chord on a notation staff



Square brackets on single noteheads on tablature



Square bracket on a chord on tablature

RELATED LINKS
Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains on page 604
Notehead brackets in Engrave mode on page 606
Showing notes as dead notes on page 664
Inputting notes on page 145
Ties on page 839
Guitar bends on page 644
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 647
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649

Showing brackets on noteheads

You can show round or square brackets on individual noteheads, on single notes within chords, and on whole chords. For example, if you want to indicate that specific notes are optional or an editorial change, or to show notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments as ghost notes.

NOTE

If you want to show brackets on noteheads to represent dead notes, you can instead show notes belonging to fretted instruments as dead notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads on which you want to show brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - If you want to show brackets on individual noteheads in tie chains that are not the first notehead, you must select them in Engrave mode.
   - If you want to show brackets on whole chords, you must select all notes in those chords.
   - If you want to show brackets on both notation staves and tablature, you must select notes on both.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Bracket style** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Round**
   - **Square**

RESULT

The corresponding type of notehead brackets is shown on the selected notes. If you only selected notes on tablature, brackets are not shown on the corresponding notes on the notation staff, and vice versa.

In Write mode, only the first noteheads in tie chains are bracketed. In Engrave mode, only the selected noteheads are bracketed, including in tie chains.

If you selected all notes in chords, Dorico for iPad shows a single bracket for each chord unless they contain very large gaps, in which case Dorico for iPad automatically splits brackets. If you selected individual notes within chords, they are each shown with separate brackets.

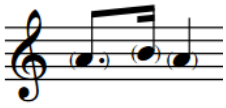
By default, bracketed notes have reduced velocity, causing them to sound quieter in playback than normal notes.

TIP

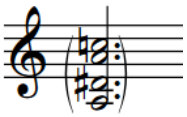
- Deactivating **Bracket style** hides brackets on the selected notes.
- You can also hide/show brackets on noteheads by clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Notehead** > **Toggle Round Brackets** or **Edit** > **Notehead** > **Toggle Square Brackets**. You can also choose these options from the context menu.

  You can assign key commands for these options on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

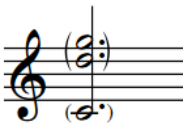
EXAMPLE



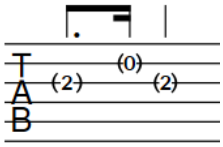
Round brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff



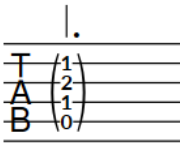
Round bracket on a chord on a notation staff



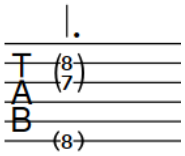
Split round bracket on a chord on a notation staff



Round brackets on single noteheads on tablature



Round bracket on a chord on tablature



Split round bracket on a chord on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Showing notes as dead notes on page 664
Notehead brackets in Engrave mode on page 606
Inputting notes on page 145

Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains

You can change whether brackets appear only on the first notehead in tie chains or span the entire duration of the tie chain, that is, with the left bracket on the first notehead and the

right bracket on the last notehead in the tie chain. By default, brackets appear only on the first notehead in tie chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have shown brackets on the required notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose notehead bracket positions relative to tie chains you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Bracket until end of tie chain** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.

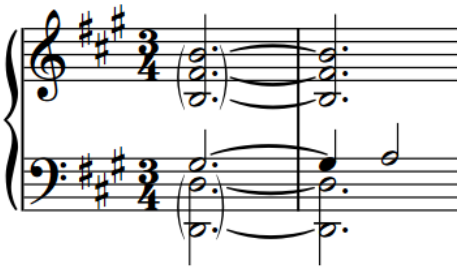
RESULT

Brackets appear at the start and end of the selected tie chains when **Bracket until end of tie chain** is activated, and only around the first note/chord when it is deactivated.

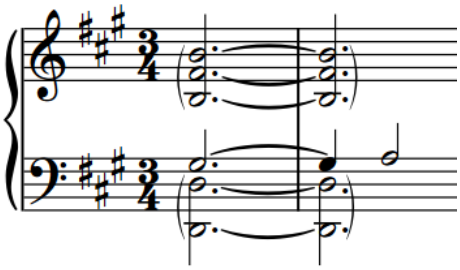
If you activated **Bracket until end of tie chain** for a single note in a bracketed chord, the bracket on the first chord is not split but an additional bracket appears at the end of the tie chain for the selected note only. If you deactivated **Bracket until end of tie chain** for a single note in a bracketed chord whose other notes are bracketed to the end of the tie chain, the bracket at the end of the tie chain is split.

If you selected notes on tablature, the automatic brackets shown around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains are updated to follow your property setting.

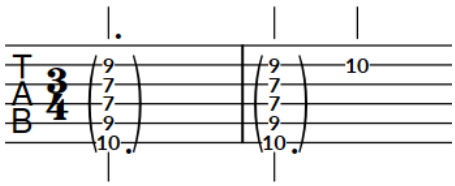
EXAMPLE



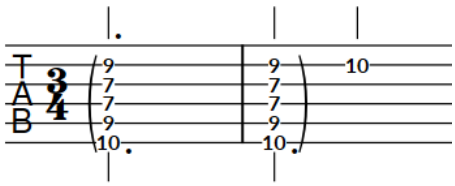
Brackets around only the first chords in tie chains on a notation staff



Brackets at the start and end of whole tie chains on a notation staff



Brackets around only the first chord in a tie chain, with automatic brackets shown on the second chord on tablature



Brackets around the start and end of the whole tie chain on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Ties on page 839

Splitting brackets on chords

You can split brackets on any notehead within a chord. By default, Dorico for iPad automatically shows a single bracket for all notes in a chord unless it contains very large gaps, in which case Dorico for iPad automatically splits brackets.

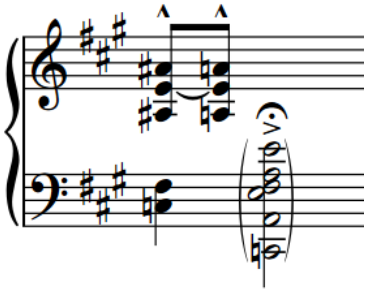
PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual notes in chords immediately above where you want to split brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Break bracket** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.

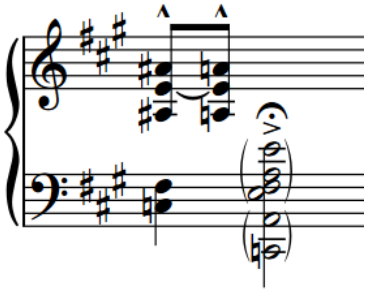
RESULT

Brackets are split immediately below the selected notes.

EXAMPLE



Chord with single round bracket



Chord with split round bracket

RELATED LINKS

Inputting chords on page 174

Notehead brackets in Engrave mode

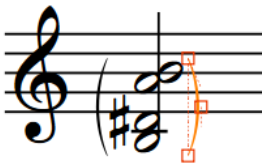
In Engrave mode, each round notehead bracket has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position, length, and shape.

Round notehead brackets that use the drawn curve have three square handles that you can move independently. When you move either of the top/bottom handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.

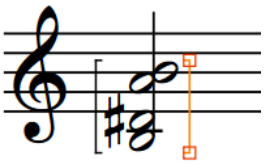
NOTE

Round brackets on single noteheads that use the font glyph do not show handles in Engrave mode, meaning you cannot lengthen/shorten them or change their shape/width.

Square notehead brackets have two handles, one at the top and one at the bottom.



Round notehead bracket handles in Engrave mode



Square notehead bracket handles in Engrave mode

- Top and bottom handles move the corresponding end of the notehead bracket, controlling its graphical length.
- Middle handles control the shape of round notehead brackets. Moving them vertically adjusts their curve by changing the angle at which notehead bracket endpoints approach noteheads, while moving them horizontally changes the width of round notehead brackets.

You can move these handles to change the graphical length of notehead brackets and the shape of round notehead brackets. If necessary, other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, automatically move to avoid collisions.

TIP

The following properties in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding notehead bracket or handle:

- **L bracket body** moves left notehead brackets. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **R bracket body** moves right notehead brackets. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **L bracket extents** controls the height of left notehead brackets. **T** moves their top handles, **B** moves their bottom handles.
- **R bracket extents** controls the height of right notehead brackets. **T** moves their top handles, **B** moves their bottom handles.

RELATED LINKS

Showing brackets on noteheads on page 603
Moving items graphically on page 351

Changing the shape of round notehead brackets

You can change the shape of individual round notehead brackets, for example, if you want some notehead brackets to appear wider or to change their curvature, so that their endpoints approach noteheads at a sharper angle. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You can only change the shape of round notehead brackets on single noteheads if they use the drawn curve, rather than the font glyph.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the middle handles of each round notehead bracket whose shape you want to change.
2. Change the shape of the selected round notehead brackets in any of the following ways:
   - To widen right notehead brackets or narrow left notehead brackets, press **Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To narrow right notehead brackets or widen left notehead brackets, press **Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To increase the angle of notehead bracket endpoints, press **Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To decrease the angle of notehead bracket endpoints, press **Opt-Down Arrow**.

   TIP

   - To move handles by larger increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** as well as the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - You can also click and drag middle handles in the corresponding directions.

RESULT

The shape of the selected notehead brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If necessary, other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, automatically move to avoid collisions. This might affect note spacing and casting off.

TIP

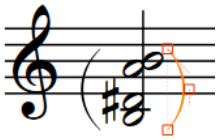
The following properties in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the middle handle of notehead brackets.

- **L round br. middle** moves left notehead bracket middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, changing the width of notehead brackets, and **Y** moves them vertically, changing the curvature of notehead brackets.
- **R round br. middle** moves right notehead bracket middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, changing the width of notehead brackets, and **Y** moves them vertically, changing the curvature of notehead brackets.

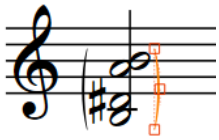
You can also use these properties to change the width and shape of round notehead brackets by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the selected notehead brackets to their default shape.

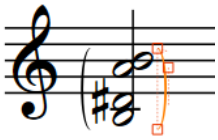
EXAMPLE



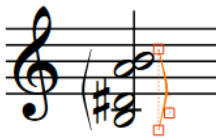
Widened round notehead bracket



Narrowed round notehead bracket



Endpoint angle increased



Endpoint angle decreased

RELATED LINKS

Slur shoulder offset on page 794
Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the property scope on page 128

Harmonics

Harmonics are pitches produced by touching resonating strings at specific positions along their length, allowing the corresponding harmonic partial to sound. Harmonics often have a high pitch with a glassy, purer sound than stopped pitches. There are two different types of harmonics: natural and artificial.

Harmonic partials are numbered according to their order in the harmonic series, which also correlates to the node on the string which produces them. For example, the second partial in the harmonic series is produced by the node halfway along a string, that is, the node that divides the string into two equal parts. The third partial is produced by the node that divides the string into thirds, and so on.

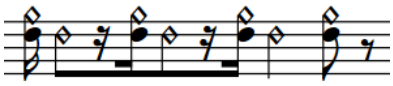
Natural harmonics

Natural harmonics are produced by touching an open string at one of its nodes and then bowing or plucking the string. The sounding pitch of the resulting harmonic varies according to the node and its corresponding partial in the harmonic series. For example, touching the node halfway along a string produces the second partial, which sounds an octave above the open string pitch.

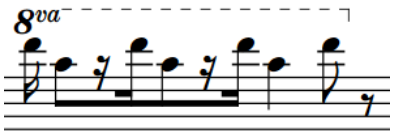
Artificial harmonics

Artificial harmonics are produced by stopping a string fully (as if playing a normal note) and then touching the string at one of the nodes of its stopped length. The sounding pitch of the resulting harmonic varies according to the node and its corresponding partial in the harmonic series. For example, touching the node that is the equivalent of a fourth higher than the stopped pitch produces the fourth partial, which sounds two octaves above the stopped pitch.

To produce artificial harmonics, players must both fully stop the string and touch the string at the correct node. This can be more difficult to produce than natural harmonics.



A passage for violin alternating between artificial and natural harmonics on the A string



The sounding pitches of the same passage

Dorico for iPad supports multiple conventions for the notation of harmonics on stringed and fretted instruments, including for both natural and artificial harmonics. For artificial harmonics shown using two noteheads, one normal and one diamond, Dorico for iPad automatically calculates the correct pitch for the touched pitch diamond notehead for the second to sixth harmonic partials. These pitches are reflected in playback, using dedicated sounds for harmonics if the corresponding playback device includes them.

RELATED LINKS
Appearances/Styles of harmonics on page 614
Changing the harmonic partial on page 612
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals on page 613

Turning notes into harmonics

You can turn existing notes into artificial and natural harmonics. Harmonics can represent the sounding, touched, or stopped pitch.

PREREQUISITE

You have input the notes you want to turn into harmonics. However, the pitch you should input depends on the style/appearance you want to use.

- For natural harmonics, we recommend that you input the desired sounding pitch.
- For artificial harmonics, we recommend that you input the stopped pitch.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to turn into harmonics. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Type** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
    - **Artificial**
    - **Natural**

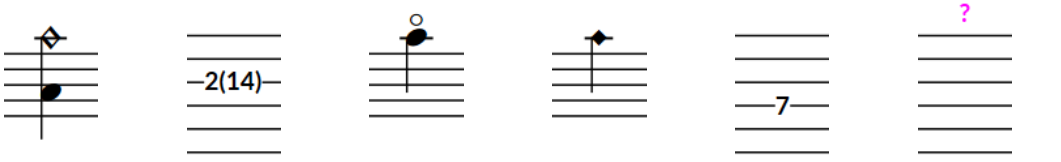
RESULT

The selected notes are turned into harmonics of the corresponding type. If the corresponding playback device has dedicated sounds for harmonics, the selected notes automatically use those sounds. The sounding pitch of artificial harmonics in playback is also changed accordingly.

- Artificial harmonics represent the second partial by default. They are shown with a diamond notehead indicating the touched pitch an octave above the selected notes. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses.
- Natural harmonics represent the sounding pitch by default. They are shown with a circle symbol above the selected notes. On fretted instrument notation staves, natural harmonics appear as black diamond noteheads. On tablature, the fret of the touched pitch is shown, if it can be calculated; if it cannot be calculated, a pink question mark is shown above the tablature.

EXAMPLE

The following examples show the default appearances of natural and artificial harmonics on different staves.



Artificial harmonic on notation staff (any instrument)

Artificial harmonic on tablature

Natural harmonic on non-fretted instrument staff

Natural harmonic on fretted instrument notation staff

Natural harmonic on tablature

Natural harmonic on tablature that cannot be calculated

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the partial for harmonics. You can also change the appearance of natural harmonics and the type of artificial harmonics.

If you want to turn harmonics back into normal notes, deactivate **Type** in the **Harmonics** group.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 145
Appearances/Styles of harmonics on page 614
Assigning notes to strings on page 599
Tablature on page 815

Changing the harmonic partial

By default, harmonics indicate the second partial in the harmonic series, which is an octave above the fundamental. You can change the partial for individual harmonics, for example, if you want a higher partial instead.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad can only correctly calculate artificial harmonic partials for nodes two to six.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the harmonics whose partial you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Change the value in the value field to the node at which the string should be touched to produce the partial you want.

RESULT

The partial of the selected harmonics is changed. For artificial harmonics using the **Normal** type, the pitch of the white diamond notehead/parenthesized fret number is updated automatically. The sounding pitch of artificial harmonics in playback is also changed accordingly.

EXAMPLE

Artificial harmonic with default partial (notation and tablature)

Partial changed to the fifth (notation and tablature)

RELATED LINKS
Tablature on page 815
Assigning notes to strings on page 599

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals

You can hide/show individual harmonic accidentals, or show them in round or square brackets, independently of hiding/showing or parenthesizing accidentals of stopped pitch notes. For example, you can show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in tie chains that cross system/frame breaks by showing accidentals in round brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the harmonics whose accidentals you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only select individual noteheads within tie chains in Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hide**
   - **Show**
   - **Round brackets**
   - **Square brackets**

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected harmonics are hidden, shown, or shown in round or square brackets. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Hiding accidentals does not affect the pitch of notes in playback.
- You can assign key commands for **Hide Accidental**, **Show Accidental**, **Show Accidental in Round Brackets**, and **Show Accidental in Square Brackets** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also hide/show or parenthesize accidentals on the normal noteheads that indicate the stopped pitch for artificial harmonics shown using diamond noteheads.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 410
Changing the property scope on page 128

Appearances/Styles of harmonics

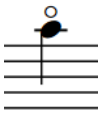
Both artificial and natural harmonics can be notated in different ways. In Dorico for iPad, it is possible to indicate the desired sounding pitch, either the stopped or touched pitch, or both stopped and touched pitches for individual harmonics.

In this documentation we refer to “styles” of artificial harmonics, because one artificial harmonic style indicates the use of a different performance technique, and “appearances” of natural harmonics, as their different appearances do not indicate different performance techniques.

Natural harmonics

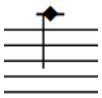
Circle above

Shows a harmonic circle symbol on the notehead side of notes. Usually indicates the desired sounding pitch of the harmonic. Used for natural harmonics on staves that do not belong to fretted instruments by default, such as violin.



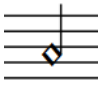
Diamond notehead

Changes the notehead of notes to a diamond notehead. The diamond notehead appears black/filled when the note is a quarter note or shorter, and white/unfilled when the note is a half note or longer. Usually indicates the touched pitch required. Used for natural harmonics on fretted instrument notation staves by default.

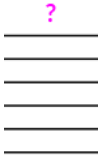


White diamond notehead

Changes the notehead of notes to a diamond notehead that is always unfilled, regardless of the duration of notes. Usually indicates the touched pitch required.



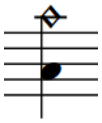
On tablature, the touched fret is always shown for natural harmonics, regardless of the selected appearance. If the touched fret cannot be calculated, a pink question mark is shown.



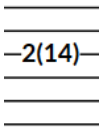
Artificial harmonics

Normal

Shows two noteheads: one indicating the stopped pitch, the other the touched pitch. The touched pitch is automatically calculated based on the partial; the default partial is the second partial. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses. This is the default appearance of artificial harmonics on all staves.



Normal artificial harmonic on notation staff



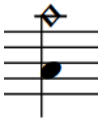
Normal artificial harmonic on tablature

Pinch

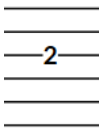
Shows two noteheads: one indicating the stopped pitch, the other the sounding pitch. The sounding pitch is automatically calculated based on the partial; the default partial is the second partial. On tablature, only the stopped fret is shown.

NOTE

Intended for fretted instruments only. A pinch is produced by the performer catching a resonating string at a node near the pick-ups, producing a high-pitched squeal. Also known as a “false harmonic” or “squeal”.



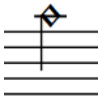
Pinch harmonic on notation staff



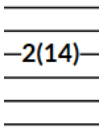
Pinch harmonic on tablature

Single notehead (sounding)

Shows a single notehead indicating the sounding pitch. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the sounding pitch is shown on the right in parentheses.



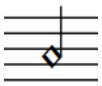
Single notehead (sounding) artificial harmonic on notation staff



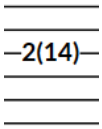
Single notehead (sounding) artificial harmonic on tablature

Single notehead (stopped)

Shows a single notehead indicating the stopped pitch. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses.



Single notehead (stopped) artificial harmonic on notation staff



Single notehead (stopped) artificial harmonic on tablature

RELATED LINKS
Tablature on page 815

Changing the appearance of natural harmonics

By default, natural harmonics appear as normal noteheads with a circle shown above, which indicates the desired sounding pitch. You can change the appearance of natural harmonics individually, for example, to show them as a white diamond notehead to indicate the touched pitch.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harmonics with the **Natural** type.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the natural harmonics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Circle above**
   - **Diamond notehead**
   - **White diamond notehead**

RESULT

The appearance of the selected natural harmonics is changed, including on fretted instrument notation staves. The touched pitch shown on tablature is not changed automatically.

NOTE

- Changing the appearance of natural harmonics does not automatically change their notated pitch. For example, if you want to change a sounding pitch **Circle above** harmonic to a touched pitch **White diamond notehead** harmonic, you must also change the pitch of the note.
- Dorico for iPad automatically assigns natural harmonics with the **White diamond notehead** style to the lowest possible string for that harmonic. You can specify different strings if necessary.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of harmonic circle symbols by activating **Placement** in the **Harmonics** group of the Properties panel and choosing the option you want.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Assigning notes to strings on page 599

Changing the style of artificial harmonics

By default, artificial harmonics appear as two noteheads: one normal, which indicates the stopped pitch, and one diamond, which indicates the touched pitch. You can change the style of artificial harmonics individually, for example, to indicate pinch harmonics.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harmonics with the **Artificial** type.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the artificial harmonics whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Normal**
   - **Pinch**
   - **Single notehead (sounding)**
   - **Single notehead (stopped)**

RESULT

The style of the selected artificial harmonics is changed.

NOTE

Pinch indicates the use of a different technique to produce the harmonic.

Ornaments

Ornaments are markings that indicate multiple notes are played in addition to the notated pitch. They are used to decorate music, such as in Baroque music, which is highly decorated with trills and other ornaments.

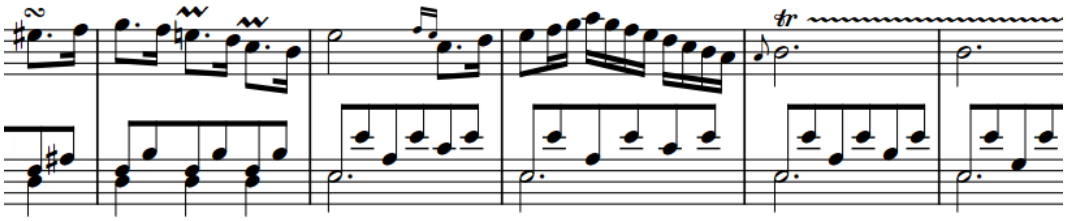
Over time, specific ways of notating how performers should play notes have developed and different ornament symbols indicate different patterns of decorative notes. Nonetheless, ornaments give some freedom to performers to embellish music in their own way.

Dorico for iPad offers a range of ornament symbols to allow you to notate different styles of ornaments.

The term “ornaments” covers a wide range of decorative notes, including:

- Mordents
- Trills
- Turns
- Grace notes
- Acciaccaturas
- Appoggiaturas

In Dorico for iPad, the term “ornaments” refers to ornament symbols and trill marks that are input above notes.



A phrase containing a turn, short trills, and a trill with extension line

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Grace notes on page 555
Positions of ornaments on page 619

Changing ornament intervals

You can change the intervals of ornaments, both above and below the notated pitch, to indicate which pitches are played in the ornament. The intervals of ornaments are indicated by accidentals.

For some ornaments, you can only change the interval in one direction. For example, you can only change the interval above short trills and below mordents.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to trills.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ornaments whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Ornaments** group, as appropriate for the selected ornaments:
   - **Interval above**
   - **Interval below**
3. Change the values in the value fields to the intervals you want.
   - **0** or **4** and above shows no accidental.
   - **1** shows a flat.
   - **2** shows a natural.
   - **3** shows a sharp.

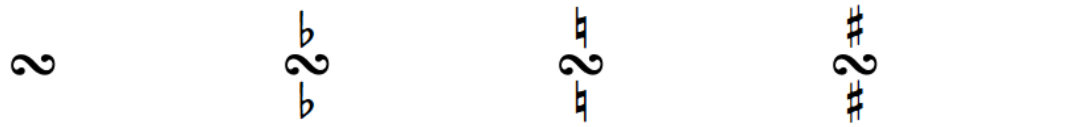
RESULT

The intervals of the selected ornaments are changed.

NOTE

Some ornaments do not show accidentals either above or below, depending on their type.

EXAMPLE



No accidentals | Flats above and below | Naturals above and below | Sharps above and below

RELATED LINKS

Trill intervals on page 624
Changing trill intervals on page 626
Changing trill intervals partway through trills on page 626
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 664

Positions of ornaments

Ornaments, including trills, are placed above the notes to which they apply. They are only placed below the staff for down-stem voices in multiple-voice contexts.

Ornaments and trills are positioned outside of slurs by default. Similarly, they are positioned further from noteheads than articulations.

The center of ornaments aligns with the center of the notehead to which they apply. Trills are aligned differently, as the left side of trill marks aligns with the left edge of the notehead to which the trill applies.

Dorico for iPad automatically positions ornaments correctly according to their type, and attaches them to their notehead.

You can move ornaments to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move ornaments graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the position of ornaments relative to slurs on page 620

Changing the position of ornaments relative to slurs

Ornaments are positioned outside of slurs by default. You can change the position of ornaments relative to slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the ornaments whose slur-relative position you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slur-relative position** in the corresponding group for the selected ornaments:
   - **Ornaments**
   - **Trills**
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Inside**
   - **Outside**

RESULT

The selected ornaments are positioned either inside or outside of slurs. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing the start position of trills

You can change whether the start position of individual trills is aligned with the notehead or with its accidental. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose start position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Start position** in the **Trills** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Notehead**

- **Accidental**

RESULT

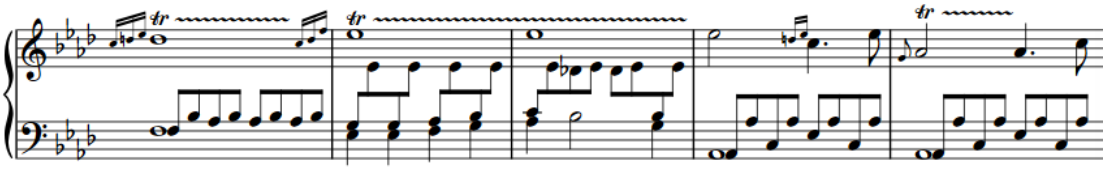
The start position of the selected trills is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Trills

Trills are fast alternations between two notes, similar to a tremolo, that were a common decoration in Baroque, Classical, and Romantic music. Trill marks are usually added to a single note, to indicate the performed notes are the notated pitch and the note either a half-step or whole step above, and can have extension lines to show the duration of the trill.



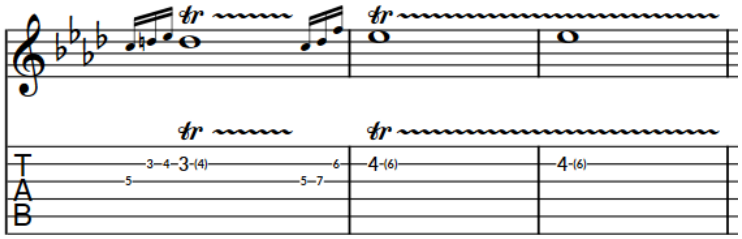
A phrase containing multiple trills with extension lines

Because of their legacy as an ornament, many performers interpret trills differently to tremolos: some players add more emphasis to the notated pitch in a trill and less on the trilled-to note but play both notes equally in tremolos.

The most common trills are to notes a major or minor second above, but it is also possible to specify other trill intervals.

In Dorico for iPad, you can specify any trill interval, change their appearance on notation staves, and hear them in playback.

On tablature, the trilled-to pitch always appears as a parenthesized fret number.



Trills on a notation staff and tablature

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Trill intervals on page 624
Trills in playback on page 630
Tablature on page 815

Hiding/Showing trill marks

You can hide/show trill marks at the start of individual trills. This also hides/shows trill marks on all systems on which the trills extend.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose trill marks you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show trill mark** in the **Trills** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Trill marks are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, trill marks are shown by default.

RELATED LINKS

Trill interval appearance on page 628
Hiding/Showing trill interval accidentals on page 625
Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines on page 623
Hiding/Showing trill extension lines on page 623

Changing the speed of trills

You can indicate different speeds for trills, including indicating a change of speed within a single trill, by changing the height and frequency of wiggles in their extension lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose speed you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Trills** group:
   - **Start speed**
   - **End speed**
3. Select one of the following options from each property menu:
   - **Slow**
   - **Normal**
   - **Fast**

RESULT

The speed of the selected trills is changed. This affects both the frequency of wiggles in their extension lines and their playback speed.

If only **Start speed** is activated, the speed of the whole trill extension line is changed. If only **End speed** is activated, the speed of the end half of the trill extension line is changed.

EXAMPLE

A trill extension line starting slow and ending fast

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can customize the playback speed of trills individually.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the playback speeds of trills on page 631

Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines

You can hide/show speed changes in the extension lines for individual trills, for example, if you want to hear different speeds in playback but show extension lines with consistent wiggles.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose speed changes you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Suppress drawing speed changes** in the **Trills** group.

RESULT

Speed changes are hidden when the property is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE

Trill speed changes shown

Trill speed changes hidden

Hiding/Showing trill extension lines

You can hide/show the extension lines of individual trills. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose extension lines you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Has trill line** in the **Trills** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Trill extension lines are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

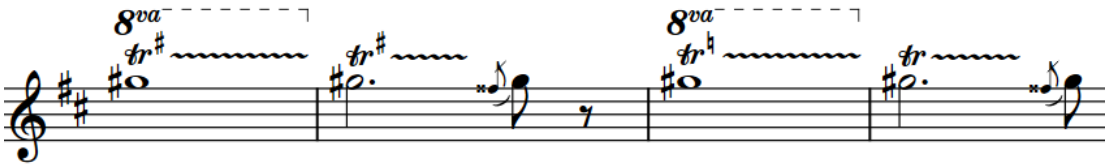
When the property is deactivated, trill extension lines are only shown on tied notes by default.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the speed of trills on page 622
Changing the playback speeds of trills on page 631
Changing the property scope on page 128

Trill intervals

Trill intervals tell performers which notes to play and also affect the pitches used in playback in Dorico for iPad. For example, a trill with a sharp accidental on an E indicates that the performer trills between E and F♯, rather than between E and F.



The different accidentals on these trills indicate changes in the trilled-to note.

If you do not specify an interval when inputting a trill, Dorico for iPad calculates an appropriate interval based on the top note in the voice to which the trill belongs, the current key signature, and any accidentals earlier in the bar. For example, inputting a trill on an E♮ in C major produces a half-step/minor second trill interval to F♮. If there were a sharp accidental on the F earlier in the bar, the trill interval produced is a whole step/major second between the E♮ and F♯.

In open/atonal key signatures, Dorico for iPad produces whole step/major second trill intervals by default.

You can specify trill intervals when inputting them with the popover, including at different noteheads in the same trill, and you can change individual trill intervals after they have been input.

When trill intervals do not require a trill interval indicator, they are indicated by signposts. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

Trills and accidentals

If required, Dorico for iPad shows accidentals to clarify trill intervals. Dorico for iPad also automatically shows accidentals on other notes in the bar if they have different accidentals to any upper notes of trills.

By default, trill marks themselves show intervals, unless the upper note is modified by an accidental in the key signature. If the upper note has been modified by an accidental earlier in the bar, trills always show the interval. If trills modify pitches modified by an accidental in the key signature, any subsequent notes of that pitch show the appropriate accidental automatically. Any cautionary accidentals required in the current and following bars are also shown automatically.

Microtonal trill intervals

When using other tonality systems than 12-EDO, you can specify trill intervals based on diatonic steps and the total number of divisions from the written note. In 24-EDO, you can describe trill intervals based on their quality, such as major or minor. In tonality systems with a greater number of divisions or an unequal number of divisions between each diatonic step, you must specify trill intervals based on their octave divisions, as specifying only the interval quality is insufficient in such cases.

RELATED LINKS
Trill interval appearance on page 628
Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover on page 253
Ornaments popover on page 248
Signposts on page 332
Changing ornament intervals on page 618
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 664

Hiding/Showing trill interval accidentals

You can hide/show accidentals for individual trill intervals, for example, if you want to show the accidental for the first note of a trill but hide the accidentals for subsequent notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only hide the accidentals shown in trill intervals, they do not hide auxiliary notes or Hollywood-style markings.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose accidentals you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple trill interval accidentals, you must select each accidental or signpost individually. If you select the whole trill, only the first trill interval accidental is changed.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Trills** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Hide**
   - **Show**

RESULT

Accidentals in the selected trill intervals are hidden when you choose **Hide**, and shown when you choose **Show**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden trill interval accidental. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the appearance of trill intervals on page 629
Changing the property scope on page 128
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332

Changing trill intervals

The default trill interval is a second, either major or minor depending on the context. In addition to specifying the interval when inputting trills with the ornaments popover, you can change the intervals of trills and existing trill intervals within their duration individually after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills, trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose interval you want to change.

   NOTE

   For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple interval changes, you must select each trill interval you want to change individually. If you select the trill mark/extension line, only the first trill interval is changed.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Interval** in the **Trills** group.

   The existing interval of the trill is shown as a number and quality.

3. Change the interval by changing the value in the value field.
4. Select one of the following interval qualities from the menu:
   - **Diminished**
   - **Minor**
   - **Major**
   - **Augmented**

RESULT

The interval of the selected trill intervals is changed. This applies from the selected trill intervals until the next interval change in the trill or the end of the trill, whichever comes first. For example, if you selected a trill with no interval changes within its duration, the interval is changed for the whole trill.

By default, trill intervals appear as accidentals when the interval is a second and as auxiliary notes for all other intervals. Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS
Resetting trill intervals on page 628
Ornaments popover on page 248

Changing trill intervals partway through trills

You can change the intervals of existing trills at any notehead within their duration, for example, if you want a trill to change seamlessly from a minor second in one bar to a major second in the next.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:

- The note whose trill interval you want to change.
- An item or rest on the staff where you want to specify trill intervals.

2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
3. Press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow** to move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution to the notehead where you want to change the trill interval.

   NOTE

   You can only change trill intervals at noteheads.

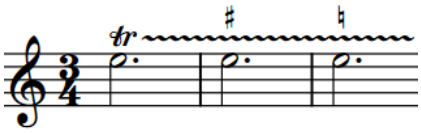
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
5. Enter the trill interval you want into the popover. For example, enter **m3** for a minor third.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
7. Optional: Repeat steps 3 to 6 to change the trill interval at other noteheads in the trill.
8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

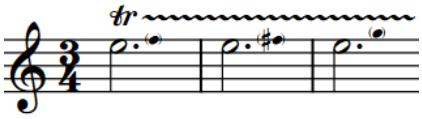
The trill interval is changed at the corresponding noteheads. By default, all trill intervals in the trill appear as accidentals when the intervals are all seconds and as auxiliary notes when the trill contains at least one trill interval with a different interval.

Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

EXAMPLE



Trill with interval changes shown as accidentals



Trill with interval changes shown as auxiliary notes

RELATED LINKS

Changing the appearance of trill intervals on page 629
Ornaments popover on page 248
Signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332
Notes toolbox on page 113

Resetting trill intervals

You can reset trill intervals to the default trill interval of a second, either major or minor depending on the context, including resetting individual trill intervals within a single trill independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills, trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose interval you want to reset.

   NOTE

   For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple interval changes, you must select each trill interval you want to reset individually. If you select the trill mark/extension line, only the first trill interval change is reset.

2. In the Properties panel, deactivate **Interval** in the **Trills** group.

RESULT

The interval of the selected trill intervals is reset. This applies from the selected trill intervals until the next interval change in the trill or the end of the trill, whichever comes first. For example, if you selected a trill with no interval changes within its duration, the interval is reset for the whole trill.

By default, trill intervals appear as accidentals when the interval is a second and as auxiliary notes for all other intervals. Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS
Properties panel (Write mode) on page 126
Signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332

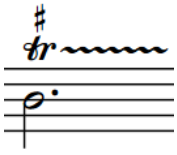
Trill interval appearance

There are different accepted ways to present trill intervals on notation staves, including accidental symbols and the Hollywood convention of showing “H.T.” for a half-step (semitone) and “W.T.” for a whole step (tone).

In Dorico for iPad, trill intervals can appear in the following ways on notation staves:

Accidental

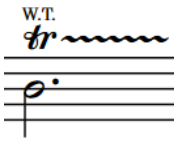
Indicates the trill interval using accidentals positioned above, below, or beside the **tr** mark. This is the default trill interval appearance in Dorico for iPad for major or minor second trills.



Hollywood-style

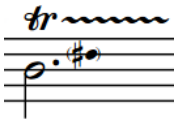
Indicates the trill interval using text.

- **H.T.** for half-step/minor second trills
- **W.T.** for whole step/major second trills



Auxiliary note

Indicates the trill interval using a small, parenthesized, stemless notehead shown in the staff immediately to the right of the first note to which the trill applies, and at the correct staff position for the trilled-to pitch. Auxiliary notes are used for all trill intervals that are not a major or minor second, but are automatically hidden for unison trills if the notehead design of the auxiliary note has not been overridden.



NOTE

On tablature, the trilled-to pitch always appears as a parenthesized fret number.

Changing the appearance of trill intervals

You can change the appearance of trills with a second interval on notation staves individually, for example, if you want to show auxiliary notes on some trills to clarify a change in the trilled-to pitch.

NOTE

You can only change the trill interval appearance of trills with a major/minor second interval.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose trill interval appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Appearance** in the **Trills** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Accidental**
   - **Hollywood style**
   - **Auxiliary note**

RESULT

The appearance of the selected trill intervals on notation staves is changed. This does not affect their appearance on tablature.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the notehead design of individual auxiliary notes, for example, to show that the trilled-to note is a harmonic.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 596

Changing the position of trill interval indicators

You can change where trill interval indicators, such as an accidental or W.T. marking, are positioned relative to individual trill marks. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

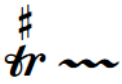
This does not affect the position of trill interval accidentals on subsequent notes over which trills extend.

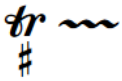
PREREQUISITE

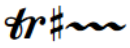
You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

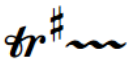
PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose interval indicator position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Interval position** in the **Trills** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Above**

     
   - **Below**

     
   - **On the right**

     
   - **Superscript**

RESULT

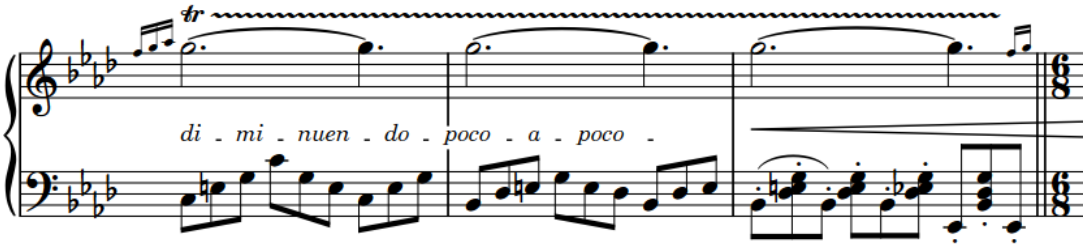
The position of interval indicators relative to the selected trill marks is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Trills in playback

Dorico for iPad plays back trills by using a combination of sampled trills, when available, and triggering multiple notes.

Dorico for iPad can play back sampled half-step (semitone) and whole step (tone) trills automatically if these playing techniques are provided by audio units. For sound libraries that do not provide sampled trills, or for intervals beyond a whole step, Dorico for iPad generates trills.

When playing generated trills, Dorico for iPad incorporates grace notes immediately before and after trills. A single unslashed grace note on the initial trill note produces an appoggiatura, while multiple grace notes on the initial trill note are included in the trill pattern. Grace notes on the note immediately following a trill are also included in the trill pattern.



A trill with grace notes at both the start and end

Variable speeds within trills are included in playback, and you can change the playback speed of individual trills. Additionally, you can hide trill speed changes in trill extension lines whilst retaining the speed changes in playback.

In contemporary performance practice, trills are usually performed starting on the written note, while in the historical performance practice of the Baroque and Classical eras, trills are usually performed starting on the upper (trilled-to) note. You can change the default starting pitch for trills individually.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the speed of trills on page 622
Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines on page 623
Changing the starting pitch of trills on page 632

Sampled vs. generated trills

Sampled trills are recorded, looped samples, whereas generated trills are produced by manually triggering separate notes.

Because they use fixed sounds, sampled trills typically offer no parameters that allow any kind of variation in the trill interpretation, such as different trill speeds or incorporating grace notes and termination notes into the pattern of trilled notes. By contrast, generated trills can provide greater flexibility but produce a less natural and realistic sound.

Changing the playback speeds of trills

In addition to changing the speed of trills, which changes both the frequency of wiggles in their extension lines and their playback speed, you can also change the playback speed of each speed variant in individual trills, for example, if you want to make the fastest part of an individual trill faster than your default setting.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose playback speeds you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties, as appropriate for your selected trills:
   - **Slow trill speed**
   - **Normal trill speed**
   - **Fast trill speed**

3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The playback speed of the selected trills is changed. The values in the value fields correspond to the number of notes sounding per second.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the speed of trills on page 622
Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines on page 623

Changing the starting pitch of trills

By default in Dorico for iPad, trills start on the lower note, which is usually the written note. However, the accepted practice in Baroque and Classical music is to start trills on the upper note. You can change the starting pitch of trills individually.

PROCEDURE

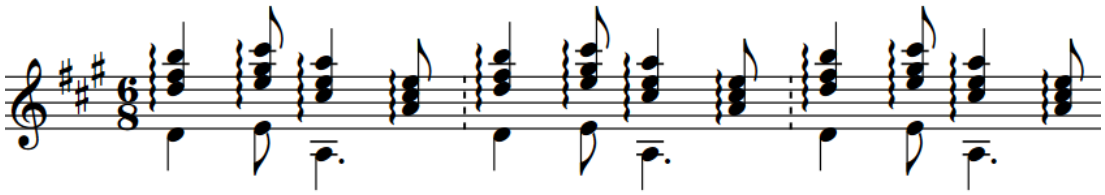
1. Select the trills whose starting note you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Start on upper note** in the **Trills** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected trills start on the upper note when the checkbox is activated, and on the lower note when the checkbox is deactivated.

Arpeggio signs

Arpeggio signs are vertical lines that indicate chords are to be played arpeggiated, or “spread”, so that the notes in the chord are played very quickly one after another. Arpeggio signs are normally shown as vertical wavy lines.



Arpeggiated chords can be played in two directions:

- Upwards, starting from the bottom note in the chord.
- Downwards, starting from the top note in the chord.

It is most common for up arpeggio signs to have nothing at the top end, because chords are usually arpeggiated upwards, and for down arpeggio signs to have an arrow at the bottom, so these are the defaults in Dorico for iPad. However, it is also accepted practice to show up arpeggio signs with an arrow at the top if down arpeggio signs are also used in the same piece of music.

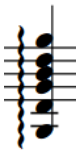
Arpeggio signs in Dorico for iPad automatically span the range of all notes in the voices/staves to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Lines on page 710

Types of arpeggio signs

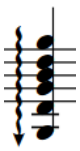
There are different types of arpeggio signs to convey the different arpeggiation directions and techniques.

Up arpeggio



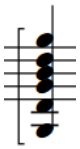
A vertical wavy line that indicates chords are to be arpeggiated from the bottom note upwards.

Down arpeggio



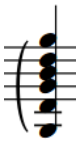
A vertical wavy line that indicates chords are to be arpeggiated from the top note downwards.

Non arpeggio



A bracket with straight lines that indicates all notes in the chord are to be played together, not arpeggiated.

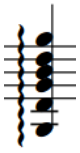
Curved arpeggio



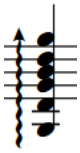
A curved line, similar to a slur but vertical, that some composers use to indicate gentle or partial arpeggiation.

You can show both up and down arpeggio signs with one of the following ends in Dorico for iPad:

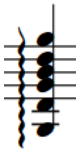
- Nothing
- Arrow
- Swash



Up arpeggio sign with nothing at the end



Up arpeggio sign with an arrow at the end



Up arpeggio sign with a swash at the end

Changing the type of arpeggio signs

You can change the type of arpeggio signs after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Arpeggio type** menu in the **Arpeggios** group:
   - **Non arpeggio**
   - **Up arpeggio**
   - **Down arpeggio**
   - **Up arpeggio (curve)**

RESULT

The type of the selected arpeggio signs is changed.

TIP

You can also change the arpeggio type by opening the ornaments popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments popover on page 248
Changing existing items on page 324

Changing the end appearance of arpeggio signs

Down arpeggio signs have an arrowhead at the bottom of the line by default, but up arpeggio signs have no arrowhead by default. You can change the appearance of the ends of arpeggio signs individually.

NOTE

These steps only apply to up and down arpeggio signs. They do not apply to curved or non arpeggio signs.

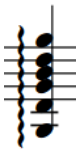
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs of any direction whose ends you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sign end** in the **Arpeggios** group.
3. Select the end you want from the menu:
   - **Nothing**
   - **Arrow**
   - **Swash**

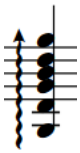
RESULT

The appearance of the ends of the selected arpeggio signs is changed.

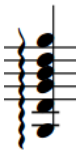
EXAMPLE



Up arpeggio sign with nothing at the end



Up arpeggio sign with an arrow at the end



Up arpeggio sign with a swash at the end

Length of arpeggio signs

The length of arpeggio signs is determined by the pitch range of notes in the voices/staves to which the arpeggio sign applies. Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the length of arpeggio

signs if the pitches of the notes in the voices/staves to which the sign applies change, or you add notes to, or delete notes from, the chords.

In Engrave mode, each arpeggio sign has two square handles, one at the top and one at the bottom. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of arpeggio signs. For example, you might lengthen an arpeggio sign on a chord with a small pitch range so the arpeggio sign is more clearly visible.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 351

General placement conventions for arpeggio signs

Arpeggio signs are positioned to the left of the notes, including any applicable accidentals, to which they apply, but are positioned between grace notes and normal notes. They should appear within the same bar as the notes to which they apply, and not on the other side of the barline.

Dorico for iPad makes automatic adjustments to note spacing and staff spacing to accommodate arpeggio signs and ensure they are positioned correctly.

Arpeggio signs should cover the whole vertical range of all notes in the chord to which they apply, and protrude slightly at each end. However, they do not need to cover the stems of notes. Dorico for iPad automatically creates the lengths of arpeggio signs to cover the notes in chords, and adjusts their lengths if the notes in chords change or are deleted.

If an arpeggiated chord spans two staves, such as in a piano part, its arpeggio sign can extend across both staves.

You can move arpeggio signs to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move arpeggio signs graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
Length of arpeggio signs on page 635
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Showing arpeggio signs before/after grace notes

You can show arpeggio signs before/after grace notes individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, arpeggio signs are positioned immediately to the left of the notes to which they apply, and so are positioned between normal notes and grace notes.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs you want to show before grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Arpeggio before grace notes** in the **Arpeggios** group.

RESULT

The selected arpeggio signs are shown before grace notes when the property is activated, and after grace notes when the property is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing arpeggio playback relative to the beat

You can change whether individual arpeggios are played before their notated position or after their notated position.

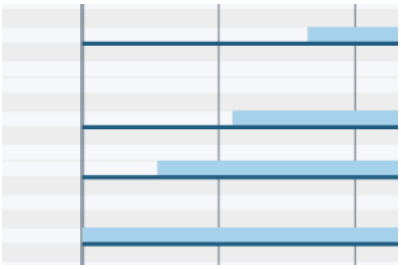
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose playback relative to the beat you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Playback position** in the **Arpeggios Playback** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Start on beat**
   - **End on beat**

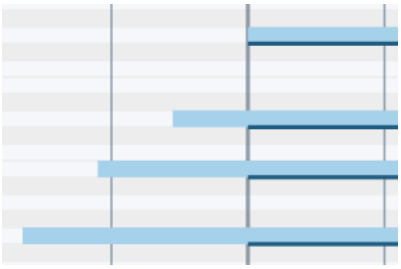
RESULT

The beat-relative position of the selected arpeggios in playback is changed.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggio starting on the beat



Arpeggio ending on the beat

Changing the playback duration of arpeggios

You can change the duration of individual arpeggios in playback.

The duration of arpeggios is expressed as a fraction of the notated rhythm of chords. For example, an arpeggio on a quarter note (crotchet) chord with a note offset value of 1/2 lasts an eighth note (quaver), whereas with a note offset value of 1/8 it lasts a 32nd note.

PROCEDURE

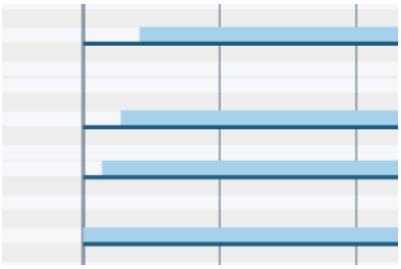
1. Select the arpeggio signs whose playback duration you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Note offset** in the **Arpeggios Playback** group.

3. Change the playback duration of the selected arpeggio signs by changing the value in the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

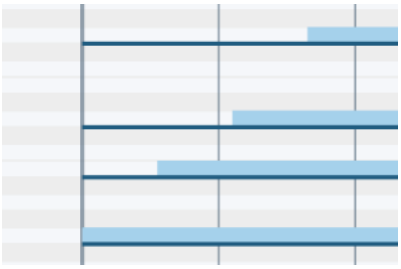
RESULT

The playback duration of the selected arpeggios is changed.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggiated chord with a note offset value of 1/8



Arpeggiated chord with a note offset value of 1/2

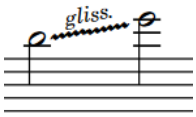
Glissando lines

Glissando lines indicate a continuous transition between two notes, which can be smooth or in chromatic steps. They can have straight lines or wiggly lines, and can be shown with a text indication or as a line without text.

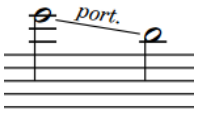
There are different conventions regarding the playing techniques for glissando and portamento. Some people understand glissando lines to indicate a chromatic scale between the two notes, either rising or falling in a series of half-steps (semitones), and portamento lines to indicate a smooth, continuous glide between the two notes. However, the terms glissando and portamento can be used interchangeably in other cases.

You can input both glissando lines and portamento lines in Dorico for iPad, and you can easily change their style after they have been input.

Glissando lines in Dorico for iPad automatically follow the notes at each end, meaning if you change the pitch of either note, the glissando line end positions move accordingly.



An example glissando line with text shown and a wiggly line



An example portamento line with text shown and a straight line

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Changing the style of glissando lines on page 640
Lines on page 710
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183

General placement conventions for glissando lines

Glissando lines are positioned between noteheads and the steepness of their angle should reflect the interval between the notes: the steeper the angle, the greater the interval. The endpoints of glissando lines must be directly beside noteheads but not directly touching them.

Glissando lines must not collide with accidentals, and instead must stop short so the accidental can be clearly read. Dorico for iPad automatically positions glissando lines so they do not collide with accidentals.

Usually, glissando lines join two adjacent noteheads because they indicate a gradual but constant change in pitch between those two notes, but they can also cross multiple notes.

Glissando lines can cross system breaks and page breaks. If text is shown for glissando lines that span system or page breaks, then that text is shown on every glissando line segment. By default, the start and end positions of each segment matches the original start and end points of the whole glissando line.

RELATED LINKS
Glissando lines in Engrave mode on page 642
Moving items graphically on page 351

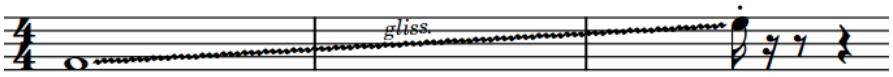
Glissando lines across empty bars

In Dorico for iPad, you can input glissando lines between any two notes, even if there are rests or other notes between them, and including between notes in different voices and notes on different staves.

For very long glissando lines that extend across multiple bars, you might not want to show pitches at the start of each bar, for example, to indicate that performers do not emphasize pitches during the course of the glissando, or that performers can play the glissando at their own speed. By default, Dorico for iPad shows notes or rests in every bar.

Once you have input a glissando line between the selected notes, you can delete any rests between them.

EXAMPLE



A glissando line across multiple bars with no rests shown between the two notes

RELATED LINKS
Inputting glissando lines with the popover on page 257
Inputting glissando lines with the panel on page 258
Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars on page 767
Deleting rests on page 766
Turning explicit rests into implicit rests on page 765

Changing the style of glissando lines

Glissando lines can be shown as straight lines or wiggly lines. You can change the glissando line style of glissando lines individually.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando style** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Straight line**
   - **Wiggly line**

RESULT

The glissando line style is changed for the selected glissando lines.

TIP

- Deactivating **Glissando style** returns the selected glissando lines to the default style.

- You can also change the glissando style by opening the ornaments popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments popover on page 248
Changing existing items on page 324

Changing glissando line text

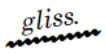
You can show individual glissando lines with “gliss.” text, “port.” text, or without text. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

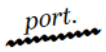
You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

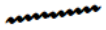
1. Select the glissando lines whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando text** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Gliss.**

   - **Port.**

   - **No text**

RESULT

The text shown on the selected glissando lines is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing when glissando line text is shown

By default, glissando text is not shown when glissando lines are too short to accommodate the text. You can choose to show text on individual glissando lines always, or only if there is sufficient space. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose setting for when text is shown you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando text shown** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Show if sufficient space**
   - **Always show**

RESULT

If **Show if sufficient space** is chosen, glissando line text is not shown if the glissando line is too short.

If **Always show** is chosen, glissando line text is always shown, even if the glissando line is short. However, this can cause the glissando line text to collide with other items, such as noteheads and stems.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can increase the default gaps between noteheads by changing the default note spacing.

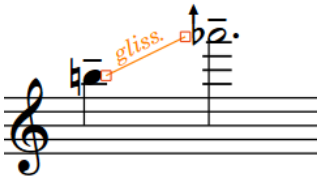
RELATED LINKS

Note spacing on page 393
Changing the default note spacing on page 393

Glissando lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each glissando line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of glissando lines.

You can also move whole individual glissando lines graphically. If glissando lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the glissando line segments on each side of the break independently.



Handles on a glissando line in Engrave mode

NOTE

You cannot move glissando lines rhythmically. If you want to change the rhythmic positions of glissando lines, you must delete them from their original positions and input new glissando lines at the new positions.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351

Glissando lines in playback

Glissando lines are reflected in playback using a sequence of notes, all a small interval apart, between the start and end notes for each glissando.

Glissandos belonging to harps consider the current harp pedaling when determining the pitches to use in playback. Glissandos for all other instruments use the 12-EDO chromatic scale, regardless of the current tonality system.

When glissando lines start or end on tie chains, their playback starts on the last note in tie chains and ends on the first note in tie chains.

By default in playback, glissandos sound across their full duration, but you can delay the start of glissandos in playback individually.

NOTE

Playing back glissando lines as a continuous, smooth slide is not yet supported. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS
Harp pedaling on page 675

Delaying the start of glissandos in playback

You can delay the start of glissandos in playback so that they start partway through their duration. By default, glissandos sound for their full duration in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose playback start you want to delay. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Delayed start** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Optional: If you want to specify exactly how far through the glissando lines playback starts, activate **Delay** and change the value in the value field.

   The value represents fractions of a quarter note. For example, **1/2** delays the start of glissandos by an eighth note.

RESULT

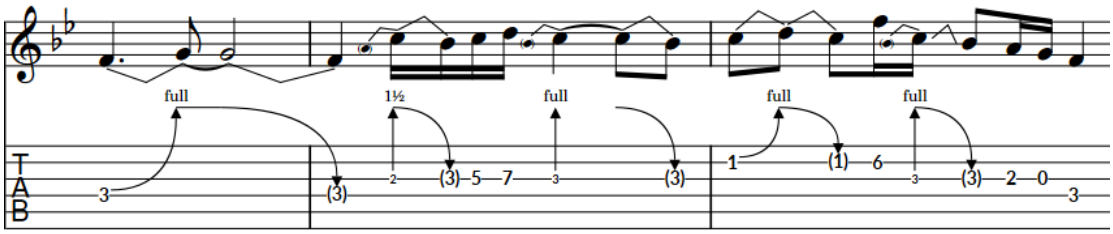
If you activated **Delayed start** only, the playback of the selected glissando lines is starts halfway through their duration.

If you also activated **Delay**, playback of the selected glissando lines follows your set value.

Guitar bends

The guitar bend is a technique commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer pushes strings out of their normal alignment after notes start to sound. Bending strings tightens them, which produces the characteristic pitch fluctuation.

Performing a guitar bend often also involves sustaining the bent pitch before allowing the string to return to its natural position and un-bent pitch. In Dorico for iPad, these actions are called a “guitar bend hold” and “release” respectively.



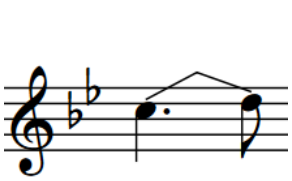
A phrase containing guitar bends, a guitar bend hold, guitar pre-bends, and releases, shown on both a notation staff and tablature

Guitar bends and releases with bend intervals of up to a whole step (tone) are reflected in playback.

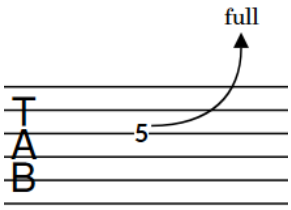
Guitar bends

Guitar bends indicate that the performer should bend the string after playing a note, so that the pitch increases while the note sounds. In Dorico for iPad, each guitar bend joins two notes: the start pitch and the pitch at the peak of the bend.

On notation staves, guitar bends are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. On tablature, guitar bends are notated using an upwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the top and a bend interval above the arrowhead. The fret number of the end note is hidden automatically.

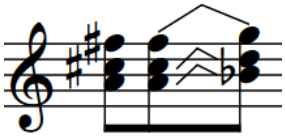


Guitar bend on notation staff

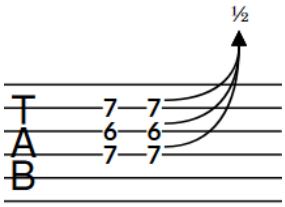


Guitar bend on tablature

If you input guitar bends on multiple notes in chords, their arrowheads are automatically aligned on tablature.

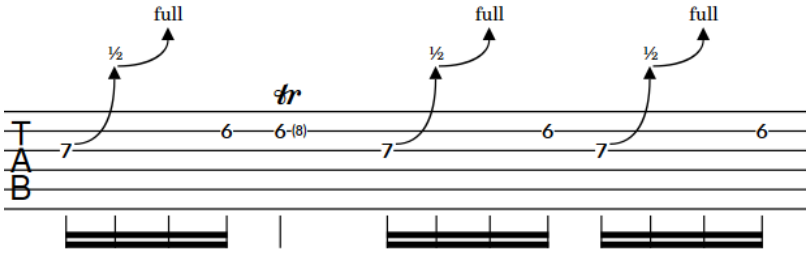


Guitar bends on chord on notation staff



Guitar bends on chord on tablature

Sequences of consecutive guitar bends are notated as bend runs on tablature. In Engrave mode, guitar bend runs function as a group.

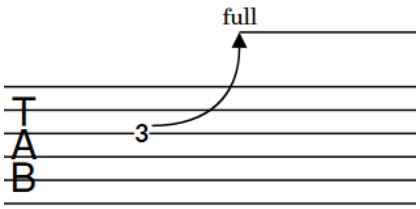


Guitar bend runs on tablature

Guitar bend holds

Guitar bend holds indicate that the performer should maintain the pitch at the peak of a guitar bend. They are usually shown on tied notes.

On tablature, guitar bend holds are notated using a horizontal line. They are not notated on notation staves.

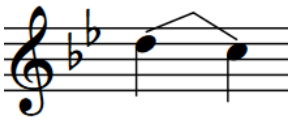


Guitar bend hold on tablature

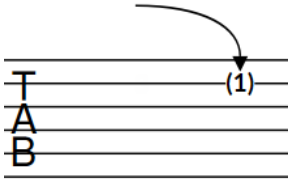
Releases

Releases indicate that the performer should allow a bent string to return to its natural position, which decreases the pitch. In Dorico for iPad, each release joins two notes: the pitch at the peak of the bend and the end pitch.

On notation staves, releases are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. On tablature, releases are notated using a downwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the bottom and parenthesized fret numbers below the arrowhead to indicate the end pitches. The fret number of the start note is hidden automatically.

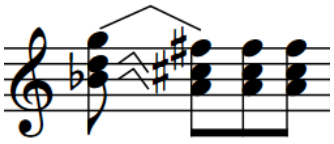


Release on notation staff

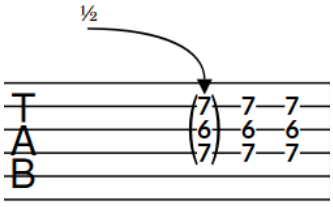


Release on tablature

If you input releases on multiple notes in chords, they are notated with a single downwards-pointing curved line on tablature. If the bend intervals are the same for all notes, the end pitches are parenthesized together.



Releases on chord on notation staff



Releases on chord on tablature

NOTE

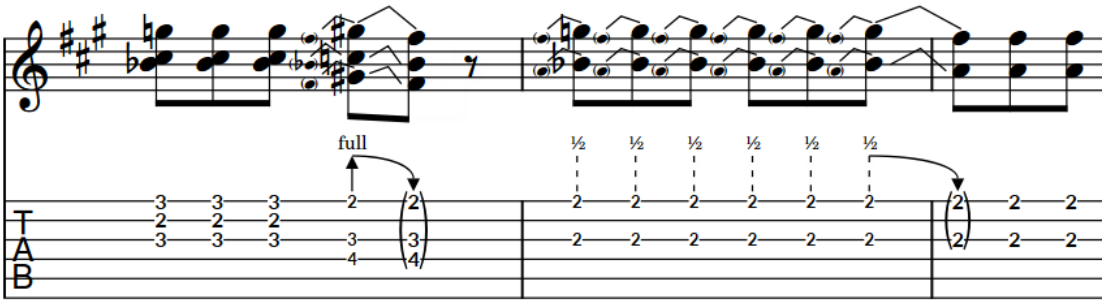
- In addition to guitar bends, Dorico for iPad supports guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, guitar post-bends, vibrato bar dives and returns, and other guitar techniques.
- Because you input releases in the same way as you input guitar bends, in this documentation, “guitar bends” refers to both guitar bend and release items in projects.
- Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS

Guitar post-bends on page 648
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Bend intervals on page 650
Guitar bends in Engrave mode on page 654
Guitar techniques on page 660
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 260
Tablature on page 815
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 816
Bracketed noteheads on page 601
String indicators on page 549
Lines on page 710

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives are techniques commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer changes the initial sounding pitch of strings before playing notes, either by bending strings to tighten them or using the vibrato bar to loosen them.



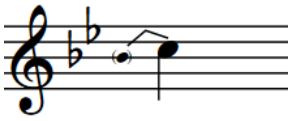
A phrase containing a guitar pre-bend with release and multiple guitar pre-dives with release

In Dorico for iPad, guitar pre-bends and pre-dives are properties of notes belonging to fretted instruments, meaning they only apply to single notes.

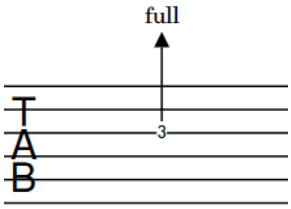
Guitar pre-bends

Guitar pre-bends indicate that the performer should bend the string before playing the note to raise the pitch, for example, to repeat a note that was at the end of a previous guitar bend. The pitch can then be lowered after starting to sound.

On notation staves, guitar pre-bends are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. However, unlike guitar bends, the parenthesized auxiliary notehead at the start is shown automatically as part of the pre-bend. On tablature, guitar pre-bends are notated using a solid vertical line with an arrowhead at the top, a bend interval above the arrowhead, and a small fret number below the line to indicate the start pitch.



Guitar pre-bend on notation staff

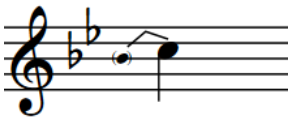


Guitar pre-bend on tablature

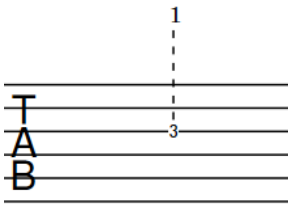
Guitar pre-dives

Guitar pre-dives indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower the pitch before playing the note. The pitch can then be raised after starting to sound.

On notation staves, guitar pre-dives appear the same as guitar pre-bends. On tablature, guitar pre-dives are notated using a dashed vertical line with an arrowhead at the top, a bend interval above the arrowhead, and a small fret number below the line to indicate the start pitch.



Guitar pre-dive on notation staff



Guitar pre-dive on tablature

NOTE

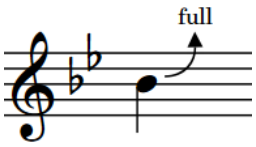
Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS
Guitar pre-bends/pre-dives in Engrave mode on page 656
Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 262
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Bend intervals on page 650
Tablature on page 815

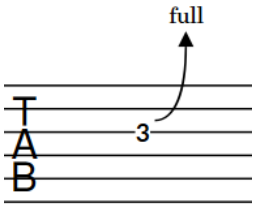
Guitar post-bends

The guitar post-bend is a technique commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer pushes strings out of their normal alignment after notes start to sound. Bending strings tightens them, which produces the characteristic pitch fluctuation. Microtonal post-bends are particularly idiomatic in Blues music.

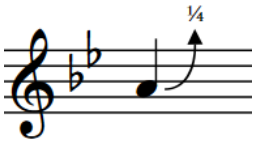
In Dorico for iPad, guitar post-bends are properties of notes belonging to fretted instruments, meaning they only apply to single notes. They are notated the same on notation staves and tablature, using an upwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the top and a bend interval above the arrowhead.



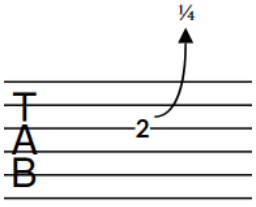
Guitar post-bend on notation staff



Guitar post-bend on tablature

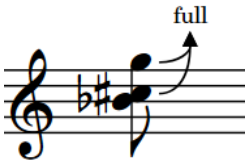


Microtonal post-bend on notation staff

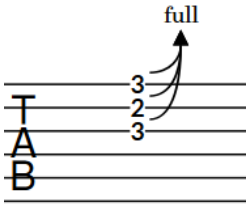


Microtonal post-bend on tablature

If you input guitar post-bends on multiple notes in chords, their arrowheads are automatically aligned. On notation staves, the appropriate number of curved lines is shown according to the staff positions of notes in chords.



Guitar post-bends on chord on notation staff



Guitar post-bends on chord on tablature

NOTE

Guitar post-bends are not currently reflected in playback. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS
Guitar post-bends in Engrave mode on page 657
Inputting guitar post-bends on page 263
Bend intervals on page 650
Tablature on page 815

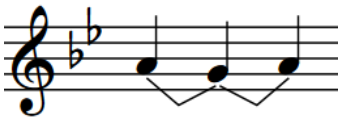
Vibrato bar dives and returns

The vibrato bar dive and return is a technique performed on electric guitars with a vibrato bar, where the performer uses the vibrato bar to loosen then tighten strings after notes start to sound. This produces the characteristic downwards-then-upwards pitch fluctuation.

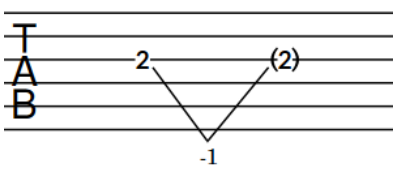
In Dorico for iPad, each vibrato bar dive and return comprises two vibrato bar bend items, where the first vibrato bar bend ends on the same note that the second vibrato bar bend starts on. Vibrato bar bends each join two notes.

Vibrato bar dives and returns with bend intervals of up to a whole step (tone) are reflected in playback.

On notation staves, vibrato bar dives and returns are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end, meaning they appear the same as guitar bends. On tablature, vibrato bar dives and returns are notated using two straight lines that form a V and a bend interval shown at the point. The fret number of the middle note is hidden and the fret number of the end note is parenthesized automatically.

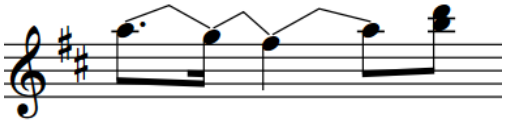


Vibrato bar dive and return on notation staff

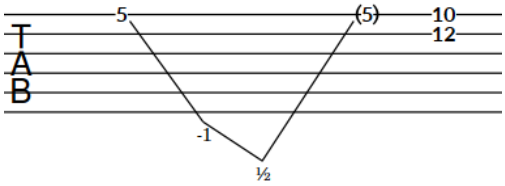


Vibrato bar dive and return on tablature

Sequences of consecutive vibrato bar bends on notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar bend.

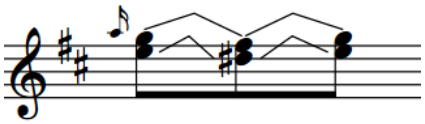


Consecutive vibrato bar bends on notation staff

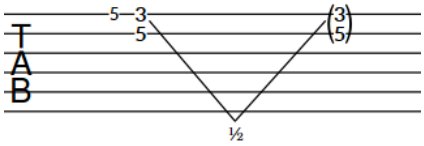


Consecutive vibrato bar bends on tablature

If you input vibrato bar dives and returns on multiple notes in chords, a single V appears on tablature as long as the bend intervals are the same for all notes.



Vibrato bar dive and return on chords on notation staff



Vibrato bar dive and return on chords on tablature

RELATED LINKS
Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover on page 265
Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the panel on page 266
Vibrato bar dives and returns in Engrave mode on page 658
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Bracketed noteheads on page 601
Tablature on page 815

Bend intervals

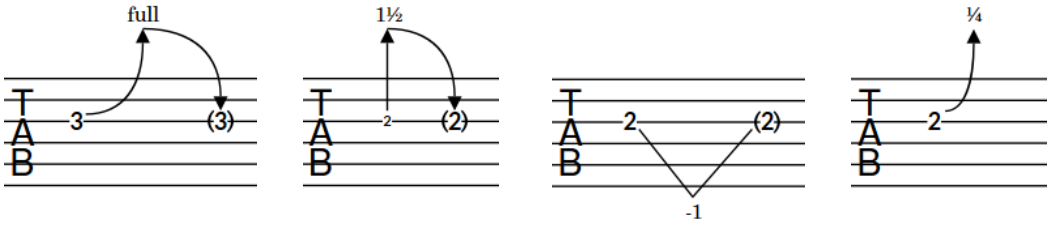
Bend intervals indicate the amount guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, post-dives, and dives and returns change the pitch, expressed in relation to whole steps using text or numbers/fractions. Bend intervals appear only on tablature for most types of bends, except for guitar post-bends, whose bend intervals also appear on notation staves.

For example, **full** indicates a whole step guitar bend, pre-bend, or post-bend, **1/2** a half-step, and **1 1/2** a minor third.

Bend intervals for guitar pre-dives and vibrato bar dives and returns always appear as numbers/fractions, such as **1** for a whole step vibrato bar dive and return.

Microtonal bend intervals appear as fractions according to the prevailing tonality system, such as **3/4**. Bend intervals for microtonal post-bends appear as **1/4**.

EXAMPLE



Guitar bend with whole step interval, displayed as **full**

Guitar pre-bend with minor third interval, displayed as **1 1/2**

Vibrato bar dive and return with whole step interval, displayed as **-1**

Guitar post-bend with microtonal interval, displayed as **1/4**

Bend intervals for guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-dives are positioned above the arrowhead/line for the corresponding notation. For dives and returns, bend intervals appear at the point of the V, either above or below the staff according to the pitch direction of notes in the dive and return.

Bend intervals appear only on tablature for guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, and dives and returns. They appear on both notation staves and tablature for guitar post-bends.

RELATED LINKS

Guitar bends on page 644
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 647
Guitar post-bends on page 648
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Tablature on page 815
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 664
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 260
Moving items graphically on page 351

Hiding/Showing guitar bend hold lines

Guitar bend hold lines indicate that the bend should be held for the duration of the note, which is usually a tied note. You can hide/show hold lines on guitar bends on tablature.

NOTE

These steps only apply to guitar bends. You cannot show hold lines on pre-bends or releases.

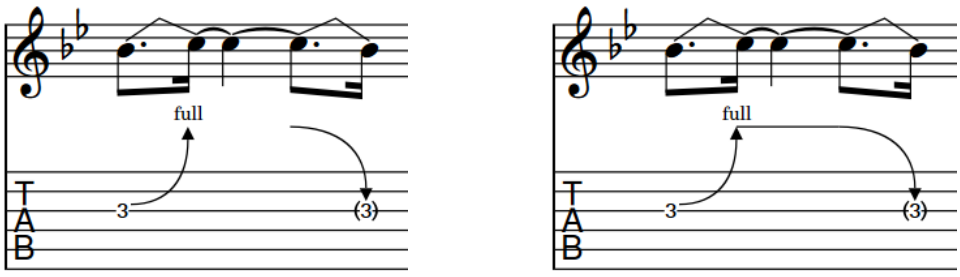
PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar bends on which you want to hide/show hold lines. You can do this on notation staves and tablature in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show hold** in the **Guitar Bends** group.

RESULT

Hold lines are shown on the selected bends on tablature when **Show hold** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Hold line hidden

Hold line shown

Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can change the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives are positioned on the notehead-side of notes in single-voice contexts. In multiple-voice contexts, they are positioned on the stem-side of notes.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar pre-bends/pre-dives whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend direction** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The direction of the selected guitar pre-bends/pre-dives is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the direction of guitar bends on notation staves by selecting them and pressing **F**. However, you cannot use this key command for guitar pre-bends/pre-dives.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 664
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 665
Changing the property scope on page 128

Hiding/Showing accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can hide/show accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives individually, for example, to save horizontal space in a layout that also shows the interval clearly on tablature. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar pre-bends/pre-dives whose accidentals you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend accidental** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Hide**
   - **Show**

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected guitar pre-bends are hidden when you choose **Hide**, and shown when you choose **Show**. This does not affect the interval shown for the selected guitar pre-bends on tablature. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Deleting guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends

You can remove guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends from notes after you have input them. However, because guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico for iPad, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and/or post-bends.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To remove guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, deactivate **Pre-bend interval** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group of the Properties panel.
   - To remove guitar post-bends, deactivate **Post-bend interval** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and/or post-bends are removed from the selected notes.

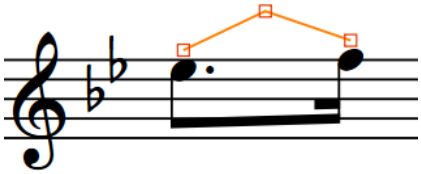
RELATED LINKS

Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 262
Inputting guitar post-bends on page 263

Guitar bends in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each guitar bend, release, and hold has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

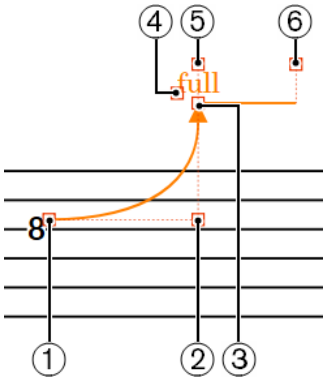
On notation staves, guitar bends and releases have three square handles. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.



Guitar bend handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

Guitar bends and holds

On tablature, guitar bends and holds have the following handles:



1 Guitar bend start handle

2 Guitar bend middle handle

3 Guitar bend end handle

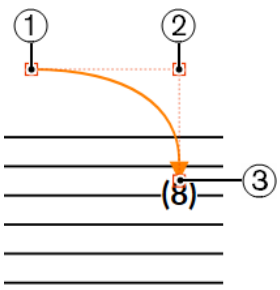
4 Bend interval handle

5 Hold start handle

6 Hold end handle

Releases

On tablature, releases have the following handles:



1 Release start handle

2 Release middle handle

3 Release end handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar bends and releases, change the graphical length and angle of guitar bend holds, and move bend intervals. When you move guitar bend end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

If guitar bends cross system and frame breaks, you can move the guitar bend segment on each side of the break independently.

NOTE

- Adjoining guitar bends, such as guitar bend runs or a guitar bend that ends on the same note that a return starts on, function as a group. When using the mouse, moving any guitar bend in the group upwards/downwards moves all the others. When you move individual handles within the group using the mouse, adjacent guitar bends automatically adjust to compensate.

  When you move individual guitar bends in a group or individual handles using the keyboard, this does not affect adjacent guitar bends.
- You cannot move whole holds, you must move their handles.
- The following properties in the **Guitar Bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar bend handle:
  - **Start offset** moves start guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Mid offset** moves middle guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **End offset** moves end guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Interval offset** moves guitar bend interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Hold start offset** moves start guitar bend hold handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Hold end offset** moves end guitar bend hold handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

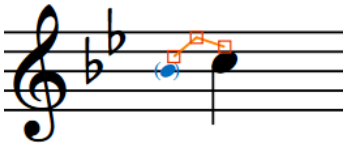
RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351
Bend intervals on page 650
Guitar post-bends in Engrave mode on page 657
Vibrato bar dives and returns in Engrave mode on page 658
System breaks on page 390
Frame breaks on page 391

Guitar pre-bends/pre-dives in Engrave mode

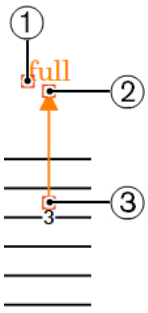
In Engrave mode, each guitar pre-bend/pre-dive has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

On notation staves, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives have three square handles. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.

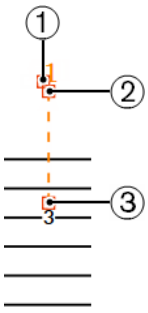


Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

On tablature, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives have the following handles:



Guitar pre-bend handles



Guitar pre-dive handles

1 Bend interval handle

2 Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handle

3 Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive start handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on notation staves, change the graphical length and angle of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on tablature, and move bend intervals. When you move guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

NOTE

- You cannot move whole guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, you must move their handles.
- The following properties in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar pre-bend/pre-dive handle:
  - **Start offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Mid offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **End offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

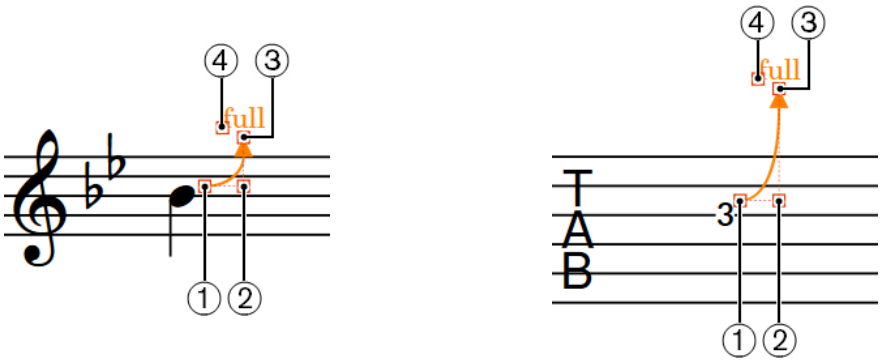
- **Interval offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 351

Guitar post-bends in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each guitar post-bend has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

On both notation staves and tablature, guitar post-bends have the following handles:



1 Guitar post-bend start handle
2 Guitar post-bend middle handle
3 Guitar post-bend end handle
4 Bend interval handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar post-bends and move bend intervals. When you move guitar post-bend end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

NOTE

The following properties in the **Guitar Post-bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar post-bend handle:

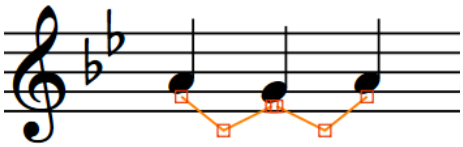
- **Start offset** moves guitar post-bend start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Mid offset** moves guitar post-bend middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves guitar post-bend end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Interval offset** moves guitar post-bend interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 351

Vibrato bar dives and returns in Engrave mode

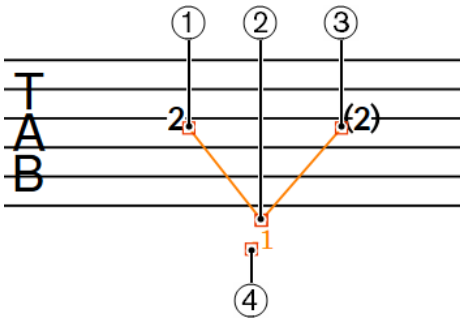
In Engrave mode, each vibrato bar dive and return has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape.

On notation staves, each vibrato bar dive and vibrato bar return has three square handles that you can move independently. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.



Vibrato bar dive and return handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

On tablature, vibrato bar dives and returns have the following handles:



1 Vibrato bar dive start handle

2 Vibrato bar dive end handle/Vibrato bar return start handle

3 Vibrato bar return end handle

4 Bend interval handle

You can move these handles to change the shape or angle of vibrato bar dives and returns and move bend intervals. When you move the vibrato bar dive end handle/vibrato bar return start handle with the mouse, both handles move together. When you move the handle using the keyboard, by default only the vibrato bar dive end handle moves. The same is true for consecutive vibrato bar bends with the same pitch direction.

When you move the vibrato bar dive end handle, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

If vibrato bar dives and returns cross system and frame breaks, you can move the vibrato bar dive and return segment on each side of the break independently.

NOTE

The following properties in the **Guitar Bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding vibrato bar dive/return handle:

- **Start offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Mid offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

- **Interval offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
Bend intervals on page 650
System breaks on page 390
Frame breaks on page 391

Guitar techniques

The term “guitar techniques” covers a range of techniques typically associated with guitar music, such as hammer-ons, pull-offs, and pitch alterations that use the vibrato bar on electric guitars.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 260
Tapping on page 661
Hammer-ons and pull-offs on page 662
Guitar bends on page 644
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 647
Guitar post-bends on page 648
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Bend intervals on page 650

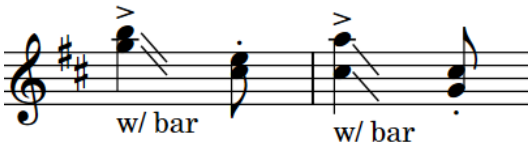
Vibrato bar techniques

There are a number of different techniques that can be performed using the vibrato bar on electric fretted instruments, typically guitars. In Dorico for iPad, the available vibrato bar techniques are categorized differently.

Vibrato bar dives

Vibrato bar dives indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower the pitch after playing the note, so that the pitch falls after starting to sound. This technique is also known as a “dive bomb”.

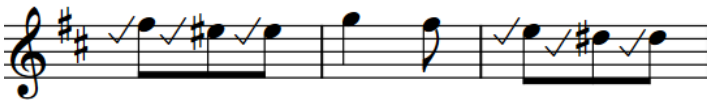
In Dorico for iPad, you can notate vibrato bar dives using jazz articulations to show falling lines to the right of noteheads in combination with a vibrato bar indication.



Vibrato bar scoops

Vibrato bar scoops indicate that the performer should depress the vibrato bar just before playing the note and then release the vibrato bar quickly, so that the pitch rises after starting to sound.

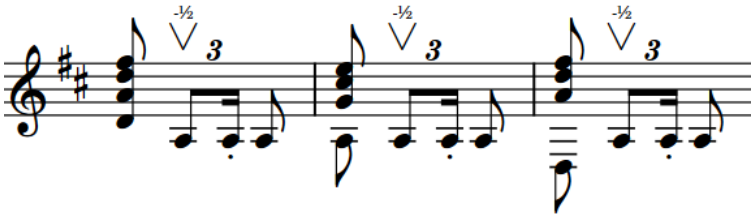
In Dorico for iPad, vibrato bar scoops are properties of notes, meaning they only apply to single notes. By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves and are placed to the left of noteheads on the staff.



Vibrato bar dips

Vibrato bar dips indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower and then raise the pitch by the specified interval after playing the note.

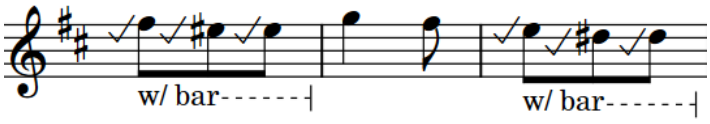
In Dorico for iPad, vibrato bar dips are considered ornaments. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. Vibrato bar dips appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual vibrato bar dips.



Vibrato bar indications/lines

Vibrato bar indications are text instructions that indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar. When they apply to a range of notes, they typically show dashed lines.

In Dorico for iPad, vibrato bar indications/lines are considered playing techniques. They show lines when they have duration. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. You can also change the duration line style of vibrato bar lines in the same ways as for playing technique continuation lines.



NOTE

Vibrato bar techniques are not currently reflected in playback. This is planned for future versions.

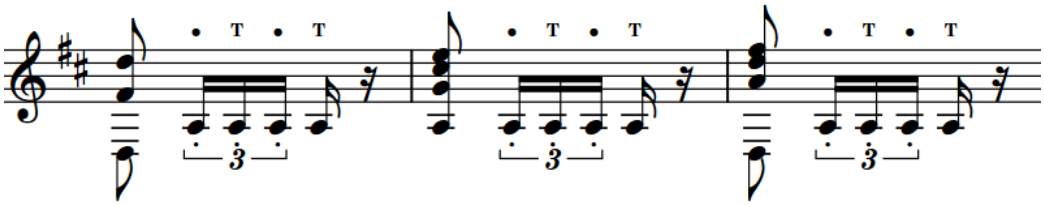
RELATED LINKS

Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 260
Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 262
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 647
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 649
Jazz articulations on page 667
Ornaments on page 618
Playing techniques on page 697
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Playing technique duration on page 703
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines on page 706
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 665

Tapping

Tapping involves performers pressing the strings of fretted instruments strongly enough that the corresponding pitch sounds without additional striking. Tapping indications can specify whether the performer should use their right or left hand for individual notes. They typically appear as the letter T, a plus sign, or a dot.

According to convention, tapping indications for the same hand and for consecutive notes on the same string with different pitches are notated alongside slurs that span the tapped phrase. This is similar to hammer-ons and pull-offs, except tapping indications appear on every note whereas hammer-on and pull-off indications typically appear centered on slurs.



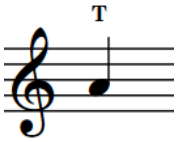
A phrase containing right-hand and left-hand tapping

By default, tapping indications only appear on notation staves and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual tapping indications.

In Dorico for iPad, tapping indications are considered properties of notes. There are the following types of tapping indications:

Right-hand tapping

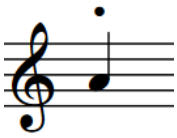
Right-hand tapping indications specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their right hand. In Dorico for iPad, right-hand tapping indications appear as the letter T.



Right-hand tapping on notation staff

Left-hand tapping

Left-hand tapping indications specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their left hand. In Dorico for iPad, left-hand tapping indications appear as a dot.



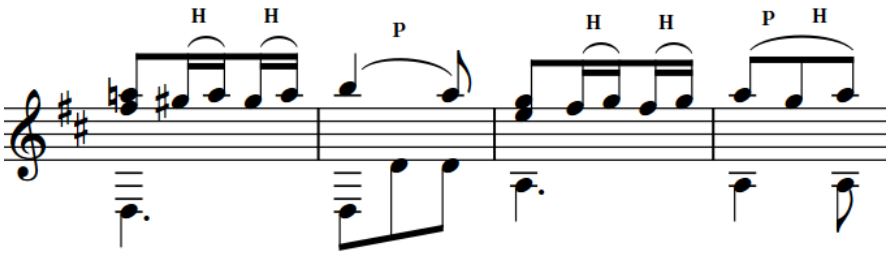
Left-hand tapping on notation staff

RELATED LINKS
Inputting tapping on page 272
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 665
Moving items graphically on page 351
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539

Hammer-ons and pull-offs

Hammer-ons and pull-offs involve performers tapping or plucking the strings of fretted instruments with their left hand strongly enough that the corresponding pitch sounds without additional striking, producing a legato effect. Ligados are a combination of at least one hammer-on and one pull-off in a single phrase.

Hammer-ons and pull-offs are notated as the letters H or P respectively combined with a slur spanning the corresponding notes. Dorico for iPad automatically centers hammer-on/pull-off indications on slurs. For ligados, each hammer-on/pull-off indication is centered over the range of notes in the corresponding direction.



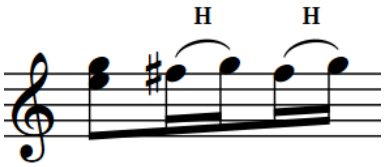
A phrase containing hammer-ons, a pull-off, and a ligado

By default, hammer-ons/pull-offs appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual hammer-on/pull-off indications.

In Dorico for iPad, hammer-on/pull-off indications are considered properties of notes.

Hammer-ons

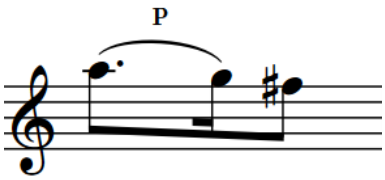
Hammer-ons specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their left hand without restriking the string. Hammer-ons require at least two notes on the same string with an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D. In Dorico for iPad, hammer-ons appear as a letter H.



Hammer-ons on notation staff

Pull-offs

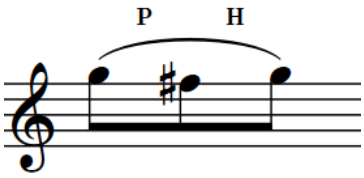
Pull-offs specify that the performer should pluck the string at the specified pitch with their left hand without restriking the string. Pull-offs require at least two notes on the same string with a descending pitch direction, such as D-C. In Dorico for iPad, pull-offs appear as a letter P.



Pull-off on notation staff

Ligados

Ligados specify that the performer should both hammer on and pull off notes within a single phrase. Ligados require at least three notes on the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C. In Dorico for iPad, ligados comprise at least one hammer-on and pull-off.



Ligado on notation staff

RELATED LINKS
Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs on page 271
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 665
Moving items graphically on page 351
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 539

Showing notes as dead notes

You can show individual notes belonging to fretted instruments as dead notes. Dead notes are notated with cross noteheads on notation staves and with an X on tablature.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes belonging to fretted instruments that you want to show as dead notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Dead note** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

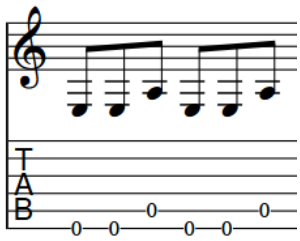
RESULT

The selected notes are shown as dead notes.

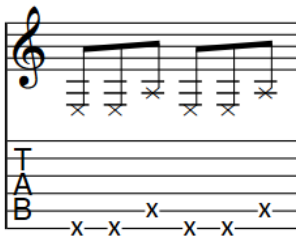
NOTE

This does not currently affect their sound in playback; this is planned for future versions.

EXAMPLE



Normal notes



Dead notes

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on tablature on page 166
Bracketed noteheads on page 601
Tablature on page 815

Changing vibrato bar dip intervals

You can change the intervals of individual vibrato bar dips. By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals.

PROCEDURE

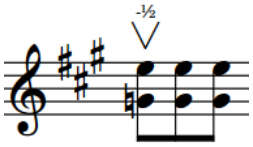
1. Select the vibrato bar dips whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Interval above** in the **Ornaments** group.

For example, enter **1** for a half step interval, **2** for a whole step interval, or **3** for a minor third interval.

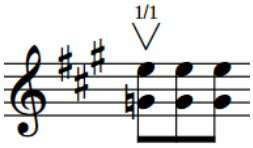
RESULT

The interval of the selected vibrato bar dips is changed.

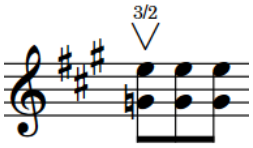
EXAMPLE



Vibrato bar dip with half step interval



Vibrato bar dip with whole step interval



Vibrato bar dip with minor third interval

RELATED LINKS

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover on page 268
Inputting vibrato bar dips with the panel on page 269
Changing ornament intervals on page 618
Trill intervals on page 624

Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques

You can show individual tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose guitar technique staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Technique placement** in the **Guitar Techniques** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications on the selected notes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the staff-relative placement of vibrato bar dips and lines by selecting them and pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 652
Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Changing the property scope on page 128

Deleting guitar techniques

You can remove vibrato bar scoops and tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications from notes after you have input them. However, because these guitar techniques are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico for iPad, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove guitar techniques.
2. Remove guitar techniques in any of the following ways:
    - To remove tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications, deactivate **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel.
    - To remove guitar vibrato bar scoops, deactivate **Vibrato bar scoop** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications and/or vibrato bar scoops are removed from the selected notes.

Jazz articulations

Jazz articulations in Dorico for iPad cover a range of note ornamentations that are idiomatic to jazz music, and brass instruments in particular.

Although they are often known as jazz “articulations”, these techniques function more like ornaments than articulations because they change the pitch rather than the duration or attack of notes. For this reason, they are considered ornaments in Dorico for iPad. They are found in the Ornaments panel, and you can also input them using the ornaments popover.

Jazz articulations can be shown as a curved line similar to a slur, which is called a “bend” in Dorico for iPad, and as a straight line, which can be solid, dashed, or wiggly, which is called “smooth” in Dorico for iPad.

Each note can have a single jazz articulation on each side of it, one before the note and one after. Jazz articulations after notes can have different lengths.

The following jazz articulations can be shown before notes:

Plop

An approach into the note from above.

Plop (bend)

Plop (smooth)

Scoop/Lift

An approach into the note from below. A bend approach is a scoop, a smooth approach is a lift.

Scoop

Lift (straight)

The following jazz articulations can be shown after notes:

Doit

A rise in pitch after the note.

Doit (bend)

Doit (smooth)

Fall

A lowering of pitch after the note.

Fall (bend)

Fall (smooth)

Additionally, there are other jazz ornaments commonly used by brass instruments that you can add to notes in the same ways as inputting jazz articulations.

If your sound library includes samples for jazz articulations, Dorico for iPad loads the required samples using playback techniques.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Ornaments popover on page 248

Jazz ornaments

Jazz ornaments are notations that are commonly used in jazz music and by brass instruments, such as flips and smears, that are positioned outside of the staff rather than beside noteheads like jazz articulations.

Jazz ornaments behave more like other ornaments than jazz articulations, in that they are items separate from notes, and so can be selected independently of notes in Write mode and added to notes in addition to jazz articulations. Because they are so commonly used alongside jazz articulations, in Dorico for iPad they are also included in the **Jazz** section in the Ornaments panel.

You can input jazz ornaments in the same ways as inputting other ornaments rather than jazz articulations.

The following ornaments are considered jazz ornaments in Dorico for iPad:

Flip

Smear

Jazz turn/Shake

Bend

NOTE

Jazz articulations are not currently reflected in playback.

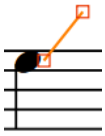
RELATED LINKS
Ornaments on page 618
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Ornaments popover on page 248

Positions of jazz articulations

In Dorico for iPad, jazz articulations are automatically positioned relative to the noteheads to which they apply, with any other notations on those notes, such as rhythm dots, accidentals, and back notes, automatically considered.

When multiple notes in a chord have a jazz articulation, Dorico for iPad considers the best way to align them based on how close to the noteheads they can be positioned and how many jazz articulations to show in total. Dorico for iPad allows a maximum of one jazz articulation per space, meaning fewer jazz articulations than noteheads are sometimes shown on cluster chords.

In Engrave mode, each smooth jazz articulation has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of jazz articulations. You can also move whole individual jazz articulations graphically.



Handles on a smooth doit in Engrave mode

NOTE

- You cannot move jazz articulations rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which jazz articulations apply, you must delete them from their original notes and input new jazz articulations on the new notes.
- The following properties in the **Jazz Articulations** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding smooth jazz articulation handle:
  - **In far offset** moves the start handle of jazz articulations shown before notes, that is, the handle further from the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **In offset** moves the end handle of jazz articulations shown before notes, that is, the handle closer to the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Out offset** moves the start handle of jazz articulations shown after notes, that is, the handle closer to the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Out far offset** moves the end handle of jazz articulations shown after notes, that is, the handle further from the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Moving items graphically on page 351
Deleting jazz articulations on page 671

Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations

You can change the type and length of jazz articulations after you have input them, for example, if you want to change a smooth doit to a long bend doit. You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose jazz articulation you want to change.
2. In the Ornaments panel, click the jazz articulation you want in the **Jazz** section.

RESULT

The jazz articulation shown on the selected notes is changed.

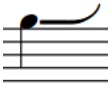
TIP

You can also change the type/duration of jazz articulations using the **In** and **Out** properties in the **Jazz Articulations** group of the Properties panel.

EXAMPLE

Short bend doit

Medium bend doit



Long bend doit

Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations

You can change the line style of smooth jazz articulations individually. For example, if you want selected smooth falls to have straight lines instead of wavy lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes with smooth jazz articulations whose line style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select notes with smooth jazz articulations on the same side, for example, only select notes with smooth jazz articulations before them.

2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following line styles from the **In line style** menu and/or **Out line style** menu in the **Jazz Articulations** group:

   - **Straight**
   - **Wavy**
   - **Dashed**

   NOTE

   In line style is available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations before them, and **Out line style** is available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations after them. Both are available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations on both sides.

RESULT

The line style of the selected smooth jazz articulations is changed.

TIP

You can reset jazz articulations back to their default line style by selecting them, then clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Reset Appearance**.

EXAMPLE

Doit smooth with straight line

Doit smooth with wavy line

Doit smooth with dashed line

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Deleting jazz articulations

You can remove jazz articulations from notes after you have input them. However, because jazz articulations are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico for iPad, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove jazz articulations.
2. In the Ornaments panel, click **Remove** in the **Jazz** section.

RESULT

All jazz articulations are removed from the selected notes.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 248
Inputting vibrato bar dives on page 263

Page numbers

Page numbers are used to give each page a unique number, and indicate its position relative to other pages. Just as in newspapers and books, musical scores and parts use page numbers to make sure the music stays in the correct order.

Because you can have multiple flows in a single project in Dorico for iPad, you do not need to change page numbers manually in most cases. However, if you have separate files that together make up a single piece, page number changes are necessary to make sure the page numbers continue seamlessly from movement to movement.

In such cases, you can change the default page numbers. For example, if you want to have four pages of front matter before the first page of music in the score, but you want the first page of music in the score to be shown as page 1, you can insert a page number change on the first page of music.

Page numbers are layout-specific in Dorico for iPad, meaning you can change the page numbers in each layout independently. For example, you can change the page numbers in the score but show the default page numbers in the parts.

Page numbers in Dorico for iPad use a text token to ensure the number is correct.

NOTE

You must have a text frame containing the page number token on every page on which you want page numbers to be shown.

The default master pages contain text frames with page number tokens. You can change the position of page number text frames in the master page editor, which changes the position of page numbers on all pages that use that master page. You can also move page number text frames on individual pages.

You can also change the type of number used to show page numbers in each layout. For example, if you want the front matter to use Roman numerals but the music pages to use Arabic numerals, you can change the type of number together with the page number.

RELATED LINKS
Text tokens on page 355

Changing the page number numeral style

Page numbers can appear as Arabic or Roman numerals. You can change the numeral style of page numbers in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose page number numeral style you want to change.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Page Numbers** section, select one of the following options from the **Use** menu:
   - **Number**
   - **Roman numeral**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page number numeral style is changed in the selected layouts.

Hiding/Showing page numbers

You can hide/show page numbers in each layout independently, including specifying whether to hide/show a page number on the first page. For example, you can show page numbers on every page in the score but hide page numbers on the first page in the parts.

NOTE

To show page numbers, there must be a text frame containing the page number token on the page. The default master page formats for first pages do not contain text frames containing page number tokens, so you must add these if you want to show page numbers on first pages in your project that use the default master page formats.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show page numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Page Setup** in the category list.
4. In the **Page Numbers** section, select one of the following options from the **Visibility** menu:
   - **Always shown**
   - **Always hidden**
   - **Not on first page**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

- If you select **Always shown**, page numbers are shown on all pages that have a text frame containing the page number token in the selected layouts.
- If you select **Always hidden**, page numbers are hidden on all pages in the selected layouts, including on pages that have a text frame containing the page number token.

- If you select **Not on first page**, page numbers are hidden on the first page in the selected layouts, but shown on all other pages that have a text frame containing the page number token.

NOTE

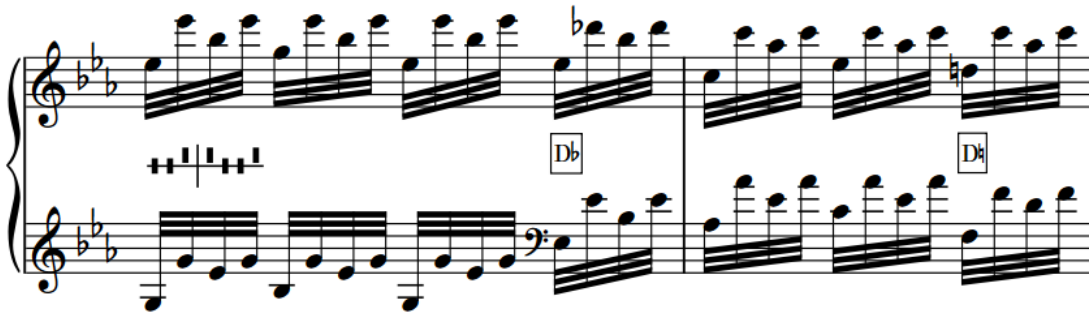
Your per-layout setting for whether page numbers are hidden/shown above flow headings affects whether page numbers are shown on pages where they are higher on the page than flow headings.

RELATED LINKS

Flow headings on page 367
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 384

Harp pedaling

Harp pedaling is a broad term that covers the specific requirements for notating music for harps. This primarily involves harp pedal diagrams, which are often necessary due to the way in which modern concert harps change their tuning.



A passage with a full harp pedal diagram at the start and two subsequent partial pedal changes

Harps have seven strings in each octave, one for each diatonic pitch C-B, unlike pianos, which have twelve keys in each octave, one for each half-step (semitone) degree between C-B. Therefore, harps have a mechanical action to change their tuning that includes seven pedals, with each pedal controlling the pitch of the corresponding note in all octaves. These pedals are organized into two groups, one for each foot: three pedals for the left foot and four pedals for the right foot.

Each harp pedal has three possible positions:

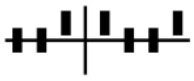
1. Flat or highest position: lowers the pitch of the corresponding note by a half-step
2. Natural or middle position
3. Sharp or lowest position: raises the pitch of the corresponding note by a half-step

NOTE

The lowest two harp strings, C and D, are not affected by the C and D pedal positions.

There are different ways to notate the pedal settings required for a piece of music or a passage within a piece. In Dorico for iPad, you can show harp pedaling in the following ways:

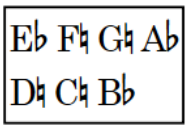
Diagram



Indicates the physical positions of the seven pedals. The vertical line represents the split between left-foot and right-foot pedals and the horizontal line represents the natural position.

- Pedals below the horizontal line indicate sharpened notes.
- Pedals above the horizontal line indicate flattened notes.

Note Names



Indicates the required accidentals for the seven diatonic pitches, arranged in two lines. Right-foot pedals are shown on top and left-foot pedals are shown below.

Any pitches that you input that do not fit with the current harp pedal diagram are considered out of range, and appear red when colors are shown for notes that are out of range. If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico for iPad assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major.

In Dorico for iPad, you can input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover and you can automatically generate accurate harp pedal diagrams based on an entire flow or a specific passage of music. However, you can only input and show harp pedal diagrams on staves belonging to harp instruments; if you copy material from harp staves to other instruments, harp pedaling is automatically removed.

By default, harp pedaling is hidden in full score/custom score layouts and shown in part layouts. In layouts where harp pedaling is hidden, harp pedal diagrams are indicated by signposts. You can hide/show harp pedaling in each layout independently and hide individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is shown. You can also determine when to show partial harp pedaling, such as when only a single pedal must be changed at one time.

Harp pedal diagrams in Dorico for iPad affect the pitches played back in glissando lines.

RELATED LINKS
Partial harp pedaling on page 681
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 283
Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts on page 677
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 600
Glissando lines in playback on page 643

Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams

Harp pedaling can be shown as a diagram or using note names. You can change the appearance of harp pedal diagrams individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the harp pedal diagrams whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Appearance** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
    - **Diagram**
    - **Note Names**

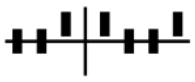
RESULT

The appearance of the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed in the current layout. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

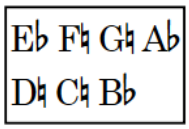
TIP

You can change the default appearance of harp pedaling in each layout independently in the **Harp Pedaling** section of the **Players** page in **Layout Options**.

EXAMPLE



Harp pedaling shown as a diagram



Harp pedaling shown using note names

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 63
Partial harp pedaling on page 681
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 283
Changing the property scope on page 128

Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts

You can input and calculate harp pedaling in any layout, but by default harp pedaling is not shown in full score layouts, as they are usually only useful for the performer. You can hide/show harp pedaling in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show harp pedaling.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Harp Pedaling** section, activate/deactivate **Show harp pedaling**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Harp pedaling is shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

In layouts where harp pedaling is hidden, harp pedal diagrams are indicated by signposts.

NOTE

- You can hide individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is shown, but you cannot show individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is hidden.
- You can hide/show signposts in the **View Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
View Options dialog on page 120

Hiding/Showing harp pedal diagrams individually

You can hide/show individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts in which harp pedaling is shown. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to hide/show individual harp pedal diagrams.
2. Select the harp pedal diagrams you want to hide, or the signposts of harp pedal diagrams you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
3. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Harp Pedals** group.

RESULT

The selected harp pedal diagrams are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden harp pedal diagram. However, signposts are not printed by default.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128
Signposts on page 332

Hiding/Showing borders on harp pedal diagrams

You can hide/show borders on individual note name harp pedal diagrams. For example, on systems with very tight vertical spacing, hiding borders on harp pedal diagrams can give you a little extra space.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.

PREREQUISITE

Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.

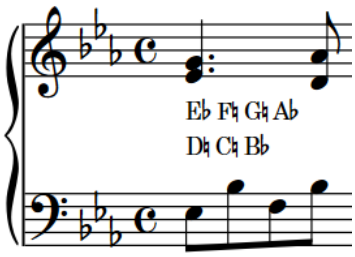
PROCEDURE

1. Select the note name harp pedal diagrams on which you want to hide/show borders. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

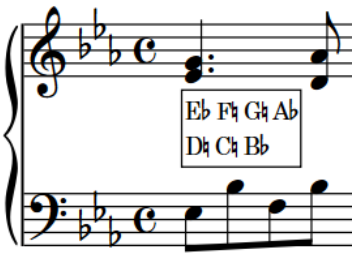
RESULT

Borders are shown on the selected note name harp pedal diagrams when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Note name harp pedal diagram with border hidden



Note name harp pedal diagram with border shown

Changing the thickness of harp pedal diagram borders

You can change the thickness of borders on individual note name harp pedal diagrams, independently of your project-wide setting.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.

PREREQUISITE

Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the note name harp pedal diagrams whose border thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The thickness of borders on the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed.

Changing the padding around harp pedal diagrams

You can change the padding around harp pedal diagrams individually, and for each edge independently. This affects the distance between harp pedal diagrams and erased backgrounds

and borders. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the harp pedal diagrams whose padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Harp Pedals** group:
   - **Left padding**
   - **Right padding**
   - **Top padding**
   - **Bottom padding**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The padding around the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed. Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Positions of harp pedal diagrams

By default, harp pedal diagrams are centered vertically between the two staves usually shown for harps.

You can move harp pedal diagrams to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

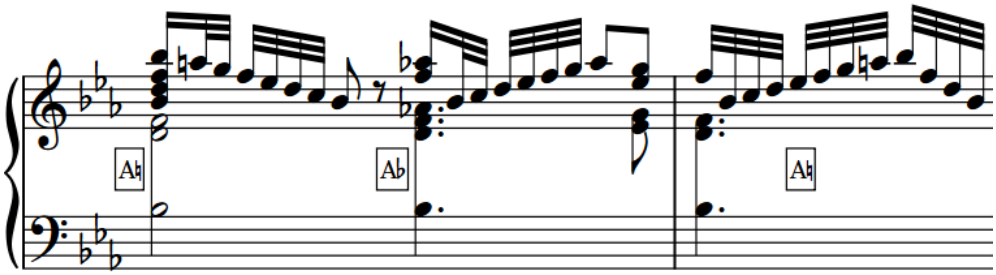
You can move harp pedal diagrams graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS

Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Partial harp pedaling

Partial harp pedal diagrams only show the notes whose pedal setting must change at that position, rather than showing the required settings for all pedals. This can make those changes immediately clear to the performer, as they have fewer pedals to read.



Partial pedal diagrams for a sequence containing several quick pedal changes

You can allow partial harp pedaling for individual harp pedal diagrams and you can set a maximum threshold of pedal changes at a single position, above which all harp pedal diagrams must show all pedals. This is because performers are used to the pattern of note names in complete harp pedal diagrams, and if there are many changes in a partial harp pedal diagram, this can be harder to read than a complete one.

By default, Dorico for iPad shows notes in partial harp pedal diagrams on two lines with right-foot pedals on top and left-foot pedals below.

NOTE

Only harp pedal diagrams using note names can be shown as partial.

Allowing/Disallowing partial harp pedaling

You can allow/disallow partial harp pedaling for individual note name harp pedal diagrams. The default setting in Dorico for iPad is to allow partial harp pedaling for up to three pedal changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.
- Harp pedal diagrams positioned at the very beginning of a flow can only appear as full harp pedal diagrams.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

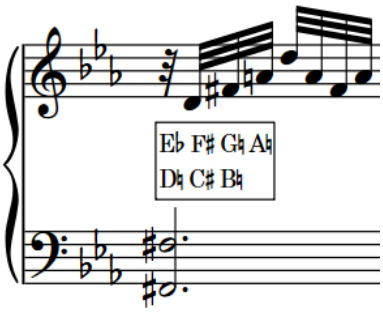
PROCEDURE

1. Select the note name harp pedal diagrams for which you want to allow/disallow partial harp pedaling. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial pedaling** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

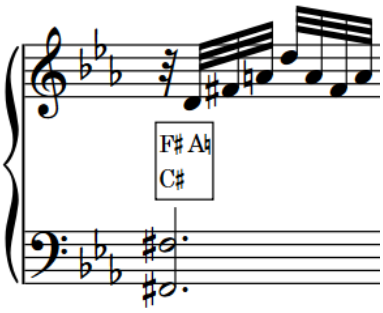
RESULT

Partial harp pedaling is allowed for the selected note name harp pedal diagrams when the checkbox is activated, and disallowed when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Harp pedal diagram showing all pedals



Partial harp pedal diagram

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts on page 677
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 283
Changing the property scope on page 128

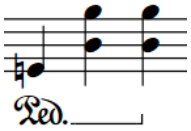
Pedal lines

Pedal lines indicate to performers which piano pedals to use, and can also give performance instructions, such as how far down to depress the pedals and when to lift the pedal to clear the resonance.

Most pianos have either two or three pedals. These pedals are:

Sustain pedal

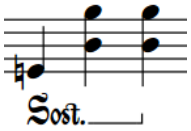
The sustain pedal controls the dampers on the piano strings, which is why it is also known as the “damper pedal”. It is also the most commonly used pedal. Depressing the sustain pedal removes the dampers, allowing the strings to resonate longer. Sustain pedals are usually on the right.



An example sustain pedal line

Sostenuto pedal

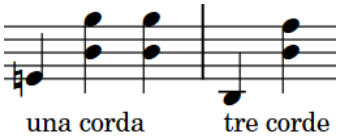
The *sostenuto* pedal only allows the strings of the notes currently depressed on the keyboard to resonate. It is also known as the “middle pedal” as it is usually in the middle of the other pedals.



An example sostenuto pedal line

Una corda pedal

The *una corda* pedal shifts the action inside the piano so that the hammers hit fewer strings than normal. Historically, this caused hammers only to hit one string, not the usual three, which is where the name comes from. Because this reduces the volume and impact of the sound, it is also known as the “soft pedal”.



An example una corda pedal line

Dorico for iPad offers comprehensive notational and playback support for piano pedal lines. You can create pedaling for the sustain, *sostenuto*, and *una corda* pedals, with support for modern sustain pedaling techniques, including changing the pedal level over the course of a single pedal instruction.

In Dorico for iPad, pedal lines are considered playing techniques because they alter the sound produced by the instrument. Therefore, pedal lines are included in the Playing Techniques panel in Write mode and you can input them using the playing techniques popover. However, pedal lines have additional, unique requirements that do not apply to other playing techniques, such as retakes, pedal level changes, start signs, end signs, and continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273
Pedal lines in playback on page 695
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 690
Text pedal line signs on page 693
Lines on page 710
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes

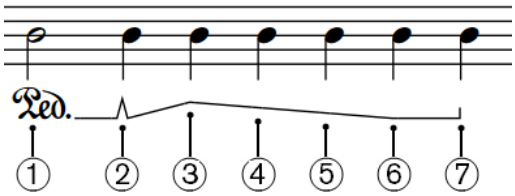
Pedal retakes indicate where a player should lift the sustain pedal, which dampens the piano's strings and clears the resonance, before depressing the pedal again. Pedal level changes indicate a change to how far the pedal is depressed.

Dorico for iPad provides clear representations of pedal retakes and level changes for pedal lines with the line continuation type.

NOTE

- In Dorico for iPad, you cannot input pedal level changes. However, pedal level changes are shown if you import or open a project that contains them, and you can remove them in the same way as removing retakes.
- You can only add pedal retakes to sustain pedal lines.

EXAMPLE



Example pedal line with retake and level changes

1 Ped. glyph

2 Retake

3 One quarter depressed

4 Half depressed

5 Three quarters depressed

6 Fully depressed

7 Line end hook

RELATED LINKS
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 691
Removing retakes and pedal level changes on page 686
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273
Positions of pedal lines on page 687

Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode

When you select sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode, handles appear at the start/end of each pedal line, and on any retakes or pedal level changes on the line. These handles allow you to move each part of the pedal line independently, and to change the pedal levels at the start, end, and at each retake or pedal level change.

A sustain pedal with a retake in Engrave mode

There are two handles for the start of the pedal line, three for retakes and pedal level changes, and three for the end of the pedal line.

NOTE

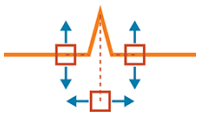
- Pedal levels cannot be lower than **0** or higher than **1**, as shown in properties in either the **Pedal Lines** group or the **Pedal Line Retakes** group of the Properties panel.
  - **1** is fully depressed.
  - **0** is not depressed.
- *Sostenuto* and *una corda* pedal lines only have a single handle at their start/end, which allows you to move their start/end positions graphically, but only horizontally.

Start of sustain pedal lines

There are two handles at the start of pedal lines.

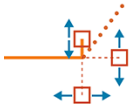
- The left handle moves the start point of the pedal line. You can move this handle to the right/left.
- The right handle changes the start pedal level of the pedal line. You can move this handle upwards/downwards. This changes the angle of the pedal continuation line in relation to the next retake or pedal level change, or the end of the pedal line.

Pedal level changes and retakes



- The left handle changes the pedal level before the retake. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The right handle changes the pedal level after the retake. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The bottom handle corresponds to the position of the pedal level change or retake. You can move this handle to the right/left.

End of sustain pedal lines



- The top handle changes the hook length. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The right handle changes the pedal level at the end of the pedal line. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The bottom handle moves the end point of the pedal line. You can move this handle to the right/left.

RELATED LINKS
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 690
Positions of pedal lines on page 687
Moving items graphically on page 351

Removing retakes and pedal level changes

You can remove pedal retakes and level changes without deleting the sustain pedal line or changing its rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position of the retake or pedal level change you want to remove.

   NOTE

   You can only remove one retake or pedal level change at a time.

2. Remove the retake or pedal level change in any of the following ways:
   - Open the playing techniques popover, enter **nonotch** into the popover, then press **Return**.

     NOTE

     nonotch must be spelled as one word, without a space.

   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Pedal Lines** > **Remove Retake**.

RESULT

The retake or pedal level change at the selected rhythmic position is removed, and the pedal line returns to its previous level as set by either the start of the pedal line, or the retake or pedal level change immediately preceding the one you removed.

RELATED LINKS
Playing techniques popover on page 273
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Positions of pedal lines

The default placement of pedal lines is below the bottom staff, even if there are only notes in the upper staff for the right hand. They are placed outside all other notations, including octave lines, slurs, and articulations.

If one pedal is used, it is placed as close to the bottom of the staff as possible, while remaining outside of all other notations.

If multiple pedals are used simultaneously, they are organized below the bottom of the staff as follows:

1. Sustain pedal: closest to the staff
2. *Sostenuto* pedal: below the sustain pedal line
3. *Una corda* pedal: furthest from the staff

The beginning of the glyph/text that indicates the start position of pedal lines aligns with the note to which it applies. If you are using a line end hook to indicate the end of pedal lines, the hook aligns with the note or rhythmic position to which it applies.

You can move pedal lines to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

NOTE

You cannot move retakes rhythmically. You must remove them and input a new retake at the position you want.

You can move pedal lines graphically in Engrave mode. However, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached. You can move multiple pedal lines together, but only upwards/downwards. Similarly, you can move handles on multiple pedal lines together, but only to the right/left.

RELATED LINKS
Text pedal line signs on page 693
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 690
Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode on page 685
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684
Moving items graphically on page 351
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273

Changing the position of pedal lines relative to grace notes

You can change the start/end positions of individual pedal lines relative to grace notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose position relative to grace notes you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Pedal Lines** group:
   - **Starts before grace notes**
   - **Ends before grace notes**

3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkboxes.

RESULT

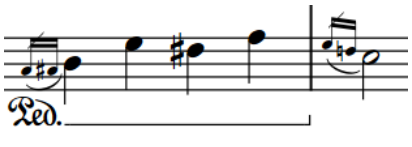
When the checkboxes are activated, the corresponding parts of the selected pedal lines are positioned before grace notes.

When the checkboxes are deactivated, the corresponding parts of the selected pedal lines are positioned after grace notes.

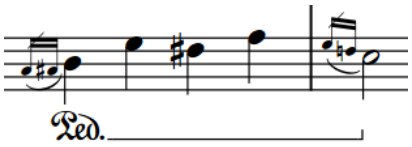
TIP

You can adjust the precise position of pedal lines in further detail in Engrave mode.

EXAMPLE



Pedal line starting/ending before grace notes



Pedal line starting/ending after grace notes

Splitting pedal lines

You can split sustain pedal lines at any rhythmic position with an existing item along their length into two separate pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to sustain pedal lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to split the sustain pedal line. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only split one pedal line at a time.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Pedal Lines** > **Split Pedal Line**.

RESULT

The pedal line on the selected staff is split at the selected rhythmic position.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move, lengthen/shorten, and edit both pedal lines independently.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 690

Text pedal line signs on page 693

Merging pedal lines

You can merge existing sustain pedal lines together, for example, if you want to fill in a gap between two sustain pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to sustain pedal lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the sustain pedal lines on the same staff that you want to merge together. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

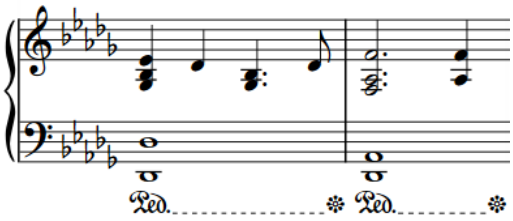
   You can only merge pedal lines on one staff at a time.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Pedal Lines** > **Merge Pedal Lines**.

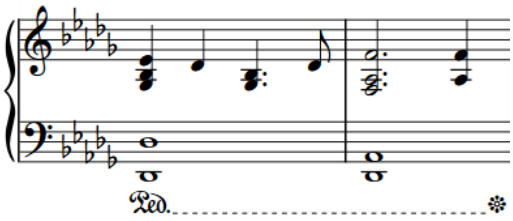
RESULT

The selected pedal lines are merged together into a single pedal line. If there were gaps between them, a continuation line is automatically shown across them.

EXAMPLE



Two separate pedal lines



Two pedal lines merged into one

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input retakes and pedal level changes, for example, if you want to show a retake at the position where previously one of the pedal lines started.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 313
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273

Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines

Pedal lines normally comprise a start sign, a continuation line, and an end hook. This indicates clearly to performers where to depress each type of pedal, how long to keep it depressed, and where to lift it.

In Dorico for iPad, you can change the appearance of each part of pedal lines individually, for example, if you want the start sign of an individual pedal line to show text instead of a glyph.

You can select whole pedal lines in Write mode and change most aspects of their appearance according to the type of pedal line, such as their continuation line or start sign.

For sustain pedals only, you can select each segment of a sustain pedal independently in Engrave mode, and set different properties for each segment. Sustain pedal lines have independent segments on each separate system on which they appear.

RELATED LINKS
Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode on page 685

Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines

You can change the appearance of the start of pedal lines individually. Pedal line start signs can be shown as variations of the traditional pedal line glyph, other symbols, or text.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose start sign appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   The pedal lines you select must be the same type, for example, only sustain pedal lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sign appearance** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the options from the menu.

   The options are different according to the type of pedal line selected.

RESULT

The start sign appearance of the selected pedal lines is changed.

TIP

Deactivating **Sign appearance** returns the selected pedal lines to your default setting for start sign appearance.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you selected a text sign appearance, you can edit the text shown.

RELATED LINKS
Editing pedal line start text on page 694

Changing the type of hook at the start/end of pedal lines

You can change the type of hook shown at the start/end of pedal lines individually.

NOTE

You can only change the start hook type of pedal lines that have a hook as their start sign, and you can only change the end hook type of pedal lines that have a continuation line.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose hook type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Pedal Lines** group:
   - **Line start hook**
   - **Line end hook**
3. Select one of the following options from each menu:
   - **No Hook**
   - **Vertical Hook**
   - **Slant Hook**
   - **Inverse Hook**

RESULT

The hook type at the start/end of the selected pedal lines is changed.

Changing the pedal line continuation type

You can change the continuation type used for individual pedal lines. For example, if you want some pedal lines to show a dashed line and a sign at the end but others to show a line and end hook.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation type** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following continuation types from the menu:
   - **Line**
   - **Sign at End**
   - **Sign at End and Dashed Line**
   - **None**

RESULT

The continuation type of the selected pedal lines is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 690
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 684

Inputting pedal lines and retakes with the popover on page 280

Lengthening/Shortening gaps and dashes in pedal continuation lines

You can change the length of dashes and the gaps between dashes in individual dashed pedal continuation lines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to pedal lines with dashed continuation lines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose dashes you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Pedal Lines** group:
   - **Dash length**
   - **Dash gap length**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Dash length** makes dashes in pedal continuation lines longer, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter.

Increasing **Dash gap length** makes gaps between dashes in pedal continuation lines longer, decreasing the value makes gaps shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the line width of pedal lines

You can change the thickness of continuation lines individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose continuation line thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line width** in the **Pedal Lines** group.

   The value resets to **0** automatically when you first activate the property.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing **Line width** makes pedal continuation lines thicker, decreasing the value makes pedal continuation lines thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Parenthesizing pedal line continuation signs

You can show individual pedal line continuation signs with/without parentheses. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. Pedal line continuation signs are shown by default at the start of new systems when pedal lines continue across system/frame breaks.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation sign appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show continuation sign in parentheses** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Continuation signs are shown with parentheses when the checkbox is activated, and without parentheses when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Text pedal line signs

All types of pedal lines can have text as their start signs, instead of glyphs or hooks. You can override the text shown at the start of pedal lines that have text start signs, you can change the continuation text shown at the start of new systems, and you can override the restorative text shown at the end of *una corda* pedal lines.

Pedal lines that use a text indication rather than a symbol

For pedal lines such as *una corda* or sustain that have text for their start sign, such as **Ped. Text**, rather than the more ornate symbol, you can override the text shown at the start of the pedal line and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

Continuation sign/text

When pedal lines continue onto subsequent systems, a continuation sign/text is shown in parentheses by default. If the pedal line is using text for their start sign, such as **Ped. Text**, rather than a symbol, you can change the text shown at the start of a new system and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

Una corda pedal lines

The equivalent to the final pedal lift for the *una corda* pedal marking is the indication to return to *tre corde*. You can override the *tre corde* text shown at the end of the pedal line and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines on page 690

Editing pedal line start text

You can change the text shown at the start of individual pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose start text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown at the start of the selected pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Text** restores the default start text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines on page 690

Editing pedal line continuation text

You can change the text shown at the start of subsequent systems when pedal lines continue across system/frame breaks.

NOTE

These steps only apply to pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The continuation text shown at the start of subsequent systems for the selected pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Continuation text** restores the default continuation text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

Editing una corda pedal line restorative text

The equivalent to the final pedal lift for *una corda* pedal lines is the indication to return to *tre corde*. You can change the *tre corde* text shown at the end of individual *una corda* pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to *una corda* pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *una corda* pedal lines whose restorative text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Restorative text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The restorative text shown at the ends of the selected *una corda* pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Restorative text** restores the default restorative text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

Pedal lines in playback

Pedal lines are automatically played back in Dorico for iPad.

The three piano pedals send MIDI controllers as follows:

- Sustain pedal lines send MIDI controller 64 (Sustain).
- *Sostenuto* pedal lines send MIDI controller 66 (Sostenuto).
- *Una corda* pedal lines send MIDI controller 67 (Soft Pedal).

Some piano VST instruments, such as Pianoteq and Garritan CFX Concert Grand, support partial depression of the sustain pedal. Consult the manufacturer's documentation for more information.

Pedal lines imported from MusicXML files

Sustain pedal lines can be imported from MusicXML files. MusicXML can only describe the sustain pedal, and it cannot describe changes in pedal depression level.

Playing techniques

The term “playing techniques” covers a wide range of instructions intended to tell performers to modify the sound of the notes they are playing, for example, by changing their embouchure or changing the position of their bow, or by modifying their instrument, such as adding a mute or depressing a pedal.

In Dorico for iPad, there are the following types of playing techniques:

Glyph playing techniques

Playing techniques that display symbols, such as up bow or down bow markings.

Text playing techniques

Playing techniques that display text, such as *pizz.* or *con sordino*.

You can find all available playing techniques in the Playing Techniques panel in Write mode, organized by instrument family. For example, you can find pedal lines in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

Because pedal lines have additional, unique requirements that do not apply to other playing techniques, such as retakes, start signs, and continuation lines, they are documented separately. Pedal lines also have their own group of the Properties panel that is separate from the **Playing Techniques** group.

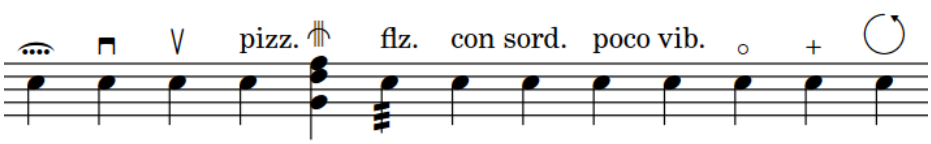
Playing techniques can change how instruments play back. For example, inputting a *pizz.* playing technique on a violin staff activates a key switch that changes the sound produced by the VST instrument. Dorico for iPad uses playback techniques to produce the required sounds in playback for the playing techniques you input, provided your sound library includes the corresponding samples.

Many playing techniques that only appear once in the music nonetheless imply that the playing technique continues. For example, *pizzicato* usually appears once but applies until the next playing technique, such as *arco*. In Dorico for iPad, you can show continuation lines after and between playing techniques to convey clearly to performers the notes to which you want them to apply. You can also group multiple playing techniques together.

Playing technique texts use a plain font, neither bold nor italic, so they are not confused with dynamics and expressive text.

NOTE

Pedal lines use a separate font style to other playing techniques.



Some of the playing techniques in Dorico for iPad

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273
Pedal lines on page 683
String indicators on page 549
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Groups of playing techniques on page 707
Positions of playing techniques on page 700

Adding text to playing techniques

You can add text to playing techniques after they have been input, for example, to clarify the intention of the playing technique. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

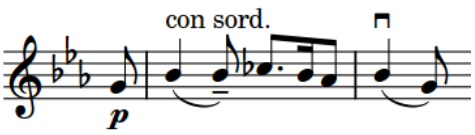
PROCEDURE

1. Select the playing techniques to which you want to add text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Suffix** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

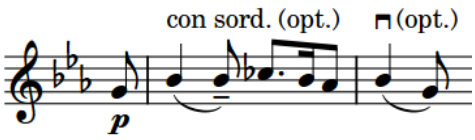
RESULT

The text you entered is added to the selected playing techniques and appears after them. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Playing techniques without suffixes



Suffixes added to playing techniques

RELATED LINKS
Text pedal line signs on page 693
Changing the property scope on page 128

Erasing the background of text playing techniques

You can erase the background of individual text playing techniques, for example, to ensure they remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

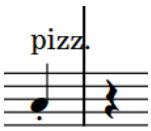
1. In Engrave mode, select the playing techniques whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Playing Techniques** group.

RESULT

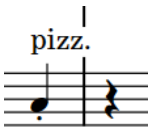
The backgrounds of the selected playing techniques are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected playing techniques to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Text playing technique with non-erased background



Text playing technique with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between playing techniques and each edge of their erased areas.

Changing the erasure padding of text playing techniques

You can change the erasure padding of individual playing techniques, including changing the padding between playing techniques and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text playing techniques whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Playing Techniques** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between playing techniques and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between playing techniques and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between playing techniques and their top edge.

- **B** changes the padding between playing techniques and their bottom edge.

3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Hiding/Showing playing techniques

You can hide/show playing techniques individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the playing techniques you want to hide, or the signposts of playing techniques you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hidden** in the **Playing Techniques** group.

RESULT

The selected playing techniques are hidden when **Hidden** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden playing technique. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show signposts in the **View Options** dialog.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text objects, and time signatures.

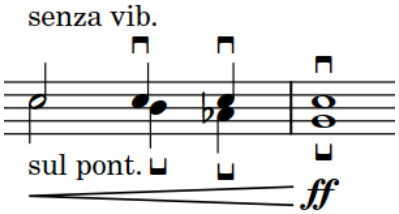
RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 332
View Options dialog on page 120
Changing the property scope on page 128
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 36

Positions of playing techniques

Playing techniques, both as text and symbols, are placed above the staff by default. On vocal staves, they are placed above the staff and below dynamics. In multiple-voice contexts, playing techniques for the up-stem voices are placed above the staff and playing techniques for the down-stem voices are automatically placed below the staff.

Glyph playing techniques are center-aligned on noteheads. Text playing techniques are left-aligned with noteheads.



Placement of playing techniques with two voices on the same staff

You can move playing techniques to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move playing techniques graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each playing technique continuation line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of playing technique continuation lines.

If playing technique continuation lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

Moving playing techniques with continuation lines moves them both together, including any adjacent playing techniques and continuation lines in the same group. Moving continuation lines or continuation line handles moves the continuation lines independently of the playing technique.

RELATED LINKS
Playing techniques on page 697
Text pedal line signs on page 693
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Playing technique continuation line components on page 704
Groups of playing techniques on page 707
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326

Changing the vertical order of playing techniques

You can change the vertical order of playing techniques when multiple playing techniques exist at the same rhythmic position. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, glyph playing techniques are placed closer to the staff than text playing techniques, and playing techniques without lines are placed closer to the staff than playing techniques with lines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing techniques whose vertical order you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tucking index** in the **Playing Techniques** group.

3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The order of the selected playing techniques relative to any other playing techniques at the same rhythmic position, or along their duration, is changed. This also affects other playing techniques in the same groups. Playing techniques with higher **Tucking index** values are placed further from the staff, while playing techniques with lower values are placed closer.

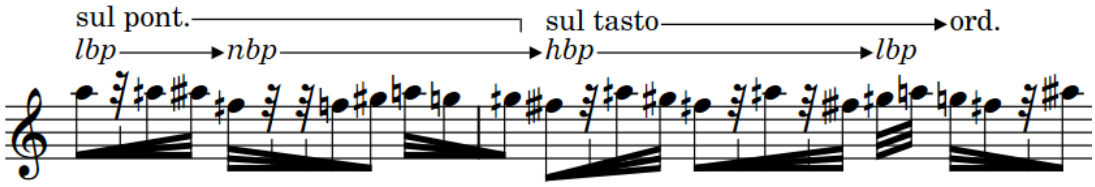
If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Tucking index properties on page 495

Playing technique continuation lines

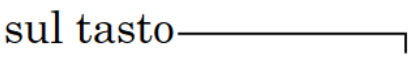
Playing technique continuation lines convey exactly the notes to which playing techniques apply, and can also indicate a gradual transition between playing techniques.



A phrase with multiple playing technique continuation lines

In Dorico for iPad, there are the following types of playing technique continuation lines:

Duration line

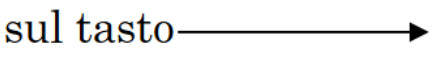


Indicates a specific duration to which the playing technique applies. The duration line for most playing techniques is a solid line with a hook cap at the end.

Playing techniques show duration lines when the following conditions are met:

- The playing technique has duration.
- The continuation type for the playing technique is set to show lines.
- The playing technique is ungrouped or is the final playing technique in a group.

Transition line



Indicates that the playing technique at the start must gradually turn into the playing technique at the end over the duration specified by the line. The transition line for most playing techniques is a solid line with an arrow cap at the end.

Transition lines are automatically shown between playing techniques in groups.

NOTE

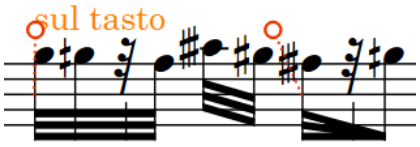
Playing technique continuation lines do not affect playback. The sounds produced in playback rely on the playback technique associated with the playing technique and the audio units loaded in the project.

RELATED LINKS
Positions of playing techniques on page 700
Groups of playing techniques on page 707
Playing technique continuation line components on page 704
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Moving items graphically on page 351
Lines on page 710
Line components on page 712

Playing technique duration

In Dorico for iPad, playing techniques have an explicit duration when they apply to a specific range, rather than from a single rhythmic position onwards. Playing techniques with duration can show continuation lines.

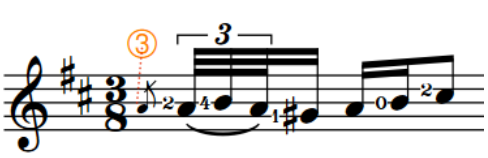
In Write mode, playing techniques with duration have start and end handles that show their duration.



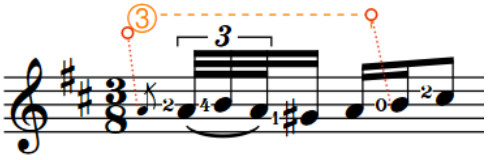
Start and end handles on a playing technique with duration

You can give duration to any playing technique in any of the following ways:

- Group playing techniques together
- Input playing techniques with an open end during note input and extend them
- Add playing techniques to a range of notes
- Lengthen playing techniques



String indicator (selected) with no duration



String indicator (selected) with duration and duration line

NOTE

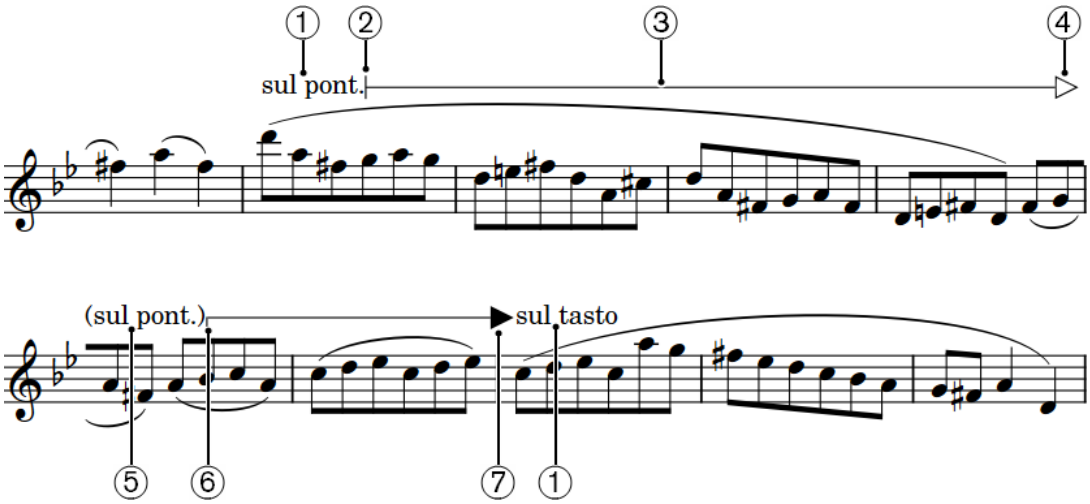
Playing technique duration does not affect playback. The sounds produced in playback rely on the playback technique associated with the playing technique and the audio units loaded in the project.

RELATED LINKS
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines on page 705
Grouping playing techniques together on page 708
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273

Vibrato bar techniques on page 660
String indicators on page 549

Playing technique continuation line components

In Dorico for iPad, playing technique continuation lines consist of multiple components that together function as a single item. The duration line and transition line for the same playing technique can have different default components.



1 Playing technique

Controls the default appearance of the following line.

2 Start cap

Symbol shown at the start of playing technique continuation lines.

3 Line body

Horizontal line, pattern, or wedge that makes up the main part of a playing technique continuation line and extends across its entire length.

4 Continuation end cap

Symbol shown at the end of segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

5 Playing technique continuation sign

Parenthesized reminder of the current playing technique shown at the start of subsequent segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems. You cannot hide playing technique continuation signs independently of the playing technique.

6 Continuation cap

Symbol shown at the start of subsequent segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

7 End cap

Symbol shown at the end of playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines on page 706
Changing the caps of playing technique continuation lines on page 706
Lines on page 710

Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines

You can hide/show duration lines for individual playing techniques. When hiding duration lines, you can show nothing or *sim.*. When showing duration lines, you can show a line or repeat the signs of glyph playing techniques. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to playing technique duration lines. They do not apply to playing technique transition lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The playing techniques whose duration lines you want to hide/show have duration.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques whose duration lines you want to hide/show.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation type** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **None**
   - **sim.**
   - **Line**
   - **Repeat the signs** (glyph playing techniques only)

RESULT

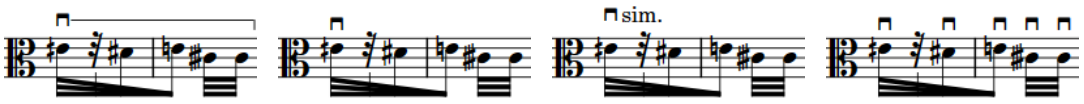
Duration lines are hidden after the selected playing techniques when you select **None**. When you select **sim.**, duration lines are hidden and *sim.* is shown once after each selected playing technique.

Duration lines are shown after the selected playing techniques when you select **Line**.

For glyph playing techniques, the playing technique is repeated for each note within the duration automatically when you select **Repeat the signs**.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Duration line shown | Duration line hidden | Duration line hidden but sim. shown | Signs repeated on each note

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines

You can change the style of individual playing technique duration lines and transition lines, for example, if you want to show a single duration line as a wiggly line. You can change the whole line style, including the caps, or only the body style, which does not affect the caps.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing technique continuation lines whose style you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Playing Techniques** group:
   - To change the whole line style, including caps, activate **Line style**.
   - To change only the body style, excluding caps, activate **Line body style**.
3. Select the style you want from the menu.

RESULT

The corresponding style of the selected playing technique continuation lines is changed.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the caps of individual playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS

Playing technique continuation line components on page 704
Changing the body style of lines on page 720

Changing the caps of playing technique continuation lines

You can change the caps of individual playing technique continuation lines independently of their line body styles. You can also change the caps of individual segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing technique continuation lines whose caps you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Playing Techniques** group:
   - To change the cap at the start of the selected lines, activate **Start cap**.
   - To change the cap at the end of the selected lines, activate **End cap**.
   - To change the cap at the start of segments of the selected lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation cap**.
   - To change the cap at the end of segments of the selected lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation end cap**.
3. Select the style you want from each menu.

RESULT

The corresponding caps of the selected playing technique continuation lines are changed.

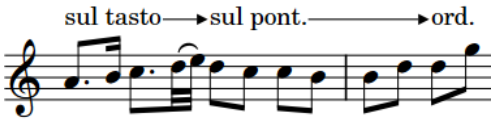
AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the style of individual playing technique continuation lines.

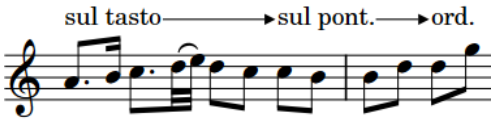
RELATED LINKS
Changing the caps of lines on page 720

Groups of playing techniques

Groups of playing techniques are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group. When you move individual playing techniques within a group, the lengths of any continuation lines on either side automatically adjust to compensate.



A group of playing techniques

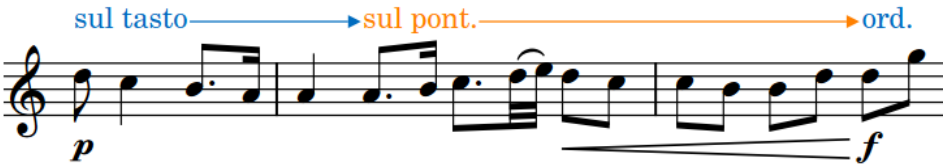


The same group of playing techniques with adjusted transition lines after the middle playing technique moved rhythmically

Two or more playing techniques are automatically grouped together if they are adjoining with duration between them and were added to existing music together or input in sequence during note input.

Transition lines are automatically shown between playing techniques in groups. The final playing technique in playing technique groups can show a duration line if it has duration.

All of the playing techniques in a group are highlighted when any of the playing techniques in the group are selected.



In Engrave mode, you can move each playing technique and continuation line within a group individually. Playing techniques in groups are attached to continuation lines, meaning that if you move a playing technique, any adjacent continuation lines automatically move with it. Groups of playing techniques have a handle at the start of the group, which controls the vertical position of the whole group.

NOTE

- You cannot group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you can only group single playing techniques together or single playing techniques to an existing group.
- Groups of playing techniques apply project-wide, meaning you cannot have playing techniques grouped one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts. However, you can move playing techniques graphically in each layout independently and independently of their groups.

RELATED LINKS
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702

Playing technique duration on page 703
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Grouping playing techniques together

You can manually group playing techniques together that were not automatically grouped when they were input. Grouped playing techniques are automatically aligned in a row, show transition lines between them, and can be moved and edited as a group.

NOTE

You cannot group a playing technique group to another playing technique group. You can only group single playing techniques together or single playing techniques to an existing group.

If you want to group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you must first ungroup them.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques you want to group together.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Playing Techniques** > **Group Playing Techniques**.

RESULT

The selected playing techniques are grouped together. Their durations are extended to reach the next playing technique in the group, and transition lines are shown between playing techniques in the group.

RELATED LINKS

Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Ungrouping playing techniques and removing playing techniques from groups

You can ungroup playing techniques so that all playing techniques in the group become ungrouped. You can also remove only selected playing techniques from groups while leaving other playing techniques in the group.

This applies to all layouts in which the playing techniques appear.

PROCEDURE

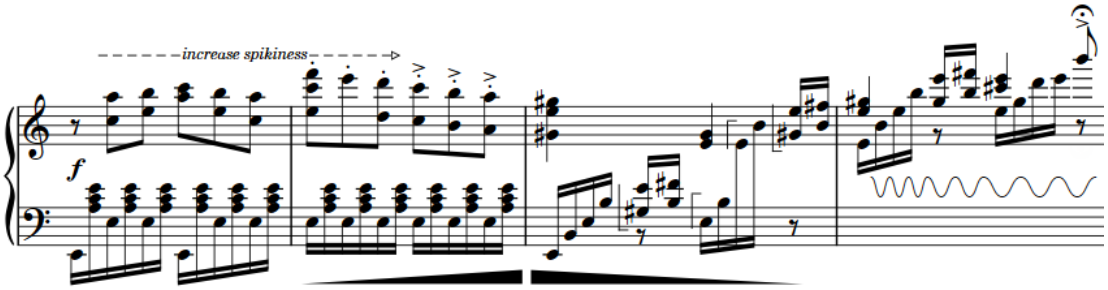
1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques you want to ungroup or remove from groups.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To ungroup all playing techniques in the selected groups, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Playing Techniques** > **Ungroup Playing Techniques**.
   - To remove only the selected playing techniques from their groups, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Playing Techniques** > **Remove Playing Technique from Group**.

RESULT

The selected playing techniques or all playing techniques are removed from the selected groups. Playing techniques that previously had transition lines now appear with duration lines.

Lines

Lines can convey a variety of meanings in music, such as indicating which hand to use in piano music or a gradual change in bow pressure. In Dorico for iPad, lines can be vertical, horizontal, or angled between notes and have different styles and appearances.



A phrase containing horizontal and vertical lines that convey a range of meanings

NOTE

Due to their generic designs, such as a dashed line with arrow end cap, lines in Dorico for iPad have no definitive musical meaning and function primarily graphically, meaning they do not affect playback. Dorico for iPad includes dedicated features for specific notations that affect playback if applicable, such as dynamics, arpeggios, glissandi, and trills.

The following types of lines are available in Dorico for iPad:

Horizontal lines

Horizontal lines span a specified duration, that is, they start at one rhythmic position and end at a later rhythmic position. They might indicate a change over time, such as a wedge that represents bow pressure, or suggest a link between notes, such as a bracket spanning the theme in a fugue or a straight line between notes showing where a melody moves to a different staff.

Attachment types control the positions of horizontal lines and certain aspects of their functionality. Horizontal lines can have different attachment types at their start and end.

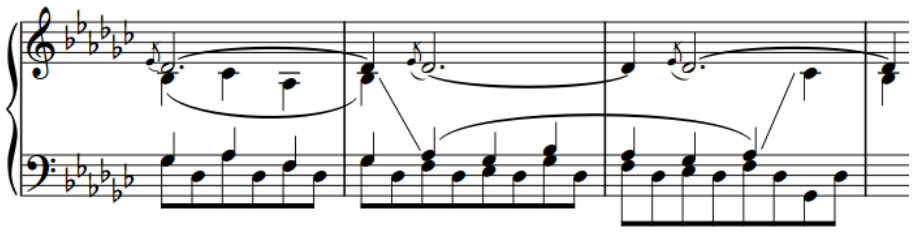
NOTE

You cannot change the attachment type of horizontal lines after they have been input.

In Dorico for iPad, each end of horizontal lines can have the following attachment types:

- **Notehead-attached**

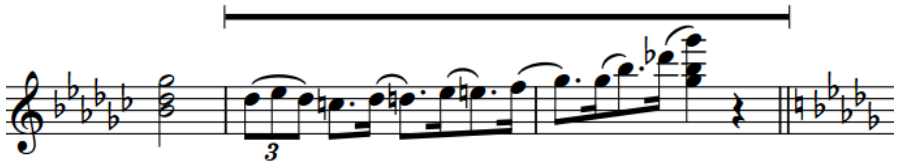
  Attached to an individual note independently of its rhythmic position, meaning that the ends of notehead-attached lines move with notes if you change their pitch or move them rhythmically. Notehead-attached lines can be both angled or horizontal, as their end positions and resulting angles are determined by the interval between the start and end notes.



A phrase containing two notehead-attached lines, showing where the melody moves between piano staves

- **Barline-attached**

  Attached to a rhythmic position and aligned with barlines, if their rhythmic positions coincide with barline positions. Barline-attached lines are always horizontal.

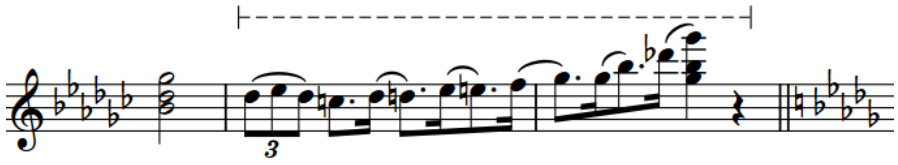


A barline-attached line spanning two full bars

- **Rhythmic position-attached**

  Attached to a rhythmic position and positioned relative to notes, chords, or rests at those rhythmic positions.

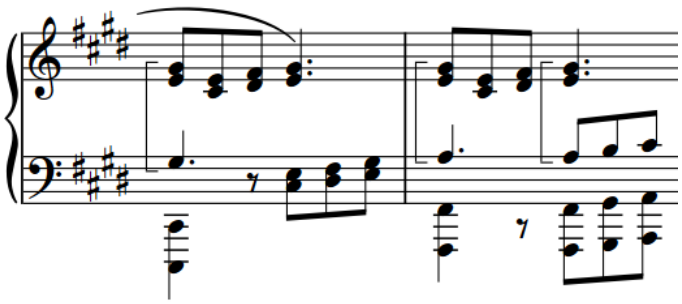
  Rhythmic position-attached lines are horizontal and placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints start to the left and end to the right of notes, chords, or rests at the corresponding rhythmic positions.



A rhythmic position-attached line spanning two full bars

Vertical lines

Vertical lines exist at a single rhythmic position and are positioned relative to notes, chords or rests at that position. They might convey details about a specific moment, such as indicating which hand to use for specific notes in piano music.



Vertical lines indicating which notes to play with the right hand

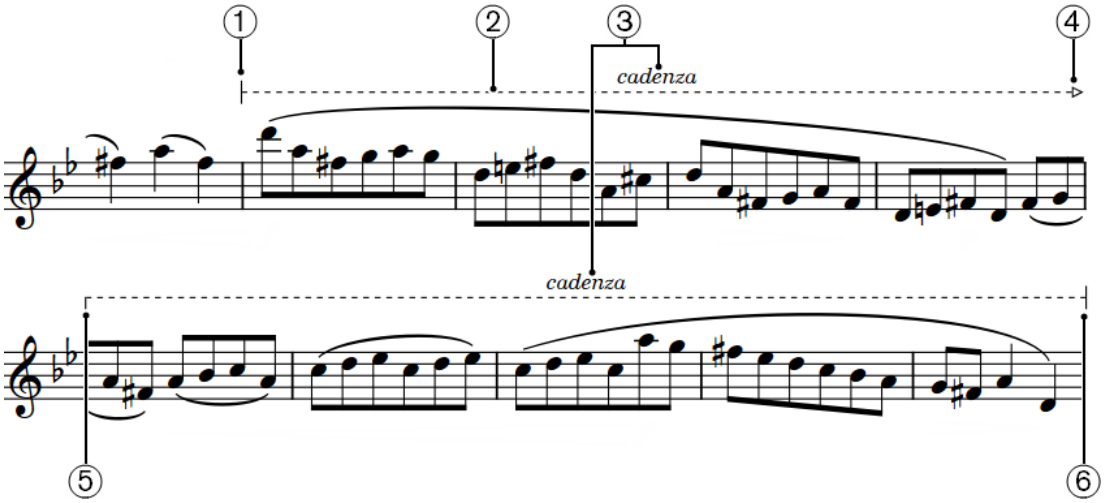
RELATED LINKS

Input methods for lines on page 286

Lines panel on page 286
Adding text to lines on page 722
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 715
Arpeggio signs on page 633
Glissando lines on page 639
Octave lines on page 493
Trills on page 621
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702
Pedal lines on page 683
Repeat endings on page 738
Guitar bends on page 644
Tuplet brackets on page 878

Line components

In Dorico for iPad, lines consist of multiple components that together function as a single item.



1 Start cap

Symbol shown at the start of lines. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

2 Line body

Horizontal or vertical line, repeating symbols, dash/dot pattern, or wedge that makes up the main part of a line and extends across its entire length or height.

3 Text

Text shown in addition to caps, either centered in the middle of each line segment or only at the start or end of lines. On vertical lines, text reads upwards by default.

4 Continuation end cap

Symbol shown at the end of segments of lines that continue across multiple systems. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

5 Continuation cap

Symbol shown at the start of subsequent segments of lines that continue across multiple systems. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

6 End cap

Symbol shown at the end of lines. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

NOTE

Dorico Pro provides further options for customizing lines and line components, such as using text for caps and music symbols for annotations in the center of lines. You might encounter lines with different components than are available in Dorico for iPad if you import or open a project that contains them.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the body style of lines on page 720
Changing the caps of lines on page 720
Adding text to lines on page 722
Changing the position of text relative to horizontal lines on page 723
Changing the position of text relative to vertical lines on page 723
Playing technique continuation lines on page 702

Positions of lines

The position of lines relative to notes and staves depends on the line type and, for horizontal lines, their attachment type.

Notehead-attached horizontal lines

Notehead-attached lines are positioned in relation to the corresponding noteheads, that is, starting to the right of the start note and ending to the left of the end note. They automatically follow the notes at each end, meaning if you change the pitch of either note or move them rhythmically, the line end positions move accordingly. Because their positions depend on the pitches of notes, they can appear both inside and outside the staff. If they are only attached to noteheads at one end, they remain horizontal but follow the staff position of the note to which they are attached.

Barline-attached horizontal lines

Barline-attached horizontal lines are placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints align with barlines if their duration coincides with barline positions. If their endpoints do not coincide with barlines, they are positioned like rhythmic position-attached lines.

Rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines

Rhythmic position-attached lines are placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints start to the left and end to the right of notes, chords, or rests at the corresponding rhythmic positions.

Vertical lines

Vertical lines are positioned to the left of the notes to which they apply, including any applicable accidentals, but are positioned between grace notes and normal notes. If multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position, the most recent line is positioned furthest to the right, that is, directly to the left of notes, chords or rests.

You can change the position/placement of lines in a variety of ways, such as showing vertical lines on the right of notes or changing the placement of horizontal lines to show them inside the staff.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines on page 714
Showing vertical lines before grace notes on page 715
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 715
Moving items graphically on page 351

Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes

You can change the side of notes on which vertical lines appear, for example, to show selected vertical lines on the right side of notes.

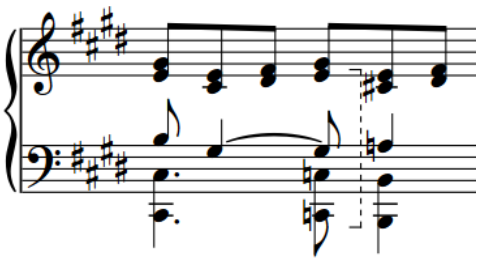
PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose horizontal position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Side** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**
   - **Right**

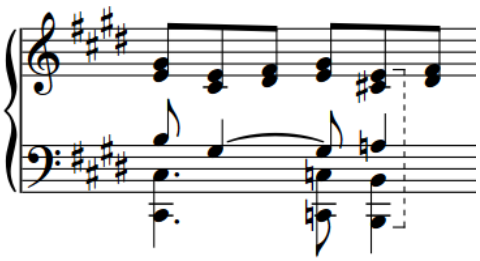
RESULT

The selected lines appear on the corresponding side of notes.

EXAMPLE



Vertical line on the left of notes



Vertical line on the right of notes

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the order of vertical lines when multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position and on the same side of notes.

Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines

You can change the horizontal order of vertical lines when multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position and on the same side of notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Column** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The order of the selected vertical lines relative to any other vertical lines at the same rhythmic positions is changed. Lines with higher **Column** values are placed further to the left, while lines with lower values are placed further to the right.

Showing vertical lines before grace notes

You can position individual vertical lines so they appear to the left of grace notes. By default, vertical lines are positioned after grace notes, that is, between grace notes and normal notes.

PROCEDURE

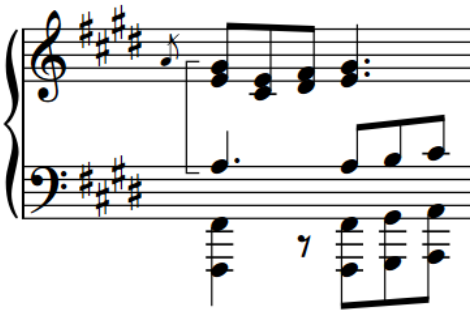
1. Select the vertical lines you want to show before grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line before grace notes** in the **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

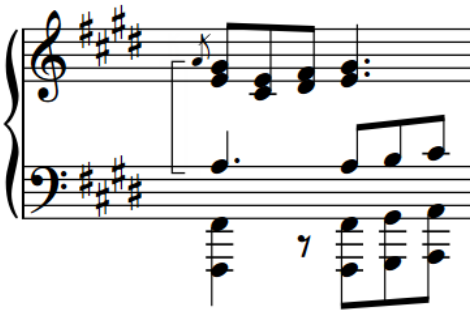
The selected vertical lines are positioned before grace notes.

Deactivating **Line before grace notes** shows the selected vertical lines after grace notes again.

EXAMPLE



Vertical line after grace notes



Vertical line before grace notes

Changing the placement of horizontal lines

You can show individual horizontal lines above, below, or inside the staff. By default, horizontal lines are placed above the staff.

NOTE

These steps only apply to barline-/rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines whose placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**
   - **Inside staff**

RESULT

The placement of the selected horizontal lines is changed. Horizontal lines inside the staff are centered on the middle staff line by default.

TIP

You can also cycle through the different placement options for selected horizontal lines by pressing **F**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the staff position of lines shown inside the staff.
- You can erase the background of text on lines shown inside the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326

Changing the staff position of horizontal lines inside the staff

You can change the staff position of horizontal lines shown inside the staff, including changing the staff position of the start/end of lines independently of each other, for example, if you want lines to appear angled.

PREREQUISITE

The horizontal lines whose staff position you want to change are placed inside the staff and have at least one barline-/rhythmic position-attached end.

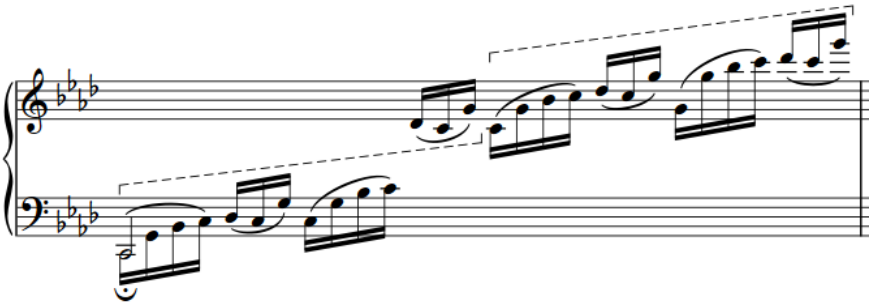
PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines placed inside the staff whose staff position you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Horizontal Lines** group:
   - **Start position**
   - **End position**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The staff positions of the corresponding ends of the selected lines are changed according to the new values. For example, **0** is the middle line of the staff, **4** is the top line of the staff, and **-4** is the bottom line of the staff.

EXAMPLE



Horizontal lines inside the staff with different staff positions at their start/end

Length of lines

Dorico for iPad automatically calculates the appropriate length for both horizontal and vertical lines.

- The length of horizontal lines is determined by the rhythmic duration of the line. Horizontal lines with different attachment types are positioned differently, which can affect their graphical length. For example, barline-attached lines can appear longer than rhythmic position-attached lines with the same duration.
- The length of vertical lines is determined by the pitch range of notes in the voices/staves to which the line applies. Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the length of vertical lines if the pitches of notes in the voices/staves to which the lines apply change, or you add notes to, or delete notes from, chords.

You can lengthen/shorten both horizontal and vertical lines, for example, if you want an individual vertical line to extend above the top note in a chord.

Lengthening/Shortening horizontal lines

You can lengthen/shorten horizontal lines rhythmically after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps only apply to barline-/rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines. You cannot lengthen/shorten notehead-attached horizontal lines, except by lengthening/shortening the notes to which they are attached.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the horizontal lines you want to lengthen/shorten.

   NOTE

   When using the mouse, you can only lengthen/shorten one line at a time.

2. Lengthen/Shorten the lines in any of the following ways:
   - To lengthen them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To snap the end of a single line to the next notehead, press **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.

- To snap the end of a single line to the previous notehead, press **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.

  NOTE

  - When multiple lines are selected, you can only lengthen/shorten them according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.
  - When using the keyboard, lengthening/shortening lines only moves their end. You can move the start of lines by moving lines rhythmically, or by clicking and dragging the start handle of a single line.

- Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

RESULT

Single lines are lengthened/shortened according to the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous notehead, whichever is closer.

Multiple lines are lengthened/shortened according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

TIP

You can move lines graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting horizontal lines on page 287
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines

You can lengthen/shorten individual vertical lines to different staff positions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, vertical lines span the range of all notes in the same voice at the same rhythmic position.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines you want to lengthen/shorten. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Vertical Lines** group:
   - **Top position**
   - **Bottom position**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The vertical length of the selected lines is changed. Increasing the values moves the corresponding end up by staff positions, decreasing the values moves the corresponding end down by staff positions. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can move lines graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 351
Inputting vertical lines on page 288
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the start/end positions of horizontal lines

By default, rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines start before notes/accidentals and end immediately after the last note, chord, or rest at their end rhythmic position. You can change the start and end positions of individual rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines independently, for example, if you want them to start before noteheads rather than accidentals and end immediately before the following note, chord, or rest.

NOTE

These steps only apply to rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines.

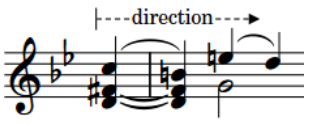
PROCEDURE

1. Select the rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines whose start and/or end position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Horizontal start position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Notehead**
   - **Notehead center**
   - **Accidental**
4. Activate **Horizontal end position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
5. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **End at right-hand side of final note**
   - **End on center of final note**
   - **End immediately before following note**

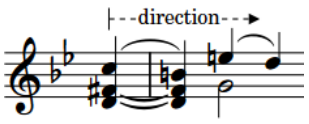
RESULT

The start and/or end position of the selected rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines is changed.

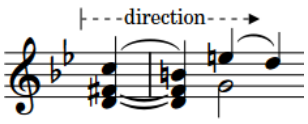
EXAMPLE



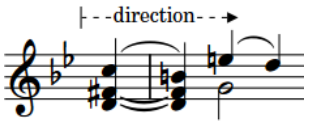
Horizontal line starting before the notehead



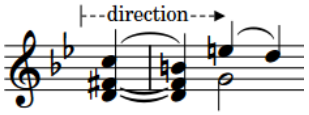
Horizontal line starting centered on the notehead



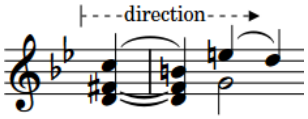
Horizontal line starting before the accidental



Horizontal line ending after final note



Horizontal line ending centered on the final notehead



Horizontal line ending before following note

Changing the body style of lines

You can change the body style of individual lines without changing their caps.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose body style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line body style** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Select the style you want from the menu.

RESULT

The body style of the selected lines is changed.

NOTE

This does not affect the caps of the selected lines.

RELATED LINKS

Line components on page 712
Lines panel on page 286

Changing the caps of lines

You can change the caps of individual lines without changing their body style.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose caps you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group:

   - To change the cap at the start/bottom of the selected lines, activate **Start cap**.
   - To change the cap at the end/top of the selected lines, activate **End cap**.

- To change the segment start cap of the selected horizontal lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation cap**.
- To change the segment end cap of the selected horizontal lines on previous systems to where the lines end, activate **Continuation end cap**.

3. Select the style you want from each menu.

RESULT

The corresponding caps of the selected lines are changed.

NOTE

This does not affect the body style of the selected lines.

Changing the direction of lines

You can change the direction of both horizontal and vertical lines, for example, to make a horizontal line with an arrow end cap point to the left, or to make a vertical line with text appear upside-down with its text reading downwards.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

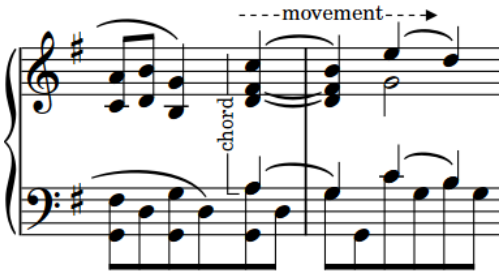
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Reverse** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

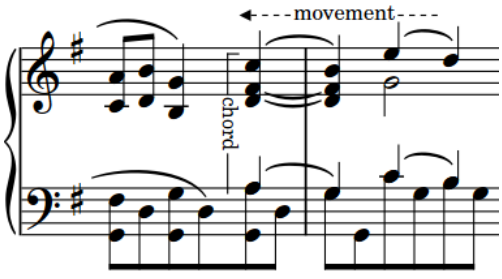
The direction of the selected lines is change. Text on vertical lines now reads downwards.

Deactivating **Reverse** returns the selected lines to their default direction.

EXAMPLE



Horizontal and vertical lines with default directions



Reversed horizontal and vertical lines

Adding text to lines

You can add text to both horizontal and vertical lines, for example, to clarify the intention of the line.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines to which you want to add text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

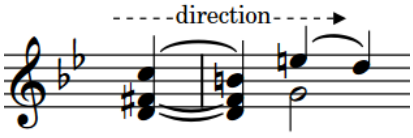
   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

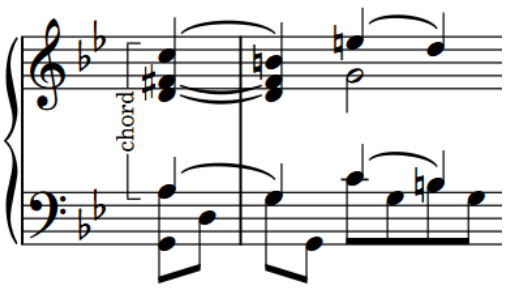
RESULT

The text you entered into the value field is shown centered in the middle of the selected lines. On vertical lines, it reads upwards.

EXAMPLE



Text on a horizontal line



Text on a vertical line

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you want text on vertical lines to read downwards, you can reverse the lines.
- You can erase the backgrounds of text on lines.

RELATED LINKS

Line components on page 712
Input methods for lines on page 286

Changing the position of text relative to horizontal lines

You can change the position of text relative to horizontal lines individually, for example, to show text above horizontal lines. By default, text is centered on horizontal lines.

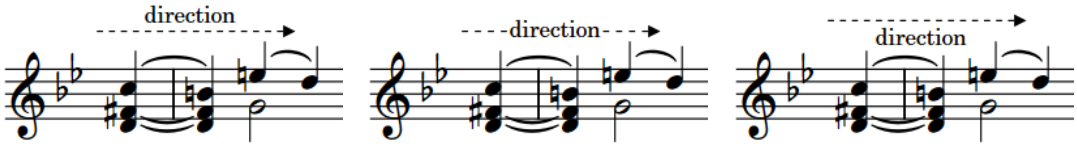
PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines whose text position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Above**
   - **Centered**
   - **Below**
   - **Inside**
   - **Outside**

RESULT

The position of text relative to the selected horizontal lines is changed. When annotations are positioned **Inside** or **Outside**, their position relative to the line changes according to the staff-relative placement of the line.

EXAMPLE



Text **Above** Text **Centered** Text **Below**

RELATED LINKS

Changing the placement of text relative to lines on page 724

Changing the position of text relative to vertical lines

You can change the position of text relative to vertical lines individually, for example, to show text on the left of vertical lines. By default, text is centered on vertical lines.

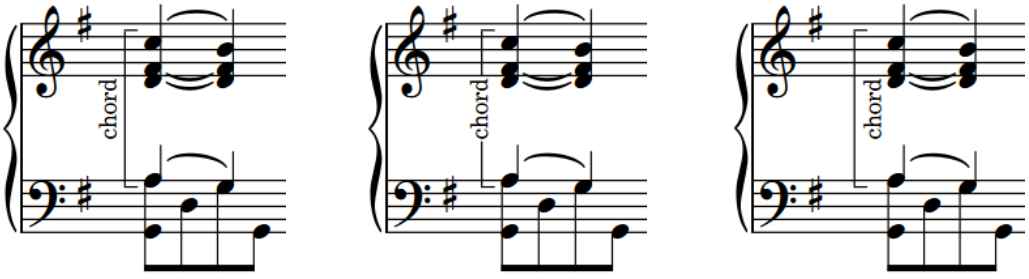
PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose text position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text position** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Left**
   - **Centered**
   - **Right**

RESULT

The position of text relative to the selected vertical lines is changed.

EXAMPLE



Text **Left** Text **Centered** Text **Right**

Changing the placement of text relative to lines

You can change the placement of text relative to lines individually, for example, to show text at the start of horizontal lines or the top of vertical lines. By default, text appears in the center of lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose text placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text placement** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Start**
   - **Center**
   - **End**
4. Optional: If you chose **Start** or **End** and want to change the offset from the corresponding end of the line, activate **Start/end gap** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group and change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The placement of text relative to the selected lines is changed. For vertical lines, **Start** places text at the bottom of the line, **End** places text at the top.

If you also activated **Start/end gap**, the gap between text on the selected lines and the corresponding end is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the direction of lines on page 721

Forcing line text to be horizontal

You can force the text of individual lines always to appear horizontal, for example, to make text on vertical lines easier to read.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose text you want to keep horizontal. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Keep text horizontal** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

Text on the selected lines always appears horizontal, even if the line is angled or vertical.

Adding borders to line text

You can add borders to text shown on individual lines and change the border thickness, for example, if you want to make the boundary of the text relative to the line clear. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text you want to add borders to.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Borders with the corresponding thickness are added to text on the selected lines. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the placement of text relative to lines on page 724
Adding borders to text objects on page 362
Changing the property scope on page 128

Erasing the background of line text

You can erase the background of text shown on individual lines, for example, to ensure they remain legible if they appear inside the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text backgrounds you want to erase.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

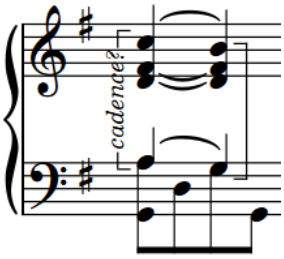
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

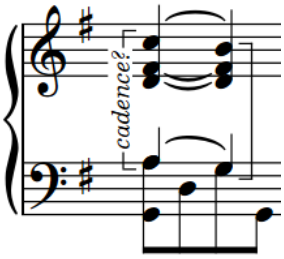
The backgrounds of text on the selected lines are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns text on the selected lines to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Line text with non-erased background



Line text with erased background

Changing the erasure padding of line text

You can change the erasure padding of text on individual lines, including changing the padding between line text and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text erasure padding you want to change.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between line text and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between line text and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between line text and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between line text and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

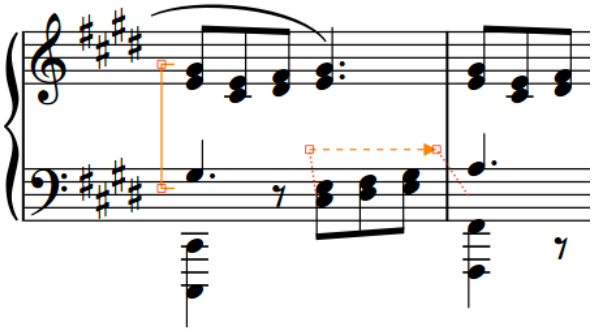
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end of horizontal lines, and one at the top and one at the bottom of vertical lines. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of lines.

You can also move whole individual lines graphically. If horizontal lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.



Handles on a vertical line and horizontal line in Engrave mode

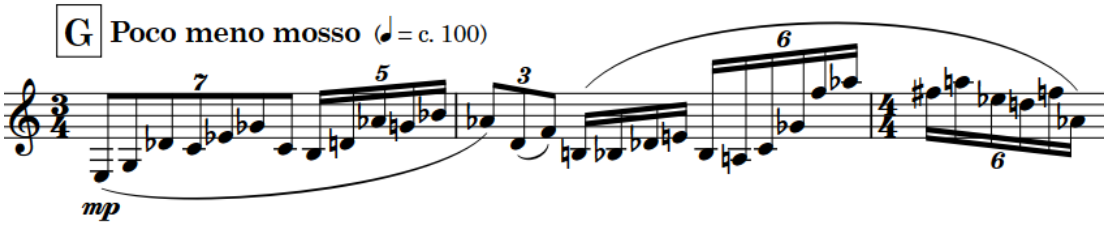
RELATED LINKS

Line components on page 712
Positions of lines on page 713
Lengthening/Shortening horizontal lines on page 717
Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines on page 718
Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes on page 714
Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines on page 714
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 715
Changing the staff position of horizontal lines inside the staff on page 716
Moving items graphically on page 351

Rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are ordered sequences of letters or numbers that provide reference points in music for multiple players, such as indicating significant changes in the music. They allow performers to co-ordinate easily in rehearsals and make the chronological sequence of the music clear.

In Dorico for iPad, rehearsal marks follow an automatic sequence where each rehearsal mark has a unique index, ensuring there are never duplicate rehearsal marks.



A rehearsal mark, showing the letter G

By default, rehearsal marks in Dorico for iPad appear as letters, but you can change the sequence type to show letters, numbers, or bar numbers. You can use all three available rehearsal mark sequences simultaneously.

In order to ensure they are easily noticeable, and cannot be confused with bar numbers when using numbers for rehearsal marks, rehearsal marks are shown in a rectangular enclosure.

In Dorico for iPad, rehearsal marks are categorized as system objects. Therefore, rehearsal marks follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects, which you can change on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rehearsal marks on page 299
Changing the index of rehearsal marks on page 729
Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type on page 730
Layout Options dialog on page 63
System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Tempo marks on page 826
Bar numbers on page 435

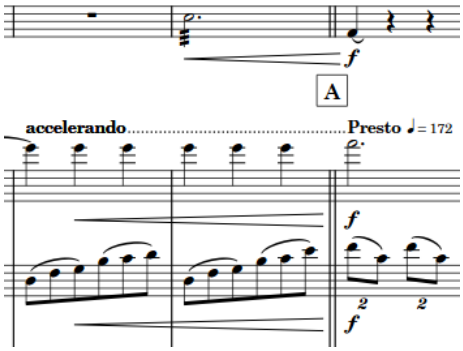
Positions of rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are placed outside the music, above the staff, and at the same positions as other system objects so they can be seen easily.

By default, rehearsal marks are positioned above barlines and to the right of clefs or key signatures at the start of systems. Although you can input rehearsal marks at rhythmic positions within a bar in Dorico for iPad, this is not common practice.

When rehearsal marks coincide with tempo changes, Dorico for iPad automatically positions tempo marks to the right of rehearsal marks. Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts staff spacing to ensure rehearsal marks are correctly positioned.

You can move rehearsal marks to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.



The vertical spacing between the top two staves is increased to allow room for the rehearsal mark and the tempo marks.

You can move rehearsal marks graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Rehearsal marks are categorized as system objects in Dorico for iPad, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently, for example, if you want rehearsal marks to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rehearsal marks on page 299
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Moving items graphically on page 351

Changing the index of rehearsal marks

By default, the rehearsal mark sequence resets at the start of each flow. If you want the rehearsal mark sequence to continue across flows, for example, to avoid having multiple rehearsal marks with the same letter in the same project, you can change the index position of individual rehearsal marks.

Changing the index position changes the shown number or letter. For example, index position 1 appears as rehearsal mark A or 1, position 2 appears as B or 2, and so on.

You can also change the index position of a rehearsal mark to avoid showing a letter that could easily be confused with another letter or another number, such as I or O.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to rehearsal marks using the bar number sequence type.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rehearsal mark whose index position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Index** in the **Rehearsal Marks** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The selected rehearsal mark changes according to the **Index** value and its sequence type.

Any subsequent rehearsal marks without index changes in the same sequence follow the new index automatically. For example, if you changed a rehearsal mark from A to P, the next rehearsal mark changes from B to Q.

TIP

You can also change the sequence type of rehearsal marks, for example, if you want rehearsal mark C to appear as rehearsal mark 3.

Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type

Rehearsal marks can be letters, numbers, or bar numbers. You can change the sequence type of individual rehearsal marks, and create secondary rehearsal mark sequences.

In Dorico for iPad, you can use all three available rehearsal mark sequences simultaneously. For example, you can have the main sequence of rehearsal marks showing letters, but also have a secondary sequence of numbers to mark different moments, perhaps entry points for a solo line, and also highlight prominent bar numbers within those sections.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rehearsal mark whose sequence type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sequence type** in the **Rehearsal Marks** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Letters**
   - **Numbers**
   - **Bar numbers**

RESULT

The selected rehearsal mark now displays a letter, a number, or the current bar number.

If it is the first rehearsal mark in either the letters sequence or the numbers sequence in the flow, it shows either A or 1. If there are already rehearsal marks in either the letters sequence or the numbers sequence in the flow, it shows the next letter or number according to the index.

NOTE

You can change the index of a rehearsal mark sequence independently of other rehearsal mark sequences. However, you cannot change the index of rehearsal marks using the bar number sequence type.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting rehearsal marks on page 299
Adding bar number changes on page 443

Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks

You can add both prefixes and suffixes to individual rehearsal marks.

PROCEDURE

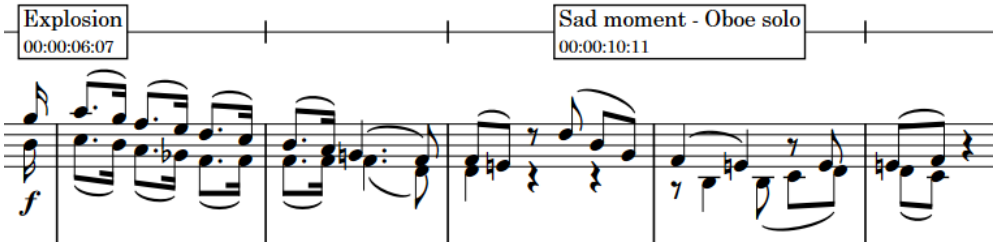
1. Select the rehearsal marks to which you want to add a prefix or suffix. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Rehearsal Marks** group:
   - **Prefix**
   - **Suffix**
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text you entered into the value field is added to the selected rehearsal marks as a prefix or a suffix.

Markers

Markers are labels locked to a particular position in time, most commonly in relation to a video. They typically indicate an important moment that requires musical prominence, and composers often use them to help shape the writing process.



Markers on a timecode staff showing custom text and timecodes

By default, markers in Dorico for iPad show the default text “Marker” and also include the timecode of their fixed position in time.

You can show markers above/below the start of each system or below the timecode staff, if there is one, in each layout independently.

Any markers you input are automatically included when you export MIDI.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting markers/timecodes on page 300
Editing marker text on page 734
Timecodes on page 735

Hiding/Showing markers

By default, markers are shown in full score layouts and hidden in part layouts. You can hide and show markers in each layout independently, for example, if markers are helpful for the conductor to see but not for the players.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show markers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Markers and Timecode** in the category list.
4. Activate/Deactivate **Show markers**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Markers are hidden/shown in the selected layouts.

Changing the vertical position of markers

You can show markers above the system, below the system, or on a separate single-line timecode staff above a selected bracketed instrument family group, which can make them clearer in the score. When markers are shown on a timecode staff, timecodes are also automatically shown below the timecode staff.

NOTE

You cannot show multiple timecode staves in a system.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of markers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Markers and Timecode** in the category list.
4. In the **Markers** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Vertical position**:
   - **Above system**
   - **Below system**
   - **Timecode staff**
5. Optional: If you chose **Timecode staff**, select the bracketed instrument family above which you want to show the timecode staff from the **Position timecode staff above bracket** menu.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical position of markers is changed in the selected layouts.

NOTE

- If you show markers on a timecode staff, timecodes are also shown on the staff by default. If you only want to show markers on a separate staff and exclude timecodes, you must then change **Timecode frequency on timecode staff** to **Never**.

  You can also change the vertical position of timecodes so they appear above/below the start of systems rather than on the timecode staff.
- You can change the default distance between the timecode staff and other staves on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the frequency of timecodes on the timecode staff.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the vertical position of timecodes on page 735
Changing the timecode frequency on page 736
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Editing marker text

The default text shown in new markers is “Marker”. You can change the text shown in each marker individually.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the markers whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Marker text** in the **Markers** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected markers is changed.

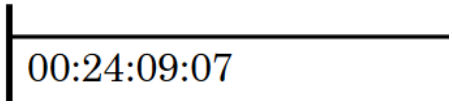
TIP

You can also enter custom text for markers when inputting them using the **Add Marker** dialog.

Timecodes

Timecodes indicate an exact position in time, usually in the context of a video. They allow precise synchronization between multiple elements, such as music and moving images, and can be used as a reference tool.

Timecodes are displayed in the format hh:mm:ss:ff, which is two-digit hours, minutes, seconds, and frames.



A timecode on a timecode staff

By default, timecodes appear in markers. You can show markers above/below the start of each system or below the timecode staff, if there is one, in each layout independently.

Additionally, you can change the time displayed in the mini transport in the toolbar to be the timecode rather than elapsed time, which is shown by default.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the timecode frequency on page 736
Markers on page 732
Hiding/Showing markers on page 732
Changing the vertical position of markers on page 733
Changing the vertical position of timecodes on page 735

Changing the vertical position of timecodes

You can show timecodes either above/below the start of systems or on a separate single-line staff, for example, if you might want to show timecodes above the start of systems in part layouts without showing markers or a separate timecode staff.

NOTE

You cannot show timecodes on multiple staves in a system.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to show timecodes on a separate staff, you have changed the vertical position of markers so they appear on a separate staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of timecodes.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Markers and Timecode** in the category list.
4. In the **Timecode** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Show timecode**:
   - **Above or below start of system**
   - **Below timecode staff**
5. If you chose **Above or below start of system**, choose one of the following options for **Timecode position relative to system**:
   - **Above system**
   - **Below system**
6. Optional: If you chose **Above or below start of system**, change the gap between timecodes and the staff by changing the values in the **Offset at start of system** value fields.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical position of timecodes is changed in the selected layouts.

NOTE

Your setting for **Timecode frequency on timecode staff** also applies when timecodes are shown above/below the start of systems.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the vertical position of markers on page 733
Changing the timecode frequency on page 736

Changing the timecode frequency

You can show timecodes at different intervals in layouts in which timecodes are shown on a separate staff. For example, you can show timecodes every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

NOTE

We do not recommend that you show timecodes every bar in layouts with multi-bar rests, as the result is illegible overlapping timecodes. If you want to show timecodes in part layouts with multi-bar rests, we recommend either showing timecodes only at the start of each system or not showing multi-bar rests in the layout.

PREREQUISITE

Markers are shown in the selected layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the timecode frequency.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Markers and Timecode** in the category list.
4. Optional: If the selected layouts do not show timecodes on a separate staff, choose **Timecode staff** for **Vertical position**.
5. Choose one of the following options for **Timecode frequency on timecode staff**:
   - **Start of system**
   - **Every bar**
   - **Never**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

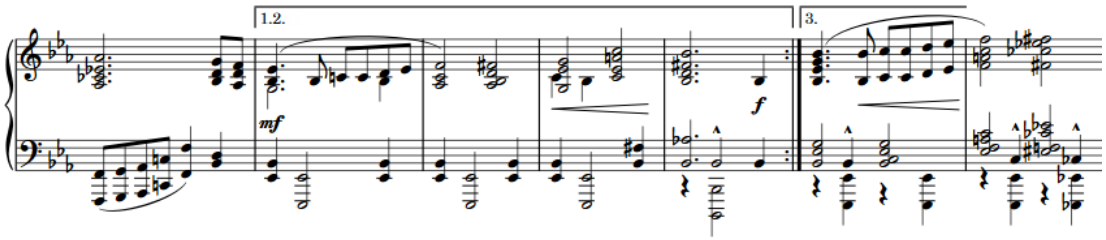
RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing markers on page 732
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 770

Repeat endings

For music with repeated passages, repeat endings show which bars are played at the end of each repetition, with different endings each time if required. They are also known as “volta lines”, or as “first and second endings”, but in this documentation, we refer to them as “repeat endings”.

Repeat endings comprise two or more segments, where each segment contains a different possible ending. When you input repeat endings, Dorico for iPad automatically inputs an end repeat barline at the end of the first segment. Segments in repeat endings are clearly marked with solid lines above and number that indicate the playthroughs in which the segment is used.



A repeat ending with three playthroughs divided across two endings

Dorico for iPad allows you to create repeat endings containing any number of segments, and allows you to control which segments are used for each playthrough. For example, you might want a repeat ending with two segments but four total playthroughs, where the first two playthroughs use the first repeat ending segment and the final two playthroughs use the second repeat ending segment.

In Dorico for iPad, repeat endings are categorized as system objects. Therefore, repeat endings follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects, which you can change on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 300
Dividing playthroughs across repeat ending segments on page 739
Layout Options dialog on page 63
System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Types of barlines on page 429
Lines on page 710

Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings

By default, each segment in repeat endings is played once, so each segment shows a single digit that indicates the playthrough for which it is used. You can increase the total number of playthroughs for repeat endings individually so that segments are played more than once.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat endings whose total number of playthroughs you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **No. times played** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

   NOTE

   You cannot have fewer playthroughs than the number of segments.

RESULT

The total number of playthroughs in the selected repeat endings is changed. Dorico for iPad adds additional playthroughs to the last closed segment in the repeat ending.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

Once you have set the total number of playthroughs, you can then change which segment is used for each playthrough.

Dividing playthroughs across repeat ending segments

You can control how the total number of playthroughs is divided across the different segments in individual repeat endings, for example, if in a repeat ending with six playthroughs, you want to include playthroughs 1 to 3 in the first ending and playthroughs 4 to 6 in the second ending.

PROCEDURE

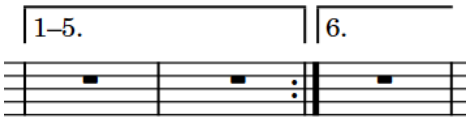
1. In Engrave mode, select an individual segment in the repeat ending structure whose included playthroughs you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Times played for segment** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Enter the number of each playthrough that you want to include in the selected segment.

   For example, for a repeat ending with six playthroughs, enter **4,5,6** to include the 4th, 5th, and 6th playthroughs in the second segment.

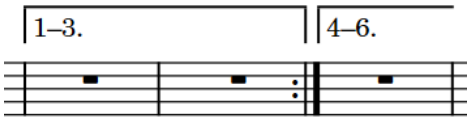
RESULT

The playthroughs included in the selected segment are changed.

EXAMPLE



Default distribution of playthroughs



Customized distribution of playthroughs

Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings

You can increase/decrease the number of bars included in each segment of repeat endings by lengthening/shortening each segment independently.

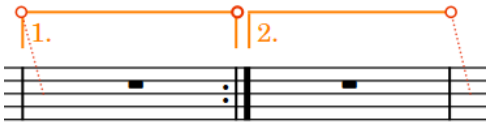
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the repeat ending you want to lengthen/shorten.

NOTE

You can only lengthen/shorten one repeat ending segment at a time.

2. Select the circular handle at the end of the segment you want to lengthen/shorten.



The selected handle in the middle has a thicker line.

3. Click and drag the handle to the right/left to snap it to the next/previous barline.

NOTE

Segments must contain at least one bar.

4. Optional: Repeat steps 1 to 3 for each segment in the repeat ending.

RESULT

The selected segment is lengthened/shortened.

NOTE

- This does not automatically input or move repeat barlines. You must input and delete repeat barlines as appropriate manually.
- You can also lengthen/shorten the final segment in a single repeat ending by selecting the repeat ending and using the following key commands:
  - To lengthen the final segment, press **Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.
  - To shorten the final segment, press **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 219
Deleting notes/items on page 333
Moving items graphically on page 351

Positions of repeat endings

Repeat endings are placed above the staff at the same positions as other system objects, and their hooks align with barlines. They are commonly positioned outside of other notations, but some long items, such as gradual tempo changes, can be placed above repeat endings.

You can move repeat endings to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move each repeat ending segment graphically in Engrave mode and independently of other segments in the repeat ending; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each repeat ending segment has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end.

If repeat ending segments cross system and frame breaks, you can move the segments on each side of the break independently.

Repeat endings are categorized as system objects in Dorico for iPad, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently, for example, if you want repeat endings to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351
System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812

Editing repeat ending text

You can replace the text shown in individual segments in repeat endings with custom text. By default, it shows the playthrough numbers for the segment.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat ending segments whose text you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected segments is changed.

Deactivating **Custom text** restores the default text for the selected repeat ending segments.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

Changing the appearance of individual final repeat ending segments

You can change the appearance of the line ends in the final segments of individual repeat endings.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat endings whose final segment appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   In Engrave mode, you can select any segment in the repeat ending.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **End of line** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:

- **Open, short**
- **Open, full length**
- **Closed**

RESULT

The end of the line of the final segment in the selected repeat endings is changed.

Lengthening/Shortening repeat ending hooks

You can lengthen/shorten the hooks in repeat endings individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot change the hook length of an individual segment in a repeat ending. Changing the hook length affects the whole repeat ending.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat endings whose hooks you want to lengthen/shorten.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hook length** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes repeat ending hooks longer. Decreasing the value makes repeat ending hooks shorter. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

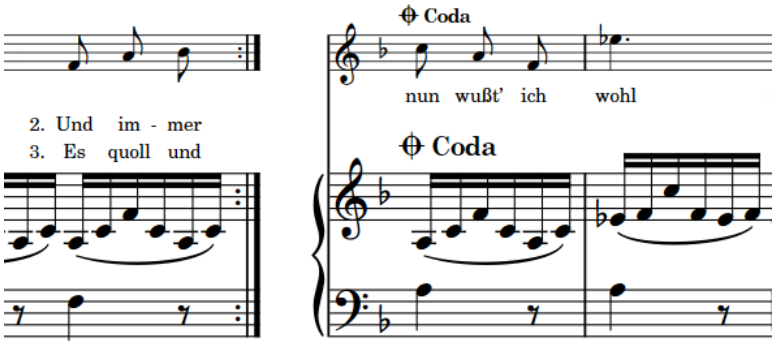
Repeat endings in MusicXML files

All aspects of repeat endings can be imported from and exported in MusicXML files.

However, while MusicXML can represent this, segments in the middle of sets of endings cannot have an open right-hand end in Dorico for iPad.

Repeat markers

Repeat markers show that musical material is to be repeated, but unlike repeat endings, repeat markers often involve jumping to different positions and sections in the music instead of moving through the music consecutively.



In Dorico for iPad, repeat markers are divided into the following types:

Repeat jumps

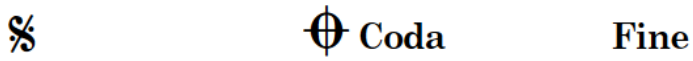
Specify the position from which players or playback must jump, such as *D.C. al Coda*. You can qualify the conditions under which repeat jumps are used, such as "second time only".

Repeat jumps are right-aligned with their rhythmic position, meaning their text or symbol ends at that rhythmic position and extends to the left.

Repeat sections

Specify the destinations for jumps, such as *segno* or *coda*, or where the music should end, such as *Fine*. In Dorico for iPad, coda sections that start mid-system are automatically separated from the preceding music with a gap. Coda sections at the start of systems are indented by the same amount.

Repeat markers are left-aligned with their rhythmic position, meaning their text or symbol starts at that rhythmic position and extends to the right.



By default, repeat markers are shown on a single line, but you can show them on two lines individually to reduce their horizontal length if necessary.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 300
Showing repeat markers on one/two lines on page 745
Types of barlines on page 429

Changing the index for repeat markers

You can change the index of individual repeat markers, for example, if a flow requires two different codas with different symbols so players can tell them apart.

By default, all repeat markers of the same type have the same appearance, even when there are multiple repeat markers in the flow.

NOTE

You cannot change the index of *Fine* or *D.C.* repeat markers.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat marker whose index you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together as appropriate for your selection, in the **Repeat Markers** section:
   - **Marker index**
   - **'Jump to' index**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

   NOTE

   You can only enter values between 1 and 3.

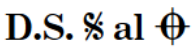
RESULT

Marker index changes the order of the selected repeat marker relative to other repeat markers of the same type.

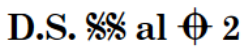
'Jump to' index changes the destination of the selected repeat marker.

EXAMPLE

If you have two codas in a flow with two different D.S. al Coda markers, you might set **Marker index** to **1** for the first coda and **2** for the second, then set **'Jump to' index** to **1** for the first D.S. al Coda marker and **2** for the second.



D.S. al Coda marker with default indexes



D.S. al Coda marker with both indexes set to 2

Editing repeat marker text

You can change the text shown in individual repeat markers, for example, if you are typesetting a score with an unusual repeat marker instruction.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat markers whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected repeat markers is changed. Segno symbols and coda symbols in *D.C.*/*D.S.* repeat jumps are removed and replaced with your custom text.

Showing repeat markers on one/two lines

You can show individual repeat markers either on a single line or spread across two lines independently of your per-layout settings, for example, if a single long repeat marker extends beyond the page margins in one part layout. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You can only change the word wrapping of repeat jumps, such as *D.C. al Fine* and *D.S. al Coda*, that do not have custom text.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat markers whose word wrapping you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Word wrap** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

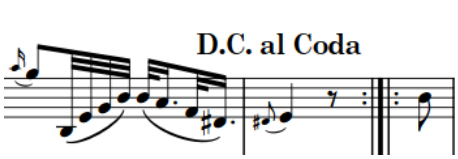
The selected repeat markers are shown on two lines when the checkbox is activated, and on one line when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, repeat markers follow your per-layout setting for word wrapping.

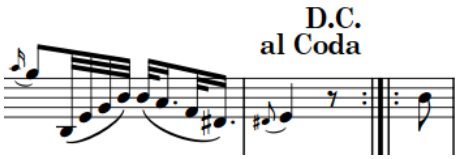
TIP

You can show all repeat markers on two lines in each layout independently in the **Repeat Markers** section of the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**. For example, you can show them on one line in the full score but on two lines in part layouts.

EXAMPLE



Repeat marker without word wrapping



Repeat marker with word wrapping

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Changing the property scope on page 128

Positions of repeat markers

Repeat markers are placed above the staff by default, and at the same positions as other system objects. Coda sections are separated from the preceding music by a gap in the system.

You can move repeat markers to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move repeat markers graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

You can change the default staff-relative placement of repeat markers in each layout independently in the **Repeat Markers** section of the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.

Repeat markers are categorized as system objects in Dorico for iPad, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently, for example, if you want repeat markers to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Changing the staff-relative placement of repeat markers on page 746
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Changing the staff-relative placement of repeat markers

You can show repeat markers either above, below, or both above and below the staff in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff-placement of repeat markers.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Repeat Markers** section, choose one of the following options for **Default placement for repeat jumps and 'Fine'**:
   - **Above staff**
   - **Below staff**
   - **Above and below bottom staff**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

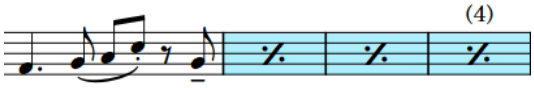
RESULT

The staff-relative placement of all repeat markers is changed in the selected layouts.

Bar repeats

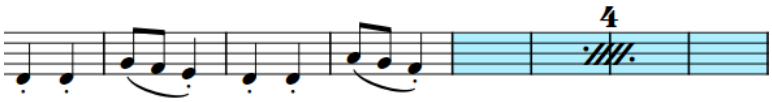
Bar repeats indicate that the musical material in preceding bars must be repeated exactly, but without notating that material again. Bar repeats can comprise groups of one, two, or four bars.

For example, a one-bar repeat indicates that the material in one bar is repeated, meaning every bar in the region repeats the same material. A four-bar repeat indicates that the material in the previous four bars is repeated.



One-bar repeat region

Two-bar repeat region



Four-bar repeat region

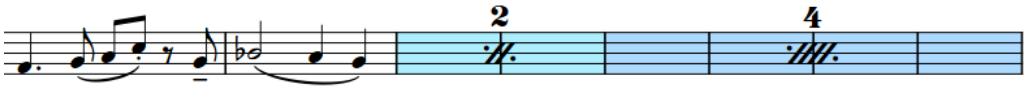
This notation short-hand can make repetitive music easier to read, as performers must only read the repeated phrase once and then simply count how many times they repeat it. Bar repeats can also save horizontal space, as bar repeat symbols are usually narrower than the equivalent fully written-out bars.

In Dorico for iPad, bar repeat regions are used to display bar repeats, meaning as many bar repeat symbols as necessary to fill the region are shown automatically.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.

By default, bar repeat regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide and show them.

You can also show adjacent bar repeat regions, for example, if you want to use a two-bar repeat in the first iteration of a phrase, and then a four-bar repeat to indicate the whole phrase is repeated. When two different bar repeat regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.



Phrase containing two adjacent bar repeat regions

RELATED LINKS

Inputting bar repeats on page 312
Repeats popover on page 301
Bar repeat counts on page 750
Bar repeat grouping on page 752
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337

Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 770
Types of barlines on page 429

Changing the length of the repeated phrase in bar repeat regions

You can change the number of bars that make up the repeated phrase in individual bar repeats after you have input them, for example, if you want the region to repeat the previous two bars rather than the previous four bars.

NOTE

You cannot repeat more bars than exist before the bar repeat region. For example, if a bar repeat region follows the first notated bar in a flow, you cannot increase the number of bars in the repeated phrase.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the bar repeat regions whose phrase length you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **No. bars** menu in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group:
   - **One bar**
   - **Two bars**
   - **Four bars**

RESULT

The number of bars that make up the repeated phrase in the selected bar repeat regions is changed. This is also reflected in playback.

TIP

- Any dynamics you add within bar repeat regions affect the playback of the repeated music.
- You can also change the length of the repeated phrase by opening the repeats popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS

Bar repeat grouping on page 752
Inputting bar repeats on page 312
Repeats popover on page 301
Changing existing items on page 324

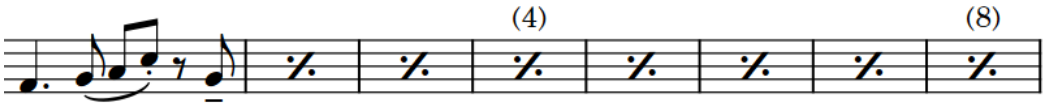
Bar repeat counts

Bar repeat counts are numbers shown at regular intervals either above or below bar repeats, to help players keep track of how many bars have passed. The intervals are usually based on typical musical phrases, such as every four or eight bars.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

Because bar repeats must start with a fully notated phrase of at least one bar, the bar repeat count starts from the notated bar rather than the first bar in the bar repeat region. For example, the third bar in a bar repeat region shows the count number 4, as that bar is the fourth time the original notated bar is played. Each bar repeat region has its own separate count.



Bar repeat region with counts shown every four bars

In Dorico for iPad, you can change the start count of each bar repeat region, how frequently bar repeat counts are shown, and whether they are parenthesized.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the bar repeat count appearance on page 751
Changing the bar repeat count frequency on page 751
Repeats popover on page 301
Inputting bar repeats on page 312
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 437

Changing the start count of bar repeats

You can change the number from which individual bar repeats start, for example, if you want to notate the first bar in a repeated phrase at the start of each system but show a continuous count across multiple bar repeats.

NOTE

- The start count applies to the first bar in the bar repeat, which is the notated bar. For example, changing the start count of a one-bar repeat region lasting three bars to **5**, with bar repeat counts shown every four bars, causes the count at the end of the bar repeat region to show the number 8.
- Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

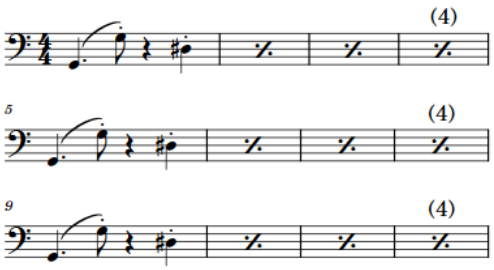
PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeat regions whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

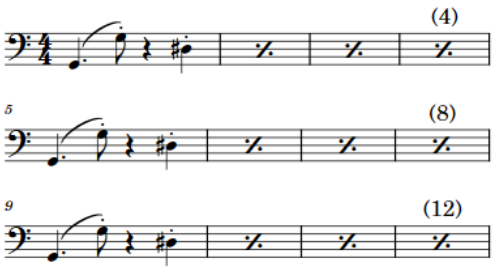
RESULT

The number and position of bar repeat counts on the selected bar repeats is changed. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the second bar in the bar repeat region instead of the third.

EXAMPLE



Separate bar repeats on multiple systems in the same part layout with the default count



Separate bar repeats on multiple systems in the same part layout with their counts changed to imply a continuous region

Changing the bar repeat count frequency

You can change how often counts are shown on individual one-bar repeat regions, for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars on a single bar repeat region.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeats whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected bar repeat regions.

RELATED LINKS

Bar repeat counts on page 750
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 437

Changing the bar repeat count appearance

You can show individual bar repeat counts with or without parentheses, or not show any repeat count at all. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeats whose count appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Parenthesized**
   - **No parentheses**
   - **Don't show**

RESULT

The appearance of counts on the selected bar repeat regions is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

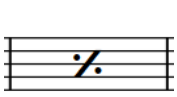
RELATED LINKS

Changing the bar repeat count frequency on page 751
Changing the property scope on page 128

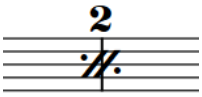
Bar repeat grouping

Bar repeat grouping allows you to condense longer bar repeat regions, which can be helpful in very regular music as it can simplify the overall phrasing.

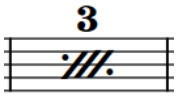
The symbols shown on the staff are different for the different groupings, and two-bar and four-bar repeats also show a number to indicate how many bars are included in the group.



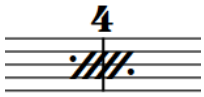
One-bar repeat symbol



Two-bar repeat symbol

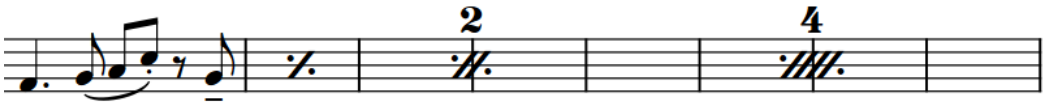


Three-bar repeat symbol



Four-bar repeat symbol

You can specify the grouping when inputting bar repeats, and you can change the grouping of bar repeats after they have been input. Depending on where the bar repeat region starts and ends relative to the written material, Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the displayed symbols to achieve an accurate result. For example, an eight-bar phrase containing a single notated bar followed by seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars is automatically shown with a one-bar repeat, two-bar repeat, then four-bar repeat to fill the seven bars.



Eight-bar phrase with seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 301
Inputting bar repeats on page 312

Changing bar repeat grouping

You can change how bar repeats are grouped after they have been input, for example, if you want to group a region of one-bar repeats every two bars.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the bar repeat regions whose grouping you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Group every** menu in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group:
   - **One bar**
   - **Two bars**
   - **Four bars**

   NOTE

   The options available depend on the minimum length of the selected bar repeat regions. For example, if you select bar repeat regions that last three bars, only **One bar** and **Two bars** are available in the menu.

RESULT

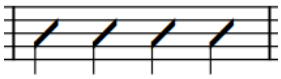
The grouping in the selected bar repeat regions is changed. Dorico for iPad automatically calculates the clearest way to group the region. For example, an eight-bar phrase containing a single notated bar followed by seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars is automatically shown with a one-bar repeat, two-bar repeat, then four-bar repeat to fill the seven bars.

Rhythm slashes

Rhythm slashes are diagonal lines positioned on staves that are used to indicate that performers should play something, but without specifying the exact rhythms and pitches. They are often accompanied by chord symbols to indicate the set of notes the performer should use.

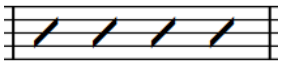
There are two different types of rhythm slashes:

Slashes with stems



Slashes with stems usually indicate the rhythm to be played, but not the pitches. Also known as “rhythmic notation”.

Slashes without stems



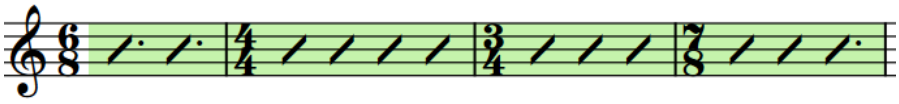
Slashes without stems do not usually indicate either rhythms or pitches. Also known as “slash notation”

In Dorico for iPad, you can present both types of rhythm slashes simultaneously by using a combination of slash regions and slash voices.

RELATED LINKS
Slash voices on page 908
Inputting slash regions on page 311
Inputting notes into slash voices on page 158
Chord symbols on page 472
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474

Slash regions

Slash regions automatically display rhythm slashes as appropriate for the meter throughout their duration, for example, they show four slashes per bar in 4/4 and two slashes per bar in 6/8. A single slash region can extend across multiple different meters.



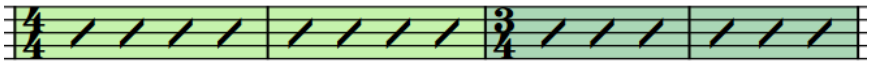
A single slash region covering multiple different meters

Multiple slash regions can exist at the same rhythmic position. When slash regions overlap, Dorico for iPad treats this as a multiple-voice context and changes the staff position of slashes automatically.

By default, slash regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide and show them.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.

When two different slash regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.



Two adjacent slash regions with different highlight colors

You can use slash regions and slash voices in the same project and at the same rhythmic positions, for example, you can input a slash region where you do not want to be specific about the rhythm, then input notes in a slash voice for a single bar where you want to specify an exact rhythm.

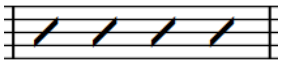
TIP

Because rhythm slashes are often accompanied by chord symbols to indicate the set of notes the performer should use, you can hide/show chord symbols in slash/chord symbol regions on instrument staves where chord symbols are hidden.

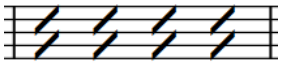
RELATED LINKS
Inputting slash regions on page 311
Slash voices on page 908
Slash region counts on page 759
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 755
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions on page 757
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 474
Chord symbol regions on page 476
Bar repeats on page 748

Slashes in multiple-voice contexts

Multiple slash regions and slash voices can exist at the same rhythmic positions. In multiple-voice contexts for slash voices and when slash regions overlap, Dorico for iPad automatically changes their staff position and offset to accommodate all slashes as legibly as possible.



Single slash region



Two slash regions, one up-stem and one down-stem

You can set default per-flow settings for the position and offset of slashes relative to other slashes at the same rhythmic positions on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.

NOTE

These options affect all rhythm slashes, including notes in slash voices as well as slash regions.

You can also control the positions of rhythm slashes relative to each other manually by changing their stem/voice direction and by changing their staff position.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Note positions in multiple-voice contexts on page 904
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341
Changing the staff position of rhythm slashes on page 756

Changing the voice direction of slash regions

You can change the voice direction of slash regions individually. When multiple slash regions overlap, this affects their stem directions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose voice direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Voice direction** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The voice direction, and therefore stem direction, of the selected slash regions is changed.

NOTE

This only affects the direction of stems in slash regions on the middle line of the staff and when multiple slash regions exist at the same rhythmic position. For example, if you change the voice direction of a slash region on the bottom line of the staff to **Down**, its stem direction does not change if it does not overlap with another slash region.

RELATED LINKS
Stem direction on page 819

Changing the staff position of rhythm slashes

You can change the staff position of rhythm slashes in both slash voices and slash regions, for example, to accommodate other notes at the same rhythmic positions better. By default, rhythm slashes are positioned on the middle line of the staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rhythm slashes whose staff position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
   - For notes in slash voices, you must select every note whose staff position you want to change.
   - For slash regions, you can select any part of each region whose staff position you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slash pos.** in the corresponding group for the type of rhythm slash whose staff position you want to change:

- **Notes and Rests** for notes in slash voices
- **Slash Regions** for slash regions

3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The staff position of the selected rhythm slashes is changed. For example, changing the **Slash pos.** value to **4** positions rhythm slashes on the top line of a five-line staff, while **-4** positions them on the bottom line.

If any of the rhythm slashes have stems, their stem direction is adjusted automatically.

RELATED LINKS

Stem direction on page 819

Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions

You can hide/show notes at the same rhythmic positions as slash regions, for example, if you want to input notes to hear in playback but only want to show the slash region, or if you want to notate suggested notes in addition to the slash region.

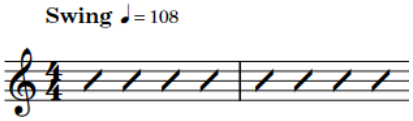
PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region alongside which you want to hide/show other notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show other voices** in the **Slash Regions** group.

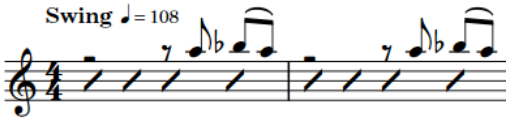
RESULT

All notes in other voices present alongside the selected slash regions are shown when **Show other voices** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Notes hidden alongside a slash region



Notes shown alongside a slash region

RELATED LINKS

Slash regions on page 754
Slash voices on page 908
Inputting slash regions on page 311

Hiding/Showing padding rests before/after slash regions

You can hide/show padding rests before/after slash regions that start partway through bars individually, for example, if you have other notes at those positions and the rests would be

misleading. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

By default, Dorico for iPad automatically shows implicit padding rests around slash regions that start/end partway through bars, so that the full duration of each bar is clear.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose padding rests you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slash Regions** group:
   - **Hide rests before start**
   - **Hide rests after end**

RESULT

Padding rests are hidden on the corresponding side of the selected slash regions. For example, activating both properties hides padding rests both before and after the selected slash regions. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763
Changing the property scope on page 128

Splitting slash regions

You can split slash regions after they have been input, for example, if you later want to input more precise notation in the middle of an existing slash region.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a slash in each slash region you want to split, immediately to the right of where you want to split them.
2. Split the slash regions in any of the following ways:
   - Press **U**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors**  .

RESULT

The slash regions are split immediately to the left of the selected slashes. Each part now has its own start/end handles, which you can use to lengthen/shorten each part independently.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 113
Slash regions on page 754
Changing the slash region count frequency on page 760
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337

Hiding/Showing stems in slash regions

You can hide/show stems and beams, where applicable, on slashes in individual slash regions. By default, slashes in slash regions are shown without stems.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region in which you want to hide/show stems. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slash type** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **With stems**
   - **Without stems**

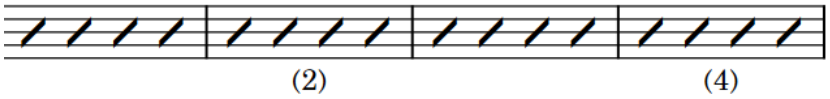
RESULT

Stems are hidden in the selected slash regions when you choose **Without stems**, and shown when you choose **With stems**. If appropriate for the prevailing meter, such as 3/8, beams are shown in addition to stems.

Slash region counts

Slash region counts are numbers shown at regular intervals, either above or below slash regions, to help players keep track of how many bars have passed. The intervals are usually based on typical musical phrases, such as every four or eight bars.

By default, slash region counts are shown every four bars and are placed below the staff. Each slash region has its own separate count.



Slash region with counts shown every two bars

In Dorico for iPad, you can change the start count of each slash region, how frequently slash region counts are shown, their staff-relative placement, and whether they are parenthesized.

RELATED LINKS

Slash regions on page 754

Changing the start count of slash regions

You can change the number from which individual slash region counts start, for example, if you want to input more precise notation between two slash regions but want the count to appear to continue across the regions.

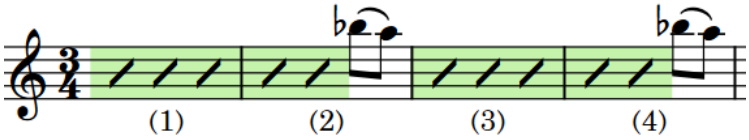
PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The number and position of counts on the selected slash regions is changed. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the third bar in the slash region instead of the fourth.

EXAMPLE



Two separate slash regions, where the start count on the second region has been changed so it appears to continue on from the first region.

Changing the slash region count frequency

You can change how frequently counts are shown on slash regions individually, for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars on a single slash region. By default, slash region counts are shown every four bars.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected slash regions.

RELATED LINKS

Splitting slash regions on page 758

Changing the slash region count appearance

You can show individual slash region counts with or without parentheses, or not show any count at all. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose count appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Parenthesized**
   - **No parentheses**
   - **Don’t show**

RESULT

The appearance of counts on the selected slash regions is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the staff-relative placement of slash region counts

You can show the counts on individual slash regions either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Changing the staff-relative placement of slash region counts affects all counts on the region. You cannot change the placement of a single count independently of other counts on the same slash region.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose count staff-relative placement you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count position** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of all counts on the selected slash regions is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351
Changing the property scope on page 128

Rests

Rests are markings with a rhythmic value that indicate no note is played for that duration. Each note duration has an equivalent rest, for example, a quarter note rest is different to a sixteenth note rest.

All notes and rests within a bar must add up to the duration of the bar, according to the prevailing time signature. Dorico for iPad automatically fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration. Therefore, it is usually not necessary to input rests in Dorico for iPad.

The table shows some examples of notes and the rests with the equivalent rhythmic value.

Duration	Note	Rest
Half		
Quarter		
Eighth		
Sixteenth		

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rests on page 169
Deleting rests on page 766
Inputting notes on page 145
Rests within beams on page 462
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 764
Showing figured bass on rests on page 524

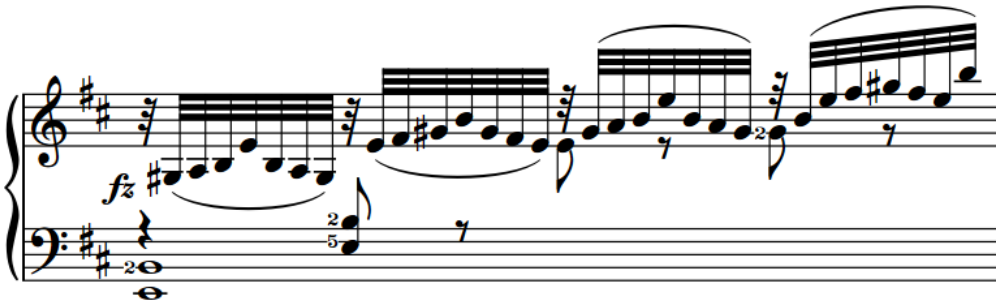
General placement conventions for rests

Rests are positioned at the rhythmic position at the start of their duration, and not in the middle of beats as this can cause confusion over when the rest begins and ends. Rests are aligned with other items at the same rhythmic position.

The only exception is whole bar rests, which are positioned at the visual center of bars. This way, they are clearly distinguishable from half note and whole note rests that are followed by notes in the same bar.

Rests stay within the staff wherever possible. They do not move above or below the staff when the notes around them are very high or very low.

However, on staves with multiple voices, rests are placed higher on the staff, or above the staff, for up-stem voices and lower on the staff, or below the staff, for down-stem voices.



Example rest positions in a multiple-voice context

Rests in multiple voices must not overlap. You can consolidate rests so that only one is shown when multiple voices have a rest of the same duration at the same rhythmic position.

The precise vertical positioning of rests is limited, as their detailed shapes require specific positions relative to staff lines and staff spaces.

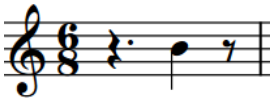
RELATED LINKS
Voices on page 902
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456

Implicit vs. explicit rests

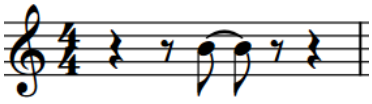
Implicit rests are automatically shown between the notes you input, and their duration automatically follows the time signature and their position in the bar. Explicit rests are rests that are explicitly entered during note input by forcing their duration, or rests that were imported from a MusicXML file.

Dorico for iPad notates implicit rests according to the current time signature, for example, different implicit rests are shown in 6/8 compared to 4/4. This also applies if you later change the time signature for existing notes and rests.

Therefore, it is not necessary to input rests in Dorico for iPad, as implicit rests are automatically shown around the notes that you input. You can turn implicit rests into explicit rests by forcing their duration to be fixed.



A quarter note input at the fourth eighth note of the bar in a 6/8 time signature has a dotted quarter implicit rest at the start of the bar.



A quarter note input at the fourth eighth note of the bar in a 4/4 time signature has two implicit rests, a quarter and an eighth, at the start of the bar.

Explicit rests cannot be suppressed when using the **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** properties to hide rests before the first note in voices and after the last note in voices.

You can show rest colors to see which rests are implicit and which are explicit in your project.

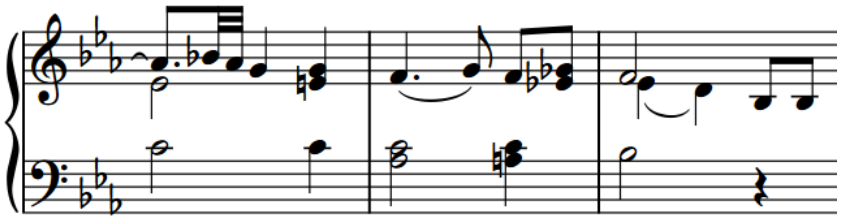
RELATED LINKS
Inputting rests on page 169
Inputting notes on page 145
Deleting rests on page 766
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 153
Turning explicit rests into implicit rests on page 765

Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts

In Dorico for iPad, implicit rests are shown automatically to fill in rhythmic positions around notes, including when there are multiple voices on the staff. However, in these contexts you might want more control over when and where rests are shown.

Usually, rests or notes are shown for whole bars when voices contain at least one note in the bar. This helps make the rhythmic position of every note in all voices in the bar immediately clear.

When there are multiple voices on a staff, implicit rests are shown in every bar in which there are notes of any duration in more than one voice. However, there might be circumstances in which you do not want to show rests either before the first note in a voice or after the last note in a voice when there are multiple voices on the staff. For example, it can be useful to hide rests when a voice is being used to show passing notes within a bar that otherwise contains a single melodic line.



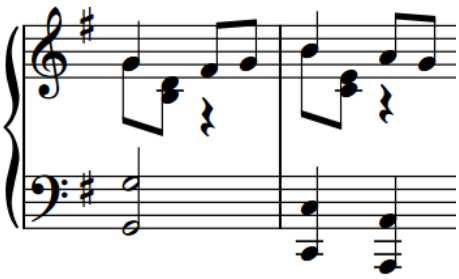
A second voice used to notate passing notes

TIP

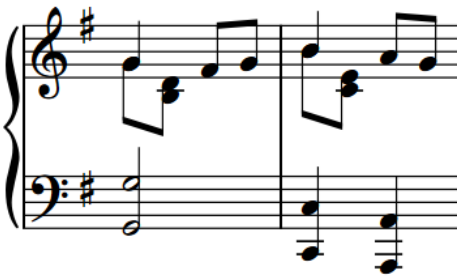
By default, Dorico for iPad consolidates rests when multiple voices have rests of the same duration at the same rhythmic position.

You can show multiple rests at individual rhythmic positions by changing the vertical position of rests. You can also change your per-flow settings for the consolidation of rests in multiple-voice contexts on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

You can hide rests before the first note in voices and after the last note in voices individually by activating properties in the Properties panel. You can show rests that you have hidden by deactivating the corresponding property. You can also delete rests from selected passages.



A phrase with multiple voices showing implicit rests.



The same phrase without implicit rests.

You can choose when rests are shown in a number of different multiple-voice contexts in each flow independently on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Per-flow notation options for rests on page 765
Moving rests vertically on page 765

Turning explicit rests into implicit rests

Implicit rests and explicit rests behave differently. For example, you can hide implicit rests using the Properties panel, but you cannot hide explicit rests or rests with forced durations.

NOTE

You can only hide implicit rests using **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the explicit rests you want to turn into implicit rests.
2. Turn the selected explicit rests into implicit rests in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Delete**.

RELATED LINKS
Deleting rests on page 766

Per-flow notation options for rests

You can find per-flow options controlling how rests are positioned and notated, and when rests are shown, on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can change whether bar rests are shown in additional voices, when dotted rests are permitted, and the default positions of rests in different contexts. You can also change whether rests of the same duration and at the same rhythmic position in different voices are consolidated into a single rest.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Voices on page 902
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 903
Stem direction on page 819

Moving rests vertically

You can change the vertical position of rests individually, for example, if you want to change the staff line from which a whole bar rest hangs, or you want to show rests for all voices at a

particular rhythmic position. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

Moving rests vertically shows multiple rests at that rhythmic position if more than one voice on the staff has a rest of the same duration. By default, Dorico for iPad consolidates rests in multiple-voice contexts and automatically positions rests in multiple-voice contexts to avoid collisions.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to rests in percussion kits.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rests whose vertical positions you want to change, or rests at the rhythmic positions where you want to see rests for every voice. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rest pos.** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value moves rests upwards, decreasing the value moves rests downwards. Position 0 is the middle line of the staff. If there are multiple voices on the staff with rests of the same duration, multiple rests are now shown.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- Deactivating **Rest pos.** returns the selected rests to their default positions.
- You can choose to show all rests in every voice or only show one rest for all voices in the **Rest positioning** section of the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 136
Note spacing on page 393
Changing the property scope on page 128

Deleting rests

You can delete both implicit rests and explicit rests, for example, if you want to hide rests before/after notes in another voice used to show passing notes.

NOTE

- If you want to delete rests because multiple rests of the same duration appear at the same position in multiple-voice contexts, you can choose to consolidate these rests in the **Rest positioning** section of the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.
- You cannot delete rests from unpitched percussion instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the rests you want to delete.

   TIP

   You can select rests individually, or make a larger selection that contains the rests you want to delete.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Remove Rests**.

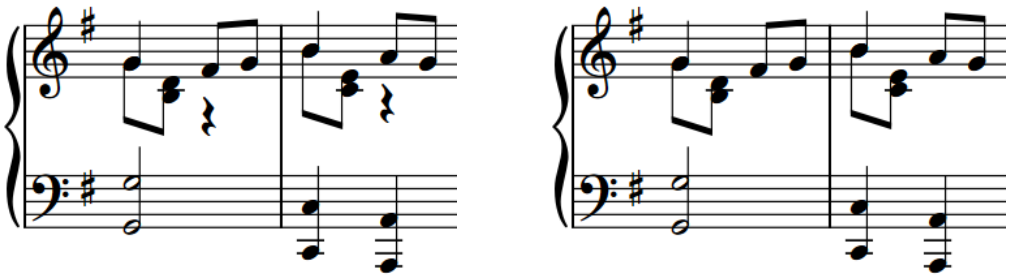
RESULT

All rests in the selection are deleted. This is done by automatically activating **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel so that no rests are shown in the selected regions.

TIP

- You can show rests again later by selecting the notes or rests immediately to the right/left of deleted rests and deactivating the corresponding **Starts voice** or **Ends voice** properties in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.
- You can assign a key command for **Remove Rests** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



A phrase with multiple voices showing implicit rests. The same phrase after deleting the rests.

RELATED LINKS

Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763
Large selections on page 315

Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars

You can hide/show bar rests in empty bars in each layout independently. For example, you can hide bar rests in full score layouts but show bar rests in part layouts.

Bar rests are usually shown in empty bars in music to indicate to performers that they have nothing to play. However, there are contexts in which it is preferable to hide bar rests in empty bars, and instead leave the bar completely empty.

For example, hiding bar rests in empty bars is sometimes the preferred visual aesthetic in large scores, so that it is quicker to identify bars containing music. You can also hide bar rests in

layouts where you want to include other instructions, such as verbal indications for performers to do something other than play notated pitches.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar rests in empty bars.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Bar Rests and Multi-bar Rests** section, activate/deactivate **Show bar rests in empty bars**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

All bar rests in empty bars in the selected layouts are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 770

Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices

You can hide/show bar rests between notes or explicit rests in additional voices on a per-flow basis, for example, you might show bar rests in contrapuntal music to ensure each voice can be easily followed.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show bar rests in additional voices.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple flows.
3. Click **Rests** in the category list.
4. In the **Rests in Additional Voices** section, choose one of the following options for **Bar rests in additional voices**:
   - **Show bar rests**
   - **Omit bar rests**
5. Optional: To show bar rests for each voice in empty bars, in the **Rest Positioning** section, choose **Show every rest in each voice** for **Coincident rests of the same duration in opposing voices**.

6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Bar rests are shown between notes and explicit rests in all voices in the selected flows when you choose **Show bar rests**, and hidden when you choose **Omit bar rests**.

NOTE

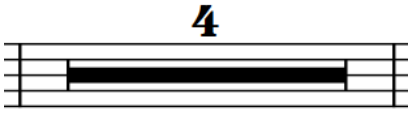
Show bar rests does not automatically show bar rests in empty bars before the first note or explicit rest in additional voices. For additional voices that do not start in the first bar, you must input a bar rest in the first bar manually.

RELATED LINKS

Per-flow notation options for rests on page 765
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 763
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 170

Multi-bar rests

Multi-bar rests group two or more consecutive empty bars together into a single unit, commonly shown with a thick horizontal line positioned on the middle staff line, known as an “H-bar”. They can reduce the horizontal space required by multiple empty bars and make it easier for players to find their place in the music.



A multi-bar rest representing four empty bars

NOTE

Multi-bar rests are automatically split by items positioned within their range, such as system text, rehearsal marks, and holds and pauses. This includes when the items are invisible, except for hidden tempo marks, such as those input in the **Time** track in Play mode. However, if items are positioned at the start of the first bar in a multi-bar rest, that bar remains part of the subsequent multi-bar rest.

You can hide/show multi-bar rests in each layout independently in Dorico for iPad, and you can hide/show bar number ranges below them.

By default, the multi-bar rest bar counts only appear once between the staves of grand staff instruments.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 437

Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests

You can hide/show multi-bar rests in each layout independently, and choose whether bar repeats are consolidated into multi-bar rests. For example, you can hide multi-bar rests in full score layouts but show multi-bar rests in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show multi-bar rests.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Bar Rests and Multi-bar rests** section, choose one of the following options for **Consolidate**:
   - **None**
   - **Multi-bar Rests**
   - **Multi-bar Rests and Bar Repeats**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

- When you choose **None**, no multi-bar rests are shown in the selected layouts. Each empty bar is shown separately.
- When you choose **Multi-bar Rests**, any adjacent empty bars are consolidated into multi-bar rests in the selected layouts. However, bar repeats prevent the consolidation of multi-bar rests, even if there are no other notes in those bars.
- When you choose **Multi-bar Rests and Bar Repeats**, any adjacent empty bars or bars that only contain bar repeats are consolidated into multi-bar rests in the selected layouts. Multi-bar rest counts are also shown above consolidated bar repeats.

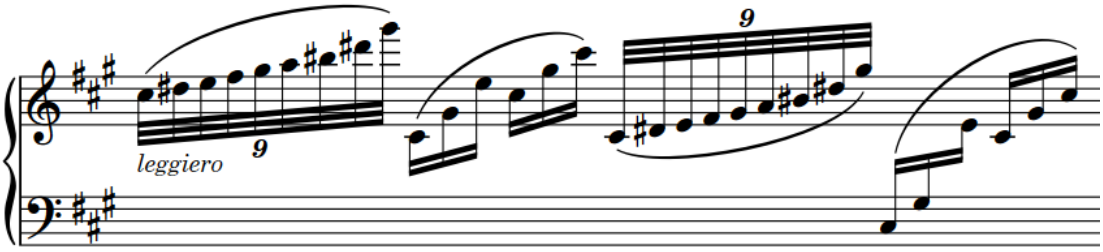
RELATED LINKS

Bar repeats on page 748
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 437

Slurs

Slurs are tapered, curved lines that join notes to indicate legato articulation and phrasing.

Depending on the context and the instrument to which they apply, slurs can have additional meanings to simply marking phrases. For example, for wind players, a slur indicates that all the notes in the phrase are played in the same breath and without re-tonguing or re-articulating any notes. For string players, a slur indicates that all the notes in the phrase are played legato and under one bow. For singers, slurs indicate that more than one note is sung to the same syllable.



Slurs both above and below the staff, including a cross-staff slur

Dorico for iPad automatically determines the appropriate endpoint position and curvature direction for slurs based on the notes within their ranges, but you can change this manually.

You can input any number of nested slurs.

NOTE

Slurs must not be confused with ties, which look superficially similar, but instead join notes of the same pitch to indicate that they are played as a single note. In that sense, ties are part of rhythmic notation, while slurs are considered articulation.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting slurs on page 195
Inputting nested slurs on page 783
Ties vs. slurs on page 841
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 782
Slurs in playback on page 796
Slur endpoint positions on page 774
Slur curvature direction on page 780
Changing the position of slurs relative to tie chains on page 772

General placement conventions for slurs

There are different conventions for the placement, endpoint position, shape, and curvature direction of slurs in various contexts.

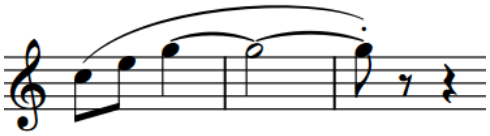
RELATED LINKS
Slur placement relative to grace notes on page 773
Slur position relative to staff lines on page 773
Slur endpoint positions on page 774

Short slurs that cover large pitch ranges on page 776
Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 775
Slur curvature direction on page 780

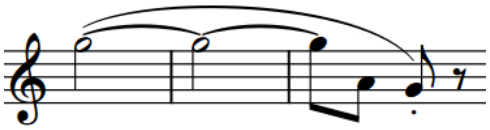
Slur position relative to tie chains

There are different conventions for the position of slurs relative to tie chains in music for modern use and historical editions.

Modern practice is for slurs to start on the first note in tie chains, and end on the last note in tie chains. This makes the full length of the phrase visually clear to the performer, which helps their performance, and is the default in Dorico for iPad.

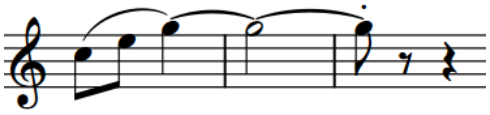


Slur ending on the last note in a tie chain

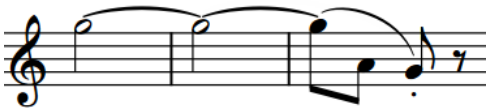


Slur starting from the first note in a tie chain

However, in historical editions, slurs might end on the first note in a tie chain, and start on the last note in a tie chain. Both of these changes save vertical space, as shorter slurs do not extend as far above or below a staff.



Slur ending on the first note in a tie chain



Slur starting on the last note in a tie chain

You can change the position of slurs relative to tie chains.

RELATED LINKS
Slur endpoint positions on page 774

Changing the position of slurs relative to tie chains

You can change the position of individual slurs relative to tie chains, including slurs starting on grace notes, for example, to save vertical space.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose position relative to tie chains you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slurs** group:
   - **Start pos. in tie chain**
   - **End pos. in tie chain**
3. Choose one of the following options for each property:
   - **First note**
   - **Last note**

RESULT

The position of the selected slurs relative to tie chains is changed.

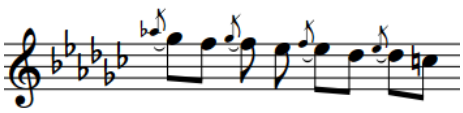
Slur placement relative to grace notes

There are specific placement rules that affect slurs when they start from a grace note and end on a normal note immediately following the grace note.

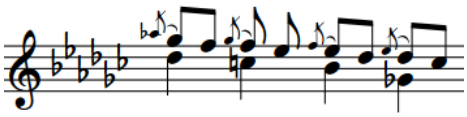
These rules are:

- Slurs connect noteheads rather than stems.
- Slurs are scaled to match the proportions of grace notes.
- Slurs must not obscure ledger lines.
- Slurs are placed above notes if they would collide with the accidental of a standard note when placed below the notes.

Due to the general placement conventions of grace notes, slurs in Dorico for iPad appear below grace notes and curve downwards by default. Slurs starting from grace notes only appear above notes and curve upwards in up-stem voices in multiple-voice contexts.



Slur curvature direction on grace notes in a single-voice context



Slur curvature direction on grace notes in a multiple-voice context

You can change the automatic placement of grace note slurs by changing the stem direction of a grace note, changing the direction of a slur, and using the slur handles in Engrave mode to adjust the position of a slur in finer detail.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the curvature direction of slurs on page 781
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821
General placement conventions for grace notes on page 556
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790

Slur position relative to staff lines

Slur endpoints must not touch staff lines, and the high point of the arcs of slurs should not stop on staff lines.

This is the convention because a slur whose arc peaks on a staff line can create the appearance of a triangular wedge between the staff line and the curve of the slur. If a slur peaks on a staff line, you can adjust its height so that it peaks either above/below the staff.

NOTE

Although Dorico for iPad automatically ensures slur endpoints do not touch staff lines, manual adjustments might be necessary to position the arcs of slurs correctly.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the height of slurs on page 793

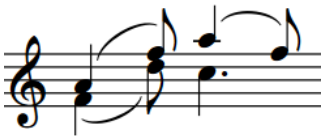
Slur endpoint positions

In order to avoid collisions, the default positions of slur endpoints vary depending on whether slurs are placed on the notehead side or stem side of notes, their position relative to staff lines, and whether articulations, ties, and other slurs exist at the same rhythmic position.

Slur endpoints relative to noteheads and stems

The default position of slur endpoints relative to noteheads is 1/2 space above a notehead in a space on the staff, and 1/4 space above a notehead on a line on the staff.

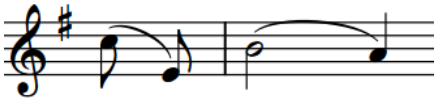
Slurs appear between the stems of unbeamed notes when placed on their stem side, and the default setting is for their endpoints to attach a short distance from the end of the stem.



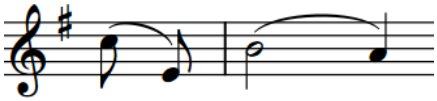
Slurs between the stems of unbeamed notes

Slur endpoints relative to notes with different stem directions

For slurs between notes with different stem directions, Dorico for iPad positions their endpoints close to the notehead by default so that the shape and curvature direction of slurs reflects the rising or descending pitch contour of phrases, including when they span multiple staves.



Slur endpoints near noteheads



Slur endpoints near stem ends

Slur endpoints relative to articulations

By default, articulations of force and stress are placed outside slur endpoints, and articulations of duration are placed inside slur endpoints, which automatically raises the endpoints. For example, accents and stress marks are placed outside the ends of slurs but staccato and tenuto marks are placed inside the ends of slurs.

Slurs are placed outside articulations on notes in the middle of slurs.

Slur endpoints relative to ties and other slurs

The default position of slur endpoints is 1/4 space above an existing slur that starts/ends on the same note.

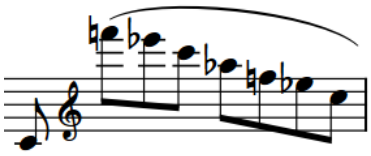
RELATED LINKS
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 782
Stem direction on page 819
Articulations on page 419
Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs on page 423

Slurs over system and frame breaks

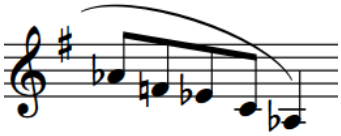
Slurs automatically cross system breaks and frame breaks, appearing in two parts on either side of the break.

By default, the endpoints of slurs that cross system/frame breaks are positioned at least 1/2 space outside the outer staff line and at a suitable position based on the pitch contour of the phrase before/after the break, that is, indicating whether the phrase rises or falls after the break.

If multiple slurs cross the same system break or frame break, such as if a phrase split by a break contains nested slurs, the ends of the slurs are stacked automatically and spaced a minimum of 1/2 space apart vertically.



The end of a system showing the first slur part; the end on the right indicates a continuation to the next system.



The start of the next system showing the second slur part; the end on the left indicates a continuation from the previous system.

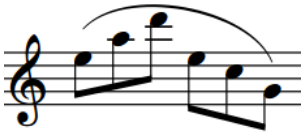
In Engrave mode, you can move and edit each slur part separately. This allows you to adjust the start/end height of each slur part independently on each system.

RELATED LINKS
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Changing the angle of slurs on page 791
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790
Nested slurs on page 782

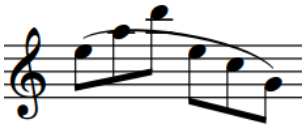
Slur collision avoidance

By default, Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts the shape and position of slurs to avoid collisions with items under their arc.

This means that if a notehead under a slur is either higher than the others under a slur curving upwards, or lower than the others under a slur curving downwards, the curvature of the slur is adjusted to avoid the collision and keep the notehead under the slur. You can manually disable collision avoidance for individual slurs.



Slur with collision avoidance activated (default)



Slur with collision avoidance deactivated

RELATED LINKS
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 782
Accidentals on page 409

Enabling/Disabling slur collision avoidance

You can allow or prevent individual slurs from automatically adjusting to avoid collisions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose collision avoidance you want to enable/disable.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Disable auto curve adjustment** in the **Slurs** group.

RESULT

The selected slurs do not avoid collisions when the property is activated, and avoid collisions when the property is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

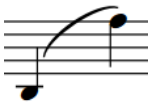
Short slurs that cover large pitch ranges

When short slurs span large pitch ranges, they are significantly rotated to compensate. This can make the ends of short slurs appear too angular.

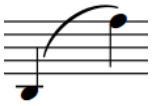
You can move the control point handles of slurs to improve their curves.

Of the three examples, the middle slur has the smoothest curve. The handles on the slur on the right have been moved poorly, making the curve far too angular.

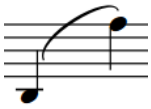
In the bottom row, the positions of the handles are shown to indicate how each curve above was created.



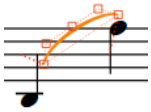
Short slur spanning a large pitch range, without adjustment



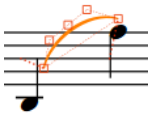
The same slur with some shape adjustment, making the curve smoother



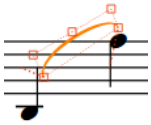
The same slur again with poor adjustment, making the curve too angular



Default slur handle placement



Slur handle placement to create the corresponding slur



Slur handle placement to create the corresponding slur

TIP

When adjusting slur ends, you can achieve the best results using the following guidelines:

- The control point at the lower end of the slur does not extend outside the width of the slur, as marked by its neighboring endpoint.
- The control point at the higher end of the slur does not form an angle greater than 90 degrees relative to the endpoints. You can use the dashed lines to help you judge this.

You can adjust the shape of short slur ends in different ways:

- Individually, by activating **Start handle offset** and **End handle offset** in the Properties panel in Engrave mode, and changing their **X** values.
- Individually, by moving the handles of slurs in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Slur shoulder offset on page 794
Changing the shoulder offset of slurs on page 794
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790

Slur styles

There are different styles of slurs available in Dorico for iPad, which indicate different meanings and have different use cases.

The following options for slur style are available when you activate **Style** in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel:

Solid

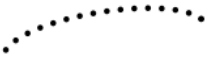
This is the default style for slurs. Slurs appear as tapered solid lines: thinner at the ends and thicker in the middle.

Dashed

Slurs appear as tapered dashed lines. Can be used to indicate an optional slur, for example, to recommend breathing/bowing patterns.

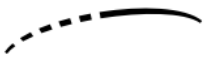
Dotted

Slurs appear as dotted lines. The dots are the same size and the same distance apart over the whole length of the slur.



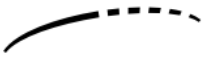
Half-dashed start

The first halves of slurs appear as dashed lines, the second halves as solid lines. Used to denote that a slur was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



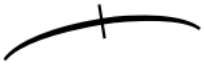
Half-dashed end

The first halves of slurs appear as solid lines, the second halves as dashed lines. Used to denote that a slur was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



Editorial

Slurs appear as solid black lines, but with a smaller vertical line intersecting them exactly halfway along their length, perpendicular to the curve of the slur. Used to show that a slur was added by the editor and was not present in the original source.



Changing the style of slurs

You can change the style of individual slurs after they have been input. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Solid**
   - **Dashed**
   - **Dotted**
   - **Half-dashed start**
   - **Half-dashed end**
   - **Editorial**

RESULT

The style of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the size of dashes/dots in slurs

You can change the length of dashes and the size of dots in dashed/dotted slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to dashed/dotted slurs.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dashed/dotted slurs whose dash length/dot size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Slurs** group:
   - For dashed slurs, activate **Dash length**.
   - For dotted slurs, activate **Dot size**.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashes longer and dots bigger, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter and dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the size of gaps in dashed/dotted slurs

You can change the length of gaps in dashed/dotted slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dashed/dotted slurs whose gap length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Slurs** group:
   - For dashed slurs, activate **Dash gap length**.
   - For dotted slurs, activate **Dot gap length**.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the gaps between dashes/dots larger. Decreasing the values makes the gaps between dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing individual slurs to flat slurs

Although they are not often used as standard, some publishers use flat slurs in order to reduce the vertical space occupied by slurs. You can change individual slurs to flat slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Short slurs, that is, slurs between only a few notes, can look odd as flat slurs, so it may not be appropriate to select the flat curvature style project-wide. However, it would also be unusual only to use flat slurs once or twice in a project. Therefore, we recommend that you avoid changing the curvature style for only one or two slurs in a project.

It can be more effective to modify them rather than changing their curvature style, for example, by making an individual slur thicker/thinner, adjusting the shoulder offset of slurs, or adjusting their height using their slur height handles in Engrave mode.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose curvature style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Curvature type** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Normal (curved)**
   - **Flat**

RESULT

The curvature style of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

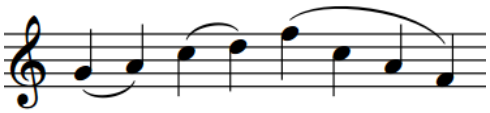
RELATED LINKS

Changing the thickness of slurs on page 792
Changing the height of slurs on page 793
Changing the shoulder offset of slurs on page 794
Changing the property scope on page 128

Slur curvature direction

Slurs can curve upwards, downwards, or have a multi-segment S-shape. Dorico for iPad automatically determines the appropriate curvature direction for slurs based on the notes within their ranges, but you can change the curvature direction of slurs manually.

A slur on a single staff always curves upwards and is placed above the notes, unless all of the notes under the slur are up-stem, in which case it curves downwards and is placed below the notes. If a slur applies to a mixture of up-stem and down-stem notes, it is placed above the staff and curves upwards.



Examples of the slur direction changing according to the stem direction

The following options for slur curvature direction are available when you activate **Direction** in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel:

Up

Forces slurs to curve upwards, and appear above notes.

Down

Forces slurs to curve downwards, and appear below notes.

Up/Down

Forces slurs to comprise two segments: the first curves upwards, the second curves downwards to create a mirrored S-shape. It is typically used when phrases start in the lower staff and end in the upper staff, for example, in piano parts.

Down/Up

Forces slurs to comprise two segments: the first curves downwards, the second curves upwards to create an S-shape. It is typically used when phrases start in the upper staff and end in the lower staff, for example, in piano parts.

TIP

- You can adjust the precise shapes of individual slurs, and each slur segment, in Engrave mode using the square handles on each slur.
- In jazz scores, slurs are sometimes treated as an articulation and so positioning all slurs above the staff is preferred.

RELATED LINKS

Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 775
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 782
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790

Changing the curvature direction of slurs

You can change the curvature direction of individual slurs so that they curve upwards, downwards, or have a multi-segment S-shape. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose curvature direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Direction** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up** 
   - **Down** 
   - **Up/Down**  (mirrored S-shape)
   - **Down/Up** (S-shape)

RESULT

The curvature direction of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

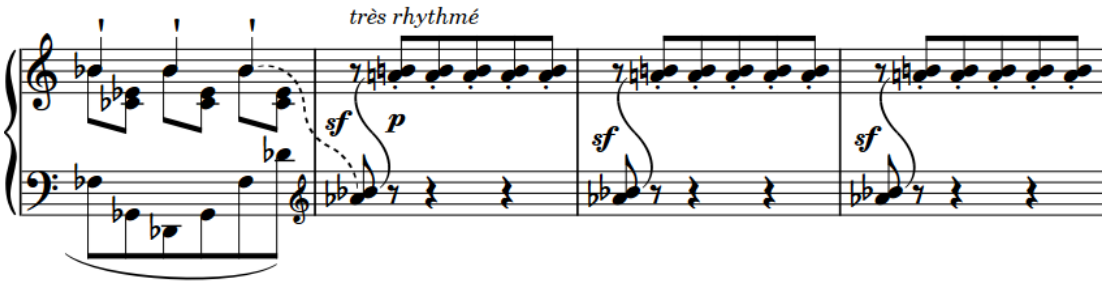
TIP

You can adjust the precise shapes of slurs, and each slur segment, in Engrave mode using the handles on each slur.

RELATED LINKS
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790
Changing the property scope on page 128

Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs

Cross-staff slurs start on one staff and end on another staff, and cross-voice slurs start in one voice and end in another voice.



Cross-staff slurs between two piano staves

Dorico for iPad positions cross-staff and cross-voice slurs in the same way as it positions standard slurs. You can move and lengthen/shorten cross-staff and cross-voice slurs in the same ways as standard slurs; however, they do not behave in the same way. For example, you cannot move cross-voice slurs to notes on the same staff in other voices, and you cannot lengthen cross-voice slurs to notes on the same staff in other voices. You also cannot lengthen/shorten cross-voice slurs to notes in different voices to those in which the slur started/ended.

You can only move and lengthen/shorten cross-staff slurs to notes on the same staff as the corresponding endpoint. For example, if a cross-staff slur covers a phrase that starts on the bottom staff and ends on the upper staff, you can only shorten the cross-staff slur to the first note on the upper staff, you cannot shorten it to any notes on the bottom staff.

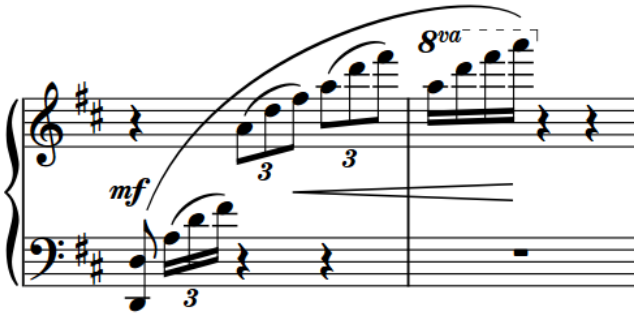
The different voices can be on the same staff, or on different staves.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting slurs on page 195
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Slur collision avoidance on page 775
Slur endpoint positions on page 774
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337

Nested slurs

Nested slurs are two or more slurs used simultaneously, where the overarching slur shows the structure of the phrase and the inner slurs show the articulation within the phrase. They are also known as “slurs within slurs”.

Depending on the stem directions within the overarching outer slur, inner slurs may appear on the opposite side of the staff to the outer slur.



A phrase with nested slurs

You can input nested slurs in the same ways as inputting standard slurs. By default, Dorico for iPad makes automatic adjustments to their positioning to avoid collisions if you have not activated **Disable auto curve adjustment** in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS
Slur collision avoidance on page 775

Inputting nested slurs

You can input nested slurs, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add nested slurs to existing notes on multiple staves at the same time and to notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument, for example, when phrases span both staves of grand staff instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the notes you want to include in the outer slur.

     TIP

     - If you only select a single note, the slur connects that note to the next note in the same voice on the staff. To input slurs between notes in different voices, you must select both notes, for example, by selecting the first note, activating **Add to Selection** in the secondary toolbar, then clicking the second note.
     - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff slurs. However, you cannot create cross-staff slurs between different instruments.
     - You can select notes on multiple staves to input slurs on those staves simultaneously.
2. Input or start the outer slur in any of the following ways:
   - Press **S**.
   - In the Notes panel, click **Slur**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.
3. Input the inner slur in one of the following ways:
   - When adding nested slurs to existing notes: Select the notes within the outer slur that you want to place under an inner slur and press **S** or click **Slur** in the Notes panel.

- To start the inner slur on the same note as the outer slur during note input, press **S** or click **Slur** in the Notes panel.
- To start the inner slur on a later note during note input, input notes or advance the caret manually to where you want the inner slur to start, then press **S** or click **Slur** in the Notes panel.

NOTE

If you added nested slurs to existing notes, stop here.

4. During note input, input the notes you want to include in the inner slur.

   The slurs extend automatically as you continue inputting notes, even if there are rests between the notes you input.
5. End the inner slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.
6. Continue inputting notes.
7. Optional: Start/End other inner slurs.
8. End the outer slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.

RESULT

During note input, slurs begin from the currently selected note on all staves across which the caret extends, not from the caret position. Slurs extend automatically as you input notes, and end on the currently selected note.

When adding slurs to existing notes, the selected notes are connected by slurs. For example, if you select two notes belonging to one instrument and two notes belonging to another, two slurs are input connecting the notes on each selected staff. If you selected notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument, a cross-staff slur is input.

Slurs are placed either above or below the notes, depending on the stem direction of the notes within the selection. Inner slurs can have different curvature directions to outer slurs.

NOTE

- You can input the outer slur and inner slurs in any order as Dorico for iPad automatically adjusts slurs so that shorter slurs are positioned within longer slurs, and ensures they do not collide.
- Slur collisions are not automatically avoided if you activate **Disable auto curve adjustment** in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel for individual slurs.

RELATED LINKS

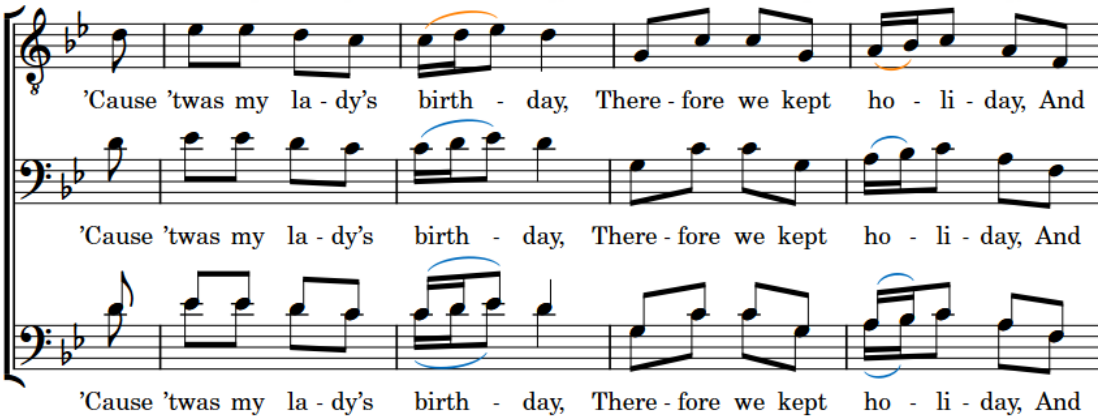
Inputting slurs on page 195
Changing the curvature direction of slurs on page 781
Slur collision avoidance on page 775

Linked slurs

Slurs of the same duration at the same rhythmic position on multiple staves can be linked together. This happens automatically when you copy and paste slurs or material including slurs between staves, or enter them simultaneously.

If slurs are linked, moving one slur in the linked group moves any slurs linked to it in the same way. Similarly, lengthening or shortening a slur in a linked group lengthens or shortens any slurs linked to it in the same way. However, deleting one slur in a linked group only deletes the slur selected, not the whole group.

Linked slurs appear highlighted when any slur in the linked group is selected.



Linked slurs with the top slurs selected

You can also manually link and unlink slurs.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting slurs on page 195
Unlinking slurs on page 786
Linked dynamics on page 519
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 337

Linking slurs together

Dorico for iPad automatically links slurs of the same duration at the same rhythmic positions together when you copy and paste slurs or material including slurs between staves, or enter them simultaneously. However, you can also link slurs together manually.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the slurs you want to link together.

   NOTE

   Only slurs that have the same duration and start at the same position can be linked together.

2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Slurs** > **Link**.

RESULT

The selected slurs are linked together.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Unlinking slurs

You can unlink slurs manually that were automatically linked together, for example, if you want to lengthen/shorten them independently of each other.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a slur from each linked group you no longer want to be linked.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Slurs** > **Unlink**.

RESULT

All slurs linked to the selected slurs are unlinked.

NOTE

You cannot only unlink a single slur from the group.

Slur segments

A standard slur consists of one segment. You can make more elaborate shapes with slurs with multiple segments, for example, to allow you to create more complex slur shapes than are possible with a single curved segment.

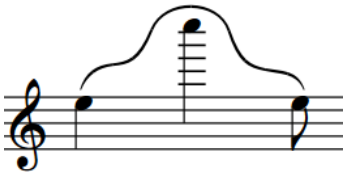
Adding more segments to a slur by default creates evenly spaced waves within its length. Therefore, having more segments makes each wave shorter.

Slur with eight segments

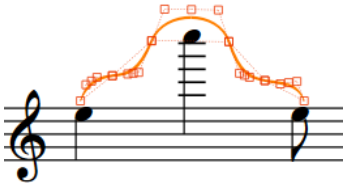
In Engrave mode, you can move each segment graphically as each segment has its own set of five square handles. These allow you to form slurs into unusual and complicated shapes.

NOTE

- You may find that you need more segments than there are curves in your planned shape, as in many cases you need a segment for each significant change of angle. In Dorico for iPad, you can increase/decrease the number of segments in existing slurs.
- Handles on multi-segment slurs are connected between adjacent segments. Moving a connected control point causes the control point at the start/end of the next/previous segment to move the same amount in the opposite direction.



An unusual slur shape created using five segments.



The same slur, showing the positions of the handles of all five segments.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Multi-segment slurs in Engrave mode on page 788

Changing the number of segments in individual slurs

You can change the number of segments in individual slurs, for example, to allow you to create slurs with unusual shapes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose number of segments you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Number of segments** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value increases the number of slur segments. Decreasing the value decreases the number of slur segments. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can adjust the shape of slur segments in more detail using their handles.

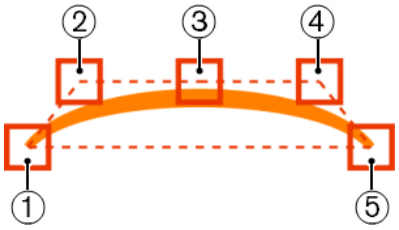
NOTE

Handles on multi-segment slurs are connected to the corresponding type of handle on adjacent segments. Moving handles causes any connected handles to move the same amount in the opposite direction.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790
Changing the property scope on page 128

Slurs in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each slur has five square handles that you can move independently. When using slur handles to edit slurs in Engrave mode, each handle adjusts the corresponding part of the slur but can also affect the positions of other handles on the slur.



Slurs have the following handles in Engrave mode:

1 Left endpoint

2 Left control point

3 Slur height

4 Right control point

5 Right endpoint

For example, moving the left endpoint moves the start of a slur, but the rest of the handles stay in their existing positions. However, moving the right control point also causes the slur height handle to move. This gives you fine control over the shape of slurs, while ensuring the end result remains curved and smooth.

NOTE

Multi-segment slurs have additional links between control point handles that affect how they move in relation to other handles moving.

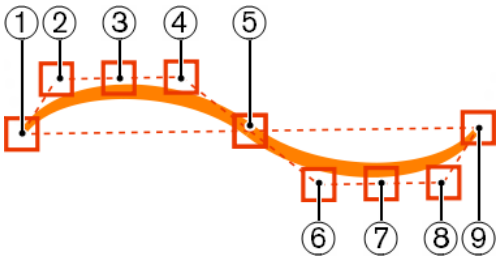
You can move these handles to change the shape of slurs with the keyboard, with the mouse, and by using properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel. You can also change the angle of slurs without changing their overall shape.

RELATED LINKS
Slur shoulder offset on page 794
Slur height on page 793
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790
Changing the angle of slurs on page 791

Multi-segment slurs in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each segment in multi-segment slurs, such as S-shaped slurs, has handles just like standard slurs. This allows you to edit each segment of multi-segment slurs independently as if they were separate slurs, but in order to maintain a consistent shape, moving certain handles causes other handles to move simultaneously.

Multi-segment slurs have the following handles in Engrave mode:



1 Left endpoint

2 Left control point

3 Slur height

4 Right control point

5 Center control point

6 Left control point

7 Slur height

8 Right control point

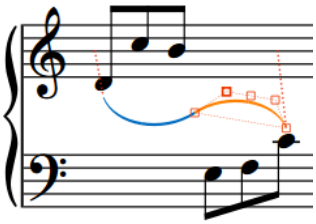
9 Right endpoint

You can select and move each handle in the same ways as for standard slurs; however, handles on multi-segment slurs are connected between adjacent segments. Moving a connected control point causes the control point at the start/end of the next/previous segment to move the same amount in the opposite direction. This avoids tight corners, ensuring that multi-segment slurs are always as smoothly and symmetrically curved as possible.

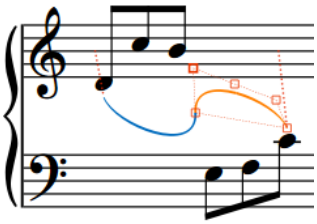
In multi-segment slurs, right control points are connected to the left control point in the adjacent segment. If there is no adjacent segment, the right/left control points next to the right/left endpoints can be moved independently. For example, in the labeled diagram, the control point 4 is connected to control point 6, but control points 2 and 8 are not connected to another control point.

Similarly, moving the slur height handle causes the slur height handle on any adjacent segments to move the same amount in the opposite direction. For example, if you move the slur height handle on the middle segment of a slur with three segments, all three slur height handles are moved.

EXAMPLE



The left control point is selected.



Moving the selected left control point upwards and to the left causes the right control point on the adjacent segment to move downwards and to the right.

Changing the shape of slurs

You can change the shape of individual slurs and move slurs/slur handles graphically, for example, if you want to adjust an endpoint relative to an individual notehead. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

This only changes the appearance of slurs, and does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the whole slurs or individual slur handles you want to move in any of the following ways:
   - In the secondary toolbar, activate **Add to Selection** then click multiple slurs.
   - Select a whole slur and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
   - Click the handle you want to move.
   - In the secondary toolbar, activate **Add to Selection**, then click individual handles on multiple slurs.

   NOTE

   You cannot move whole slurs to the right/left, you can only move them upwards/downwards.

2. Move the slurs or handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Left Arrow** to move slurs/handles to the left. This moves slurs/handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag slurs upwards/downwards.
   - Click and drag handles in any direction.

RESULT

The selected slurs or slur handles are moved. Depending on the handles you selected, this can change the shape of the corresponding slurs. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding slur handles:

- **Start offset** moves the left endpoints of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

- **End offset** moves the right endpoints of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

For example, if you move a whole slur upwards and to the right, all of its handles are moved so all properties are activated. You can also use these properties to change the shape of individual slurs by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected slurs to their default positions.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also change the angle of slurs without affecting their overall shape.

RELATED LINKS

Slur height on page 793
Slur shoulder offset on page 794
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the angle of slurs

You can change the angle or rotation of individual slurs without affecting their overall shape. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

This is useful, for example, if you want one end of a slur to start higher after a system break than its default position, as you can change the rotation of the slur while keeping all slur handles on the slur in the same positions relative to each other.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an endpoint on the slurs whose angle you want to change.

   TIP

   You can select individual handles on multiple slurs by activating **Add to Selection** in the secondary toolbar then clicking handles.

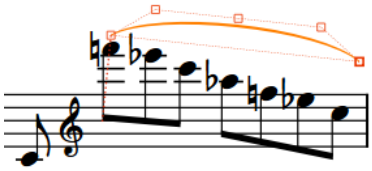
2. Change the angle in any of the following ways:
   - To move the endpoints upwards/downwards by a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Up Arrow** to move endpoints upwards. This moves endpoints by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move the endpoints upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves endpoints by 1 space per press.
   - To move the endpoints a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves endpoints by 1/2 space per press.

- To move the endpoints a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves endpoints by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag the endpoints in any direction.

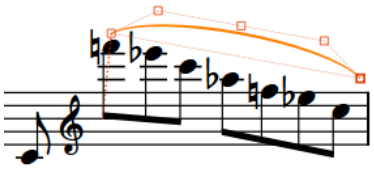
RESULT

The angle or rotation of the selected slurs is changed without affecting their shape. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Slur with default angle



Slur with changed angle

RELATED LINKS

Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 775
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the thickness of slurs

You can change the thickness of individual slurs, including changing the thickness of the middle of slurs independently of the ends of slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slurs** group:
   - **End thickness**
   - **Middle thickness**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected slurs thicker, decreasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected slurs thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

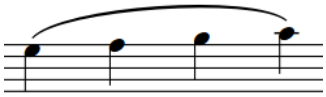
Deactivating the properties returns the corresponding part of the selected slurs to their default thickness.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

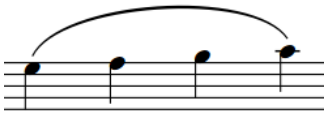
Slur height

The height of slurs determines how far above/below notes slurs extend vertically.

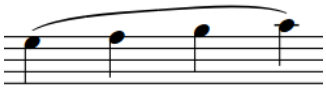
Increasing the height of slurs makes them extend further from the staff. This gives them a rounder shape, which takes up more vertical space. Where vertical space is limited, there should be a balance between how curved slurs are, which can help readability for players, and ensuring staves do not overlap.



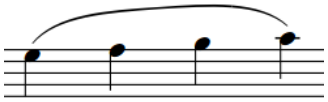
A long slur with default height



A long slur with increased height



A long flat slur with default height



A long flat slur with increased height

TIP

You can change the height of individual slurs in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS
Engrave mode on page 349
Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 775

Changing the height of slurs

You can change the height of individual slurs, for example, to reduce the height of a particularly long slur. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slur height (middle) handle of the slurs whose height you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them upwards/downwards by a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.

- To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The height of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

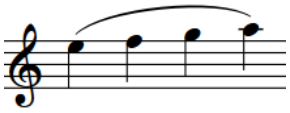
- To maintain a visually pleasing and symmetrical curve when changing the height of slurs manually, you may need to move slur height handles to the right/left by a small amount, as well as upwards/downwards.
- Moving slur height handles to the right/left affects the shape of the whole slur.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the shape of slurs on page 790
Changing the property scope on page 128

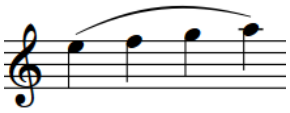
Slur shoulder offset

Slur shoulders affect the angles of the curves of slurs as they taper towards an endpoint, because the tapered ends often approach noteheads at a steeper angle than that of a slur's arch.

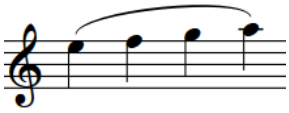
Increasing the shoulder offset makes the onset of the curve shallower, whereas decreasing the shoulder offset makes the onset steeper. The shoulder offset must therefore be balanced with the height of the slur in order to achieve the ideal curved shape.



A long slur with default shoulder offset of 1/3



A long slur with increased shoulder offset of 1.5



A long slur with decreased shoulder offset of -1/2

You can adjust the shoulders of individual slurs in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS
Slur height on page 793

Changing the shoulder offset of slurs

You can adjust the shoulders of individual slurs by moving their control point handles. You can move each control point independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select one of the control point handles on each of the slurs whose shoulders you want to adjust in any of the following ways:
   - Select a whole slur and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
   - Click the handle you want to move.
   - In the secondary toolbar, activate **Add to Selection**, then click individual handles on multiple slurs.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag them in any direction.
3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the other control point handle on the slurs whose shoulders you want to adjust.

RESULT

The shoulder offset of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding slur handles:

- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shoulder offset of individual slurs by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected slurs to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

Slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Multi-segment slurs in Engrave mode on page 788
Changing the property scope on page 128

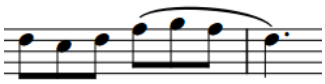
Slurs in playback

Slurs trigger the legato playing technique in playback. By default, this increases the length of the MIDI notes without affecting the notation of the music.

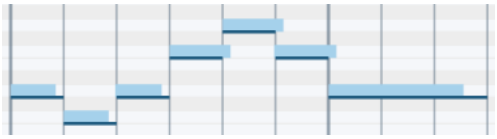
Slurred notes sound for 105% of the length indicated by their notated rhythm, as opposed to non-slurred notes which sound for 95% of their notated rhythm.

The final note of a slur sounds for 95% of its notated rhythm, as there is no slur after it and the legato technique is no longer required.

The example shows how MIDI note length, indicated by the filled, light-colored rectangles, is increased when slurs are used. The thin, darker rod shows the notated duration of each note. The first three notes are non-slurred, so the MIDI length rectangle is shorter than the line of the notated rhythm. The last four notes are slurred together, so the MIDI length is longer than the notated length in order to create the legato, slurred sound. However, the last note of the slurred group is not longer, as the last note of a slurred phrase is treated like a normal, non-slurred note.



A phrase in an instrument staff

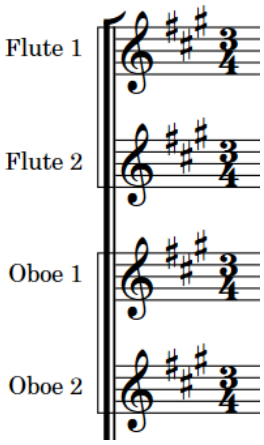


The same phrase in the piano roll in Play mode

Staff labels

Staff labels are used to identify staves in music containing multiple players, and are positioned to the left of systems, before the initial barline of each system. Staff labels indicate the instrument or instruments currently playing the music on the staff or staves to which they apply.

It is usual to show instrument names in full in the staff labels for the first systems in each flow, and abbreviated instrument names in the staff labels of subsequent systems. Using abbreviated instrument names saves horizontal space, allowing you to include more music in each system.



Examples of staff labels on the first system in a flow

In Dorico for iPad, staff labels use the instrument names set for each instrument in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog. In the dialog, you can specify singular and plural names for each instrument, and singular and plural abbreviations for each instrument.

Part layouts by default do not show staff labels, as most parts only contain a single staff whose identity is clear from the context and the layout name. The layout name is shown at the top left of the first page in part layouts by default.

For players holding multiple instruments, the staff label shows the instrument they are currently playing. If the player changes instrument partway through a system, the name of the new instrument is shown above the staff at its first note and the staff label is updated at the start of the next system.

Dorico for iPad includes the instrument transposition, or instrument pitch, in staff labels for transposing instruments by default. Transposing instruments are instruments whose sounding pitch is different to the notated pitch.

You can change when instrument transpositions, or instrument pitches, are shown in staff labels. You can also change whether the instrument transposition is shown before or after the instrument name in staff labels.

NOTE

- You do not need to number instruments in staff labels manually, as Dorico for iPad automatically numbers instruments when there are multiple players of the same type playing instruments of the same type.
- Layout names are different to the instrument names used for staff labels.

- Staff labels do not show all instruments held by players, for example, in the staff label for the first system. You should include a comprehensive instrumentation list that shows any doubling at the front of your score.

Staff labels imported from MusicXML files

When exporting MusicXML files from Cubase and importing them into Dorico for iPad, you can improve the accuracy of the automatic instrument selection by changing the instrument names in the Cubase **Score Editor** to the same English instrument names that Dorico for iPad uses before exporting the file.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Instrument numbering on page 75
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 107
Changing instrument names on page 106

Instrument names in staff labels

Staff labels use the instrument names set for each instrument. Staff labels can show full or short instrument names.

On the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**, you can choose whether you want to show full, short, or no instrument names in staff labels in each layout independently.

- **Full** staff labels use full instrument names.
- **Abbreviated** staff labels use short instrument names.
- **None** shows no staff labels.

Instrument numbers are automatically shown in both full and abbreviated staff labels.

NOTE

- You can change the full and short instrument names for each instrument in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog in Setup mode.
- Changing instrument names does not change the name shown at the top of each part layout, as that uses the layout name. You can rename layouts in Setup mode.

RELATED LINKS
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Instrument numbering on page 75
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 107
Changing instrument names on page 106
Renaming layouts on page 105
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Hiding/Showing staff labels

You can show full or abbreviated instrument names in staff labels, or hide all staff labels entirely, in each layout independently. The first system in each flow and all subsequent systems can have different staff label lengths.

By default, full staff labels are shown on the first system of each flow and abbreviated staff labels are shown on subsequent systems in full score layouts. In part layouts, staff labels are not shown on any systems.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show staff labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, choose one of the following options for **Staff labels on first system**:
   - **Full**
   - **Abbreviated**
   - **None**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Staff labels on subsequent systems**:
   - **Full**
   - **Abbreviated**
   - **None**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Staff labels are hidden/shown on the corresponding staves in the selected layouts.

- **None** hides staff labels.
- **Full** and **Abbreviated** show staff labels using the corresponding instrument name length.

TIP

- These settings apply to each flow in the layout, not the project as a whole. If, for example, you want to show full staff labels on the first system in the first flow in your project, but want to show abbreviated staff labels on the first systems of all subsequent flows, we recommend choosing the setting appropriate for the most flows in the layout, then changing the length of staff labels at other positions as required.
- You can change both full and short instrument names in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument names in staff labels on page 798
Changing instrument names on page 106

Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 107
Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks on page 800
Staff labels on condensed staves on page 805
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804

Changing the minimum indent for systems with staff labels

You can change the minimum indent for all systems that show staff labels to optimize horizontal space in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose minimum indent for systems with staff labels you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, change the value for **Minimum indent for systems with staff labels**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The minimum indent on all systems that show staff labels is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

System indents on page 812
Changing the first system indent on page 813

Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks

You can change whether staff labels at individual system/frame breaks show full, abbreviated, or no instrument names, independently of your per-layout settings. For example, if you want full staff labels at the start of the first flow but abbreviated staff labels at the start of subsequent flows, or if you want to show staff labels in choral music only on systems that contain more complicated parts, solo lines, or divisi lines.

PREREQUISITE

- You have inserted system/frame breaks at the positions from which you want to change the length of instrument names in staff labels.
- Signposts are shown for system/frame breaks.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the system/frame break signposts at the positions where you want to hide/show staff labels.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff labels** in the **Format** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:

- **Full**
- **Abbreviated**
- **None**

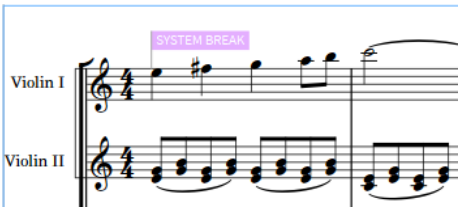
RESULT

Staff labels are hidden/shown on the corresponding systems to the selected system/frame breaks. Horizontal spacing is automatically adjusted so the system fills the width of the music frame.

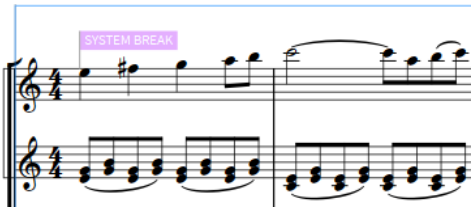
- **None** hides staff labels.
- **Full** and **Abbreviated** show staff labels using the corresponding instrument name length.

Deactivating the property returns any selected system break signposts to your per-layout settings.

EXAMPLE



Full staff labels shown



No staff labels shown

RELATED LINKS

Staff labels on page 797
Instrument names in staff labels on page 798
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799
Inserting system breaks on page 391
Inserting frame breaks on page 392
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 332

Instrument transpositions in staff labels

Instrument transpositions indicate the interval between the note an instrument plays and the sounding note produced. Transposing instruments, such as Horn in F and Clarinet in B♭, are commonly shown with their transposition, also known as their “instrument pitch”, as part of their instrument name or layout name.

Depending on the options set for **Show transposition** in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog for each transposing instrument, they might show transpositions in staff labels even if you have hidden transpositions in staff labels in their layout.

Dorico for iPad sets common transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in B♭ and Trumpet in B♭, to follow your per-layout settings for hiding/showing instrument transpositions in staff labels.

To reduce the risk of confusion, uncommon transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in A or Trumpet in E, are set to show their transposition in staff labels always, even if you have hidden instrument transpositions in the layout.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 107
Transposing instruments on page 78
Changing instrument names on page 106
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799

Hiding/Showing instrument transpositions in staff labels

You can hide/show instrument transpositions in staff labels in each layout independently. For example, you can hide instrument transpositions in staff labels in full score layouts but show them in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show instrument transpositions in staff labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, activate/deactivate the following options for **Instrument pitch or transposition**:
   - **Show in full staff labels**
   - **Show in abbreviated staff labels**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Instrument transpositions are shown in staff labels of the corresponding length in the selected layouts when the corresponding checkbox is activated, and hidden when the corresponding checkbox is deactivated.

NOTE

Depending on the options set for **Show transposition** in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog for each transposing instrument, they might show transpositions in staff labels even if you have hidden transpositions in staff labels in their layout.

RELATED LINKS
Changing instrument names on page 106

Changing the position of instrument transpositions in full staff labels

You can show instrument transpositions before/after instrument names in staff labels in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose instrument transposition position you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, choose one of the following options for **Position of instrument pitch in full staff labels**:
   - **Start**
   - **End**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The position of instrument transpositions relative to instrument names in staff labels is changed in the selected layouts.

Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows

You can hide/show instrument change labels at the start of each flow in each layout independently. These labels can be useful for players holding multiple instruments as a way of clarifying the instrument required in their part layouts, which do not normally show staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show instrument change labels at the start of flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, activate/deactivate **Show instrument change label at start of flow**.

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

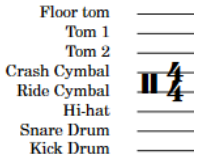
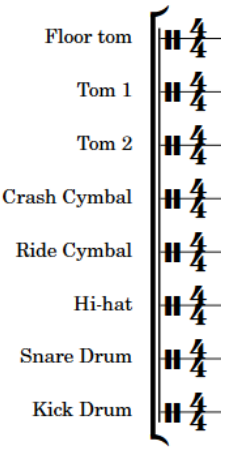
Instrument change labels are shown in the first bar of each flow in the selected layouts when **Show instrument change label at start of flow** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument changes on page 76
Editing the default instrument change label text on page 77

Staff labels for percussion kits

The staff labels shown for percussion kit staves depend on how kits are presented in your project. Kits can be presented as five-line staves, grids, and as single-line instruments.

Percussion kit presentation type	Staff label	Example
5-line staff	Single instrument name using the instrument name of the percussion kit.	
Grid	Multiple instrument names: one for each kit instrument, positioned at the staff position of the corresponding instrument. Staff labels for grids use a smaller font and a different paragraph style than used for standard instrument staff labels.	
Single-line instruments	Multiple instrument names: one for each kit instrument, positioned beside the corresponding single-line staff. Staff labels for single-line instruments use the same font and paragraph style as used for standard instrument staff labels.	

You can change the player names, layout names, and instrument names of percussion kits in the same ways as for other players and instruments. However, to change the staff labels for percussion kits, you must change kit instrument names in different ways for percussion kits, depending on your percussion kit presentation type:

- 5-line staff: Open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog from the **Players** panel in Setup mode, or use the **Name** field in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog, to change the name of the kit.
- Grid/Single-line instruments: Open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog from inside the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog in Setup mode to change the names of individual instruments.

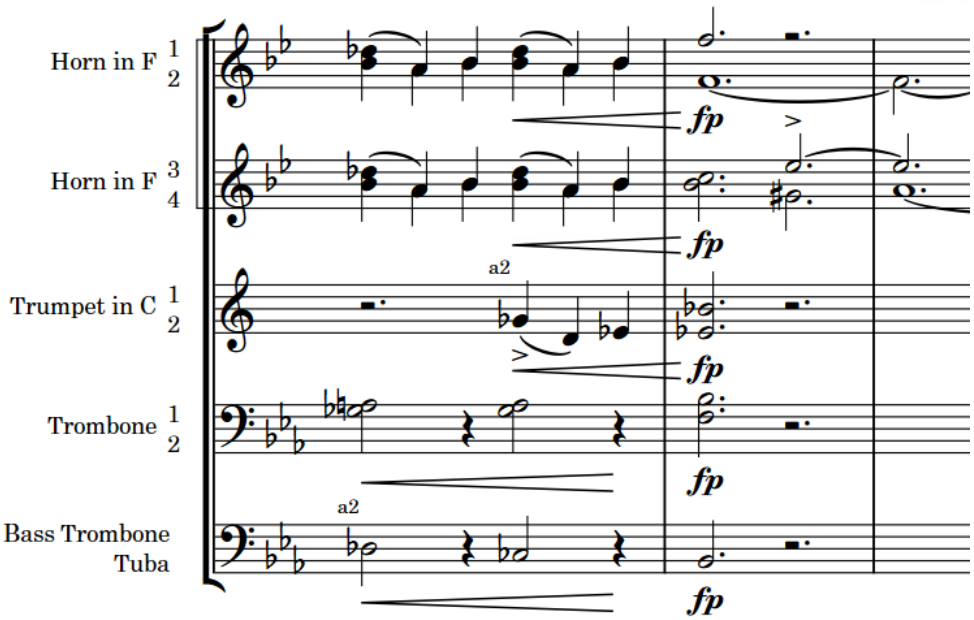
The same instrument name fields and options are available for kit instruments as for standard pitched instruments.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 107
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 104
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Unpitched percussion on page 883
Changing the percussion kit presentation type on page 889

Staff labels on condensed staves

Staff labels on condensed staves must reflect all the players included on the staff. Dorico for iPad automatically consolidates similar instrument names in staff labels on condensed staves but always shows all the required player numbers.

On condensed staves containing different types of instruments, all required instrument names are shown.



Staff labels on condensed brass staves

Because condensing can change frequently, staff labels on condensed staves can vary from one system to another. The staff labels for condensed divisi staves reflect the divisions at the start of the system and show instrument names.

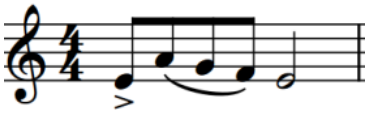
Dorico for iPad also shows player labels above/below condensed staves to identify the players to which notes on condensed staves belong, as condensing can change within a single system. For condensed divisi staves, Dorico for iPad shows the player labels “div.”, with any required qualifications, and your set unison indication where each division starts and ends respectively.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799
Condensing on page 401

Staves

A staff is a line or group of lines on which musical notes are notated to indicate the pitch and rhythm of music. Pitched instruments use the traditional five-line staff and unpitched instruments often use a single-line staff.

Notes are positioned on the lines and in the spaces on five-line staves, and can also use ledger lines above/below the staff to represent pitches that cannot fit on the staff.

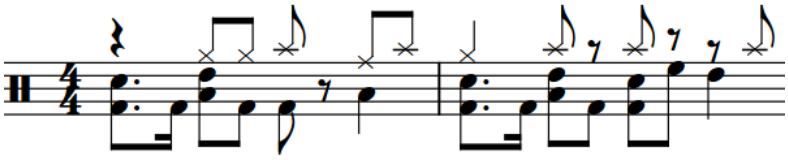


A phrase on a five-line staff

The same phrase on a single-line staff

The pitch and register of notes on five-line staves are determined by clefs, which can also be combined with octave lines to indicate what pitches performers play.

On five-line staves for unpitched percussion instruments, the different staff positions correspond to different percussion instruments.



Because it is often necessary to have different staff sizes in different layouts depending on their type, such as having smaller staves in full score layouts than in part layouts, in Dorico for iPad you can change various aspects of staves in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Page formatting on page 369
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Clefs on page 488
Octave lines on page 493
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 379
System dividers on page 809
System objects on page 811
System indents on page 812

Per-layout options for staves

You can change settings that affect the staves in each layout independently.

You can change the size of staves in each layout in the **Space Size** section of the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

You can change other aspects of staves on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**. For example, you can change which staff labels are shown on systems, indent the first system of each flow, and fix the number of bars included in each system. You can also select above which staves system objects appear, according to their instrument families.

NOTE

- If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.
- System objects are only shown above bracketed groups in your project. If you have no brackets, system objects only appear at the top of systems.

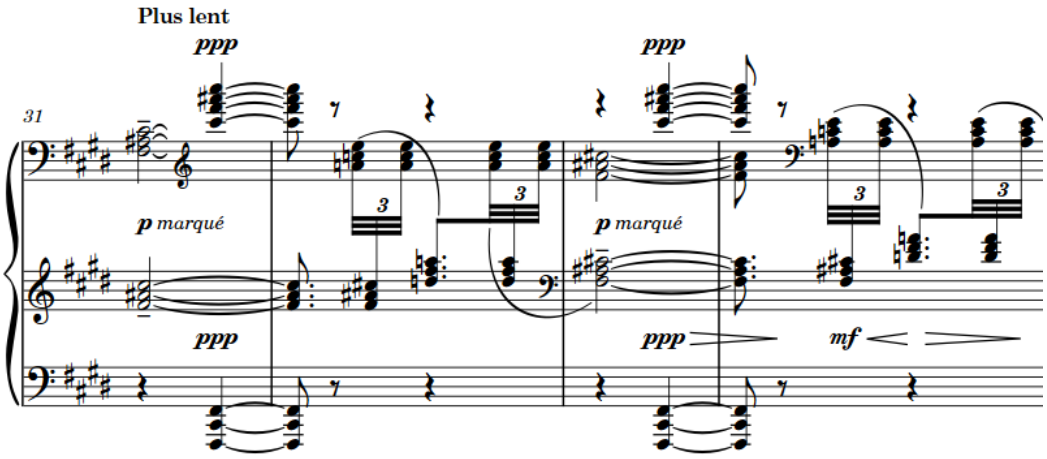
You can show system dividers between systems when systems contain a minimum number of players. You can also change the appearance of system dividers.

RELATED LINKS
Page formatting on page 369
Layout Options dialog on page 63
Staff size on page 386
System objects on page 811
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376
Brackets and braces on page 466

Extra staves

It is sometimes necessary to add extra staves to instruments, for example, to make complex contrapuntal music easier to read because it is spread out across more staves than usual for that instrument.

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot add extra staves. However, extra staves are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.



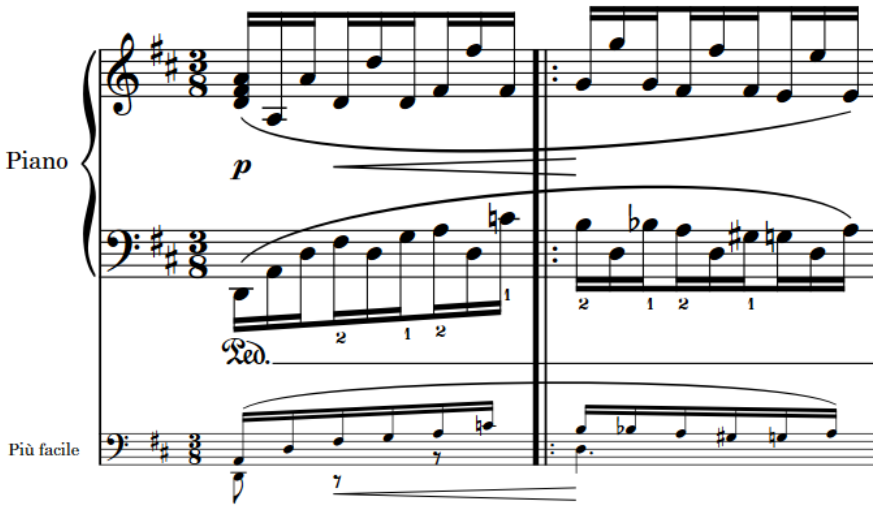
An extract of Debussy's piano prelude "Feuilles mortes" with three staves

RELATED LINKS
Ossia staves on page 809
Divisi on page 814
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376

Ossia staves

Ossia staves are smaller staves shown above/below the main staff of an instrument. They are used to show alternative phrases that can be played instead of the original phrase, such as suggestions for ornaments, alternative notations from other sources, or an easier version.

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot add ossia staves. However, ossia staves are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.



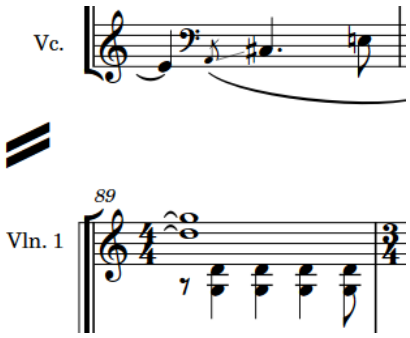
An ossia staff below the left-hand piano staff shows an easier alternative

RELATED LINKS
Extra staves on page 808

System dividers

System dividers are used to clarify the separation of different systems when they appear on the same page. They are usually shown as two thick, parallel angled lines positioned to the left of initial barlines.

In Dorico for iPad, the outer edges of system dividers are aligned with the corresponding edges of music frames.



A system divider between two systems in a string quartet score

You can show system dividers in different circumstances and change their appearance in each layout independently.

Hiding/Showing system dividers

You can change the circumstances in which system dividers are shown, including specifying the minimum number of players required to show them, in each layout independently. For example, if you only want to show system dividers between systems that contain different numbers of staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to show system dividers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **System Dividers** section, choose one of the following options for **Show system dividers**:
   - To hide all system dividers, choose **Never**.
   - To show system dividers only between systems containing different numbers of staves, **When number of staves differs**.
   - To show system dividers when layouts contain more than a set number of players, choose **When minimum number of players present**.
5. Optional: If you selected **When minimum number of players present**, change the value for **Minimum number of players**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

System dividers are hidden or shown in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 376

Changing the length of system dividers

You can change the length of system dividers in each layout independently, for example, if you want to show longer system dividers in layouts that show full staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to show system dividers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.

4. In the **System Dividers** section, choose one of the following options for **Appearance**:
   - **Default**
   - **Long**
   - **Extra long**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

System objects

System objects are items that apply to all staves in the system and appear in all layouts, but are not necessary to show on every staff in full score layouts. For example, tempo marks and rehearsal marks are important for all players to see in their parts, but would cause an orchestral full score to appear very cluttered if they were shown on every staff.

In Dorico for iPad, the following items are considered system objects:

- Rehearsal marks
- Repeat endings
- Repeat markers
- System text
- Tempo marks
- Time signatures shown above the staff
- Horizontal lines that apply to all staves

System objects automatically appear at least once in all layouts. You can show system objects at multiple positions in each system by showing them above multiple instrument families. For example, you might show them above the woodwind, brass, percussion, and string families. In an orchestral full score, this would ensure system objects are spread out evenly across the page, meaning no staff is very far from these important markings. You can also show rehearsal marks and repeat endings additionally below the bottom staff.

NOTE

- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together. You can change bracket grouping in each layout independently.
- If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

RELATED LINKS
Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type on page 467
Brackets and braces on page 466
Rehearsal marks on page 728
Tempo marks on page 826
Repeat endings on page 738
Large time signatures on page 860
Inputting text on page 289

Changing the positions of system objects

You can show system objects above different instrument families in each layout independently. Multiple items are categorized as system objects, including system text, rehearsal marks, tempo marks, repeat markers, and repeat endings.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the instrument families above which system objects appear.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **System Objects** section, activate the checkboxes for the instrument families above which you want system objects to appear.
5. Activate/Deactivate the following options for **Also show below bottom staff**:
   - **Repeat endings**
   - **Rehearsal marks**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

System objects appear above the top staff in each bracketed group you select, provided a bracketed group for that instrument family is included in the selected layouts. If you activated options for **Also show below bottom staff**, the corresponding notations additionally appear below the bottom staff.

NOTE

System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together. You can change bracket grouping in each layout independently.

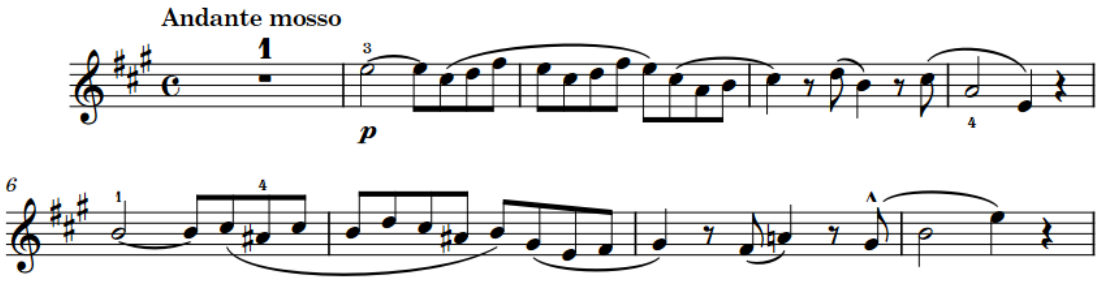
RELATED LINKS

System objects on page 811

System indents

System indents control the distance between the left page margin and the start of systems of music. According to tradition, the first system in part layouts is indented, but in modern use this is not always necessary.

According to convention, coda sections at the start of new systems are also indented. Dorico for iPad uses the same gap size before the start of codas whether they occur partway through systems or at the start of a new system.



A violin part with the first system indented

In Dorico for iPad, system indents automatically adjust to accommodate staff labels. For example, if a system contains a staff label that is significantly longer than the minimum system indent, Dorico for iPad increases the indent on that system to ensure the staff label remains legible and is not cut off on the left edge or collides with the music.

You can change both the minimum indent on systems with staff labels and the first system indent in each layout independently. You can also adjust the system indent at both the start and end of individual systems, independently of your per-layout settings.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the minimum indent for systems with staff labels on page 800
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 799
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 385

Changing the first system indent

By default in Dorico for iPad, the first system of each flow is indented in part layouts. You can change the indent for the first system of each in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose first system indent you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Staves and Systems** in the category list.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, change the value for **Indent first system of flow by**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

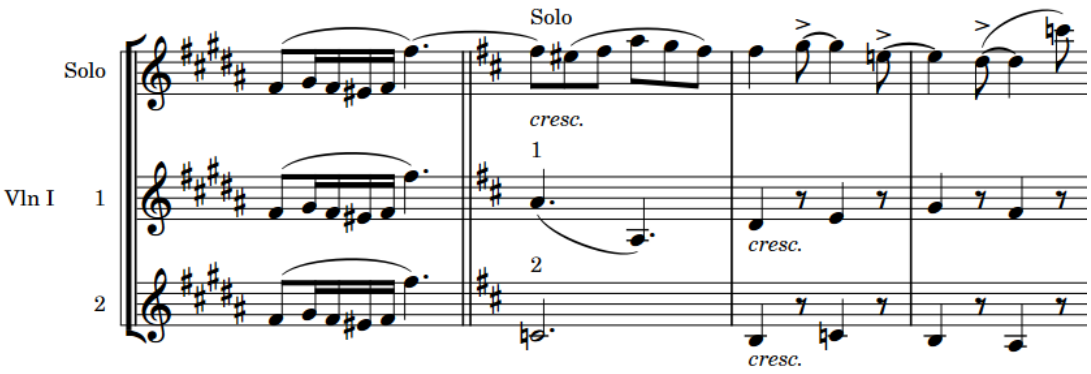
RESULT

The indent of the first system of all flows is changed in the selected layouts.

Divisi

Divisi is when players split, or “divide”, in order to play multiple lines of music, commonly for a limited passage, before returning to play together, or “tutti”. Divisi passages can be notated with all lines on a single staff or across multiple staves.

Divisi is a technique most commonly used in orchestral string writing, as the string section typically contains a large number of players compared to the number of staves. For example, large orchestras commonly have twelve first violins all playing the same part most of the time. Dividing those players into multiple parts allows composers to write more complex contrapuntal music.



An example divisi change in a Violin I part, splitting it into two sections and a solo line

If the division is relatively simple, it is possible to write all parts on the same staff and label the section, with an indication of how many players are required for each line if necessary. If the parts have different rhythms at times, you can input them into separate voices on the same staff.

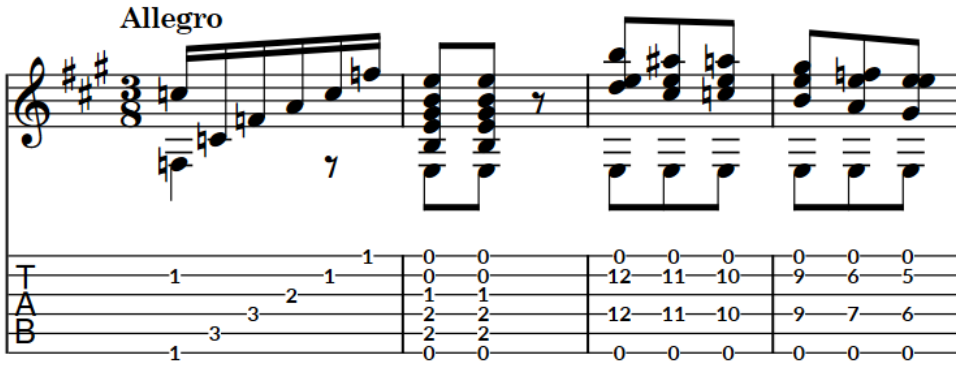
However, when a section is divided into multiple parts that are too different to be clearly written on a single staff, it is necessary to divide them onto multiple staves. In Dorico Pro, divisi changes allow you not only to divide sections into any number of parts with any number of staves, but also to include solo lines and group staves as required.

In Dorico for iPad, you cannot input divisi changes. However, divisi changes are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

RELATED LINKS
Extra staves on page 808
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157

Tablature

Tablature is an alternative notation to the five-line staff, and is used for fretted instruments. On tablature, pitches are indicated by fret numbers positioned on lines, each of which represents a string on the instrument. As tablature is commonly used for guitars, it usually shows six lines.

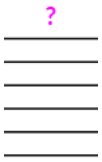


An extract of guitar music shown on both a notation staff and tablature

In Dorico for iPad, you can show music for fretted instruments, such as the guitar or bass, on a regular notation staff and tablature together or only show one or the other. Notes and notations are linked between both presentations, meaning any changes you make to one, including inputting notes, automatically updates the other.

On tablature, ties are automatically notated as round brackets around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains.

Any notes beyond the range of the instrument or impossible to calculate, such as below the nut on the lowest string or a natural harmonic without a suitable node, are shown on tablature as pink question marks. If two notes are allocated to the same string at the same rhythmic position, both notes appear beside each other and are colored green.



Note on tablature that cannot be calculated

The appropriate tablature is automatically shown for instruments according to their strings and tuning settings. There are default tunings stored for each instrument type in Dorico for iPad, which you can customize in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 816
Fretted instrument tuning on page 78
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 90
Inputting notes on tablature on page 166
Harmonics on page 610
Guitar bends on page 644

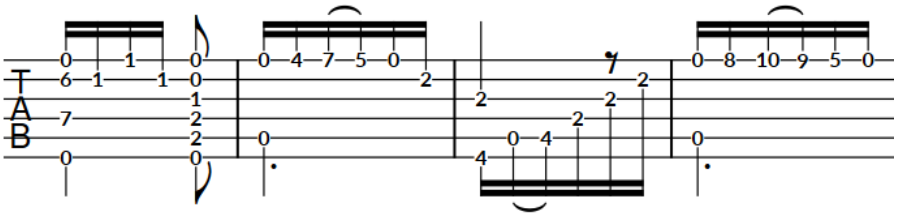
Guitar techniques on page 660
Ties on page 839
Trills on page 621

Rhythms on tablature

When notation staves and tablature are both shown, it is customary only to notate rhythms on the notation staff. However, when only tablature is shown, it is necessary to show rhythms on tablature.

The following items are shown to indicate rhythms on tablature:

- Time signatures
- Stems, stem flags, and beaming
- Rhythm dots



Rhythms shown on tablature

NOTE

Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on tablature on page 166

Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature

You can show notation staves only, tablature only, or both in each layout independently and for each player holding at least one fretted instrument independently. For example, you can show only notation staves in the full score layout but the notation staff and tablature in a guitar part layout.

When tablature is shown, it can appear with or without rhythms.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show tablature.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.

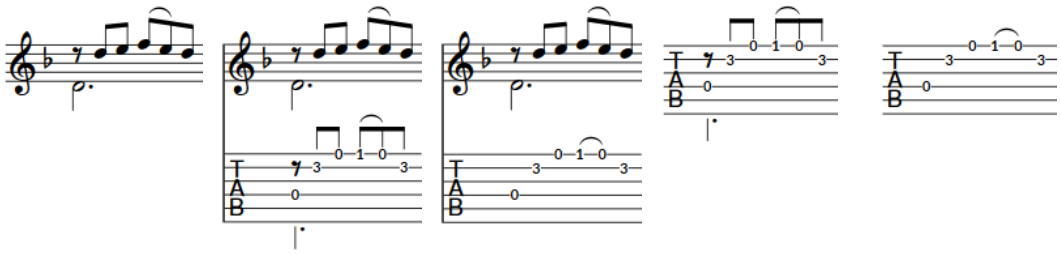
4. In the **Fretted Instruments** section, choose one of the following options for each player holding at least one fretted instrument in your project:
   - To show only notation staves and hide tablature, choose **Notation only**.
   - To show both notation staves and tablature, choose **Notation and tablature**.
   - To show only tablature and hide notation staves, choose **Tablature only**.
5. Optional: If you chose **Notation and tablature** or **Tablature only**, activate/deactivate **Show rhythms in tablature**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Notation staves and tablature are hidden/shown for the corresponding players in the selected layouts.

If tablature is shown, it appears with rhythms when **Show rhythms in tablature** is activated, and without rhythms when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Notation only | **Notation and tablature** with rhythms | **Notation and tablature** without rhythms | **Tablature only** with rhythms | **Tablature only** without rhythms

RELATED LINKS

Players on page 67
Fretted instruments tuning on page 78
Inputting notes on tablature on page 166
Guitar bends on page 644
Guitar techniques on page 660

Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature

You can change the string to which individual notes are allocated on tablature manually, for example, if you input the notes on the notation staff and want to change their default string allocation.

NOTE

You cannot allocate notes to a string on which they are impossible, such as if the note is lower than the open pitch of the string.

PROCEDURE

1. On tablature, select the fret numbers of notes whose allocated string you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select fret numbers on tablature, you cannot select the notes on notation staves.

2. Change their allocated string in any of the following ways:
   - To move them up a string, press **N**.
   - To move them down a string, press **M**.
   - In the Properties panel, select a string from the **String** menu in the **Notes and Rests** group.

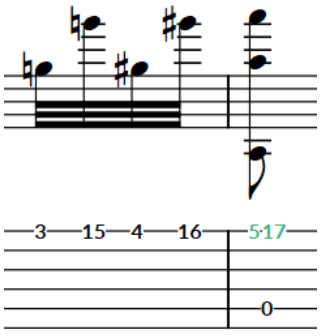
RESULT

The string to which the selected notes are allocated is changed. Using the key commands changes the string of the selected notes proportionally, whereas selecting a string from the **String** menu allocates all selected notes to the selected string.

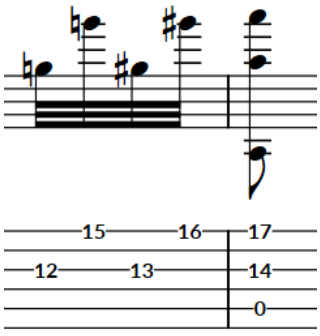
NOTE

- If they are now allocated to the same string as another note at that rhythmic position, both notes appear beside each other and are colored green.
- Deactivating the property resets the selected notes to their default string.

EXAMPLE



Default string allocation



After changing the strings for some notes to reduce the distance between frets

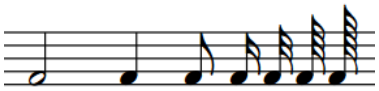
RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on tablature on page 166

Stems

Stems are vertical lines that extend from noteheads that are a half note or shorter in duration. In combination with notehead design, they allow the duration of each note to be clearly identified.

For example, quarter notes (crotchets) and eighth notes (quavers) both have solid black noteheads and stems, but eighth notes also have flags on their stems. 16th notes have two flags, 32nd notes have three flags, and so on. The length of stems is determined by default in Dorico for iPad, so stems automatically adjust their length to accommodate more/fewer flags.



Notes with stems, ranging from a half note (minim) on the left to a 128th note on the right

The stems of notes and chords can point upwards/downwards, depending on the conventions of music engraving and the context of the music. For example, in choral music on two staves, stems in the soprano and tenor lines point up, and stems in the alto and bass lines point down.

RELATED LINKS
Stem direction on page 819
Stem length on page 823
Altered unisons on page 414
Voices on page 902

Stem direction

In Dorico for iPad, the stem direction of notes and chords follows rules that are based on the conventions of music engraving.

Stem direction is determined automatically, but you can manually change the stem direction of individual notes, chords, or of an entire voice. The rules that are applied depend on the following:

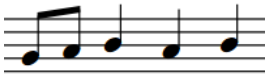
- How many voices are active on the staff.
- Whether notes, chords, or beamed groups of notes are affected.
- Whether notes in the same chord or notes in the same beamed group are split between staves.

Single notes in single voices

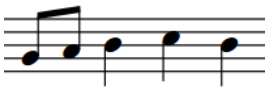
On a five-line staff with only a single voice active, the default stem direction of a single note is determined by its staff position.

- If the note is above the middle line, its stem points downwards.
- If the note is below the middle line, its stem points upwards.
- If the note is on the middle line of the staff, its stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the note matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, or if there are no adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords, the note follows the default stem direction.

The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.



Notes on the middle line are stem up because the fourth note is stem up



Notes on the middle line are stem down because the fourth note is stem down

By default, notes are first input into an up-stem voice, and Dorico for iPad treats notes as the only voice on the staff until you input more voices.

Single notes in multiple voices

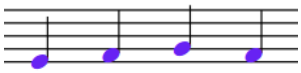
When there are multiple voices on a staff and all voices contain notes, the stem direction of notes is determined by the stem direction of their voice. Notes in up-stem voices have up stems, and notes in down-stem voices have down stems. This applies even when the stems of notes would normally point in the other direction, based on their position on the staff.

NOTE

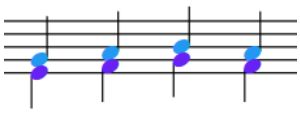
The order in which notes appear between different up-stem voices and different down-stem voices depends on their pitch and your settings on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**. You can also change the voice column index of notes individually.

When there are only notes in one voice for at least a whole bar, Dorico for iPad automatically changes the directions of stems so they point in the default direction for their pitch. For example, if a staff contains a single up-stem voice and a single down-stem voice but only the down-stem voice contains notes or rests, then the stems of notes in the down-stem voice may point upwards, depending on the position of the notes on the staff. However, showing rests or implicit rests in empty voices forces the stem direction of notes to follow the stem direction of their voice.

Notes in an up-stem voice shown in blue.



Notes in a down-stem voice shown in purple. The stems point upwards despite being in a down-stem voice because there are no other voices.



When notes in up-stem and down-stem voices are in the same bar, the stem direction is automatically changed.

Chords in single voices

The stem direction for a chord in a single voice is determined by the balance of notes above/below the middle line of the staff.

- If the note furthest from the middle line is above the middle line, the stem of the chord points downwards.
- If the note furthest from the middle line is below the middle line, the stem of the chord points upwards.

- If the chord is equally balanced on either side of the middle line of the staff, the stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the chord matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, equally balanced chords follow the default stem direction.

  The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.

Beam groups in single voices

The stem direction within beam groups is determined by the balance of notes within the beam group that are above/below the middle line of the staff.

- If the majority of notes in the beam group are above the middle line, stems in the beam group point downwards.
- If the majority of notes in the beam group are below the middle line, stems in the beam group point upwards.
- If the beam group contains an equal number of notes either side of the middle line of the staff, the stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the beam group matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, equally balanced beam groups follow the default stem direction.

  The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.

RELATED LINKS
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 903
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Voice column index on page 905
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 764
Note positions in multiple-voice contexts on page 904
Changing the default stem direction of voices on page 822
Removing stem direction changes on page 823
Altered unisons on page 414

Changing the stem direction of notes

You can manually change the stem direction of any note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose stem direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual notes within tie chains.

- Changing the stem direction in Write mode only affects the first note in the tie chain.

2. Change the stem direction in one of the following ways:
   - To change the stem direction to up, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Stem** > **Force Stem Up**.
   - To change the stem direction to down, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Stem** > **Force Stem Down**.

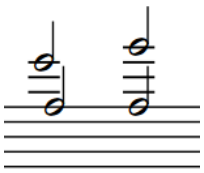
RESULT

The stem direction of the selected notes is changed. The selected notes follow this stem direction, even if you later change their pitch to one that usually requires a different stem direction. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

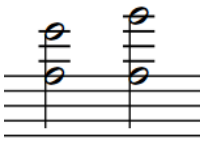
NOTE

- This does not change the voice to which notes belong.
- You can also change the stem direction of notes by selecting them and pressing **F**.

EXAMPLE



Stems pointing in the same direction but in different voices



Stems in the same direction and in the same voice

RELATED LINKS

Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Changing the property scope on page 128
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Changing the default stem direction of voices

You can change the default stem direction of voices after they have been input, including slash voices.

NOTE

This changes the implicit stem direction of the voice, but may not change the stem direction of all notes in single-voice contexts. Stem directions are automatically changed in Dorico for iPad when only one voice contains notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note or chord in the voice whose stem direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. Change the default stem direction of the selected voice in one of the following ways:
   - To change the default stem direction to up, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Voices** > **Default Stems Up**.
   - To change the default stem direction to down, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Voices** > **Default Stems Down**.

RELATED LINKS
Stem direction on page 819
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Removing stem direction changes

You can remove changes to the directions of stems and revert stems to their default directions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose stem direction changes you want to remove. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Stem** > **Remove Forced Stem**.

RESULT

All stem direction changes are removed from the selected notes. The stems of the selected notes revert to their default directions.

NOTE

Alternatively, you can change the stem direction to the opposite direction. However, notes with forced stems do not change automatically if, for example, you later change their pitch.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 821
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Stem length

The length of stems is determined by default in Dorico for iPad, according to accepted standards for the appearance of stems of notes at different positions on staves.

You can lengthen/shorten individual stems in Engrave mode.

Lengthening/Shortening stems

You can lengthen/shorten the stems of individual notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the stems you want to lengthen/shorten.
2. Lengthen/Shorten the stems in any of the following ways:

- To move shorten stems a standard amount, press **Opt-Down Arrow**. This shortens stems by 1/8 space per press.
- To move lengthen stems a standard amount, press **Opt-Up Arrow**. This lengthens stems by 1/8 space per press.

  TIP

  To lengthen/shorten stems by large increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** as well as the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**.

  For moderate increments, press **Shift** as well as the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**.

  For small increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** as well as the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**.

- Click and drag the square handles at the end of the stems upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected stems are lengthened/shortened, regardless of their stem direction. For example, selecting a down-stem note and pressing **Opt-Up Arrow** lengthens it by moving the end of the stem downwards, away from the notehead. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

Stem adj. in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated when you lengthen/shorten stems.

You can also use this property to lengthen/shorten stems by changing the value in the value field. However, the **Notes and Rests** group is only available when the notehead is selected rather than the stem.

Deactivating the property resets the selected stems to their default length.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Hiding stems

You can hide the stems on notes with any notehead design.

Dorico for iPad allows you to hide stems rather than using a stemless notehead design as this allows you to hide the stem of any notehead design.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose stems you want to hide.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hide stem** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

RESULT

The stems and any applicable flags of the selected notes are hidden. The stems remain completely hidden even if you later change the pitch of the notes.

If the selected notes are part of beamed groups, the beams continue to be shown as normal, unless you have hidden the stems of all notes in the beamed group, which also hides the beam.

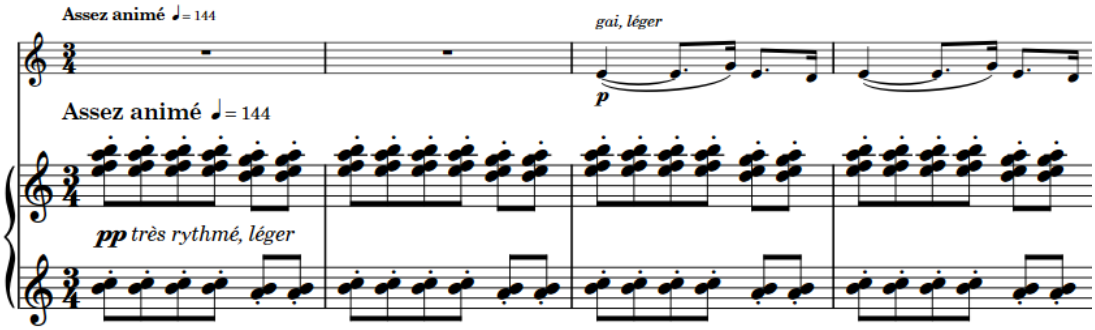
RELATED LINKS

Lengthening/Shortening stems on page 823
Notehead set designs on page 592
Pitch-dependent notehead set designs on page 595
Inputting notes on page 145

Tempo marks

Tempo marks indicate how fast music is played, often with a combination of text instructions and metronome marks. They are also known as “tempo changes”, “tempo indications”, and “tempo markings”.

A tempo mark can show text instructions, a metronome mark, or a combination of the two.



Tempo mark containing text instruction in French and metronome mark

Text instructions are traditionally expressed in Italian, such as *largo* or *allegretto*, but other languages, such as English, French, and German, have become widely accepted. The text instruction can express simply how fast the music is played, but can also suggest its character. For example, *grave* means slow but also solemn and sad, and *vivo* means fast but also lively and sprightly.

Metronome marks show the speed of the music, indicated in beats per minute, or “bpm”. Metronome marks can show a fixed bpm or indicate a range of possible or acceptable values.

Gradual tempo changes indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time. They can appear differently, for example, with/without a continuation line or with the text split into syllables and spread across their duration.

Tempo marks use a bold font with a large point size, so they are clearly noticeable on the page. They do not usually use an italic font.

In Dorico for iPad, tempo marks are categorized as system objects. Therefore, tempo marks follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects, which you can change on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.

By default, the tempo marks you input set the tempo for playback and MIDI recording, but you can change the tempo mode if, for example, you want to use a single fixed tempo when recording MIDI. Gradual tempo changes also affect the playback tempo, and you can change the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes, for example, if you want to reach a specific bpm at the end. If you do not input any tempo marks into your project, the default playback tempo is 120 bpm.

RELATED LINKS

Metronome marks on page 833
Gradual tempo changes on page 835
Tempo mark components on page 827
Input methods for tempo marks on page 213
Positions of tempo marks on page 830

System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Types of tempo marks

Dorico for iPad groups tempo marks into different types according to their function and effect on the music.

The following tempo changes are available in the Tempo panel in Write mode, but you can also input all types of tempo changes using the tempo popover.

Absolute Tempo Change

Indicates a defined change in tempo, and is often shown with a metronome mark.

Gradual Tempo Change

Indicates a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando* (slowing down) or *accelerando* (speeding up).

Relative Tempo Change

Indicates a change in tempo that is relative to the previous tempo, such as *mosso* (movement).

Relative tempo changes often include modifiers that qualify the change, such as *poco meno mosso* (a little less movement), and are not defined by a metronome mark. You can, however, set a relative metronome mark change as a percentage of the previous metronome mark that updates automatically if the previous metronome mark changes.

Reset Tempo

Returns the tempo to the previous tempo, such as *A tempo*, or a previously defined tempo, such as *Tempo primo* (return to the first tempo of the piece).

Tempo Equation

Indicates a change in the beat unit on which metronome marks are based. For example, if the time signature changes from 3/4 to 6/8, a tempo equation of 𝅗𝅥=♩ indicates the same metronome mark value that applied to the quarter note beat unit in 3/4 now applies to the dotted quarter note beat unit in 6/8.

RELATED LINKS

Metronome marks on page 833
Gradual tempo changes on page 835
Tempo equations on page 838
Input methods for tempo marks on page 213
Tempo panel on page 215
Tempo popover on page 213

Tempo mark components

Tempo mark components include text, metronome marks, parentheses, and approximate indications. Tempo marks can include different components in different combinations, depending on your preference or the requirements for different projects.

You can activate properties that correspond to the different components in the **Tempo** group of the Properties panel. You can activate one or more of the following tempo mark properties in any combination for individual absolute tempo changes:

Text shown

Shows text when activated, and no text when deactivated.

Metronome mark shown

Shows metronome marks when activated, and no metronome marks when deactivated.

Parenthesized

Shows metronome marks in parentheses when activated, and without parentheses when deactivated. This also applies to approximate metronome marks.

Is approximate

Shows metronome marks as approximate when activated, and absolute when deactivated.

Approximate appearance

Allows you to choose how approximate metronome marks appear, for example, **c.** or **circa**.

NOTE

This property applies specifically to approximate tempo marks, and is only available when **Is approximate** is activated.

Show equals sign

An equals sign is shown when the property and its corresponding checkbox are both activated. No equals sign is shown when the checkbox is deactivated.

NOTE

This property applies specifically to approximate tempo marks, and is only available when **Is approximate** is activated.

Components for gradual tempo changes

The following components only apply to gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*:

Poco a poco

Poco a poco text is shown immediately after gradual tempo change text when the checkbox beside the property is activated.

RELATED LINKS
Changing tempo text on page 831
Hiding/Showing tempo marks on page 832

Changing the type and appearance of absolute tempo changes

You can change which components are included in individual absolute tempo changes, and how they appear.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose components you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Tempo** group:
   - **Text shown**

- **Metronome mark shown**
- **Parenthesized**
- **Is approximate**
- **Approximate appearance** (only available when **Is approximate** is activated)
- **Show equals sign** (only available when **Is approximate** is activated)

RESULT

The selected tempo marks are changed to include the corresponding components.

When all properties are deactivated, tempo marks are hidden and indicated by signposts.

RELATED LINKS

Tempo mark components on page 827
Signposts on page 332

Adding poco a poco text to gradual tempo changes

You can add *poco a poco* text immediately after individual gradual tempo changes.

NOTE

You can also enter **poco a poco** directly into the tempo popover. However, this means the entry is treated as a tempo mark rather than a gradual tempo change, which changes the properties you can use on it.

PROCEDURE

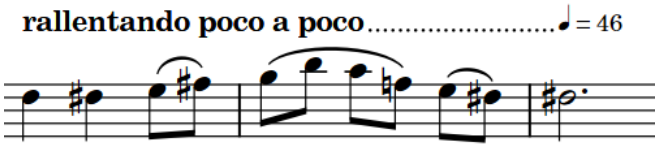
1. Select the gradual tempo changes to which you want to add *poco a poco* text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Poco a poco** in the **Tempo** group.

RESULT

Poco a poco text is shown immediately after the text in the selected gradual tempo changes.

Deactivating **Poco a poco (little by little)** removes *poco a poco* text from the selected gradual tempo changes.

EXAMPLE



Rallentando with *poco a poco* text

Positions of tempo marks

Tempo marks are placed above the staff and at the same positions as other system objects, because they usually apply to all staves. They are placed above notations such as slurs, ties, and octave lines, and are often aligned with rehearsal marks to ensure clear readability.

By default in Dorico for iPad, tempo marks align with either a time signature or the notehead/rest at the rhythmic position to which they apply. For example, if there is a notehead with an accidental at the rhythmic position of a tempo mark, it is convention to align the tempo mark with the accidental.

If a repeat mark occurs mid-system and is not treated as a barline, tempo marks are aligned with the repeat mark.

When a tempo mark includes both text and a metronome mark, the text appears first, followed by the metronome mark.

You can move tempo marks to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move tempo marks graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each gradual tempo change has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of gradual tempo changes. You cannot change the angle of gradual tempo changes.

If gradual tempo changes cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

Tempo marks are categorized as system objects in Dorico for iPad, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently, for example, if you want tempo marks to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS
System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Moving items graphically on page 351

Changing the end position of gradual tempo changes relative to barlines

You can change how the ends of individual gradual tempo change continuations are positioned relative to barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of gradual tempo changes with the text-only style.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes whose end position relative to barlines you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline interaction** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Stop before**
   - **Continue**

RESULT

The end position of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the style of gradual tempo changes on page 836
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing tempo text

You can change the text of existing tempo marks individually.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks whose tempo text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, enter the tempo text you want into the **Text** field in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The tempo text for the selected tempo marks is changed.

TIP

You can also change the tempo text by opening the tempo popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS

Tempo popover on page 213
Changing existing items on page 324
Tempo mark components on page 827

Showing abbreviated tempo text

You can show individual tempo marks with custom abbreviated text in some layouts, for example, if a long tempo mark extends beyond the page boundary in some part layouts but the abbreviated version fits within the boundary.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to show abbreviated tempo text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Select the tempo marks you want to show with abbreviated text.
3. In the Properties panel, activate **Abbreviation** in the **Tempo** group.
4. Enter the text you want into the value field.
5. Activate **Abbreviate** in the **Tempo** group.
6. Activate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected tempo marks appear with abbreviated text when **Abbreviation** is activated and **Abbreviate** is deactivated, or when **Abbreviation** and both **Abbreviate** and its corresponding checkbox are all activated. This allows you to switch between showing abbreviated/full text in different layouts without deleting your abbreviated text from the **Abbreviation** value field.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Hiding/Showing tempo marks

You can hide/show the different components in individual tempo marks without changing the speed of playback. This affects their appearance in all layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks you want to hide, or the signposts of tempo marks you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate the following properties in the **Tempo** group:
   - **Text shown**
   - **Metronome mark shown**

RESULT

When at least one of the properties is activated, the selected tempo marks are shown. They display components according to the properties that are activated.

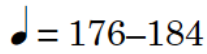
When neither property is activated, the selected tempo marks are hidden. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tempo mark as they still affect the speed of playback.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the type and appearance of absolute tempo changes on page 828
Signposts on page 332

Metronome marks

Tempo marks often include a metronome mark value. Metronome marks show the speed of the music, indicated in beats per minute, or “bpm”. For example, a bpm of 60 means one beat per second. The more beats per minute, the faster the music.



A metronome mark shown as a range

Metronome marks can be precise, such as ♩ = 176, or can indicate an acceptable range, such as ♩ = 152-176. They can also be shown in parentheses, which is useful if the metronome mark is intended as a guide rather than a fixed value.

By default, metronome marks appear as integers and do not show decimal places. If you input a metronome mark with a decimal place, it is rounded to the nearest integer. Metronome marks that you input in the **Time** track in Play mode appear as signposts by default.

The beat unit used in metronome marks commonly relates to the meter, for example, the metronome mark beat unit is often a quarter note in 4/4 but a dotted quarter note in 6/8.

In Dorico for iPad, metronome marks can appear as an individual value or as a range. Depending on the type and appearance of metronome marks, the bpm value can indicate a fixed tempo or an approximate tempo.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for tempo marks on page 213
Changing the type and appearance of absolute tempo changes on page 828
Tempo mark components on page 827

Changing the metronome mark value

You can change the metronome mark value of individual absolute tempo marks after they have been input, including changing the beat unit.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to gradual tempo changes or reset/relative tempo marks.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose metronome mark values you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Tempo (bpm)** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.
4. Choose the appropriate note duration and rhythm dot, if applicable, for **Beat unit**.

RESULT

The metronome mark value and beat unit is changed for the selected absolute tempo marks. This affects the tempo of playback, even if no metronome mark component is shown for those tempo marks.

NOTE

- By default, any decimals you enter are hidden and the displayed metronome mark value appears as the nearest integer. However, metronome marks always reflect their exact values in playback.
- You can also change the metronome mark value by opening the tempo popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS
Tempo popover on page 213
Changing existing items on page 324

Showing the metronome mark value as a range

You can show the metronome mark value of individual absolute tempo marks as a range. For example, you can use this to indicate that any speed within the given range is musically appropriate for the piece.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to gradual tempo changes or reset/relative tempo marks.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose metronome mark values you want to show as a range. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tempo range (bpm)** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The tempo range, expressed as beats per minute, is changed for the selected tempo marks. By default, metronome mark ranges use a dash separator.

NOTE

Depending on the values set for each property, both **Tempo (bpm)** and **Tempo range (bpm)** can be the minimum/maximum tempo in the range, as Dorico for iPad automatically arranges metronome mark ranges with the lower value first. However, the metronome mark used for playback is always **Tempo (bpm)**, regardless of whether that is the higher/lower value in the range.

Changing the relative tempo mark value

You can change the tempo of individual relative tempo marks, expressed as a percentage of the previous tempo mark.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the relative tempo marks whose value you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Relative %** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The tempo at the relative tempo mark is changed. For example, if the previous tempo was 100 bpm, and you change a relative tempo mark to 90, the new tempo is 90% of 100 bpm, which is 90 bpm.

Changing the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes

You can change how significantly gradual tempo changes affect the tempo in playback, expressed as a percentage of the tempo at the start of the gradual tempo change.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose final tempo you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Final tempo %** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.

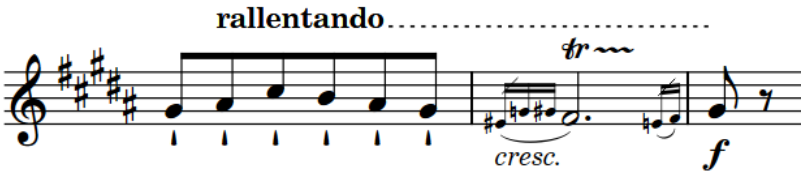
RESULT

The final tempo at the end of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

For example, if you change the value to 20 on a gradual tempo change that started at 100 bpm, the final tempo is 20% of 100 bpm, which is 20 bpm. If you change the value to 120 on a gradual tempo change that started at 100 bpm, the final tempo is 120% of 100 bpm, which is 120 bpm.

Gradual tempo changes

Gradual tempo changes indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando*, which indicates slowing down, and *accelerando*, which indicates speeding up.



Rallentando with dashed line

Gradual tempo changes are considered a type of tempo mark in Dorico for iPad, meaning you can input them in the same ways as for tempo marks.

Because gradual tempo changes have a different metronome mark value at the start/end, you can change the final tempo at the end of individual gradual tempo changes.

In Dorico for iPad, you can show gradual tempo changes with different styles, such as with a continuation line or with syllables spread across their duration. You can also show gradual tempo changes with different line styles, such as dotted or dashed.

NOTE

You cannot change the angle of gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for tempo marks on page 213
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 322
Changing the line style of gradual tempo changes on page 836

Changing the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes on page 835

Changing the style of gradual tempo changes

You can change the style of individual gradual tempo changes. Gradual tempo changes can appear as text only with no continuation line, text with a continuation line, or with the word spread across their duration.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gradual style** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **rit.**
   - **rit...**
   - **rit-e-nu-to**

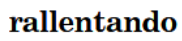
RESULT

The style of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

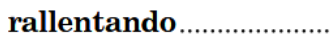
NOTE

Only gradual tempo changes with valid full text appear separated into syllables, for example, *ritenuto* or *accelerando*. Gradual tempo changes automatically have valid full text when you input them using the panel or select a suggested entry from the menu when using the popover. You can also change the text of existing gradual tempo changes, including adding hyphens manually to control how they are separated into syllables.

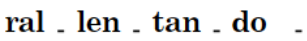
EXAMPLE



rit.: Text only



rit...: Text with a continuation line



rit-e-nu-to: Syllables in the text spread across the duration of the gradual tempo change

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for tempo marks on page 213
Changing tempo text on page 831

Changing the line style of gradual tempo changes

You can change the line style of individual gradual tempo changes whose style includes a continuation line.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of gradual tempo changes with the text-only style.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose line style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line style** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Solid**
   - **Dotted**
   - **Dashed**

RESULT

The line style of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

Lengthening/Shortening gaps and dashes in gradual tempo changes

You can change the length of dashes and the gaps between dashes in individual gradual tempo changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to gradual tempo changes with dashed lines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes with dashed lines whose dash length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Tempo** group:
   - **Line dash length**
   - **Line dash gap**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Line dash length** makes dashes in gradual tempo changes longer, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter.

Increasing **Line dash gap** makes gaps between dashes in gradual tempo change lines longer, decreasing the value makes gaps shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the line thickness of gradual tempo changes

You can change the thickness of dashed and solid lines in individual gradual tempo changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to gradual tempo changes with dashed and solid lines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes whose thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line thickness** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashed and solid lines thicker, decreasing the value makes dashed and solid lines thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

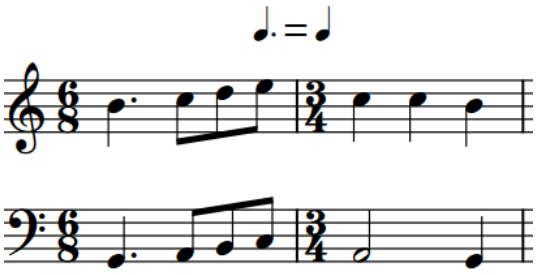
RELATED LINKS

Changing the line style of gradual tempo changes on page 836
Changing the property scope on page 128

Tempo equations

Tempo equations indicate a change in the beat unit on which metronome marks are based. They are often used to maintain a consistent pulse across multiple different meters.

For example, if the time signature changes from 6/8 to 3/4, a tempo equation of ♩.=♩ indicates the same metronome mark value that applied to the dotted quarter note beat unit in 6/8 now applies to the quarter note beat unit in 3/4.



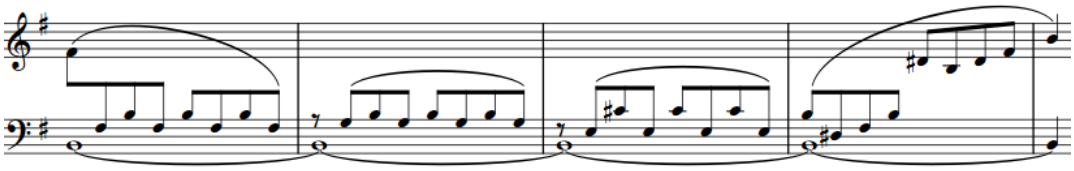
RELATED LINKS

Input methods for tempo marks on page 213

Ties

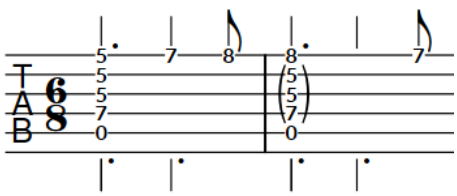
A tie is a curved line that joins two notes of the same pitch. When notes are longer than the maximum duration of a bar in the prevailing time signature, they automatically appear in Dorico for iPad as tie chains, that is, a sequence of adjacent notes joined with ties.

Each sequence of ties, whether they join two notes or ten notes together, represents a single note with the duration of all the tied notes combined. A performer plays the notes as one note, without re-striking, re-blowing, or re-bowing the note at any point within the rhythmic duration of the tie chain.

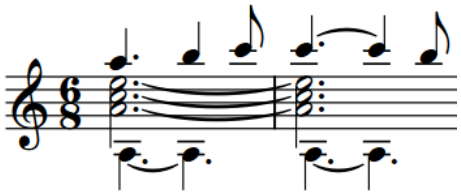


A tie chain across several bars on the bottom piano staff

On tablature, ties are automatically notated as round brackets around notes/chords in subsequent bars. When tablature is shown with rhythms, ties within the same bar are indicated with stems rather than bracketed noteheads.



A phrase on tablature with some ties within bars and a chord tied across two bars



The same phrase on a notation staff

In Dorico for iPad, most ties are created automatically. Rhythms are notated according to the prevailing beat grouping, which is normally set by the time signature. Therefore, notes that cannot be notated using a single duration are automatically drawn as tie chains. For example, if you input a dotted whole note at the start of a bar in a 4/4 time signature, it is automatically notated as a whole note tied to a half note in the next bar. If the time signature changes, tie chains are automatically adjusted to remain correct in the new meter.

NOTE

- In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains because Dorico for iPad considers each tie chain to be a single note. Any edits you make to tie chains in Write mode affect all notes in them, such as changing the pitch, but only affect the first tie in the chain, such as changing the tie style to dashed. However, you can still input notations, such as dynamics, in the middle of tie chains by activating the caret and moving it to the required rhythmic position within the tie chain.

  In Engrave mode, you can select individual notes and ties within tie chains and edit them independently.

- When you tie existing notes together, they might be consolidated into fewer or more notes within a tie chain, depending on the musical context, the time signature, and the position of the start of the note in the bar.
- Articulations can only appear once on each tie chain, either at the start or the end, depending on the type of articulation. For example, staccato marks appear at the end whereas accents appear at the start. You can change the positions of articulations relative to individual tie chains.

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 464
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Inputting notes on page 145
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 153
Inputting ties on page 171
Splitting tie chains on page 849
Time signatures on page 855
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Notes on page 591
Positions of articulations on page 420
Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains on page 422
Bracketed noteheads on page 601
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 410
Tablature on page 815
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 816
Caret on page 140
Moving the caret manually on page 144

General placement conventions for ties

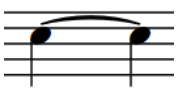
Ties join two noteheads together, meaning the ends of ties are positioned close to the noteheads to which they are attached.

Ties are curved lines, and the direction of the curve usually follows the stem direction of the notes. If notes are stem-up, ties curve downwards, and if notes are stem-down, ties curve upwards.

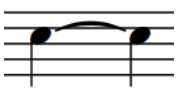
NOTE

If there are multiple voices on the staff, all ties in up-stem voices curve upwards and all ties in down-stem voices curve downwards.

There are two main conventions for the placement of the ends of ties relative to noteheads. One convention is to place the ends of ties outside noteheads, meaning above or below them, ideally positioned at the horizontal center of noteheads. The other convention is to place the ends of ties between noteheads, ideally positioned at the vertical center of noteheads.



A tie outside noteheads

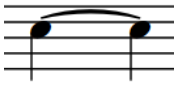


A tie between noteheads

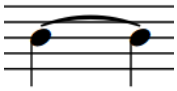
For both conventions, Dorico for iPad automatically positions the ends of ties as close as possible to the notes that they join while avoiding collisions with other notations.

The vertical placement of ties is also automatically adjusted in Dorico for iPad so that neither of the end points of ties, nor the apex of tie curves, starts or ends on a staff line. If this happens, it can cause the shape of ties to appear distorted, which makes the music harder to read.

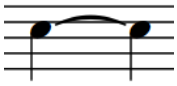
To avoid this, Dorico for iPad changes the vertical position of ties slightly, and makes small changes to the curvature of ties. These changes are small, but the placement of ties is subtly different depending on the position of notes relative to staff lines.



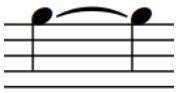
A tie outside noteheads



When transposed one note down, the tie appears with a steeper curve to avoid reaching its apex on the staff line.



A tie between noteheads, with the ends slightly above the vertical center of the noteheads to avoid the tie appearing too close to the staff line at its ends or apex.



When transposed up, the ends of the tie are now positioned at the vertical center of the notehead, as there is no staff line with which it could collide.

Wherever possible, clef changes should not be positioned in the middle of tie chains. Changing the clef changes the position of the tied note on the staff, which could easily cause a performer to misread the tie as a slur and play two different notes.

Ties can look distorted when they are very short, and can be overlooked.

NOTE

Slurs must not be confused with ties, which look superficially similar, but instead join notes of the same pitch to indicate that they are played as a single note. In that sense, ties are part of rhythmic notation, while slurs are considered articulation.

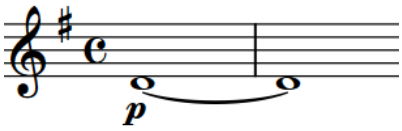
RELATED LINKS
Ties vs. slurs on page 841
Inputting ties on page 171
General placement conventions for clefs on page 489

Ties vs. slurs

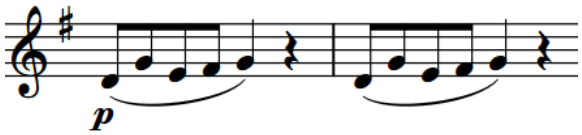
Ties and slurs look superficially similar but differ in meaning.

Ties indicate that a note should not be re-struck. They are used to join notes of the same pitch together. For example, ties can be used to extend notes across multiple bars. Although multiple notes can be included in a single tie chain, each tie in the chain only joins one notehead to the next notehead on the staff.

Articulations on tied notes only affect the attack at the start of the tie chain and the release at the end of the tie chain.



Two long notes tied together



Two phrases with slurs

Slurs indicate articulation, such as bowing or breathing, and normally group notes of different pitches together. Slurs can join two noteheads together with any number of pitches in between. They often indicate the shaping of phrases.

Slurs can also be used in conjunction with articulation. Unlike ties, articulation within slurs can affect the sound throughout the phrase. For example, staccato articulations on repeated notes of the same pitch within a slur indicate that notes should be played on a stringed instrument using the same bow direction, but stopping the bow between each note.

RELATED LINKS
Slurs on page 771
Inputting ties on page 171
Inputting slurs on page 195

Tie styles

There are different styles of ties available in Dorico for iPad, which you can use to indicate different meanings.

Solid

This is the default style for ties. Ties appear as tapered solid lines: thinner at the ends and thicker in the middle.

Dashed

Ties appear as tapered dashed lines. Can be used to denote optional or suggested ties, for example, in vocal music where some verses have more syllables than others and therefore require more notes.

Dotted

Ties appear as dotted lines. The dots are the same size and the same distance apart over the whole length of the tie. Can also be used to denote optional or suggested ties.

Half-dashed start

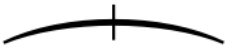
The first halves of ties appear as dashed lines, the second halves as solid lines. Used to denote that a tie was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.

Half-dashed end

The first halves of ties appear as solid lines, the second halves as dashed lines. Used to denote that a tie was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.

Editorial

Ties appear as solid black lines, but with a smaller vertical line intersecting them exactly halfway along their length. Used to show that ties were added by the editor and were not present in the source.



Changing the style of ties

You can change the style of individual ties. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, all ties are solid.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ties whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.
   - Any changes to tie chains in Write mode only affect the first tie in the chain.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Ties** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Solid**
   - **Dashed**
   - **Dotted**
   - **Half-dashed start**
   - **Half-dashed end**
   - **Editorial**

RESULT

The style of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the size of dashes/dots in ties

You can change the size of the dashes/dots in dashed/dotted ties individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to dashed/dotted ties.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dashed/dotted ties whose dash/dot size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.
   - Any changes to tie chains in Write mode only affect the first tie in the chain.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Dash/dot** in the **Ties** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashes/dots bigger, decreasing the value makes dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the size of gaps in dashed/dotted ties

You can change the size of the gaps in dashed/dotted ties individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the individual dashed/dotted ties whose gap size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gap** in the **Ties** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes the gaps between dashes/dots larger. Decreasing the value makes the gaps between dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Tie curvature direction

The direction of tie curvatures is determined by the stem direction of the notes/chords at each end of the tie, the number of notes in chords at each end, and the number of voices on the staff.

Tied single notes in single-voice contexts

If a single voice is active and a tie joins two single notes, tie curvature direction is determined by the stem directions of the notes at either end of the tie.

- If the stem directions match, the tie curves away from the notes and is positioned on the notehead side.
- If the stem directions differ, the tie curves upwards by default.

Tied chords in single-voice contexts

If a tie joins two chords, the direction of the ties is determined by the number of tied notes in the chords.

- For an even number, the ties are equally split between curving towards the notehead end and curving towards the stem end.
- For an uneven number, the majority of ties curve towards the notehead end.

Tied notes in multiple-voice contexts

Ties are positioned on the stem side and are curved as follows:

- For up-stem voices, ties curve upwards.
- For down-stem voices, ties curve downwards.
- For overlapping/interlocking pitches in multiple voices, the rules for tied chords in single-voice contexts apply. All notes in all voices are treated as if they belong to a single voice.

TIP

You can change the curvature direction of ties individually.

Changing the curvature direction of ties

You can change the curvature direction of ties individually, including individual ties within tie chains. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ties whose curvature direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.

- Any changes to tie chains in Write mode only affect the first tie in the chain.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Direction** in the **Ties** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The curvature direction of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128
Changing the shape/angle of ties on page 850

Non-standard ties

Usually, ties join two notes of the same pitch in the same staff. However, ties can also cross system breaks and frame breaks, clef changes, or time signature changes. These types of ties are all positioned automatically in Dorico for iPad.

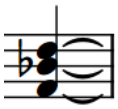
Ties can also join non-adjacent notes, notes in different voices, or notes in different staves together. In Dorico for iPad, you must input these types of ties manually.

Ties across system/frame breaks

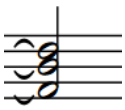
The ends of ties that cross system/frame breaks are automatically positioned in Dorico for iPad.

Their vertical position remains the same, as both ends are centered on the noteheads to which they are attached. Their behavior also remains the same, as selecting one note in a tie chain that crosses a system/frame break in Write mode selects all notes in the tie chain.

The horizontal space for the parts of ties shown to the left of notes at the start of new systems/frames may not be sufficient to show an ideal tie curve.



The start of a tie chain before a system break

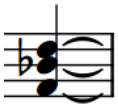


The end of the same tie chain after a system break

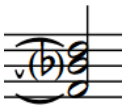
Tied notes with accidentals across system/frame breaks

The ends of ties for tied notes with accidentals across system/frame breaks are also automatically positioned.

As tied notes in Dorico for iPad are treated as one note notated to fit in time signatures, cautionary accidentals at the start of new systems/frames are not shown by default. If you choose to show accidentals beside notes in tie chains at the start of new systems/frames, the position of the notes is changed to accommodate accidentals. However, this automatic position might not leave sufficient room for the part of the tie to the left of the notes to be shown with an ideal curve.



The start of a tie chain before a system break



The end of the same tie chain, with a cautionary accidental in parentheses

Ties across time signature changes

Ties are automatically positioned between notes that span a time signature change. If ties crossing a time signature change are joining notes in the middle of a staff, the top or bottom of time signature changes are partially obscured by the ties. However, as ties are curved, the time signature is unlikely to be completely obscured.

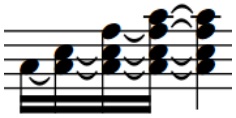
Ties across clef changes

Ties are automatically positioned between notes that span a change of clef. Ties across clef changes are not horizontal, as the same pitch is positioned differently in each clef.

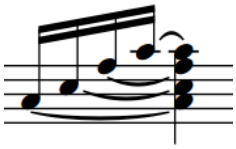
The result of cross-clef ties is likely to be visually and musically confusing, as they can be misread as slurs. In this case, consider moving the change of clef to before/after the tied note.

Ties between non-adjacent notes

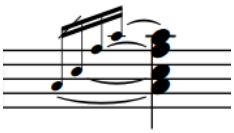
You can input ties between notes of the same pitch that are not directly beside each other and between grace notes and normal notes. This can be useful when inputting ties between multiple notes before a chord, for example.



Notes leading into a chord notated as a series of tied chords



Notes leading into a chord notated as tied non-adjacent notes



Multiple grace notes before a chord with ties between non-adjacent notes

Ties between different voices

You can input ties between notes of the same pitch in different voices belonging to the same instrument.

Ties between notes on different staves

You can input ties between notes of the same pitch in different staves belonging to the same instrument, such as the two staves of a piano.

Laissez vibrer ties

Laissez vibrer ties are short ties that indicate a note should be left to ring, and should not be stopped. They extend a small amount to the right of the note to which they apply, but do not connect to another note.

You can add *laissez vibrer* ties to any note. You can edit *laissez vibrer* ties in Engrave mode like any other tie.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting ties on page 171
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 410
System breaks on page 390
Frame breaks on page 391
Note spacing on page 393

Hiding/Showing laissez vibrer ties

You can add *laissez vibrer* ties to any note, for example, to specify which notes must not be stopped after being played but instead left to ring.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes on which you want to add a *laissez vibrer* tie. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Laissez vibrer tie** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

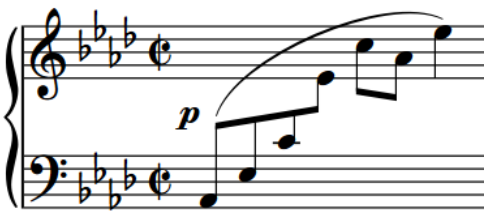
RESULT

Laissez vibrer ties are added to the selected notes when the property is activated, and are removed when the property is deactivated. *Laissez vibrer* ties are positioned automatically.

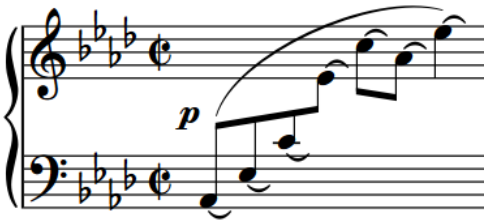
TIP

- You can edit the length and shape of *laissez vibrer* ties individually like any other tie in Engrave mode.
- You can assign a key command for **Toggle Laissez Vibrer Tie** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Phrase without laissez vibrer ties



Phrase with laissez vibrer ties

RELATED LINKS
Changing the shape/angle of ties on page 850

Deleting ties

You can delete ties without deleting the notes to which they are attached.

NOTE

Deleting ties from tie chains removes all ties in the tie chain. If you want to remove single ties from longer tie chains, you can split the tie chain.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the tie chains from which you want to delete all ties.
2. Delete all ties in any of the following ways:
   - Press **U**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors**.

RESULT

All ties in the selected tie chains are deleted. Notes previously in the tie chain remain at their rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 113
Changing the duration of notes on page 152

Splitting tie chains

You can split tie chains at specified positions, for example, if you want to change the pitch halfway through a tie chain or delete individual ties within tie chains. This does not remove any other ties in the tie chain.

NOTE

If you want to split ties because Dorico for iPad notated notes differently than you expected, you can change the default note and rest grouping settings according to different meters. You can also set custom beat groupings for individual time signatures.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, double-click the staff where you want to split a tie chain to start note input at that position.
2. Optional: Move the caret to where you want to split the tie chain.
   - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow** or click **Navigate Right** / **Navigate Left** in the secondary toolbar.
   - To advance the caret according to the note value currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
   - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Cmd-Left Arrow**.
3. Split the tie chain in any of the following ways:
   - Press **U**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors**.

4. Optional: If you want to split the same tie chain in multiple places, move the caret to the next rhythmic position where you want to split the tie chain and repeat step 3.
5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

The tie chain is split at the caret position.

RELATED LINKS

Note and rest grouping on page 464
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 464
Notes toolbox on page 113
Caret on page 140
Moving the caret manually on page 144
Keyboard panel on page 128
Fretboard panel on page 130
Drum Pads panel on page 131

Changing the shape/angle of ties

In Engrave mode, each tie has five square handles that you can move separately to change the shape and angle of individual ties. Some handles are connected to others, meaning moving one can affect the position of neighboring handles. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

A tie in Engrave mode

Handles on ties behave differently to slurs. For example, moving the left endpoint moves both the start of a tie and the other handles apart from the right endpoint. This allows you to change the angle and/or width of the tie without changing its overall shape. Moving the left control point causes the tie height handle to move but does not affect the position of the left and right endpoints or right control point. This gives you fine control over the shape of ties while ensuring that the end result remains curved and smooth.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the tie handles you want to move in any of the following ways:
   - Select a whole tie and press **Tab** to cycle through its handles until the one you want to move is selected.
   - Click the handle you want to move.
   - In the secondary toolbar, activate **Add to Selection** then click individual handles on multiple slurs.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:

- To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves slurs/handles by 1/8 space per press.
- To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
- To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them in any direction.

RESULT

The positions of the selected tie handles are changed, which can change the shape, width, and/or angle of the corresponding ties, depending on the handles you moved. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Ties** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding tie handles:

- **Start offset** moves the left endpoints of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves the right endpoints of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shape of individual ties by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected ties to their default positions.

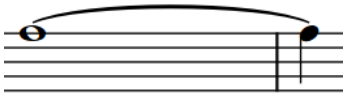
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

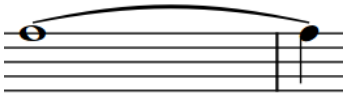
Tie shoulder offset

Tie shoulders affect the angles of the curves of ties as they taper towards an endpoint, as the tapered ends often approach noteheads at a steeper angle than that of a tie's arch.

Increasing the shoulder offset makes the onset of the curve shallower, whereas decreasing the shoulder offset makes the onset steeper.



A long tie with default shoulder offset



A long tie with increased shoulder offset

You can change the shoulder offset of ties individually by moving their control point handles in Engrave mode.

Changing the shoulder offset of ties

You can change the shoulder offset of individual ties. For example, you might want to change the shoulder offset of a few very short or very long ties in your project to improve their shape. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select one of the control point handles on each of the ties whose shoulders you want to adjust in any of the following ways:
   - Select a whole tie and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
   - Click the handle you want to move.
   - In the secondary toolbar, activate **Add to Selection** then click individual handles on multiple slurs.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag them in any direction.
3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the other control point handle on the ties whose shoulders you want to adjust.

RESULT

Moving tie offset handles further apart reduces the shoulder offset, while moving them closer together increases the shoulder offset. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Ties** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding tie handles:

- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shoulder offset of individual ties by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected ties to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 128

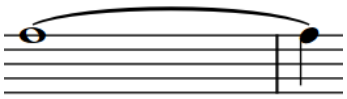
Tie height

The height of ties determines how far above/below their endpoints ties extend vertically.

You can change the height of individual ties in Engrave mode.

Increasing the height of ties makes them extend further from the vertical position of their endpoints, which gives them a rounder shape and means they take up more vertical space. Ties generally do not need to be as curved as slurs, as they join notes of the same pitch instead of arching over or above a range of pitches.

Where vertical space is tight, a balance must be found between how curved ties are and ensuring staves do not overlap.



A long tie with default height

A long tie with increased height

Changing the height of ties

You can change the height of individual ties, for example, to save vertical space on tightly-spaced pages. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the tie height (middle) handle of the ties whose height you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:

- To move them upwards/downwards by a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The height of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- To maintain a visually pleasing and symmetrical curve when changing the height of ties manually, you may need to move tie height handles to the right/left by a small amount, as well as upwards/downwards.
- Moving tie height handles to the right/left affects the shape of the whole tie.

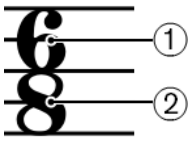
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Time signatures

Time signatures indicate the meter of music, and apply to all bars from where they first appear until a subsequent change of time signature. Meter describes the rhythmic pulse of music, and its division into beats and bars.

A time signature is made up of two parts: numerator on top, and denominator underneath. These are the same mathematical terms as are used for fractions due to their similar arrangement.



1 Numerator

Specifies the number of beats in each bar for the time signature. The duration of beats is specified by the denominator.

2 Denominator

Specifies the beat duration for the time signature. The denominator doubles for every halving of the beat duration: 1 is a whole note (breve), 2 is a half note (minim), 4 is a quarter note (crotchet) and so on.

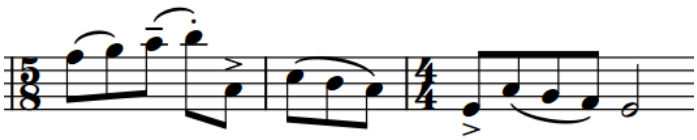
For example, a 4/4 time signature tells you the bar is made up of four beats, and each of those beats is a quarter note in length. A time signature of 4/2 contains four half notes in each bar, and 4/8 contains four eighth notes (quavers) in each bar. Both 3/4 and 6/8 contain six eighth notes, but it is understood that a 3/4 bar contains three quarter note beats, whereas a 6/8 bar contains two dotted quarter note beats.

Bars are rhythmic groups, divided according to the time signature, and they make following the music much more practical and easier to read. Notes are beamed differently in different time signatures for the same reasons.

Time signatures apply until the next time signature change or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

NOTE

- Beat lengths are fixed across all staves in your project, regardless of the time signature. For example, if you have a 2/4 time signature on one staff and a 6/8 time signature on another staff, then one quarter note in the 2/4 time signature equals one quarter note in the 6/8 time signature, meaning their barlines do not match.
- Dorico for iPad does not automatically add beats to fill bars when you input time signatures unless Insert mode is activated.



A 5/8 time signature input before an existing 4/4 time signature without Insert mode activated, leaving only three eighth note beats in the second 5/8 bar.

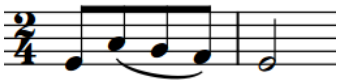
RELATED LINKS
Time signature styles on page 862
Pick-up bars on page 859
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Beam grouping according to meters on page 448
Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 207
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 464
Bars on page 424
Insert mode on page 161

General conventions for time signatures

Over time, the placement and appearance of time signatures has developed conventions to ensure that their notation is always understood. Dorico for iPad follows these conventions automatically.

Appearance conventions

Time signatures should fill the height of the staff. There is a risk they may not be noticed if they are smaller. The size of time signatures on staves with fewer than five lines should be the same as that of a time signature on an equivalent five-line staff.



Time signature on a five-line staff

Time signature on a single-line staff

Time signatures use a unique, heavy font that ensures they stand out against staff lines, and are instantly recognizable.

For some types of music, particularly film music, it is typical to use large time signatures that span several staves.

Placement conventions

Time signatures should be shown at the start of a piece and at the start of subsequent movements, if applicable, even if the music carries straight on. They should be placed after clefs and key signatures.

If time signature changes occur during a piece or movement, it should be placed immediately after a barline to avoid causing the duration of the previous bar to be different than the previous time signature implies.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 160
Large time signatures on page 860
Changing the size and position of time signatures on page 861

Types of time signatures

There are different types of time signatures, which can indicate various and complex meters.

NOTE

Dorico for iPad uses the definitions for meters commonly used in American English. These definitions, such as which meters are considered simple and compound, might be different in other languages.

Simple

In simple time signatures, each beat is divided by two into equal groups of notes. Simple time signatures can be simple duple, such as 2/4, simple triple, such as 3/4, or simple quadruple, such as 4/4.

Compound

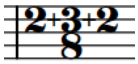
In compound time signatures, each beat is divided by three into equal groups of dotted notes, such as 6/8, which contains two dotted quarter note beats, or 9/4, which contains three dotted half note beats.

Irregular

Irregular time signatures, such as 5/4 or 7/8, cannot be subdivided into equal beat groups. Because the numerator is odd, these time signatures must be divided into unequal beat groups. For example, 5/4 usually contains a half note beat and a dotted half note beat.

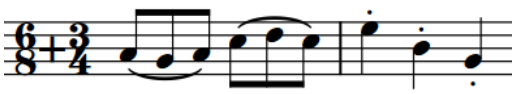
Additive

Additive time signatures show how bars are subdivided into beat groups. You can show beat group numerators for any type of time signature. For example, instead of 7/8, you could show an additive time signature of 2+3+2/8.



Alternating

An alternating time signature indicates a regular pattern that switches every bar between two or more time signatures, in the indicated order. For example, for a phrase with twelve eighth notes that needs to be emphasized 3+3+2+2+2, an alternating time signature of 6/8+3/4 might allow the two meters to be read more clearly.



Interchangeable

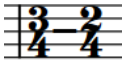
An interchangeable time signature indicates a set of time signatures at the start of the piece that can be used during the piece, such as 3/4–2/4. Unlike alternating time signatures, interchangeable time signatures do not require a fixed pattern; any bar in

the piece can follow any of the time signatures in the set without having to restate the time signature.

NOTE

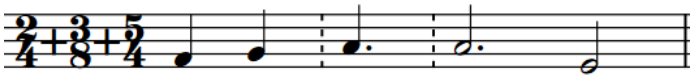
You must manually input the appropriate time signatures where you want them, as unlike alternating time signatures, there is no fixed pattern for them. Any time signatures you input that are specified in the interchangeable time signature are hidden automatically.

They can have different separator styles in Dorico for iPad, which you can change for individual time signatures.



Aggregate

An aggregate time signature shows two or more meters within the same bar, such as 2/4+3/8+5/4. Dorico for iPad automatically shows dashed barlines to indicate the divisions between the different meters, but you can also specify that you do not want to show dashed barlines when you input aggregate time signatures with the popover.



Open

An open time signature has no restrictions on meter, beaming, or beats. Any number of notes can be added, with any beaming. For example, open time signatures might be used for cadenza passages.

Non-power of two

A non-power of two time signature is one such as 5/6, which indicates five sextuplet quarter notes (crotchets) where the sextuplet overall equals a whole note (semibreve). Examples of time signatures like this can be found in the music of Adès.

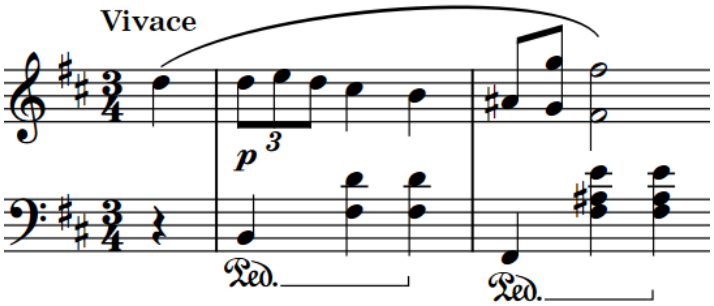
Some composers, such as Boulez, have written fractional time signatures. Dorico for iPad does not currently support these.

RELATED LINKS

Time signature styles on page 862
Large time signatures on page 860
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Time signatures popover on page 205

Pick-up bars

Pick-up bars allow you to include music before the first full bar. They are also known as “upbeats” or an “anacrusis”. Often, pick-up bars only comprise a few beats whose main purpose is to lead in to the start of the piece.



Pick-up bar of a single quarter note beat at the start of Chopin's Mazurka Op. 30 No. 2

Pieces that start with a pick-up bar have time signatures that are positioned at the start of the system as normal. However, the first full bar of the time signature occurs after the first barline and not before. Therefore, pick-up bars do not contribute to the bar number count. Bar numbers are counted from the first full bar in the flow.

Because pick-up bars are linked to the number of notes/rests in the music, in Dorico for iPad they are linked to time signatures and so you must input pick-up bars as part of time signatures. However, you can hide time signatures you do not want to show in the music.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Hiding/Showing time signatures on page 866
Bars on page 424
Bar numbers on page 435

Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars

You can change whether explicit irregular bars at the start of time signatures are defined as pick-up bars. This affects how notes in the bars are beamed and grouped.

Notes in irregular bars defined as pick-up bars are beamed/grouped backwards from the end of the bar, while notes in irregular bars not defined as pick-up bars are beamed/grouped forwards from the start of the bar.

NOTE

You must input explicit irregular bars and pick-up bars as part of a time signature, such as by entering **4/4,1.5** into the time signatures popover to input a 4/4 time signature with a pick-up bar containing 1.5 quarter note beats, or three eighth notes.

PROCEDURE

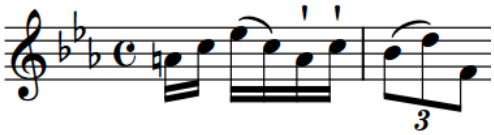
1. Select the time signatures or the signposts of time signatures starting with an explicit irregular bar whose pick-up definition you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Group first bar as pick-up** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

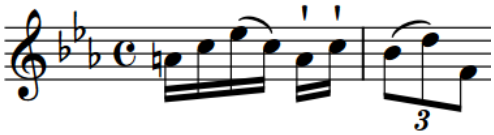
Irregular bars at the start of the selected time signatures are defined as pick-up bars when **Group first bar as pick-up** and its corresponding checkbox are both activated, and defined as normal irregular bars when the corresponding checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, Dorico for iPad uses internal heuristics to define them as either pick-up bars or normal irregular bars automatically.

EXAMPLE



Irregular bar defined as pick-up into common time



Irregular bar defined as normal irregular bar, not a pick-up

Large time signatures

Large time signatures are scaled-up time signatures that appear much larger than normal relative to the staff size. They can be helpful in orchestral scores, as the smaller staff size in such scores means standard time signatures are small and harder for conductors to read.

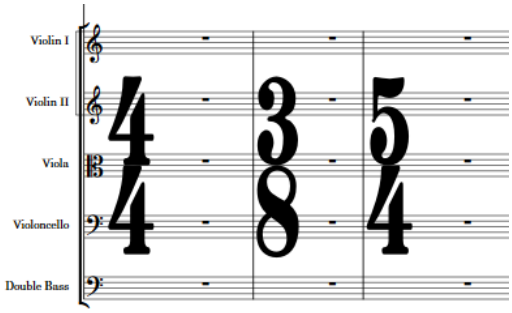
Large time signatures are also very commonly used in film scores, as conductors rarely have much time to prepare the scores before recording sessions. Having large time signatures makes changes in meter more visually clear on the page, especially when music contains multiple changes in meter.

In Dorico for iPad, you can show large time signatures at the following positions:

- Once per bracketed group
- Above the staff and at system object positions

Time signatures shown once per bracketed group

Instead of showing a time signature on every staff that is the same height as the staff, you can instead show a single large time signature on each bracketed group of staves. When shown once per bracketed group, time signatures are scaled up in size according to the number of staves in the bracketed group. The largest time signatures are shown on bracketed groups containing four or more staves. When shown on single staves, they extend a small amount above and below the staff, which is commonly used for parts for film music recording sessions.

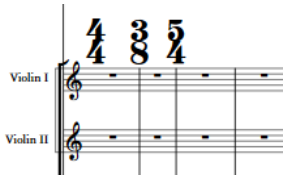


Narrow, serif time signatures shown once per bracketed group

Large time signatures shown on bracketed groups occupy horizontal space, which can be a significant amount when they are especially large and use the standard time signature design. Therefore, we recommend that you use one of the narrow designs in layouts that show large time signatures on bracketed groups.

Time signatures shown at system object positions

Similar to showing large time signatures once per bracketed group, you can also show time signatures only at system object positions and above the staff. Therefore, its positions in each system are controlled by the same options that control the positions of other system objects, such as rehearsal marks and tempo marks.



Normal time signatures shown at system object positions

Time signatures shown at system object positions do not occupy horizontal space, meaning it is less important to use a narrow font style. This also reduces the horizontal distance between notes either side of time signatures. Because of this reduced disruption to note spacing, this placement of time signatures has become popular in contemporary art music since the 20th Century.

When using the note denominator style for time signatures shown at system object positions, the note is shown to the right of the numerator rather than below.

By default, time signatures at system object positions are twice the size of normal time signatures and force other items at the same position to appear to the right.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204
Changing the design of time signatures on page 866
System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions on page 442

Changing the size and position of time signatures

You can change the size of time signatures in each layout independently, including changing their vertical position. For example, you can show large time signatures centered on each bracket in full score layouts but standard-sized time signatures on each staff in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the size of time signatures.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Time Signatures** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Time signature position and size**:
   - **Show on every staff**
   - **Show once per bracket**
   - **Show at system object positions**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The size and position of time signatures in the selected layouts is changed.

Showing large time signatures above the staff at system object positions means they do not occupy any rhythmic or horizontal space, whereas the other options do cause time signatures to occupy horizontal space.

RELATED LINKS

Large time signatures on page 860
Positions of time signatures on page 865
Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions on page 442

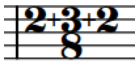
Time signature styles

Dorico for iPad allows you to show time signatures in a variety of styles. For example, you can show denominators as a number or as a note value.

Numerator styles

The numerator is always one or more numbers, and can either show the total number of beats in the bar as a single number, or show how the total duration of the bar is subdivided into beat groups.

Number numerator



Beat group numerator

Denominator styles

The denominator can appear as a number, as a note indicating the equivalent duration, or not appear at all.

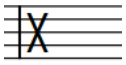
Number denominator

Note denominator

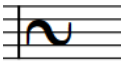
None denominator

Open meter styles

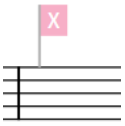
Open time signatures can be shown as an X, Penderecki's symbol, or be hidden with no symbol. Open time signatures with no symbol are indicated by signposts.



X open style



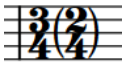
Penderecki's symbol open style



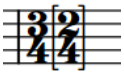
No symbol open style

Interchangeable time signature separator styles

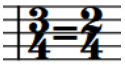
Interchangeable time signatures can have different separator styles. You can specify the separator style when inputting interchangeable time signatures using the popover and for individual interchangeable time signatures after they have been input.



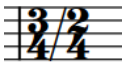
Parentheses separator



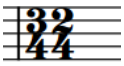
Brackets separator



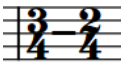
Equals sign separator



Slash separator



Space separator



Hyphen separator

RELATED LINKS
Types of time signatures on page 857
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 208
Time signatures popover on page 205
Changing the design of time signatures on page 866
Changing the open meter style of time signatures on page 864
Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures on page 864
Signposts on page 332

Changing the numerator style of time signatures

You can choose whether the numerators of individual time signatures show the total number of beats in each bar, or the subdivision of beats in each bar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures whose numerator style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Numerator style** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Number**
   - **Beat group**

RESULT

The numerator style of the selected time signatures is changed.

Changing the denominator style of time signatures

You can change the denominator style of individual time signatures, for example, if you want to show the denominator as a note instead of a number.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures whose denominator style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Denominator style** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Number**
   - **Note**
   - **None**

RESULT

The denominator style of the selected time signatures is changed.

Changing the open meter style of time signatures

You can change the open meter style of individual time signatures.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the open meter time signatures whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   In the Properties panel, **Open style** in the **Time Signatures** group is automatically activated for open meter time signatures.

2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Open style** in the **Time Signatures** group:
   - **No symbol** NONE
   - **X**
   - **Penderecki's symbol**

RESULT

The open meter style of the selected time signatures is changed. **No symbol** open time signatures are indicated by signposts.

RELATED LINKS

Time signature styles on page 862
Signposts on page 332

Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures

You can change the separator shown in interchangeable time signatures individually.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the interchangeable time signatures whose separator you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   In the Properties panel, **Separator** in the **Time Signatures** group is automatically activated for interchangeable time signatures.

2. Select one of the following options from the **Separator** menu:
   - **Parentheses** (..)
   - **Brackets** [..]
   - **Equals sign** =
   - **Slash** /
   - **Space** ' '
   - **Hyphen** –

RESULT

The separator style of the selected interchangeable time signatures is changed.

TIP

- You can specify the separator style when inputting interchangeable time signatures using the popover.
- Although they might look similar to interchangeable time signatures, aggregate time signatures behave differently. Aggregate time signatures are separated by a + sign, whereas interchangeable time signatures can be shown with six different separators but not a + sign.

  Therefore, although you can activate **Separator** and choose from the available options for aggregate time signatures, the property only affects the appearance of interchangeable time signature separators.

RELATED LINKS

Time signature styles on page 862
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 208
Time signatures popover on page 205

Positions of time signatures

Standard time signatures are positioned on staves with the middle staff line, or only staff line for single-line staves, passing through their center. Large time signatures can be positioned in the middle or at the top of bracket groups, or above staves at system object positions.

You can move time signatures to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They move according to the current rhythmic grid resolution and are positioned automatically to avoid collisions.

You can also change the position of time signatures in each layout independently, for example, if you want to show time signatures above the staff and at system object positions in some layouts but only once per bracket in other layouts.

RELATED LINKS
System objects on page 811
Changing the positions of system objects on page 812
Changing the size and position of time signatures on page 861
Moving items graphically on page 351

Hiding/Showing time signatures

You can hide/show time signatures without deleting them from your project. This hides/shows them in all layouts, not just the one currently open in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures you want to hide, or the signposts of time signatures you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide time signature** in the **Time Signatures** group.

RESULT

The selected time signatures are hidden in all layouts when **Hide time signature** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden time signature. However, signposts are not printed by default.

NOTE

- Hidden time signatures do not take up any horizontal space, so hiding/showing time signatures affects note spacing.
- You can hide/show signposts in the **View Options** dialog.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text objects, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Note spacing on page 393
Signposts on page 332
View Options dialog on page 120
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 204

Changing the design of time signatures

You can change the design of time signatures in each layout independently, including changing the font style used for them, for example, if you want to use a plain font for time signatures in full score layouts but the standard time signature font in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the design of time signatures.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.

3. Click **Time Signatures** in the category list.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Time signature design**:
   - **Normal**
   - **Narrow, serif**
   - **Narrow, sans serif**
   - **Plain font**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

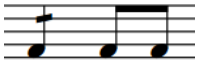
The design of time signatures in the selected layouts is changed. If you choose **Plain font**, time signatures use a different font style than the one used for the other options.

Tremolos

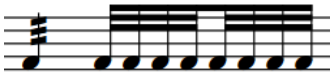
Tremolos are thick, slanted lines that cross individual stems or are positioned between multiple stems. They are used to indicate that notes are repeated, either individually or in sequences of multiple notes.

Using tremolo strokes instead of notating each notehead can save horizontal space and make fast passages easier to read.

The number of tremolo strokes indicates both how many times notes are repeated and how fast they are. In measured tremolos, for example, one tremolo stroke on the stem of a quarter note (crotchet) indicates two eighth notes (quavers) are played, whereas three tremolo strokes on the stem of a quarter note indicates eight 32nd notes are played.



Quarter note with a one-stroke single-note tremolo and its equivalent notation

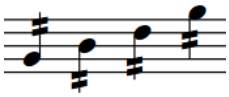


Quarter note with a three-stroke single-note tremolo and its equivalent notation

There are different types of tremolos:

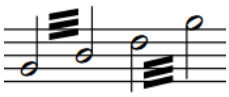
Single-note tremolos

Individual notes are repeated.



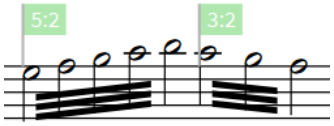
Multi-note tremolos

Multiple notes, usually two, are played in sequence, similar to a trill. However, trills usually indicate a fast alternation between two adjacent notes, such as G and A, whereas multi-note tremolos can be between any notes, limited only by the capabilities of the instrument.



Tuplet tremolos

Multiple notes in tuplets are repeat in the notated sequence.



Depending on the musical context, tremolos can be either measured or unmeasured. There is no visual difference between measured/unmeasured tremolos, so composers/arrangers often specify how they want tremolos to be played, such as an indication in the front matter of the score or as a text instruction in the score.

Measured tremolos

The number of tremolo strokes corresponds to a precise rhythm in the prevailing tempo and meter.

Unmeasured tremolos

There is no link between the number of strokes and rhythm. Instead, unmeasured tremolos are played as fast as possible, whatever the tempo.

Unmeasured tremolos often use three or more tremolo strokes, and can also be accompanied by a “trem.” text indication.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 300
Deleting tremolos on page 871
Tremolos in tie chains on page 869
Changing the speed of tremolos on page 871

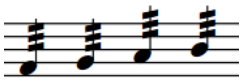
General placement conventions for tremolos

Single-note tremolos are positioned on note stems, whereas multi-note tremolos are positioned between the stems of two or more notes. When multi-note tremolos cross three or more notes, the tremolo strokes are positioned between all the notes.

Tremolo strokes are slightly thinner than beams, so that the gaps between strokes are large enough and the number of strokes can be instantly recognized.

Tremolo strokes should not collide with ledger lines or stem flags. Dorico for iPad automatically positions tremolo strokes to ensure such collisions are avoided.

Tremolo strokes within the staff are positioned so that they are at least one staff space clear of noteheads, and at valid positions relative to staff lines and staff spaces. This means that tremolo strokes might not move every time you change the pitch of notes.



The positions of the tremolo strokes on the first two notes and the last two notes are the same, although the pitches are all different.

In Dorico for iPad, the angle of single-note tremolo strokes is always the same, no matter the direction of the phrase. The angles of multi-note tremolo strokes are determined by the height of the stems to which the multi-note tremolos apply. You can change the angles of multi-note tremolo strokes individually by lengthening/shortening the stems at the start/end of the tremolo.

RELATED LINKS
Moving tremolo strokes on page 872

Tremolos in tie chains

By default, all notes in tie chains are shown with tremolo strokes when single-note tremolos are added to tie chains. Deleting tremolo strokes from tied notes removes tremolo strokes from all notes in tie chains.

In Dorico for iPad, tremolos are considered measured by default, so the number of tremolo strokes shown is automatically adjusted on subsequent notes in tie chains as required. For example, if an eighth note with two tremolo strokes is tied to a quarter note, the quarter note

has three tremolo strokes. This is because tremolo strokes function like beams, so two tremolo strokes and an eighth note stem flag is the equivalent of three tremolo strokes.

However, there might be circumstances in which you want all notes to have the same number of tremolo strokes, whatever their duration. You can also start tremolos partway through tie chains, or stop tremolos partway through tie chains.

You can change the number of tremolo strokes shown on individual notes independently in Engrave mode.

Changing the number of tremolo strokes on individual notes in tie chains

Dorico for iPad automatically changes the number of tremolo strokes on subsequent notes in tie chains according to their duration, but you can manually change the number of single-note tremolo strokes shown on each note in tie chains individually to represent your intended rhythm.

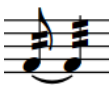
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads of the notes whose number of tremolo strokes you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Single stem tremolo** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
    - **None**
    - **One stroke**
    - **Two strokes**
    - **Three strokes**
    - **Four strokes**
    - **Buzz roll**

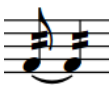
RESULT

The number of tremolo strokes shown on the selected notes is changed.

EXAMPLE



The default number of tremolo strokes in a tie chain where the second note is longer than the first.



The number of tremolo strokes on the second note has been changed to match the first.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the speed of tremolos on page 871
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 300

Changing the speed of tremolos

You can change the speed of tremolos after they have been input by changing the number of strokes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes with tremolos whose speed you want to change.

   The buttons with the number of tremolo strokes corresponding to your selection are highlighted in the **Tremolos** section of the Repeat Structures panel.

   NOTE

   Select single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos separately.

2. Click the button with the number of tremolo strokes you want in the **Tremolos** section of the Repeat Structures panel.

   For example, click **Two Strokes Single-note Tremolo** to input single-note tremolos with two strokes, or click **Three Strokes Multi-note Tremolo** to input multi-note tremolos with three strokes.

RESULT

The number of tremolo strokes on the selected notes is changed, which changes the speed of the tremolos.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the number of tremolo strokes on individual notes in tie chains on page 870

Deleting tremolos

You can remove single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos from notes separately without affecting the notes to which they applied.

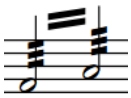
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose tremolo strokes you want to delete.
2. Click the appropriate buttons in the **Tremolos** section of the Repeat Structures panel for the types of tremolos selected:
   - **Remove Single-note tremolo**
   - **Remove Multi-note tremolo**

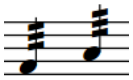
RESULT

The corresponding types of tremolo strokes are deleted.

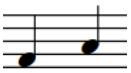
EXAMPLE



Notes with single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolo



Notes with multi-note tremolo deleted but single-note tremolos remain



Notes with both multi-note tremolo and single-note tremolos deleted

Rhythmic positions of notes with tremolos

You can move notes with single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos to new rhythmic positions in the same ways as normal notes. However, if you move multi-note tremolos across barlines, the tremolo strokes are deleted automatically.

You can move single-note tremolos to new rhythmic positions and across barlines without affecting their tremolo strokes. The notes are automatically respelled as tie chains if required by their new rhythmic positions and time signature, in the same ways as normal notes.

NOTE

If tie chains with single-note tremolos contain notes of different durations, the number of tremolo strokes on each note in the tie chain is different. You can change the number of tremolo strokes shown on each note in tie chains individually.

RELATED LINKS

Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337
Changing the number of tremolo strokes on individual notes in tie chains on page 870

Moving tremolo strokes

You can move tremolo strokes upwards/downwards graphically. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- You cannot move tremolo strokes to the right/left.
- You cannot move tremolo strokes rhythmically, as they apply to specific notes, but you can move notes with tremolos to different rhythmic positions. Notes with single-note tremolos can cross barlines; however, multi-note tremolo strokes are deleted automatically when their notes cross barlines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the tremolo strokes you want to move.
2. Move the tremolo strokes in any of the following ways:

- To move them upwards/downwards by a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Opt-Up Arrow** to move tremolo strokes upwards. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/8 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command, for example, **Cmd-Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected tremolo strokes are moved upwards/downwards. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Moving multi-note tremolo strokes also changes the length of the stems to which they are attached. You can change the angles of multi-note tremolo strokes individually by lengthening/shortening the stems at the start/end of the tremolo.
- When you first move tremolo strokes graphically, they may appear to move in the wrong direction or by a larger increment than you expected. This is because their positions are reset when you override those positions by moving them.
- The following properties in the **Beaming** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the start/end of multi-note tremolo strokes:
  - **Start Y offset** moves the start of multi-note tremolo strokes vertically by moving the end of the corresponding stem.
  - **End Y offset** moves the end of multi-note tremolo strokes vertically by moving the end of the corresponding stem.

  Tremolo Y in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated automatically when you move single-note tremolo strokes. It moves single-note tremolo strokes vertically.

  For example, if you move a whole multi-note tremolo stroke upwards, both stem handles are moved so both properties are activated. You can also use these properties to move tremolo strokes by changing the values in the value fields. However, you must select the noteheads rather than the tremolo strokes in order to see the relevant groups in the Properties panel.

  Deactivating the properties resets the selected stem handles, and therefore tremolo strokes, to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

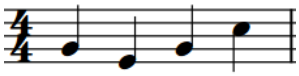
Changing the property scope on page 128
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 300
Deleting tremolos on page 871

Tuplets

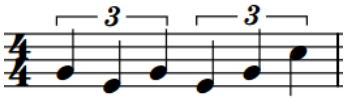
Tuplets indicate where a beat is divided into a different number of subdivisions than is usually expected according to the current meter. They can be used to fit more notes or fewer notes in a beat than usually exist in a beat, according to the usual pattern of subdivision.

Because these subdivisions are not standard but tuplet notes use the same rhythmic notation as normal notes, tuplets must be clearly marked to show that their rhythmic duration is different.

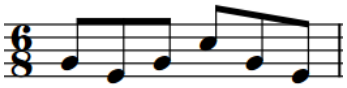
In the following examples, the triplet quarter notes are shown under a bracket with the number 3. The duplet eighth notes do not need a bracket as they are joined by a beam, which has a number 2 above it.



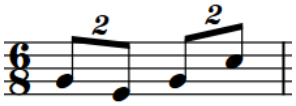
A 4/4 bar with the standard subdivision of four quarter notes



A 4/4 bar with a subdivision of six triplet quarter notes in the space of four regular quarter notes



A 6/8 bar with the standard subdivision of six eighth notes



A 6/8 bar with a subdivision of four duplet eighth notes in the space of six regular eighth notes

In Dorico for iPad, tuplets function like containers into which you can input notes of any duration, such as inputting a quarter note at the start of an eighth note tuplet.

When tuplets extend across barlines, Dorico for iPad automatically notates them correctly, such as a sextuplet appearing as two triplets. You can also allow tuplets to span barlines without division.

During tuplet input, tuplets are sticky, meaning that Dorico for iPad continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet until you stop tuplet input or note input.

You can show tuplets with different combinations of tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios. You can also show note symbols indicating the note value of the tuplet alongside tuplet numbers/ratios.

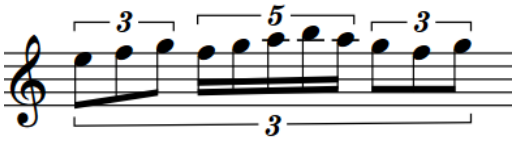
RELATED LINKS

Inputting tuplets on page 177
Tuplet brackets on page 878
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 881
Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines on page 877
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 337

Nested tuplets

Nested tuplets are tuplets within larger tuplets that are often used to create complex rhythms. In Dorico for iPad, there is no limit to the number of levels you can have in nested tuplets.

EXAMPLE



Nested tuplets

Inputting nested tuplets

You can input nested tuplets in new, empty staves and you can select existing tuplets and input nested tuplets within them.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **;**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then choose **x:y**.

   Dorico for iPad automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.
3. Optional: If inputting nested tuplets in an empty staff, enter the ratio for the outer tuplet into the popover. For example, enter **3:2**.
4. Optional: Press **Return** to close the popover and enter the outer tuplet.

   NOTE

   You can skip steps 3 and 4 if you are inputting nested tuplets into existing tuplets.
5. Press **;** to open the tuplets popover again.
6. Enter the ratio for the inner tuplet into the popover. For example, enter **5:4**.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover and enter the inner tuplet.
8. Enter or play in the pitches you want.

   Dorico for iPad automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.
9. Stop inputting nested tuplets in one of the following ways:
   - To stop the inner tuplet and continue inputting the outer tuplet, press **:** once.
   - To stop both tuplets and return to inputting normal notes, press **:** twice or move the caret with the arrow keys.
   - To stop note input completely, press **Esc**.

RESULT

The pitches you enter or play in are input as nested tuplets, starting from the caret position.

If multiples of the inner tuplet fit exactly inside the outer tuplet, you can continue inputting notes as the specified nested tuplet until you stop the tuplets manually.

If multiples of the inner tuplet do not fit exactly inside the outer tuplet, the inner tuplet stops automatically at the end of the last tuplet that fits in the outer tuplet. After that, the outer tuplet continues until you stop it manually.

NOTE

You can also input nested triplets by clicking **Tuplets** in the Notes toolbox when the caret is within an existing tuplet. However, you can only input one nested triplet at a time this way.

RELATED LINKS
Tuplets popover on page 179

Turning existing notes into tuplets

You can turn any existing notes into tuplets, for example, if you need to fit extra notes into an existing duration.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes on a single staff that you want to turn into tuplets.
2. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **;**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then choose **x:y**.

   The popover is automatically populated with a suggested ratio based on your selection.
3. Optional: Change the ratio in the popover. For example, enter **3:2** to input triplets.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The selected notes are turned into tuplets according to the ratio in the popover. For example, if you select five eighth notes and enter **5:4** into the popover, the selected notes become quintuplet eighth notes.

If the selected notes fit into a single tuplet of the specified ratio, only a single tuplet is created. If the selected notes do not fit into a single tuplet, as many tuplets as required are created automatically.

RELATED LINKS
Tuplets popover on page 179
Inputting tuplets on page 177

Turning tuplets into normal notes

You can turn any existing tuplets notes into normal notes, for example, if you want to turn tuplet eighth notes into standard eighth notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select just the brackets, numbers/ratios, or signposts of the tuplets you want to turn into normal notes.

NOTE

You must not select any of the noteheads in the tuplets.

2. Optional: If you want to retain all notes in the selected tuplets, press **I** to activate Insert mode.
3. Delete the selected tuplets in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the secondary toolbar, click **Delete**.

RESULT

The selected tuplets are deleted. All notes previously in the tuplets are unscaled and appear as normal notes with the same notated duration, for example, a tuplet quarter note becomes a standard quarter note.

When Insert mode is activated, all notes in the tuplets are retained and any subsequent existing notes are pushed to later rhythmic positions to accommodate the extra rhythmic durations required. When Insert mode is deactivated, the earliest selected tuplets expand and overwrite subsequent notes and tuplets.

RELATED LINKS

Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 881
Tuplet brackets on page 878

Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines

You can allow tuplets to span barlines, for example, in Renaissance music, you might want tuplets to span tick barlines without affecting their notation. By default, Dorico for iPad automatically splits tuplets over barlines so that both the durations of bars and the divisions in tuplets are clear.

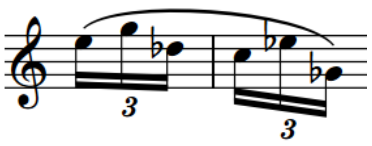
PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets or tuplet numbers/ratios of the tuplets you want to allow/disallow to span barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Spans barline** in the **Tuplets** group.

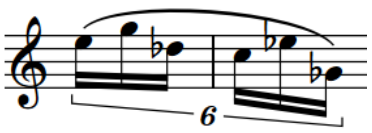
RESULT

The selected tuplets span barlines when **Spans barline** is activated, and are automatically split at barlines when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



A 16th note sextuplet across a barline, notated as two triplets



The same sextuplet allowed to span the barline

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can beam notes in the selected tuplets together.

RELATED LINKS

Barlines on page 428
Beaming notes together manually on page 450
Tuplet brackets on page 878
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 881

Tuplet beams

Tuplet beams join notes in tuplets that can be joined with beams just like non-tuplet beams. You can make the same changes to tuplet beams that you can make to any other beam.

RELATED LINKS

Beaming on page 447
Tuplets within beams on page 462
Beaming notes together manually on page 450
Unbeaming notes on page 451
Splitting beam groups on page 449
Changing the direction of partial beams on page 451
Changing beam slants on page 454

Tuplet brackets

Tuplet brackets show the duration of tuplets that are not joined by beams, such as triplet quarter notes, by showing the notes within the tuplet under a bracket.

You can change the precise positions and shapes of tuplet brackets individually in Engrave mode.

Each tuplet bracket has four handles that can be moved graphically.

The two upper handles set the position of the start/end of the tuplet bracket. These handles can be moved independently of each other to create angled tuplet brackets.

The two lower handles set the length of the tuplet bracket hooks. Moving either of these handles changes the length of both hooks.

NOTE

You can use properties in the **Tuplets** group of the Properties panel to edit individual tuplet brackets; however, the **Tuplets** group is only shown if you select tuplet numbers/ratios or brackets. It is not shown if you select notes within the tuplet, or notes within the tuplet and the tuplet number/ratio or bracket.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 351
Lines on page 710

Hiding/Showing tuplet brackets

You can hide/show tuplet brackets independently of tuplet numbers/ratios. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets you want to hide, or the signposts of tuplets whose brackets you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Bracket** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Hidden** 3
   - **Shown** ⌐3¬

RESULT

Brackets on the selected tuplets are hidden/shown. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tuplet, that is, tuplets with no numbers/ratios or brackets shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to hide indications of tuplets entirely, you might also need to hide the tuplet numbers/ratios.

RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 332
Hiding/Showing tuplet numbers/ratios on page 881
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the staff-relative placement of tuplet brackets

You can show individual tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios above or below the staff or between staves. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above** ⌐3¬
   - **Below** └3┘
   - **Cross-staff above** └3¬
   - **Cross-staff below** ⌐3┘

RESULT

The placement of the selected tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- Deactivating **Placement** returns the selected tuplets to their default placement.
- You can also switch selected tuplets between being above/below the staff or cross-staff above/cross-staff below by pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the rhythmic end position of tuplet brackets

You can change the rhythmic end position of tuplet brackets relative to individual notes individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose end position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **End position** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **End at right-hand side of final note** 
   - **End immediately before following note** 
   - **End at position of final tuplet division** 

RESULT

The end position for the selected tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the property returns the selected tuplets to your default settings.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 128
Moving items graphically on page 351

Forcing tuplet brackets to be horizontal

You can change the angle of individual tuplet brackets so that they appear horizontal. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose angle you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Force horizontal** in the **Tuplets** group.

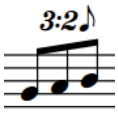
RESULT

The selected tuplet brackets appear horizontal when the property is activated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Tuplet numbers/ratios

Tuplet numbers and ratios are very similar: both indicate the number of equal notes included in the tuplet, such as 3 for triplets, but tuplet ratios also include the number of normal notes into whose duration the tuplet fits, such as 3:2 for triplets.

Additionally, tuplet ratios can include a note that indicates the duration of notes in the tuplet.



A triplet with a ratio and note value indication

Tuplet numbers/ratios help performers quickly identify the type of tuplet and how they must fit the number of notes indicated into the prevailing tempo and meter.

NOTE

You can use properties in the **Tuplets** group of the Properties panel to edit individual tuplet numbers/ratios; however, the **Tuplets** group is only shown if you select tuplet numbers/ratios or brackets. It is not shown if you select notes within the tuplet, or notes within the tuplet and the tuplet number/ratio or bracket.

Hiding/Showing tuplet numbers/ratios

You can hide/show tuplet numbers/ratios individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains. When showing tuplet numbers/ratios, you can choose a different type for each tuplet individually.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose numbers/ratios you want to hide/change, or the signposts of tuplets whose numbers/ratios you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Number** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **None**
   - **Number**

- **Ratio**
- **Ratio+note**

RESULT

The tuplet number/ratio shown for the selected tuplets is changed. If you selected **None**, the tuplet numbers/ratios for the selected tuplets are hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tuplet, that is, tuplets with no numbers/ratios or brackets shown.

Deactivating **Number** returns the selected tuplets to the default setting.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to hide indications of tuplets entirely, you might also need to hide the tuplet brackets.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing tuplet brackets on page 879
Changing the property scope on page 128

Changing the position of tuplet numbers/ratios

You can show individual tuplet numbers/ratios at either the visual or rhythmic horizontal center of tuplets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplets or the signposts of tuplets whose tuplet number/ratio horizontal position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Center** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Visual**
   - **Rhythmic**

RESULT

The horizontal position of tuplet numbers/ratios on the selected tuplets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- **Visual** positions tuplet numbers/ratios at the visual center of the tuplet.
- **Rhythmic** positions tuplet numbers/ratios at the rhythmic center of the tuplet, which might be visually off-center.

RELATED LINKS

Tuplet brackets on page 878
Moving items graphically on page 351
Signposts on page 332

Unpitched percussion

The term “unpitched percussion” covers all percussion instruments that are not tuned to specific pitches. This includes instruments such as bass drum, guiro, maracas, cymbals, and shakers.

Dorico for iPad provides comprehensive support for unpitched percussion notation, with flexible options for combining music for multiple instruments into percussion kits that can then be displayed differently in different layouts. You can also define percussion kits as drum sets, which changes the default stem directions of notes.

The different percussion kit presentation types in Dorico for iPad are layout-specific, meaning you can present percussion kits in different ways in different layouts. For example, you could present a percussion kit as a five-line staff in the full score layout but with single-line instruments in the percussion part layout.

You can also customize and create new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion. This allows you to indicate how notes are played by using different noteheads for different playing techniques on each instrument in percussion kits.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 884
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804
Defining percussion kits as drum sets on page 86
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 890
Showing brackets on noteheads on page 603

Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments

Percussion kits allow you to show multiple unpitched percussion instruments held by a single player at the same time in different ways. Multiple percussion instruments not combined into kits are shown on a single line that only shows the instrument currently being played by default.

One common type of percussion kit is a drum set. A drum set consists of a number of separate instruments mounted together on a frame, and is typically written on a regular five-line staff. Each instrument has its own position on the staff, and sometimes its own notehead type. Similarly, a pair of bongos is a percussion kit by default in Dorico for iPad, consisting of the two bongo drums, typically written on a grid with two lines: the smaller drum shown on the top line, and the larger drum shown on the bottom line.

Showing individual percussion instruments separately can be appropriate if a player only has one or two percussion instruments. However, combining percussion instruments into a kit gives you more flexibility over the presentation of music, which you can vary in each layout independently. Kits also give you greater control over the labeling of instruments.

If instrument changes are enabled on the **Players** page in **Layout Options**, Dorico for iPad changes from one instrument to the next, just as it does for pitched instruments.

NOTE

Kit instruments in player cards in the **Players** panel in Setup mode are colored green, whereas individual percussion instruments not part of percussion kits are colored the same light blue as all other instruments.

Percussion kits and drum sets

A percussion kit is a collection of unpitched percussion instruments that are played by a single player. Drum sets are a particular type of percussion kit that are often used in pop and rock music.

NOTE

In this documentation, we use “percussion kit” to refer to both percussion kits and drum sets.

In Dorico for iPad, you can present percussion kits in different ways, including as a five-line staff and as a grid. If you want percussion kits to behave as drum sets, you can define them as drum sets. For example, there are options on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options** for handling voices that only apply to drum sets.

You can create percussion kits in Setup mode. You can combine existing unpitched percussion instruments into kits and add empty kits to players, to which you can then add unpitched percussion instruments. You can also import existing kits you have previously exported and saved.

You can move percussion instruments between players without affecting any music already added to that instrument.

NOTE

If the instrument you want to move is combined into a percussion kit, you must first remove the instrument from the kit before you can move it to another player.

You can change individual percussion instruments like any other instrument. However, you can only change unpitched percussion instruments to other unpitched percussion instruments, and you can only change the percussion instruments in kits within the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Note input setup for percussion kits on page 164
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804
Universal Indian Drum Notation on page 901
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Combining individual percussion instruments into kits on page 81
Defining percussion kits as drum sets on page 86
Adding instruments to percussion kits on page 85
Removing individual instruments from percussion kits on page 89
Moving instruments on page 82
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion on page 886

Exporting percussion kits

You can export percussion kits as `.doricolib` files. This allows you to use kits again without having to create them from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel in Setup mode, expand the card of the player whose percussion kit you want to export.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Export Kit** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The kit is exported and saved as a `.doricolib` file.

TIP

You can later import the `.doricolib` file into other projects to reuse the percussion kit.

Importing percussion kits

You can import `.doricolib` files containing percussion kits, which allows you to use kits again without having to create them from scratch.

PREREQUISITE

You have added a new single player in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the instrument picker for your empty single player in any of the following ways:
   - Select the empty player and press **Shift-I**.
   - Click the plus symbol + in the empty player card.
   - Right-click the empty player and choose **Add Instrument to Player** from the context menu.
2. Click **Import Kit** in the instrument picker to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the percussion kit `.doricolib` file you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected `.doricolib` file is imported as a percussion kit. It is assigned to the player from whose card you opened the instrument picker.

Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion

You can find options for how notes in percussion kits are notated in each flow independently on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can choose to notate all notes in a percussion kit in a single voice rather than in multiple voices.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136

Moving notes to different instruments in percussion kits

You can move notes to different instruments in the same percussion kit after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps do not apply in layouts using the single-line instruments kit presentation type. In such layouts, you can cross or move notes to other staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to move to a different instrument in the percussion kit.
2. Move the notes to another instrument in any of the following ways:
   - To move them to the instrument above, press **Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move them to the instrument below, press **Opt-Down Arrow**.

RESULT

The notes are moved to another instrument in the kit.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the position of each instrument in the kit.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Changing the positions of instruments within percussion kits on page 88
Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes on page 893
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Changing the percussion kit presentation type on page 889
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 340

Notations on notes in percussion kits

You can add notations to notes and use different rhythms in percussion kits in the same ways as for normal notes; however, they can behave differently.

Articulations

You can add articulations to percussion instruments in all kit presentation types in the same ways as for other instruments.

However, in grid and five-line staff presentations, any articulations you add apply to all instruments in the same voice that have notes at that rhythmic position. For example, if both a snare drum and tom-tom note are at the same rhythmic position, and you add an accent, the accent is added to both instruments because they are both shown in the same down-stem voice by default.

You can see the accent applied to each note if you switch to the single-line instruments presentation type.

Tuplets

When working in the grid and five-line staff kit presentation types, tuplets are added to all instruments in the same voice.

You can switch to the single-line instruments presentation type to input cross-rhythms on each instrument separately. When you switch back to the grid or five-line staff kit presentation types, Dorico for iPad attempts to resolve the rhythmic conflicts.

- Conflicting tuplets: One tuplet is moved into an extra voice for the duration of the conflict.
- Tuplet notes in one instrument and non-tuplet notes in another instrument starting at the same rhythmic position: The non-tuplet note is displayed as if it were part of the tuplet. This is because the note onset is at the same position as the start of the tuplet, so it sounds the same as the original notation.
- Tuplet notes in one instrument and non-tuplet notes in another instrument that do not start at the same rhythmic position, or other non-tuplet notes that start part-way through the tuplet: Non-tuplet notes are moved into an extra voice for the duration of the conflict.

  NOTE

  Deleting a tuplet from grid and five-line staff kit presentation types deletes the tuplet from all instruments whose notes contribute to the same shared voice.

Playing techniques

You can input playing techniques, such as **+** for closed and **o** for open hi-hat, during note input and add them later to existing music in the same ways as for other instruments.

Playing techniques are only added to the instrument to which the note you select belongs, even if there are other instruments in the same voice.

Percussion stickings

Dorico for iPad does not yet have a dedicated feature for percussion stickings. However, you can use lyrics to represent percussion stickings in all kit presentation types:

- Grid/Five-line staff presentation types: Select a note in the instrument in which you want to show stickings.

- Single-line instruments presentation type: Input lyrics directly into instruments in which you want to show stickings.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting articulations on page 194
Inputting tuplets on page 177
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 183
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273
Inputting lyrics on page 292

Dynamics in percussion kits

Unlike other items, dynamics are not shared between the grid/five-line staff presentation types and the single-line instruments presentation type. Any dynamics added to instruments in the single-line instruments presentation type do not appear when you switch to grid/five-line presentations.

This is due to the complexity of combining a large number of different dynamics at the same rhythmic position, as allowed in the single-line instruments presentation, into the single position required for both the grid and five-line staff presentations. Therefore, you can add dynamics in the grid and five-line staff presentation types independently of the single-line instruments presentation type.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 226

Percussion kit presentation types

You can show percussion kits in three different presentation types, which can be different in each layout in your project.

NOTE

Dynamics are not shared between the grid/five-line staff presentation types and the single-line instruments presentation type. Any dynamics added to instruments in the single-line instruments presentation type do not appear when you switch to grid/five-line presentations.

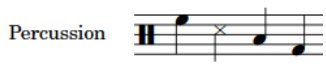
You can edit the appearance/structure of each presentation type independently in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. For example, changing the order of instruments in the five-line staff presentation does not affect the order of instruments in the grid presentation of the same percussion kit.

5-line staff

Kit instruments are shown on a five-line staff. You can determine which instruments are shown on each line and in each space of the staff. A single staff label containing the name of the kit is shown.

The numbers down the left-hand side of the editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog correspond to staff positions. For example, position 0 is the middle line of the five-line staff, position 1 is the space immediately above the middle staff line, position -2 is the line below the middle staff line, and so on.

Bold black lines show the five staff lines, while gray lines above and below the staff show nominal staff line positions. Each instrument is shown on its staff position.



5-line staff presentation

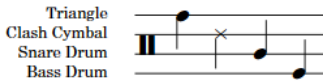
Grid

Kit instruments are shown on a grid, with each instrument on its own line. You can customize the size of the gaps between each line. Staff labels are shown for each instrument in a smaller font than normal staff labels.

The numbers down the right-hand side of the editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog correspond to the number of staff spaces between each instrument line. By default, all instruments in a grid are two spaces apart.

The order in which the instruments are listed matches the order in which they appear in the score.

Each instrument in a grid shows its own staff label by default, aligned vertically with its own line, but you can group adjacent instruments together and show a single label for each group.

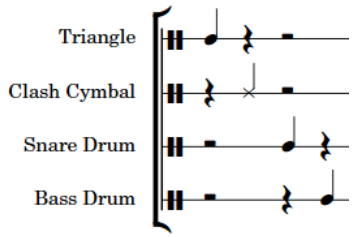


Grid presentation

Single-line instruments

Kit instruments are shown as individual instruments with their own lines. Normal-sized staff labels are shown for each instrument.

The editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog lists all of the instruments in the order in which they appear in the score.



Single-line instruments presentation

Multiple instruments held by the same player are vertically spaced according to the ideal gaps defined on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 884
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804
Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads on page 895
Override Percussion Noteheads dialog on page 892
Layout Options dialog on page 63

Changing the percussion kit presentation type

You can change the presentation type of percussion kits in each layout independently and independently of each other. For example, you can use a five-line staff in the full score layout

but a grid in the percussion part layout, and have two percussion kits with different presentation types in the same full score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-L**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the percussion kit presentation type.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar or by clicking and dragging across multiple layouts.
3. Click **Players** in the category list.
4. In the **Percussion** section, choose one of the following options for each percussion kit in your project:
   - **5-line Staff**
   - **Grid**
   - **Single-line Instruments**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The presentation type is changed for the selected percussion kits in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion kit presentation types on page 888

Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments

As well as using normal playing techniques, you can also use the design and position of noteheads to indicate different playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments and percussion kits.

You can indicate playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments in any of the following ways:

- Use playing technique-specific noteheads
- Position notes in spaces directly above/below the line on which notes are normally written
- Add articulations or single-note tremolos
- Add playing techniques in the same ways as for pitched instruments

For example, you can add open and closed techniques for hi-hats using the playing techniques popover, or by clicking the playing techniques you want in the Playing Techniques panel.

You can edit the set of playing technique-specific noteheads and staff positions defined for each unpitched percussion instrument in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog. You can then select different playing techniques for each instrument when inputting notes in percussion kits.

RELATED LINKS

Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83

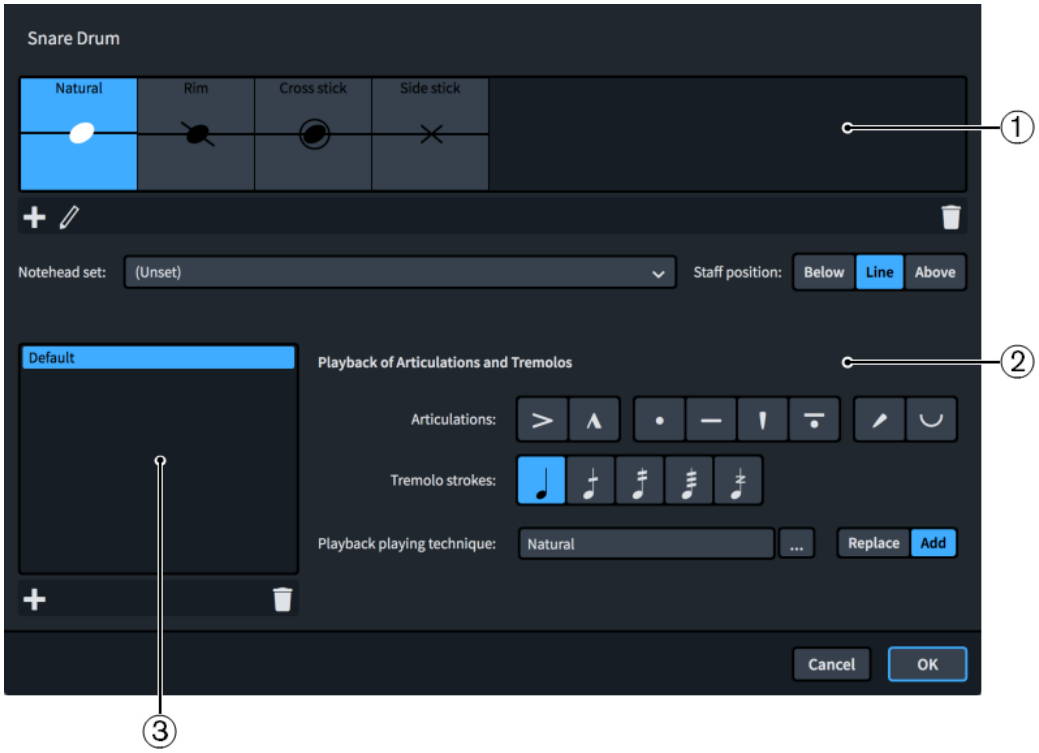
Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes on page 893
Exporting percussion kits on page 885
Importing percussion kits on page 885
Playing techniques on page 697
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273

Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog

The **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog allows you to edit the set of playing technique-specific noteheads defined for each unpitched percussion instrument.

You can open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in Setup mode in the following ways:

- For an individual percussion instrument: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.
- For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the kit instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit in the main editing area, and click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.



1 Playing technique-specific noteheads list

Contains the main playing technique-specific noteheads currently defined for the selected percussion instrument, showing the notehead set and the staff position corresponding to the playing technique as applicable.

You can add new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments. Normally, percussion instruments define at least the **Natural** playing technique, which is usually shown using the default notehead set.

2 Playback of Articulations and Tremolos

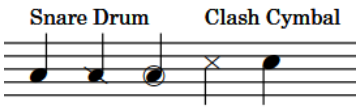
Allows you to define how combinations of articulations and tremolo strokes affect or override the playback of playing techniques.

For example, you can define an entirely different playing technique for a playing technique-specific notehead for when an accent is added to it.

3 **Overrides of articulations and tremolos list**

Displays any overrides of articulations and tremolos you define.

EXAMPLE



Three different snare drum playing technique-specific noteheads followed by two clash cymbal playing technique-specific noteheads

All of these settings are saved in the percussion instrument within your project, and you can export them from one project and import them into others.

NOTE

Overrides for articulations and tremolos are not currently reflected in playback, but this is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

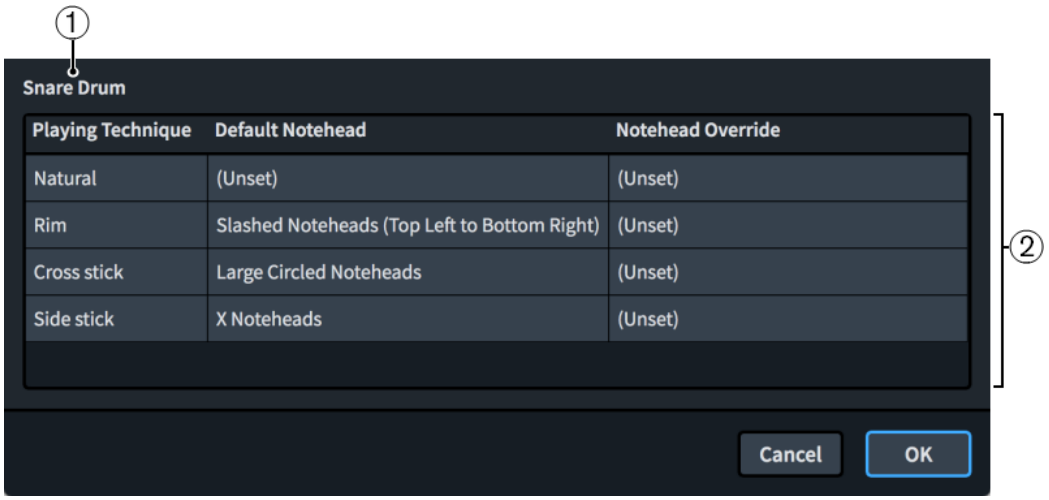
Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes on page 893
Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments on page 894
Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads on page 895
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Exporting percussion kits on page 885
Importing percussion kits on page 885

Override Percussion Noteheads dialog

The **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog lists the playing technique-specific noteheads defined for the selected instrument in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog, shows the notehead type mapped for each technique, and allows you to override those noteheads for five-line staff kit presentations only.

For example, the same notehead can indicate different playing techniques for different instruments. When those instruments are presented on the same five-line staff, this can cause confusion, so you can use the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog to disambiguate the notes for one instrument from another in five-line staff kit presentations only.

- You can open the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog by selecting an instrument in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog and clicking **Edit Noteheads**.



The **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Instrument name**

Displays the name of the percussion instrument whose noteheads are listed in the dialog.

2 **Playing techniques table**

Contains the noteheads for the selected percussion instrument, arranged into the following columns:

- **Playing Technique**: Displays the playing technique associated with the notehead in the corresponding row of the table.
- **Default Notehead**: Displays the notehead used by default for the playing technique in the corresponding row of the table.
- **Notehead Override**: Displays the notehead override used in five-line staff presentations for the playing technique in the corresponding row of the table. You can change the notehead override by clicking it and selecting another notehead from the menu.

RELATED LINKS

Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads on page 895
Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes on page 893
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888

Changing the playing techniques of unpitched percussion notes

You can change the playing techniques of notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments after they have been input, for example, to switch selected notes to the side stick technique and playing technique-specific notehead.

NOTE

These steps only apply to changing playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments.

PREREQUISITE

The unpitched percussion instruments whose playing techniques you want to change have at least two playing technique-specific noteheads defined in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose playing technique-specific notehead you want to change.

   NOTE

   If you select a single note in percussion kits, the current playing technique is shown above the rhythmic grid. It is not shown if you select multiple notes.

2. Cycle through the available playing techniques for the selected unpitched percussion instruments in any of the following ways:
   - To cycle upwards, press **Shift-Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To cycle downwards, press **Shift-Opt-Down Arrow**.

RESULT

The playing techniques of the selected unpitched percussion notes are changed. Their notehead design and/or staff position might be changed.

RELATED LINKS

Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 890
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 891
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Moving notes to different instruments in percussion kits on page 886
Playing techniques on page 697
Showing brackets on noteheads on page 603
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 596

Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments

You can define new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments individually, which are saved for that type of percussion instrument in your project. You can also export playing technique-specific noteheads from your project and import them into other projects.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in one of the following ways:
   - For an individual percussion instrument: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.
   - For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the kit instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit in the main editing area, and click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.
2. Click **Add Playing Technique** +.
3. Select the playing technique you want to create in the dialog that opens.
4. Click **OK** to add the selected playing technique to the playing technique-specific noteheads list.
5. Select the notehead you want for the playing technique from the **Notehead set** menu.

NOTE

Leave **Notehead set** as **(Unset)** to use the default notehead set.

6. Choose one of the following options for **Staff position**:
   - **Below**
   - **Line**
   - **Above**

RESULT

A new playing technique-specific notehead is added to the selected unpitched percussion instrument.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 273

Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads

It might be necessary to override the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads in order to disambiguate the notes for one instrument from another if they share a staff position in five-line staff kit presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel in Setup mode, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose playing technique-specific noteheads you want to override.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Select the instrument whose noteheads you want to override in the main editing area of the dialog.
4. Click **Edit Noteheads** to open the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog.
5. Click in the **Notehead Override** column for the appropriate playing technique and select a new notehead type from the menu to override its notehead.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The playing technique-specific notehead is overridden for the selected instrument in five-line staff kit presentations.

NOTE

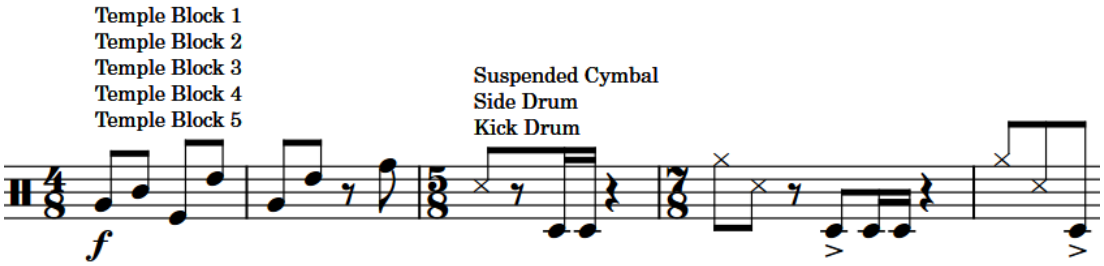
This does not affect the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads in grid and single-line instrument kit presentation types.

RELATED LINKS

Override Percussion Noteheads dialog on page 892

Percussion legends

Percussion legends list the percussion instruments in use when using the five-line presentation type. Percussion legends can include all instruments that are represented on the staff, or only show sounding instruments in a set range to remind players which instruments to play at certain points.



Two sounding instrument percussion legends

By default, percussion legends appear above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of percussion legends individually.

Percussion legends appear as signposts if there are no instruments sounding at their position, or when the layout uses the grid presentation type. Percussion legends do not appear at all in layouts using the single-line instrument presentation type.

NOTE

- Percussion legends only appear in the layout in which they were added. If you want to show percussion legends in multiple layouts, you must add them in each layout.
- You can hide/show signposts in the **View Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 326
Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion on page 886
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804
View Options dialog on page 120

Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations

You can add percussion legends at specific rhythmic positions to indicate the instruments in the kit. Percussion legends can show all instruments in the kit or only instruments sounding within the specified range.

NOTE

Percussion legends only appear when kits use the five-line staff percussion kit presentation type and in the layout in which they were added. If you want to show percussion legends in multiple layouts, you must add them in each layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - An item on the staff at the rhythmic position where you want to add a percussion legend for all instruments.

- The range of notes/items for which you want to show a percussion legend for sounding instruments.

2. Add a percussion legend in one of the following ways:
   - To add a percussion legend for all instruments, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Percussion** > **Legend for All Instruments**.
   - To add a percussion legend only for sounding instruments, click **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choose **Percussion** > **Legend for Sounding Instruments**.

RESULT

A percussion legend is added to the kit. It appears above the staff when the kit uses the five-line staff presentation. It lists instruments, either all instruments or just instruments with notes within the selected range, in the order in which they appear in the five-line staff, from highest down to lowest.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Editing percussion legend text on page 899

Changing the sounding instrument percussion legend range

You can change the rhythmic range of sounding instrument percussion legends to include more/fewer instruments in the legend, as they only show the instruments playing at the rhythmic positions included in the range.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the sounding instrument percussion legend whose range you want to change.
2. Change the range in any of the following ways, according to the current rhythmic grid resolution:
   - To move the whole range to the right, press **Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move the whole range to the left, press **Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To lengthen the range, press **Shift-Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten the range, press **Shift-Opt-Left Arrow**.

     NOTE

     Key commands lengthen/shorten items by moving their end only.

   - Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

RESULT

The rhythmic range covered by the selected sounding instrument percussion legend is changed according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

The instruments included in the percussion legend are automatically updated to reflect the instruments playing within the range.

Changing the percussion legend type

You can change the type of percussion legends so they show all instruments or only sounding instruments in five-line staff presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Legend type** in the **Percussion Legends** group.

   NOTE

   The property is already activated for sounding instrument percussion legends.

3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Legend**
   - **Sounding instruments**

RESULT

The legend type of the selected legends is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion legends on page 896
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations on page 896

Showing short instrument names in percussion legends

Percussion legends use full instrument names by default, but you can choose to use short names to save space.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends whose instrument name lengths you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Use short names** in the **Percussion Legends** group.

RESULT

Short instrument names are shown in the selected percussion legends.

Deactivating **Use short names** returns the selected percussion legends to showing full instrument names.

RELATED LINKS

Staff labels for percussion kits on page 804
Percussion legends on page 896
Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations on page 896

Editing percussion legend text

By default, percussion legends show the instrument names of percussion instruments in five-line staff presentations, stacked vertically. You can change the text shown in percussion legends to show custom text.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the percussion legends you want to edit.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Percussion Legends** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected percussion legends is changed.

Voices in percussion kits

Dorico for iPad automatically combines music into a smaller number of voices when multiple percussion instruments are presented in a five-line staff or as a grid, even if they contain different rhythms. By default, music is combined into one up-stem voice and one down-stem voice.

Alternatively, you can choose to notate all notes in a percussion kit in a single voice when the kit is defined as a drum set on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**. This convention is used less frequently for orchestral percussion.

You can also override this option for individual notes and whole instruments in individual percussion kits.

Notes in the same voice cannot be notated using different durations and are notated using ties by default instead. You can eliminate the use of ties by choosing to truncate longer notes so that only their onsets appear on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

If one of the instruments in a percussion kit has a tuplet rhythm, other instruments can share the voice if their notation is compatible, such as if the tuplet structure is the same, or if they have a single note that coincides with the start of the tuplet. In this case, the single non-tuplet note is notated as the same duration of the first note of the tuplet.

If the music of the different instruments in the same voice is incompatible, Dorico for iPad dynamically creates another voice and notates the remaining music in that voice until the music is compatible again.

RELATED LINKS

Notations on notes in percussion kits on page 887
Defining percussion kits as drum sets on page 86
Adding slash voices to percussion kits on page 910

Changing the voice of individual notes in percussion kits

You can override the default voice for individual notes in percussion kits, including drum sets.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose voice you want to override. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Percussion** > **Change Voice** > **[Voice]**.

   For example, to change notes to the second down-stem voice, choose **Percussion** > **Change Voice** > **Down-stem Voice 2**.

RESULT

The voice of the selected notes is changed, independently of the default voice for their instrument and independently of your setting for voices in drum sets.

TIP

You can reset the voice of individual notes by selecting them, then clicking **Context Menu** ··· in the secondary toolbar and choosing **Percussion** > **Change Voice** > **Reset Note Destination Voice**.

RELATED LINKS

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Specifying the stem direction/voice of instruments in percussion kits

You can specify the stem direction for each instrument in individual percussion kits. You can also set which voice they are in, allowing you to control which instruments share voices in percussion kits.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel in Setup mode, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose instrument stem directions and voices you want to specify.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. In the dialog, select an instrument whose stem direction and voice you want to specify.
4. Choose one of the following stem directions for **Stem direction and voice**:
   - **Up-stem**
   - **Down-stem**
5. Specify a voice by changing the value for **Stem direction and voice**.

   NOTE

   You do not have to change the voice number if you are switching between up- and down-stem voices as the number corresponds to the voice number for each stem direction.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

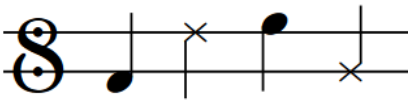
The default stem direction and voice of the selected instrument is changed.

Universal Indian Drum Notation

Dorico for iPad supports the Universal Indian Drum Notation system developed by Keda Music Ltd.

Universal Indian Drum Notation has been designed primarily for tabla, but can also be applied to other Indian drums with two heads, such as nagara, dhol, dholak, mridangam, and pakhawaj.

Indian drum clefs are automatically shown on the staves of tabla instruments and tabla percussion kits, but you can also input Indian drum clefs manually.



RELATED LINKS

Adding players on page 68
Adding instruments to players on page 79
Inputting clefs with the panel on page 242
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 884

Voices

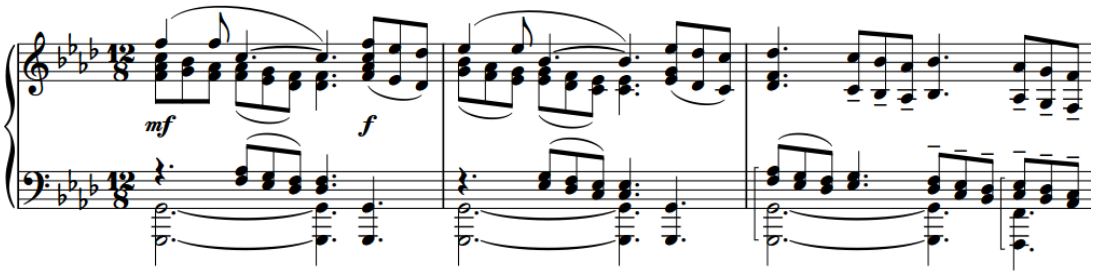
For many instruments, such as flute or trombone, each staff usually contains a single musical line in a single voice that is read from left to right along the staff. When multiple, independent lines must be shown in a single staff, each line can be a separate voice.

One common use for showing multiple voices in a single staff is in vocal music, when the soprano and alto lines share a single staff and the tenor and bass lines share another staff. Showing each vocal line in its own voice helps to separate the lines, making the music easier to read and making the shape of each melodic line clear.

In Dorico for iPad, notes belong to voices. You can create as many voices as you like on each pitched instrument staff. Each voice has its own color, which you can see if you show voice colors. This can help you to keep track of which notes are in which voices if there are multiple overlapping musical lines in your project.

Voices in Dorico for iPad are divided into up-stem voices and down-stem voices. Stems of notes in up-stem voices point upwards, while stems of notes in down-stem voices point downwards. However, in bars where only one voice contains notes, stem directions are automatically changed to the directions they would have if there were only one voice on the staff. By default, the first voice on the staff is up-stem.

Following most notation conventions, rests are shown in bars for all voices that have notes in the bar. If two or more voices have a rest of the same rhythmic duration at the same rhythmic position, that rest is consolidated by default: instead of showing two identical rests, only one is shown.



An excerpt of piano music with two voices active on each staff

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157
Voices in percussion kits on page 899
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 181
Stem direction on page 819
Voice column index on page 905
Unused voices on page 907
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 764
Moving rests vertically on page 765
Deleting rests on page 766

Per-flow notation options for voices

You can find options controlling how notes in multiple voices are positioned in each flow independently on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.

The options on this page allow you to change the position and order of notes in multiple-voice contexts, and choose when noteheads in different voices can overlap.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Per-flow notation options for rests on page 765

Hiding/Showing voice colors

You can show notes in different colors according to their voice, for example, to check which notes are in which voice. When voice colors are hidden, all notes appear black by default.

Voice colors are randomly assigned, meaning colors do not refer to specific voices. Voice colors are considered annotations and are not printed by default.

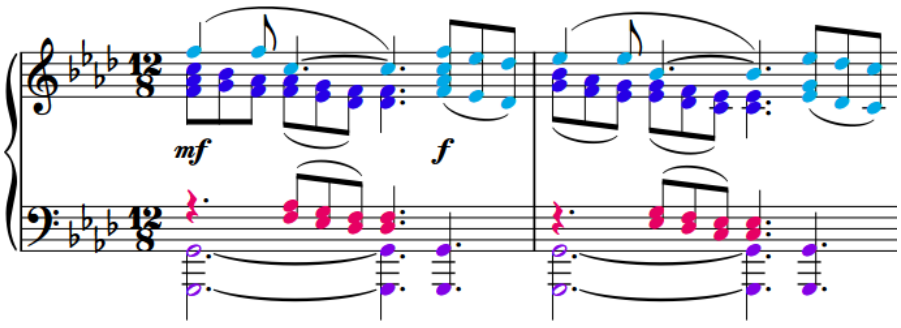
PROCEDURE

1. In the secondary toolbar, click **View Options** to open the **View Options** dialog.
2. Choose one of the following options for **Note and rest colors**:
   - To show voice colors, choose **Voice Colors**.
   - To hide voice colors but show colors for notes out of range, choose **Notes Out of Range**.
   - To hide all notes and rest colors, choose **None**.
3. Click **Close**.

RESULT

Voice colors are hidden/shown in the corresponding view type.

EXAMPLE



Voice colors shown

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If showing voice colors reveals some notes are not in the voice you want, you can change their voice.

RELATED LINKS
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118
View Options dialog on page 120
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341
Swapping the contents of voices on page 342
Stem direction on page 819

Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap

You can allow/disallow the noteheads of unison notes in opposing voices to overlap in different contexts in each flow independently. For example, if you want to allow notes with and without rhythm dots to overlap but disallow half notes to overlap with shorter notes.

PROCEDURE

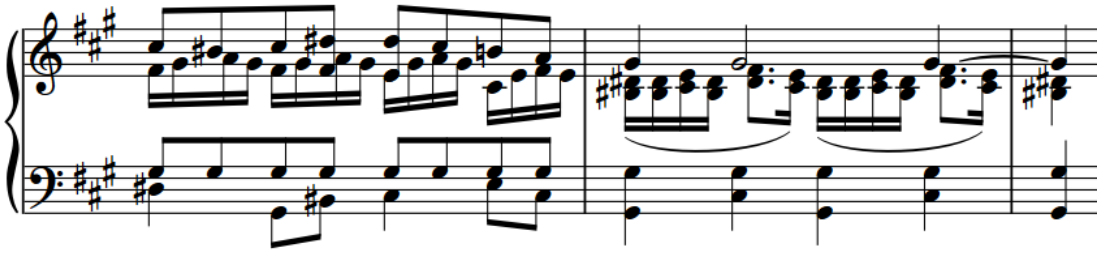
1. Open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Cmd-Shift-N**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Application Menu** and choose **Notation Options**.
2. Click **Voices** in the category list.
3. In the **Ordering Multiple Voices** section, choose one of the following options for **Unison half notes (minims) and shorter notes in opposing voices**:
   - **Allow noteheads to overlap**
   - **Do not allow noteheads to overlap**
4. Choose one of the following options for **Unison dotted and undotted notes in opposing voices**:
   - **Allow noteheads to overlap**
   - **Do not allow noteheads to overlap**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Voice column index on page 905
Swapping the order of voices on page 906
Changing the voice column of notes on page 907
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157

Note positions in multiple-voice contexts

Notes are usually placed directly above each other and at the same horizontal position, so that it is immediately clear which notes are played together. However, the horizontal alignment of notes can be different in multiple-voice contexts.

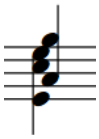
There are circumstances when some notes must be positioned slightly to one side in a different voice column to ensure the division of notes across the voices is clear. For example, when there are three or more voices in a single staff or when notes in two voices are a second interval apart.



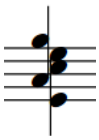
A phrase with multiple voice columns for some beats on the top staff

Interlocking notes in different voices can be positioned in two ways:

1. Notehead to notehead, which allows noteheads to overlap partially. This voice order often takes up less horizontal space than positioning notes stem to stem, as notes can overlap.



2. Stem to stem, which does not allow noteheads to overlap. This voice order keeps notes in different voices separate.



Dorico for iPad positions notes by default with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and to maintain the clarity of the rhythm. The order and position of notes in different voices is also automatically adjusted so that each rhythmic position uses as little horizontal space as possible, while remaining clear and legible.

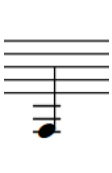
- You can change the default order of notes in multiple voices project-wide on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.
- You can manually swap the order in which opposing voices are positioned horizontally and change the voice column of individual notes.

RELATED LINKS
Stem direction on page 819
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 755
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 764
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 903
Notation Options dialog on page 136
Note spacing on page 393

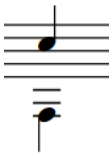
Voice column index

The voice column index is used to determine the positions of notes when multiple columns are needed, for example, when notes in two voices are a second interval apart and therefore cannot be placed directly above each other vertically, instead they must partially overlap.

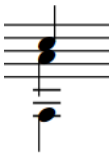
Dorico for iPad automatically changes the voice column of voices according to the number of active voices and the pitch of notes. Dorico for iPad prefers showing voices with the widest pitch range between them on the left of the rhythmic position and voices with narrower pitch ranges to the right, as this produces the most balanced result, especially when there are multiple accidentals.



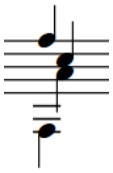
One voice



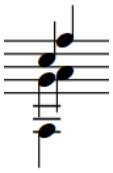
Two voices vertically aligned in the same voice column



Three voices all still vertically aligned



Four voices with two voice columns



Five voices with two voice columns

Swapping the order of voices

Dorico for iPad automatically positions notes with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and maintain the clarity of the rhythm. You can manually swap the order in which opposing voices are positioned horizontally. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Voices** > **Swap Voice Order**.

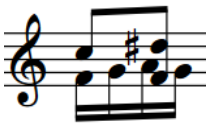
RESULT

The voice order of the selected notes is changed by changing their voice column index. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

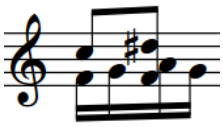
NOTE

If you want to revert voices to their default voice order, we recommend that you reset their voice column by deactivating **Voice column index** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel instead of swapping their voice order again.

EXAMPLE



Interlocking notes in opposing voices positioned notehead to notehead.



Interlocking notes in opposing voices positioned stem to stem.

RELATED LINKS

Stem direction on page 819
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 764
Changing the property scope on page 128

Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Changing the voice column of notes

You can change the voice column, and therefore the horizontal order, of all notes in selected voices at individual rhythmic positions, independently of your per-flow settings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select at least one note in each voice whose voice column you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Voice column index** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The voice column of the selected voices is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the property returns the selected voice to their default order according to your per-flow settings.

TIP

The **Voice column index** property in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is automatically activated when you swap the order of voices manually.

RELATED LINKS

Per-flow notation options for voices on page 903
Note positions in multiple-voice contexts on page 904
Voice column index on page 905

Unused voices

An unused voice is one that contains no notes anywhere in the project. Any unused voices are automatically deleted when you close a project, but you cannot manually delete voices once they have been created. You can create as many voices as you want in each staff.

NOTE

Deleting all notes in a voice does not delete the voice immediately.

If you later want to input notes in a voice that was automatically deleted when you last closed the project, you can create a new voice at any rhythmic position.

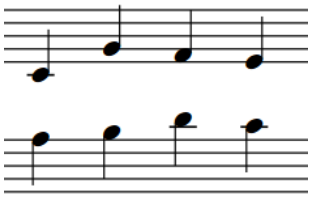
RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 157

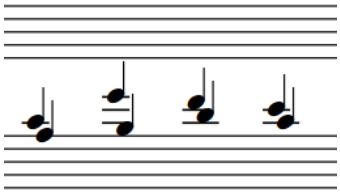
Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices

When you create cross-staff beams by crossing notes to staves that already contain notes, the stem direction of the existing notes may change. This is due to how multiple voices at the same rhythmic position are handled in Dorico for iPad.

For example, if a piano part contains notes in up-stem voices on both staves, the stem direction of notes in both voices can change if notes from the upper staff are crossed to the lower staff. In this situation, the notes from the two staves are not combined, but are instead treated as two up-stem voices in a multiple-voice context.



Two piano staves, each with notes in a single up-stem voice.



When the notes in the upper staff are crossed to the lower staff, the stem direction of the notes already in the lower staff changes so they point upwards.

You can change the stem direction of the notes originally in the lower staff in any of the following ways:

- Select the notes originally in the lower staff and change their voice to another voice, such as a down-stem voice.
- Select the notes originally in the lower staff and change their stem direction.

Alternatively, you can move the notes in the upper staff permanently to the lower staff.

RELATED LINKS
Creating cross-staff beams on page 456
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 340
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341
Stem direction on page 819

Slash voices

Slash voices allow you to notate specific rhythms for rhythm slashes. They behave similarly to normal voices as you must input notes and rhythms manually, but all notes in slash voices are positioned by default on the middle line of the staff, regardless of the pitches you input.

If you later change the time signature, such as from 3/4 to 6/8, Dorico for iPad only changes the note grouping to fit the meter just like for other notes; it does not change the presentation of rhythm in slash voices like it does for slash regions.

NOTE

- Because you can change notes in slash voices to normal voices and vice versa, the pitches you input are retained.
- Notes in slash voices are not played back.

You can have multiple slash voices active at the same time. To accommodate all slash voices in multiple-voice contexts, Dorico for iPad changes their staff position automatically. However, you can also change the staff position of rhythm slashes manually.

You can use slash regions and slash voices in the same project and at the same rhythmic positions, for example, you can input a slash region where you do not want to be specific about the rhythm, then input notes in a slash voice for a single bar where you want to specify an exact rhythm.

RELATED LINKS
Rhythm slashes on page 754
Slash regions on page 754
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 755
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341

Changing the slash voice type

You can change the voice type of slash voices, for example, if you want to change a slash voice from having stems to being stemless. You can also change the type to normal notes, which restores the original pitches you input, and change normal notes to rhythm slashes.

NOTE

This affects all notes in the same voice. If you only want to change the slash voice type of some notes, you must change the voice of those notes instead.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note in the voice whose slash type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the secondary toolbar, click **Context Menu** ··· and choose **Voices** > **Rhythmic Slashes** > **[Voice type]**.

   For example, to change a whole normal voice to a stemless slash voice, choose **Voices** > **Rhythmic Slashes** > **Slashes without Stems**.

RESULT

The slash voice type of all notes in the same voice and flow as the selected note is changed.

If you change normal notes to a slash voice, they are all automatically positioned on a single staff line. By default in single-voice contexts, this is the middle line of the staff.

If you change rhythm slashes to normal notes, their original pitches are restored, meaning their staff positions reflect their pitches.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 341
Secondary toolbar (Write mode) on page 118

Adding slash voices to percussion kits

You can add slash voices to percussion kits, for example, to show the desired rhythm for a passage without specifying the instruments to be played. You can add multiple slash voices to the same kit, including slash voices with and without stems.

NOTE

Rhythm slashes in percussion kits only appear when the five-line staff presentation is used. They do not appear in grid or single-line instrument presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Players** panel in Setup mode, expand the card of the player holding the percussion kit to which you want to add slash voices.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument label ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. In the action bar below the five-line staff editor, click the button that corresponds to the type of slash voice you want to add.
   - Slashes with stems
   - Slashes without stems

RESULT

The corresponding type of slash voice is added to the kit. It is positioned on the middle line of the staff by default.

During note input, you can move the caret to slash voices just like moving it to other instruments in the kit, and input notes into slash voices just like inputting notes in percussion kit instruments.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the staff position of slash voices in the kit.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion kit presentation types on page 888
Voices in percussion kits on page 899
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 83
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 162
Changing the positions of instruments within percussion kits on page 88

Glossary

A

action

The mechanism inside pianos that allows the hammers to strike the strings with different forces, depending on the strength with which the player depresses the corresponding key. It allows pianos to use a greater dynamic range, hence their full name “pianoforte”.

anacrusis

See pick-up bar.

articulation

(1) In music notation, symbols that indicate how a note should be played, typically affecting their onset (attack), release, or duration. (2) In sound libraries, a term that refers to playing techniques generally.

attachment

The rhythmic position at which an item occurs, or to which an item applies, in the music.

B

bar

A span of music comprising a specific number of beats, as defined by the prevailing time signature, whose boundaries are indicated by bar lines. Also known as a “measure”, but this documentation uses “bar”.

C

cancellation natural

A natural accidental positioned on the staff immediately before a change in key signature or a single note. It indicates that the previous accidental no longer applies and can be followed immediately by a new accidental if applicable. Showing cancellation naturals before single accidentals that follow double accidentals is also known as “archaic cancellation”. Cancellation naturals before a change in key signature are known as “traditional” when positioned after the barline and “Russian” when positioned before the barline.

caret

Shown during note input, the caret is the vertical line that extends above and below the staff and indicates the rhythmic position at which items are input. Also known as an “insertion point”. In Dorico for iPad, the caret, cursor, and pointer are related but serve different purposes. See also rhythmic grid, note input.

casting off

The act of fixing the layout of pages of music, such as defining a set number of systems per page or the number of bars per system.

cautionary accidental

A restatement of an earlier accidental to eliminate ambiguities, such as when a tied note with an accidental continues onto another page. Also known as “courtesy accidentals”.

CC

Short for “continuous controller” or “control change”, it is a MIDI message that combines a controller number and a value. The value for an individual controller can change over time, allowing incremental manipulation of the corresponding sound or effect, such as increasing/decreasing the string vibrato intensity. See also MIDI, PC.

channel

In MIDI, a channel determines which note, controller, or other data is played by which sound on which device. In Dorico for iPad, notes on a single staff may be played by different channels, depending on which playing techniques are provided by the patch assigned to each channel. See also MIDI, patch.

chord

Two or more notes of the same duration that start at the same rhythmic position and share a stem.

chord input

A variation of note input where notes are stacked on top of each other to create chords rather than being input after the previous note in sequence. Notes are input at the caret position, which does not advance automatically. See also caret, note input, Insert mode.

collision avoidance

Automatic adjustments made by Dorico for iPad to ensure multiple items at the same position do not overlap and that all remain clearly legible. Includes changing the shape of items, such as slurs, and changing the vertical and/or horizontal position of items, such as accidentals in chords.

column

A vertical line representing the same horizontal position across all staves in the system. Used to determine the position of notes and chords for the purposes of spacing music accurately. Multiple columns can be used for the same rhythmic position to accommodate multiple voices, with notes or chords in some voices being offset horizontally from notes or chords in other voices.

concert pitch

All notes are written as they sound. Full scores are often notated in concert pitch, so that harmonies and themes are easier to identify. Also known as “sounding pitch”. See also transposed pitch, instrument transposition.

condensing

The process of showing the music for multiple players on fewer staves than is normal, usually by allowing multiple instruments of the same type to share a staff, such as Flutes 1-2 or Horns 1-4. Most commonly used for large orchestral scores, as when there are fewer staves on a page it is possible to use a larger staff size, which is easier for conductors to read. See also divisi, pitch crossing.

constant point

A change in value in a track or lane in Play mode that sets a fixed value until the next point in the track or lane. See also linear point, value line.

context menu

A menu that you can access by right-clicking on a mouse or double-tapping on a touchpad. Its options vary by the location of the mouse pointer when you access it, but it most commonly contains options also found on the **Edit** menu.

cursor

The vertical blinking line that appears when entering or editing text. See also caret.

D

dead note

A note played on a fretted instrument whose sound is muted to produce a sound that is more percussive than pitched. Usually produced by gently resting one hand on the string. Also known as a “muted”, “muffled”, “ghost”, or “silenced” note. In Dorico for iPad, only notes belonging to fretted instruments, such as the guitar or banjo, can be dead notes.

disclosure arrow

A small arrow that is shown on all edges of the main window in Dorico for iPad. It allows you to hide/show the toolbar and panels individually.

divisi

Italian for “divide” or “divided”, divisi is when players split in order to play multiple lines of music. This commonly involves a section, such as Violin I, dividing and using two staves rather than one for a limited passage. Divisi passages can be notated all on the same staff, using multiple voices if required, or across multiple staves. See also tutti, condensing.

drum set

A particular type of percussion kit that is often used in pop and rock music. Drum sets often use a different arrangement of voices than percussion kits. In this documentation, references to “percussion kits” also apply to drum sets, as drum sets are a type of percussion kit.

E

EDO

An abbreviation for Equal Division of the Octave, it is a unit used to describe how an octave can be divided into equal parts, often for the purpose of defining a microtonal scale or tonality system. Traditional Western European music uses 12-EDO, that is, each octave is divided into 12 equal half-steps (semitones). Music that uses equal quarter tones uses 24-EDO.

endpoint

The unique combination of inputs and outputs that together allow the correct sounds to be played for each instrument.

Engrave mode

A mode in Dorico where you can manipulate and modify every item in your project, but without deleting them, moving them rhythmically, or changing the pitch of notes. You can also determine how the pages in each layout of your project are formatted for printing or exporting. Only available when you are subscribed. See also modes.

enharmonic equivalent

An alternative spelling of a note that uses a different scale degree and accidental but produces the same sounding pitch, such as G♯ and A♭.

ensemble

A predefined collection of players, each holding instruments that are often used together, such as string quartet, wind quintet, brass quintet, string ensemble, and double woodwinds.

envelope

A change in sound over time that comprises multiple stages, such as attack, sustain, and decay. In dynamics lanes in Play mode, envelopes are represented by multiple separate points, each controlling a different parameter of the overall envelope. See also constant point, linear point, value line.

explicit rest

A rest that was deliberately input during rest input or imported from a MusicXML file. Explicit rests cannot be suppressed between notes in a particular voice. See also implicit rest.

exploding

The process of assigning music to more instruments than it was written for originally. Exploding music is often a key step in arranging and orchestrating music, such as when a piano piece is arranged for string quartet. See also reducing.

F

family

Instruments of a similar kind that are typically bracketed together in a score, such as woodwind, brass, percussion, and strings.

fermata

A notation that indicates all notes at that position are held for longer than their notated length. It is most commonly shown as a curved line with a dot under the curve, but it can also be shown with a pointed arch or square shape. Also known as a “pause” or a “birds’ eye”.

flow

A self-contained span of music of any scope, such as a movement in a symphony, a song in an album, a number in a musical, or a short exercise in a music theory worksheet. A flow can contain the same players as other flows in the project or separate players just for that flow. See also player.

formatting

The act of determining the number of bars in a system, the number of systems on a page, and the distances between staves and systems.

fps

A unit of measurement, short for “frames per second”, that refers to the number of video frames occurring each second.

fragment

Part of a notation item. For example, fragments of a note include its notehead, rhythm dots, accidentals, the tip of its stem, and beam. In Write mode, selecting any part of an item also selects all of its fragments, so any changes you make affect the whole item. See also item, segment.

frame

A rectangular container for music, text, or graphics on a page.

fretted instrument

A type of instrument that in most cases has multiple strings, a neck with marked frets, and is played by stopping the strings at fret positions on the neck with one hand, usually the left, and plucking the corresponding strings with the other hand, usually the right. Common fretted instruments include the guitar, ukulele, and banjo.

full score

A score comprising all of the music for all of the players and their instruments, typically laid out in a specific order. The order used varies according to the ensemble for which the music is written. In full scores for orchestra, the players are typically ordered from the highest wind instrument at the top of the page, for example, piccolo, to the lowest string instrument at the bottom of the page, for example, contrabass, with brass, keyboards, voices, and percussion in between.

G

galley view

A viewing option that shows music laid out as a single, infinitely wide system.

grace note

A small note, often used to show an ornament or embellishment, that is not counted towards the number of beats in the bar; instead, it steals from the duration of either the preceding or the following rhythmic notes. Also known as an “arhythmic note”. In common practice, a grace note with a slashed stem is an acciaccatura, which is to be played as quickly as possible, either immediately before or at the rhythmic position of the note or chord that follows it. A grace note with an unslashed stem is an appoggiatura, which is played as half of the written duration of the note or chord that follows it.

group

A collection of players that comprises either a subset of the main ensemble, for example, a choir within an orchestra, or a separate group, for example, an off-stage brass group or second orchestra. Each group of players is labeled separately in the full score and is grouped and numbered together in the instrument order. See also player.

H

hairpin

A notation for dynamics that uses a pair of angled lines, diverging from or converging on a single point, to show a gradual increase or reduction in the dynamic level, that is, a crescendo or diminuendo.

half-bar

The rhythmic position that divides bars into two equal sections when the prevailing time signatures can be divided into four equal beats. In Dorico for iPad, specific beam grouping and note grouping settings apply to bars with a half-bar. Time signatures that have a half-bar include 4/4 and 12/8.

handle

A selectable item that marks the ends of lines, the corners of frames, and other moveable positions, such as pedal line retakes and slur control points. In Write mode, handles are circular and mark rhythmic positions.

harmonic series

A naturally-occurring set of frequencies that are all related to a single pitch, known as the "fundamental". When a fundamental pitch is played, the note produced contains many different notes within the harmonic series. These additional notes are known as "partials" or "overtones". It is also possible to bring out the sound of individual partials by playing them as harmonics. There is a consistent pattern of intervals between partials within the harmonic series, and these intervals become progressively smaller the further up the harmonic series they occur. For example, the interval between the first and second partials is an octave whereas the interval between the seventh and eighth partials is only approximately a major second. At the top end of the harmonic series, most partials are microtones. See also partial.

hook

A short line that extends from other lines, most commonly at a right angle, that helps to clarify the end position of lines. In Dorico for iPad, hooks can be used at the end of pedal lines, octave lines, repeat endings, and tuplet brackets.

horizontal justification

The alignment of musical content to the left and right edges of the frame. To ensure that all staves in a system occupy the same width, any remaining space that is left over after the music is spaced is distributed evenly between all of the columns in the system. Sometimes the final system of a flow is not fully justified and is allowed to end partway across the width of the frame. See also frame, justification.

I

implicit rest

A rest that is automatically shown around the notes you input. Its notated duration automatically adjusts according to the time signature and its position in the bar. Implicit rests can be suppressed between notes in a particular voice, which hides them. See also explicit rest.

Insert mode

A way of changing how notes are input. When Insert mode is activated, new notes push all subsequent notes in the same voice along by the input duration instead of overwriting existing notes. Similarly, reducing the duration of notes with Insert mode activated pulls them closer together without leaving rests between the notes. This also affects edits you make outside of note input, such as deleting notes, changing the duration of notes, or inputting time signatures. See also note input, chord input.

instrument

Anything that requires at least one staff to represent the sounds or music it produces. Common instruments include the violin, flute, tuba, and bass drum. However, human voices, computer triggering samples, and tape recordings can also be instruments.

instrument transposition

The interval difference between the pitch the instrument plays and the resulting sounding pitch, often included as part of the instrument name. For example, when a Clarinet in B♭ plays a C, the pitch produced is a concert B♭. Instrument transposition is also known as “instrument pitch”. See also concert pitch, transposed pitch.

item

Generic term for any note, rest, chord, notation, or other selectable object that appears in the score in Dorico for iPad. See also fragment, segment.

J

justification

The alignment of musical content to the edges of the frame, both horizontally and vertically. See also frame, horizontal justification, vertical justification.

K

key command

A set of keys that perform a defined task when pressed together. Also known as a “keyboard shortcut” or “hotkey”.

L

layout

A page-based presentation of the music for one or more players in one or more flows, for example, a full score that contains all players or an instrumental part that contains only a single player. See also flow, player.

layout options

Options that affect the setup of an individual layout, such as page and staff size. These options can be set in each layout independently in the **Layout Options** dialog. See also layout.

linear point

A change in value in a track or lane in Play mode that acts as a point on a curve, setting a value for its position only and allowing for a smooth change in value from that position until the next point in the track or lane. See also constant point, value line.

lock duration

Functionality that allows you to change the pitches of existing music while retaining existing rhythms.

lyric

Any text that is intended to be sung or spoken by an individual singer or group of singers. A lyric can be a whole word or an individual syllable in a multi-syllabic word. Lyrics are shown at each rhythmic position where a new word or syllable begins. Typically, lyrics are found below the staff, but are sometimes placed above the staff, for example, in the case of a short score.

M

measure

See bar.

MIDI

An abbreviation for Musical Instrument Digital Interface, a standard for how electronic musical instruments, computers, and virtual instruments can connect to and communicate with each other. In Dorico for iPad, MIDI data can be sent to one of 16 channels, which allow either a specific instrument, or a specific patch on a specific instrument, to receive and respond to the data. See also channel, patch, CC, PC.

minor key

A key signature based on a minor scale, which has a different pattern of intervals to a major scale. See also minor scale.

minor scale

A sequence of notes containing the pitches of a minor key. There are three types of minor scales: natural, harmonic, and melodic. Natural minor scales follow the interval pattern of the Aeolian mode, which on a keyboard is all the white notes from A-A. Harmonic minor scales also follow the Aeolian mode interval pattern but the seventh degree of the scale is sharpened, for example, G♯ in A harmonic minor. Melodic minor scales follow different interval patterns when they are rising/falling: when rising, melodic minor scales have sharpened sixth and seventh degrees, but when falling, the sixth and seventh degrees are both natural. See also minor key.

modes

Selectable workspaces in the project window that represent different phases in the workflow of preparing a score. See also Setup mode, Write mode, Engrave mode, Play mode.

multi-bar rest

A consolidation of multiple adjacent empty bars into a smaller unit, typically shown as a single bar with the total number of bars' rest written above the staff. A multi-bar rest normally shows an H-bar symbol, which is a thick horizontal line with vertical lines at each end. In some older published scores, a multi-bar rest of up to nine bars in length is shown using a combination of double whole and whole rests. Also known as a “multirest”.

music area

The main part of the window in Setup mode and Write mode where you input and edit your music.

MusicXML

A file format designed to allow the interchange and archiving of music notation data in an open and non-proprietary way. It is useful for exchanging scores between different music applications.

N

node

A position along the length of a string that marks an equal division of the string, such as a quarter of the way along a string. Touching, but not fully stopping, a string at a node produces a harmonic partial. See also partial, harmonic series.

note input

The standard method of adding notes to staves in sequence that is possible when the caret is active. The caret automatically advances to the next rhythmic position after each note is input. During note input, it is also possible to input other items at the caret position. Also known as “step input” because notes are input step-by-step. See also caret, chord input, Insert mode.

O

overtone

See partial. See also harmonic series, node.

P

padding

The minimum distance/gap between two items, such as text and its enclosure. Padding values can be independent of other set values, such as minimum height or width.

padding rest

A rest that fills the extra rhythmic space before or after cues that start or end partway through bars. This shows clearly how the rhythm of the cue fits within the current time signature and how it relates to the player’s existing material.

page break

The forced termination of a page of music at a particular rhythmic position, typically at a barline. Often used to ensure a convenient page turn in a part. In Dorico for iPad, page breaks can be achieved using frame breaks, which are indicated using signposts. See also system break.

page view

A viewing option that shows music laid out on a page with a fixed width and height, as it appears when printed. See also galley view.

panel

Wide palettes of tools on the left, right, and bottom edges of the program window that are available in all modes, but their content varies in each mode.

part

The music belonging to the instruments played by one or more players, shown on its own rather than in a full score. Performers who do not need to see the music belonging to the whole ensemble play from parts so they only have to read the music they play themselves. See also full score, layout.

partial

A single pitch or frequency in the harmonic series, which varies in pitch according to the pitch of the fundamental but is always a consistent interval above the fundamental according to its number in the harmonic series. For example, the second partial is an octave above the fundamental, the third partial is an octave and a fifth above the fundamental, and the fourth partial is two octaves above the fundamental. Also known as simply a “harmonic” or “overtone”, although when described as an overtone it has a different number, as the first overtone is the same as the second partial. See also harmonic series.

patch

An older term for a discrete sound on a MIDI device or virtual instrument. See also channel, MIDI, PC.

PC

Short for “program change” or “patch change”, it is a MIDI message that allows you to access different sounds by switching to the corresponding programs. Because programs can also include effects presets, they allow you to change to specific sounds quickly, which is particularly useful in live performances. See also MIDI, CC, patch.

pedal level change

A change to how far a piano sustain pedal is depressed, between 1 (fully depressed) and 0 (not depressed). It is notated as a change to the height of a pedal line. Also known as a “pedal lift”.

pick-up bar

A note or notes played before the first full bar of a piece. Also known as an “upbeat” or “anacrusis”. Pick-up bars often only comprise one or two beats whose main purpose is to lead in to the start of the piece.

pitch crossing

A possible situation on staves containing multiple voices or parts, such as condensed staves, where notes in down-stem voices have higher pitches than notes in up-stem voices. See also condensing.

player

A musician who plays one or more instruments. Players are defined as either single players or section players and are assigned to flows and layouts. See also single player, section player, flow, layout.

playhead

A vertical line that moves alongside music during playback and when recording, showing the current rhythmic position. Also known as a “playback line”.

Play mode

A mode in Dorico where you can change how your music sounds in playback, including by changing the playback template and assigning VST instruments, inputting automation, adjusting

the mix, and changing the sounding duration of notes in playback without affecting their notated duration. See also modes.

playthrough

A single time playing from the beginning of the piece to the end. Music that contains multiple possible endings, such as music with repeat endings or codas, requires multiple playthroughs.

plug-in

A software program that can operate within another software program. Dorico for iPad supports VST instruments and effects and script plug-ins written in Lua.

pointer

The symbol on the computer screen that follows movements made by the user with a mouse or on a touchpad. It is most commonly an arrow pointing towards the top left corner of the screen.

polymeter

Music containing multiple simultaneous meters, for example, one instrument in the ensemble plays in 6/8 and another plays in 7/4.

popover

A temporary value field that is evoked using a key command and allows you to input items using text entries. You can open popovers in Write mode during note input or when items are selected in the music area. There are dedicated popovers for different types of items.

preamble

The notations typically drawn before the first note or rest on each system of music. The preamble usually includes clefs, key signatures, and time signatures. In Dorico for iPad, the preamble is drawn automatically and so you cannot select any items included in it.

print preview area

The main part of the window in Print mode where you can see a preview of what is going to be printed or exported as a graphic.

project

A Dorico for iPad file that can contain multiple flows and layouts. See also flow and layout.

properties

The characteristics of individual items and fragments of items in your project that can be edited via the Properties panel. There are two types of properties: local and global. Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific, meaning that by default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts or other frame chains.

Q

quantization

In music, the act of adjusting the positions and durations of notes so they align with the nearest defined beat. This process eliminates small variations in rhythm and duration produced naturally by live performers, and can be useful when importing/exporting MIDI data as quantized music produces neater notation.

R

rastral size

The size of a full five-line staff, measured from the bottom line to the top line. The term comes from the rastra engravers historically used to draw five-line staves on blank paper. Because the rastrum is a fixed object, people became used to their set sizes and Dorico for iPad continues this tradition by offering users a selection of rastral staff sizes.

reducing

The process of taking music for more than one instrument and assigning it to fewer instruments, such as a keyboard reduction of a choral piece. A piece of music that has been reduced is known as a “reduction”. See also exploding.

rhythmic grid

A unit of rhythmic duration whose value affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move. Its current value is shown by ruler markings indicating beat divisions and subdivisions above the staff on which the caret is active. See also caret.

S

score

See full score, part, project.

section player

Multiple musicians who all play the same instrument and read from the same part layout, for example, Violin I. Section players may not play multiple different instruments, but can divide. See also player.

segment

Part of a notation item that functions autonomously in Engrave mode. Segments can exist regardless of their position, such as individual ending brackets within a repeat ending, or only when a single item is split across a system or frame break, such as glissando lines. See also item, fragment.

Setup mode

A mode in Dorico where you can set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, and layouts. You can also determine how they interact with each other, for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts. See also modes.

single player

An individual musician who can play one or more instruments, for example, a flute doubling piccolo. See also player.

SMuFL

Short for “Standard Music Font Layout”, it is a font specification that maps all the different symbols required for music notation onto a standard layout. Dorico for iPad requires SMuFL-compliant fonts for certain areas of the program, such as clefs and dynamic glyphs, to ensure it can locate the correct symbol. SMuFL-compliant fonts include Bravura, Petaluma, and November 2.0.

space

A unit of measurement in music engraving based on the distance between the center of two adjacent staff lines. Practically all notation items are scaled in proportion to the size of a space, for example, a notehead is normally one space tall.

spacing

The act of determining the horizontal distance between successive columns in order to format the music. Horizontal spacing in Dorico for iPad considers the graphical shape and size of notes and other items, such as rhythm dots and accidentals, and the note spacing values set. Full systems are automatically horizontally justified.

spelling

The way in which a note of a given pitch is specified by a letter name plus an accidental. For example, assuming the conventional 12-EDO pitch system, MIDI note 61 can be spelled as C♯, D♭, and B𝄪. The same pitch is normally spelled a certain way in a given key, for example, MIDI note 61 is normally spelled as C♯ in D major, but is spelled as D♭ in A♭ major. See also EDO, MIDI.

split stem

A way of presenting altered unisons that keeps each accidental directly beside the notehead to which it applies. Also known as a “cherry stalk” or “tree”.

staff-relative placement

The vertical position of items relative to musical staves, that is, either above or below.

string shift indicator

An angled line that indicates the direction of movement when string players have to shift position on the fingerboard to play a higher/lower note with the same finger as the previous note.

stroke

The short line that bisects editorial slurs and ties. Also known as a “notch”.

SVG

SVG stands for Scalable Vector Graphics, which is an XML-based way of displaying and modifying graphics. Due to the way it is coded, it allows you to modify graphics very flexibly compared to other formats.

system

A horizontal span of music that is played together. Most printed music displays systems spanning the full width of pages. A system can contain any number of staves. For example, in orchestral full scores, systems typically contain staves for all instruments in the orchestra, meaning a single system often occupies the full height of the page. In part layouts, each system only contains the staves required for that player, which is often a single staff and means multiple systems can fit on each page. See also system break, page break, casting off.

system break

The forced termination of a system of music at a particular rhythmic position, typically at a barline. Indicated in Dorico for iPad with signposts. See also page break.

system formatting

The distribution of bars into systems and systems into frames. When copying part formatting between layouts, Dorico for iPad considers the positions of system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes to be aspects of system formatting.

system object

An item that applies to all staves in the system, but is not necessary to show on every staff, such as tempo marks and rehearsal marks. In Dorico for iPad, you can show system objects at multiple positions in each system by showing them above multiple instrument families.

T

tempo track

The timing-related information included in MIDI data that affects tempo, SMPTE offsets, time signatures, timecodes, and markers, which can be imported independently of the rest of the data in MIDI files.

token

A code used in a text string that is automatically replaced by a piece of information from elsewhere in the project, such as the title of the current flow, the name of the player, or the page number. Also known as a “wildcard” or “text code”.

touchpad

Any flat device with a tactile sensor that functions as an alternative to the traditional computer mouse. Commonly built into laptop computers but can also be separate appliances connected wirelessly or via a cable.

transport

Encompasses all options related to playback and recording.

transposed pitch

In transposed pitch, the pitches notated are the pitches that the instrument plays, rather than the desired sounding pitch. Instrumental parts are always in transposed pitch so that players can simply play the written notes, which is especially important for transposing instruments. See also concert pitch, instrument transposition.

tuplet

A rhythm that is performed at a fraction of its normal written duration. For example, a triplet is three notes of a given note value played in the time it would normally take to play two notes of that note value. Also known as an “irrational rhythm” or a “countermetric rhythm”.

tutti

Italian for “everyone”, tutti indicates that a passage of music is to be played by all players reading from that part or staff. It is most commonly used to indicate the end of a divisi passage, or for clarification when a staff can indicate both solos and tutti passages at different times. See also divisi.

U

upbeat

See pick-up bar.

V

value line

A visual representation of value over time in tracks or lanes in Play mode. Fully horizontal value lines indicate a constant value, while angled value lines indicate a smooth change in value within a given duration, usually between two points. See also constant point, linear point.

vertical justification

The spreading out of staves and systems across the full height of frames with as even a distribution of space as possible. If the music in the frame requires less vertical space than is available, the remaining space is distributed evenly between the systems, and between the staves of the systems. See also frame, justification.

vibrato bar

A device on electric fretted instruments, typically guitars, that allows the performer to add vibrato to notes and to adjust the pitch of notes, similar to a guitar bend. Also known as a “whammy bar”, “tremolo bar”, “tremolo arm”, or “vibrato arm”.

voice

In Dorico for iPad, a series of notes, chords, rests, and other notations that make up a single musical line and are normally played by the same instrument. Assigning notes and items to different voices allows multiple lines of music to be presented on the same staff as clearly as possible, such as in vocal music where the soprano line uses an up-stem voice and the alto line uses a down-stem voice. Dorico for iPad allows as many voices as are needed to be input onto a single staff, and lays them out and spaces them automatically.

VST instrument

Short for “Virtual Studio Technology instrument”, it is a digital plug-in that converts MIDI data into audio output. It can emulate an existing piece of studio hardware or can be an entirely new creation.

W

Write mode

A mode in Dorico where you can input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. See also modes.

Index

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Z